



PUBLIC

2018-05-18

# Security Guide for SAP S/4HANA 1709 FPS02

# Content

- 1 Introduction. . . . . 7**
- 2 Before You Start. . . . . 8**
- 3 User Administration and Authentication. . . . . 9**
  - 3.1 User Management. . . . . 9
    - Non-SAP Fiori Technology. . . . . 9
    - SAP Fiori Technology. . . . . 11
  - 3.2 User Data Synchronization. . . . . 12
  - 3.3 Role Administration. . . . . 12
  - 3.4 Integration into Single Sign-On Environments. . . . . 12
- 4 System Hardening with SAP Security Notes. . . . . 14**
- 5 SAP S/4HANA System Landscape Information. . . . . 16**
- 6 Network and Communication Security. . . . . 18**
  - 6.1 Communication Channel Security. . . . . 18
  - 6.2 Network Security. . . . . 19
  - 6.3 Communication Destinations. . . . . 19
- 7 ICF and Session Security. . . . . 20**
- 8 File System Access Security. . . . . 22**
- 9 Virus Scanning. . . . . 23**
  - 9.1 Virus Scanning in File Uploads. . . . . 23
  - 9.2 General Recommendations for Virus Scan Profiles. . . . . 24
  - 9.3 Further Protection Against Active Content. . . . . 26
- 10 Additional System Hardening Activities. . . . . 27**
- 11 Data Protection and Privacy. . . . . 29**
  - 11.1 Read Access Logging. . . . . 31
  - 11.2 Deletion of Personal Data. . . . . 32
  - 11.3 Information Retrieval. . . . . 33
  - 11.4 Consent Management. . . . . 34
- 12 SAP S/4HANA Cross Application Infrastructure. . . . . 38**
  - 12.1 Data Security in SAP ILM. . . . . 38
    - Data Security in SAP ILM System Connections. . . . . 38

	Users and Authorizations in SAP ILM. . . . .	39
	Security of Stored Data in SAP ILM. . . . .	40
	Logs in SAP ILM. . . . .	41
12.2	Payment Card Security. . . . .	42
	Before You Start. . . . .	42
	Authorizations . . . . .	43
	Data Storage Security . . . . .	44
	Setting Up Encryption Software . . . . .	45
	Making Settings for Payment Card Security . . . . .	45
	Relevant SSF Applications . . . . .	47
	Generating Keys . . . . .	47
	Migration of Payment Card Data Stored in Unencrypted Form . . . . .	48
	Migration of Payment Card Data on SAP Business Partner. . . . .	48
	Migration to SSF Application PAYCRV . . . . .	49
	Migration to Current Key Version . . . . .	49
	Deleting a Key Version . . . . .	50
	Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing . . . . .	50
	Recommended Implementation Steps . . . . .	50
<b>13</b>	<b>SAP S/4HANA Business Applications. . . . .</b>	<b>52</b>
13.1	Asset Management. . . . .	52
	Maintenance Operations. . . . .	52
	Environment, Health and Safety. . . . .	52
13.2	Commerce. . . . .	63
	Subscription Billing and Revenue Management. . . . .	63
13.3	Finance. . . . .	71
	Financial Accounting. . . . .	72
	Controlling. . . . .	85
	Governance, Risk and Compliance for Finance. . . . .	87
	Treasury Management. . . . .	93
	Financial Operations. . . . .	116
	Real Estate Management. . . . .	128
	Receivables Management. . . . .	132
	SAP S/4HANA Financial Closing cockpit. . . . .	155
	Travel Management. . . . .	155
13.4	Human Resources. . . . .	159
	User Management. . . . .	159
	Authorizations. . . . .	161
	Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing. . . . .	165
	Core HR and Payroll. . . . .	165
	Talent Management. . . . .	242
	Time and Attendance Management. . . . .	333

13.5	Manufacturing. . . . .	350
	Production Planning. . . . .	351
	Manufacturing Execution for Discrete Industries. . . . .	352
	Manufacturing Execution for Process Industries. . . . .	356
	Quality Management. . . . .	357
	Maintenance Operations. . . . .	364
13.6	R&D / Engineering. . . . .	364
	Product Safety and Stewardship. . . . .	364
	Enterprise Portfolio and Project Management. . . . .	393
	Integrated Product Development for Discrete Industries. . . . .	425
	Product Lifecycle Management. . . . .	431
	Product Development for Discrete Industries. . . . .	441
13.7	Sales. . . . .	442
	Deletion of Personal Data in Sales. . . . .	442
	Global Trade Management. . . . .	444
13.8	Service. . . . .	446
	Warranty Management. . . . .	446
13.9	Sourcing and Procurement. . . . .	448
	Authorizations. . . . .	448
	Data Storage Security. . . . .	455
	Other Security-Relevant Information. . . . .	457
	Deletion of Personal Data. . . . .	460
	Specific Read Access Log Configurations. . . . .	463
	Ariba Network Integration. . . . .	464
	Supplier and Category Management. . . . .	464
	Integration. . . . .	470
13.10	Supply Chain. . . . .	473
	Efficient Logistics and Order Fulfillment. . . . .	473
	Extended Production Scheduling and Delivery Planning. . . . .	481
	Extended Warehouse Management. . . . .	482
	Deletion of Personal Data. . . . .	498
	Transportation Management. . . . .	500
	Returnable Packaging and Empties Management. . . . .	522
13.11	Cross-Line-of-Business. . . . .	527
	Commodity Management. . . . .	527
13.12	Analytics Technology. . . . .	534
	Process Performance Monitoring. . . . .	535
13.13	Enterprise Technology. . . . .	537
	Master Data Maintenance. . . . .	537
	Legal Content Management. . . . .	547
	Geographical Enablement Framework. . . . .	549

	Master Data Governance. . . . .	551
13.14	SAP S/4HANA Industries. . . . .	553
	Agriculture. . . . .	553
	Automotive. . . . .	556
	Banking. . . . .	558
	Higher Education and Research. . . . .	584
	Professional Services. . . . .	596
	Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing . . . . .	597
	Public Sector Management. . . . .	603
	Retail. . . . .	619
	Utilities. . . . .	632
	Insurance. . . . .	646
	Engineering, Construction, and Operations. . . . .	656
	Oil and Gas. . . . .	659
13.15	Country-Specifics. . . . .	683
	Deletion of Personal Data in Business Applications. . . . .	683
	Specific Read Access Log Configurations. . . . .	684
<b>14</b>	<b>Business Network Integration. . . . .</b>	<b>686</b>
14.1	Security Aspects for Connectivity Types. . . . .	686
14.2	Direct Connectivity: SAP S/4HANA as Client. . . . .	687
14.3	Direct Connectivity: SAP S/4HANA as Server. . . . .	689
14.4	Roles and Authorizations (Ariba Network). . . . .	689
14.5	Roles and Authorizations (SAP Fieldglass). . . . .	690

# Document History

Version	Date	Description
1.0	May 18, 2018	Initial Version

# 1 Introduction

## Target Audience

- Technology consultants
- Security consultants
- System administrators

This document is not included as part of the Installation Guides, Configuration Guides, Technical Operation Manuals, or Migration Guides. Such guides are only relevant for a certain phase of the software life cycle, whereas the Security Guides provide information that is relevant for all life cycle phases.

## Why Is Security Necessary?

With the increasing use of distributed systems and the Internet for managing business data, the demands on security are also on the rise. When using a distributed system, you need to be sure that your data and processes support your business needs without allowing unauthorized access to critical information. User errors, negligence, or attempted manipulation of your system should not result in loss of information or processing time. These demands on security apply likewise to SAP S/4HANA.

To assist you in securing SAP S/4HANA, we provide this Security Guide.

## About this Document

The Security Guide provides an overview of the security-relevant information that applies to SAP S/4HANA in general. In particular it comprises general considerations regarding the system access via SAP Fiori Apps. In case there are specific aspects for the underlying scenarios or applications these are described in an area-specific chapter.

## 2 Before You Start

### Fundamental Security Guides

SAP S/4HANA is based on SAP NetWeaver and the SAP HANA Platform. With respect to SAP Fiori apps, SAP Gateway plays a fundamental role as well. This means that the corresponding Security Guides are also applicable for SAP S/4HANA.

Whenever other guides are relevant, an appropriate reference is included in the documentation for the individual solution areas in the specific part of this guide.

Also consider the following fundamental security whitepapers found on <https://support.sap.com/en/security-whitepapers.html>:

- Secure Configuration of SAP NetWeaver Application Server Using ABAP
- SAP Security Recommendations: Securing Remote Function Calls (RFC)
- Protecting SAP Applications Against Common Attacks

### Important SAP Notes

SAP Note [1538539](#) contains information about saving temporary files when using Adobe Acrobat Reader in SAP applications. SAP Note [138498](#) contains information on single sign-on solutions. SAP Notes relating to security for the subcomponents of SAP S/4HANA are referenced in the documentation for the individual components in this guide. For a list of additional security-relevant SAP Hot News and SAP Notes, see the SAP Support Portal at <http://support.sap.com/securitynotes>.



# 3 User Administration and Authentication

## Overview

SAP S/4HANA generally relies on the user management and authentication mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver platform, in particular the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP Application Server and the SAP HANA Platform. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the [SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP Security Guide](#) and [SAP HANA Platform](#) also apply to SAP S/4HANA.

In addition to these guidelines, we include information about user administration and authentication that specifically applies to SAP S/4HANA in the following topics:

- **User Management**  
This topic lists the tools to use for user management, the types of users required, and the standard users that are delivered with SAP S/4HANA.
- **User Data Synchronization**  
SAP S/4HANA can share user data with other components. This topic describes how the user data is synchronized with these other sources.
- **Integration into Single Sign-On Environments**

## 3.1 User Management

### 3.1.1 Non-SAP Fiori Technology

User management for SAP S/4HANA uses the mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP, such as tools, user types, and password concept. For an overview of how these mechanisms apply for SAP S/4HANA, see the sections below. In addition, we provide a list of the standard users required for operating SAP S/4HANA.

#### User Administration Tools

This table shows the tools available for user management and administration.

Tool	Description
User maintenance for ABAP-based systems (transaction SU01)	For more information about the authorization objects provided by the subcomponents of SAP S/4HANA, see the application-specific sections.
Role maintenance with the profile generator for ABAP-based systems (PFCG)	For more information about the roles provided by the subcomponents of SAP S/4HANA, see the application-specific sections. Also, see <a href="#">User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP</a> at <a href="http://help.sap.com">help.sap.com</a> ► <a href="#">Enterprise Management</a> ► <a href="#">SAP ERP</a> ► <a href="#">SAP ERP 6.0 EHP7</a> ► <a href="#">SAP ERP Security Guide</a> ► <a href="#">SAP ERP Central Component Security Guide</a> ► <a href="#">User Administration and Authentication</a> ► <a href="#">User Administration</a> ►.
Central User Administration (CUA) for the maintenance of multiple ABAP-based systems	For central administrative tasks

## User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users under which background processing jobs run. The user types that are required for SAP S/4HANA

- Individual users
  - Dialog users - used for SAP GUI for Windows
  - Internet users - used for Web Applications
- Technical users
- Service users are dialog users who are available for a large set of anonymous users
- Communication users are used for dialog-free communication between systems
- Background users are used for processing in the background

For more information about these user types, see User Types in the [SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP Security Guide](#).

## Standard Users

This section describes the standard users necessary for operating SAP S/4HANA

### i Note

Ensure you change the passwords and IDs of users that were created automatically during the installation.

System	User ID	Type	Password	Additional Information
SAP Web Application Server	<sapsid>adm	SAP system administrator	Mandatory	SAP NetWeaver Installation Guide
SAP Web Application Server	SAP Service <sapsid>	SAP system administrator	Mandatory	SAP NetWeaver Installation Guide
SAP Web Application Server	TMSADM	SAP system administrator	Mandatory	SAP NetWeaver Installation Guide
SAP Web Application Server	SAP Standard ABAP Users (SAP*, DDIC, EARLYWATCH, SAPCPIC)	See SAP NetWeaver Security Guide	Optional	SAP NetWeaver Security Guide  Note that EARLYWATCH and SAPCPIC may not be needed in your system landscape. See note below this table for details.
SAP ECC	SAP Users	Dialog users	Mandatory	The number of users depends on the area of operation and the business data to be processed

### Note

In most cases, the user EARLYWATCH is not used anymore. We recommend checking if this is the case in your landscape. If the user is not needed, it should be deleted to minimize the attack surface. For more information, see [1749142](#).


The user SAPCPIC is sometimes used in legacy RFC scenarios or with EDI. We recommend checking if SAPCPIC is needed in your landscape. If the user is not needed, it should be deleted to minimize the attack surface.

## 3.1.2 SAP Fiori Technology

For details on the user management and authorization concepts used in SAP Fiori apps, see the *SAP S/4HANA UI Technology Guide* at the SAP Help Portal under [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Documentation* ►

## 3.2 User Data Synchronization







By synchronizing user data, you can reduce effort and expense in the user management of your system landscape. Since SAP S/4HANA is based on SAP NetWeaver, you can use all of the mechanisms for user synchronization in SAP NetWeaver here.

For more information, see the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* on SAP Help portal at <https://help.sap.com/nw75>  
 [Security Guide](#) .

## 3.3 Role Administration

Business roles in SAP S/4HANA represent the central object used to structure users' access on the frontend server.

For more information, see the following sections on [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002):

- **General information on role maintenance in systems based on SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP:**  
Enter *Configuration of User and Role Administration* into the search bar, press  and open the search result with that title.
- **Role maintenance for access based on SAP Fiori launchpad:**  
Enter *SAP Fiori Launchpad* into the search bar, press , open the search result with that title and then navigate to:
  - [Administration Guide](#)  [Initial Setup of the Launchpad](#) 
  - [Security Aspects](#)
- **Authorization concepts and role maintenance for custom development:**  
Enter *From the Programmed Authorization Check to a Role* into the search bar, press  and open the search result with that title.
- **UI content and authorization concept for SAP Fiori apps:**  
Open the *UI Technology Guide* under [Product Documentation](#) and navigate to [Administration](#)  [App Implementation](#)  [User Management and Authorization](#)  [UI Content and Authorization Concept](#) 

## 3.4 Integration into Single Sign-On Environments

### Non-Fiori Technology

SAP S/4HANA supports the single sign-on (SSO) mechanisms provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP technology. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user management and authentication that are described in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* also apply to SAP S/4HANA.

For non-Fiori technology SAP S/4HANA supports the following mechanisms:

- **Secure Network Communications (SNC)**  
SNC is available for user authentication and provides for an SSO environment when using the SAP GUI for Windows or Remote Function Calls.
- **SAP Logon Tickets**  
SAP S/4HANA supports the use of logon tickets for SSO when using a Web browser as the front-end client. In this case, users can be issued a logon ticket after they have authenticated themselves with the initial SAP system. The ticket can then be submitted to other systems (SAP or external systems) as an authentication token. The user does not need to enter a user ID or password for authentication, but can access the system directly once it has checked the logon ticket. For more information, see *SAP Logon Tickets* in the *Security Guide for SAP NetWeaver Application Server* at <https://help.sap.com/nw75>  
▶ *Security Guide* ▶ *English* ▶ *Security Guides for the AS ABAP* ▶ *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide* ▶
- **Client Certificates**  
As an alternative to user authentication using a user ID and passwords, users using a Web browser as a front-end client can also provide X.509 client certificates to use for authentication. In this case, user authentication is performed on the Web server using the Secure Sockets Layer Protocol (SSL Protocol). No passwords have to be transferred. User authorizations are valid in accordance with the authorization concept in the SAP system.  
For more information see *Client Certificates* in the *Security Guide for SAP NetWeaver Application Server*.  
For more information about available authentication mechanisms, see SAP Library for SAP NetWeaver under *User Authentication and Single Sign-On* at <https://help.sap.com/nw75> ▶ *Security Guide* ▶

For more information about the available authentication mechanisms, see the *User Authentication and Single Sign-On* documentation in the SAP NetWeaver Library.

## Fiori Technology

For details on the User Authentication and Single Sign-On concepts used in SAP Fiori apps, see the *SAP S/4HANA UI Technology Guide* at the SAP Help Portal under [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002)

▶ *Product Documentation* ▶













# 4 System Hardening with SAP Security Notes







## Backlog of Existing Security Notes

There is also a backlog of security notes that require your attention during early phases of your SAP S/4HANA system setup. The following is a list of important security notes which include manual configuration steps and which you need to implement in your SAP S/4HANA system. These implementations/configurations can only be carried out by you due to your specific landscape and specific application environment.

### i Note

Some of these SAP Notes may not be applicable in your system landscape.

SAP Note	Title
<a href="#">1322944</a> 	ABAP: HTTP security session management
<a href="#">1531399</a> 	Enabling SSL for Session Protection
<a href="#">1585767</a> 	Enabling Virus Scanning in SAP Content Server
<a href="#">1616535</a> 	Secure configuration of ICM for the ABAP application server
<a href="#">1693981</a> 	Unauthorized modification of displayed content
<a href="#">1853140</a> 	Managing SAProuter from external host
<a href="#">1973081</a> 	XSRF vulnerability: External start of transactions with OK-Code
<a href="#">2086818</a> 	Fixing POODLE SSLv3.0 (CVE-2014-3566) Vulnerability
<a href="#">2107562</a> 	Fixing POODLE SSLv3.0 (CVE-2014-3566) Vulnerability in Money Mobiliser Platform
<a href="#">2142551</a> 	Whitelist service for Clickjacking Framing Protection in AS ABAP
<a href="#">2185122</a> 	Switchable authorization checks for RFC in data extraction within CA-MDG-APP-FIN
<a href="#">2245332</a> 	Automatic usage of Whitelist Service for Clickjacking Framing Protection in SAPUI5 Apps

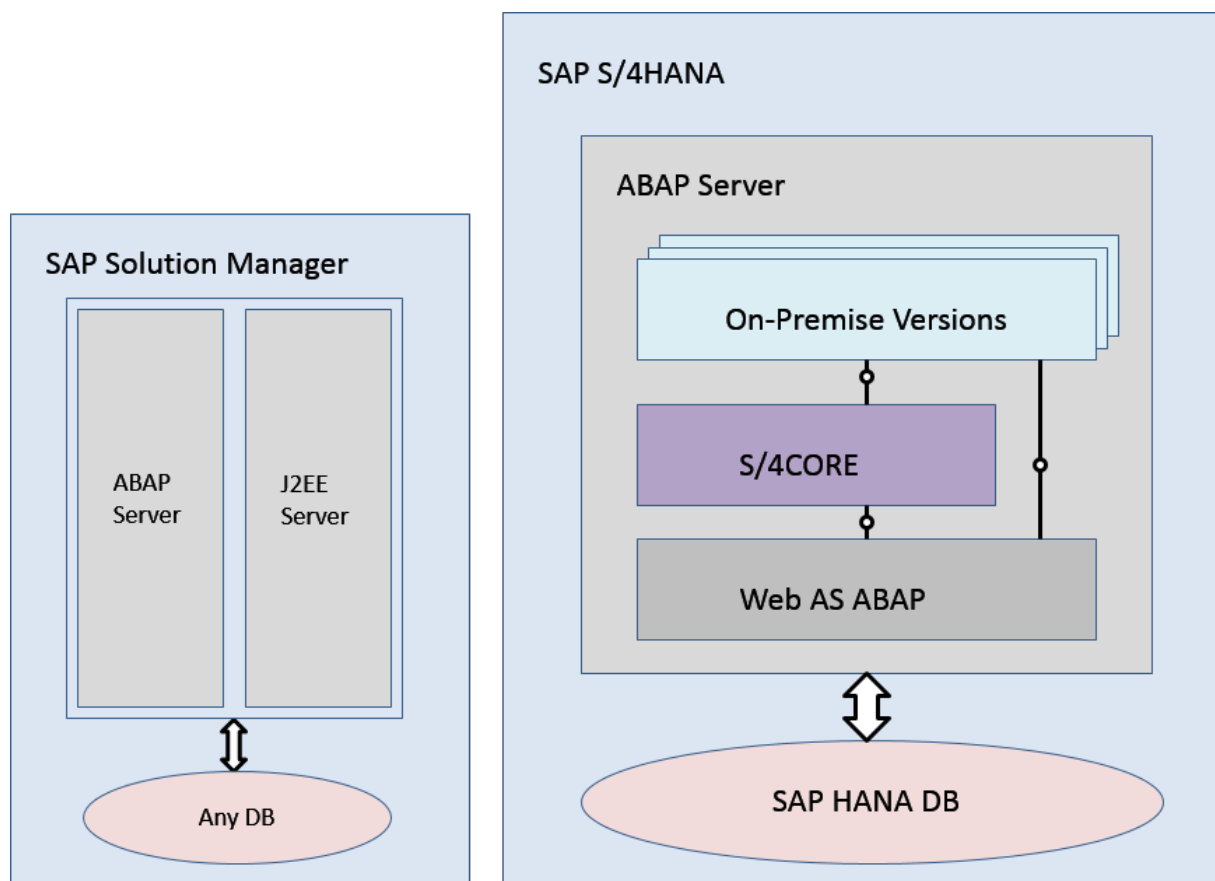
SAP Note	Title
<a href="#">2260344</a> 	OS command injection vulnerability in SCTC_* Function modules
<a href="#">2319172</a> 	Whitelist based Clickjacking Framing Protection in SAP GUI for HTML
<a href="#">2319192</a> 	Whitelist based Clickjacking Framing Protection in BSP
<a href="#">2333957</a> 	Whitelist based Clickjacking Framing Protection in SAP Fiori Launchpad for SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP
<a href="#">2349128</a> 	Whitelist based Clickjacking Framing Protection in UI theme designer on ABAP
<a href="#">2421287</a> 	Front-end printing with SAP GUI 750

## 5 SAP S/4HANA System Landscape Information

There are various ways of deploying SAP S/4HANA in your new or already existing system landscape. This section describes some examples.

### Example: SAP S/4HANA New Installation

A new installation of SAP S/4HANA needs to run on the SAP HANA database. It is recommended to use the SAP Solution Manager, which can run on any database. This very simple landscape can be enhanced with the SAP cloud solutions and SAP Business Suite products.



Simple SAP S/4HANA Deployment

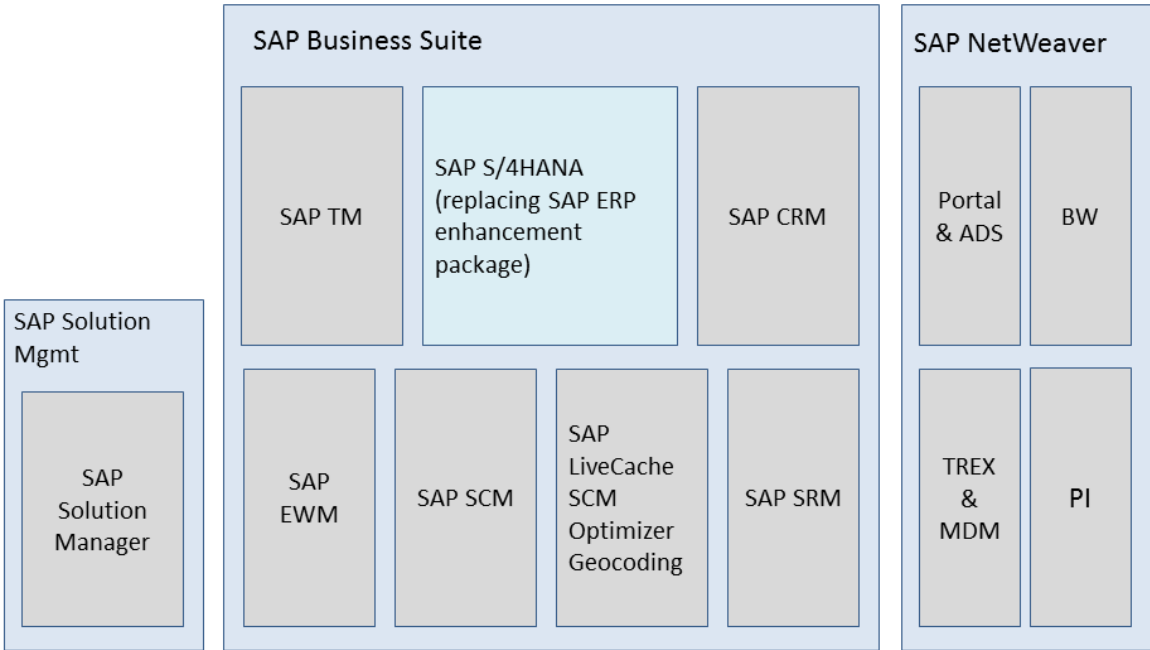
### Example: SAP S/4HANA in an SAP Business Suite Landscape

It is possible to integrate SAP S/4HANA into an existing SAP Business Suite landscape by replacing the SAP ERP enhancement package product with SAP S/4HANA. When performing this conversion in your system



landscape, you need to do some adaptations, for example you need to convert some of your existing business processes to the simplified SAP S/4HANA processes. Some of the SAP Business Suite processes are no longer supported, some have been changed, and there are also new processes. How to convert your existing processes to the SAP S/4HANA processes is described in the *Simplification Item Catalog*.

For more information about the *Simplification Item Catalog*, see the *Conversion Guide for SAP S/4HANA* at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Documentation* ►.



Example SAP Business Suite landscape with an embedded SAP S/4HANA system

**More Information**

For more information about SAP Fiori for SAP S/4HANA in a hub deployment, see [Landscape Deployment Recommendations for SAP Fiori Front-End Server](#).

# 6 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is extremely important in protecting your system. Your network needs to support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined network topology can eliminate many security threats. These threats can be based on software flaws, at both the operating system level and application level, or network attacks, such as eavesdropping.

If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, then there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the backend system database or files.

Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server local area network (LAN), they cannot exploit well-known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

## 6.1 Communication Channel Security

SAP S/4 HANA uses several protocols for communication to internal and external applications. These can be SAP systems or third-party systems. The following protocols are supported:

- HTTPS  
HTTP connections are protected by the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol. This protocol used to be known as Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).
- RFC  
RFC connections can be protected using Secure Network Communications (SNC). For detailed recommendations on securing RFC connections, see SAP Note [2008727](#) and the SAP Whitepaper *Securing Remote Function Calls* attached to it.
- SOAP  
SOAP connections are protected with Web services security.
- IDoc
- REST




### i Note

We strongly recommend using secure protocols (TLS, SNC) whenever possible.

For more information on securing the protocols above, see the respective chapters in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 6.2 Network Security

### Network

SAP S/4HANA is based on SAP NetWeaver technology. Therefore, for information about network security, see the respective sections in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide at <https://help.sap.com/nw75>  **Security Guide**  **English** . This includes information on using firewall systems for access control and using network segmentation.

If your system provides Internet services, you should ensure you protect your network infrastructure with a firewall at least. You can further increase the security of your system (or group of systems) by dividing the system into groups, placing the groups in different network segments, and then protecting each segment from unauthorized access by a firewall.

Bear in mind that unauthorized access is also possible internally if a malicious user has managed to gain control of one of your systems.

### Ports

SAP S/4HANA is executed in SAP NetWeaver and uses the ports of AS ABAP. For more information, see the corresponding security guides for SAP NetWeaver under the topics for AS ABAP Ports.

## 6.3 Communication Destinations

The use of communication destination is application-specific. Therefore please check the application-specific chapters for details.

In this context please note that users and authorizations should be used with specific care, as the use of users and authorizations in an irresponsible manner can pose security risks. You should therefore follow the security rules below when communicating between application systems.

### General Rules

- Employ the user types 'system' and 'communication'
- Grant a user only the minimum of authorizations
- Tell users to choose a secure password and to not divulge it to anyone else
- Only store user-specific logon data for users of type 'system' and 'communication'
- Wherever possible, use trusted system functions instead of user-specific logon data

# 7 ICF and Session Security

## Internet Communication Framework (ICF) Services

You should handle Internet Communication Framework (ICF) services in a restrictive manner in order to minimize the attack surface on the web.

### i Note

As a general rule you should only activate those ICF services that are needed for the applications running in your system.

For details on the required services, see the application-specific chapters of this guide. Use transaction `SICF` to activate or de-activate ICF services. For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver documentation.

Additional information on the required services can be found in the RFC/ICF Security Guide at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA* ► *Security Guide* ► *RFC/ICF Security Guides* ►.

### i Note

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, note the URLs used for the services, and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

## Session Security Protection

### Secure Session Management

To increase security and prevent access to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookie(s), we recommend activating secure session management. We also highly recommend using SSL to protect the network communications where these security-relevant cookies are transferred.

### Session Security Protection on the AS ABAP

For SAP NetWeaver version 7.0 and higher, it is recommended to activate HTTP security session management using transaction `SICF_SESSIONS`. In particular it is recommended to activate extra protection of security-related cookies.

The `HttpOnly` flag instructs the browser to deny access to the cookie through client side script. As a result, even if a cross-site scripting (XSS) flaw exists, and a user accidentally accesses a link that exploits this flaw, the browser will not reveal the cookie to a third party.

The `Secure` flag tells the browser to send the cookie only if the request is being sent over a secure channel such as HTTPS. This helps protect the cookie from being passed over unencrypted requests.

These additional flags are configured through the following profile parameters:

Profile Parameter	Recommended Value	Description	Comment
icf/ set_HTTPOnly_flag_on_cookies	0	Add HttpOnly flag	Client-dependent
login/ticket_only_by_https	1	Add Secure flag	Not client-dependent

For more information, a list of the relevant profile parameters, and detailed instructions, see *Activating HTTP Security Session Management on AS ABAP* in the AS ABAP security documentation.

# 8 File System Access Security

## More Information

For detailed information about data storage security, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## Using Logical Paths and File Names to Protect Access

Some applications in SAP S/4HANA save data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files - a security issue also known as directory traversal. This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime. If access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

In the application-specific part of this guide, there is a list of the logical file names and paths for each component. It also specifies for which programs these file names and paths apply.

## Activating the Validation of Logical Paths and File Names

You enter the logical paths and file names in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation on path level at runtime, enter the physical path using the transactions `SFILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-dependent). To determine which paths are used by your system, you can activate the appropriate settings in the Security Audit Log. The relevant SAL events are CUQ, CUR, CUS, CUT, and DU5.

For new installations it is recommended to enforce path validation as a default by setting `REJECT_EMPTY_PATH=ON` in table `FILECMCUST` (transaction `SM30`). For details see SAP Note [2251231](#) - *File validation enforcement switch for empty physical path*.

For more information, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002), enter one of the following titles into the search bar, press  and open the search result with the relevant title.

- *Logical File Names*
- *Protecting Access to the File System Using Logical Path and File Names*
- *Security Audit Log*

# 9 Virus Scanning

## Basic Concepts

You need to install and run a VSI 2.0-compliant virus scanner in your landscape. The SAP S/4HANA code calls this scanner using a dedicated interface during different stages of processing - during upload, download, and passage through the Gateway, and so on. You can customize the interface with the help of scan profiles.

For more information about virus scan profiles and customizing, see the SAP NetWeaver documentation at <https://help.sap.com/nw75> ► *Application Help* ► *Function-Oriented View* ► *Security* ► *System Security* ► *Virus Scan Interface* ►.

Additional information is available in SAP Notes [786179](#) and [1494278](#).

## 9.1 Virus Scanning in File Uploads

### Example

The system allows uploading of files. For example, users can add an attachment to business documents. Also, you can upload template files, such as e-mail HTML templates, which can be used to render data on a UI

Once uploaded into SAP S/4HANA, such documents may be displayed in SAP Fiori apps without further security-related checks. If a document contains malicious content, unintended actions could be triggered when the item is downloaded or displayed. This can lead to situations, such as cross-site scripting vulnerabilities. That is why proper virus scanning at upload time is an essential first line of defense against (stored) XSS attacks.

For a technical description of this problem see the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* at <https://help.sap.com/nw75> ► *Security Guide* ► *English* ►

It is clear that uploaded files need to be scanned for malware. Also, their type needs to be verified against a white list of MIME-types. You can meet both these requirements by installing and running a VSI 2.0-compliant virus scanner in your landscape.

SAP S/4HANA code calls the virus scanner (at upload time) through a dedicated interface, which you can customize. The pre-delivered scan profile, /SCMS/KPRO\_CREATE, needs to be adapted according to your needs. At runtime the virus scanner rejects all upload documents that are not compliant with the rules specified in the scan profile.

#### i Note

Changes to the scan profile have a global effect. This means, for example, that all uploads ending up in KPro face the same virus scan settings at runtime.

## 9.2 General Recommendations for Virus Scan Profiles

### Selecting Pre-Delivered Scan Profiles

As a first step, you should enable all the pre-delivered scan profiles. You should then consider performance issues when deciding which ones to disable.

Some scan profiles take effect at download time. One benefit of scanning at download time is that if a virus signature is updated since upload, it can be caught at download time. So if a compromised file is uploaded, it is discovered at download. However, download scanning can impact performance. That is because a file is uploaded only once, but it may be downloaded many times.

If you want to disable download time scanning, disable the following scan profiles:

- /SCET/GUI\_DOWNLOAD
- /SIHTTP/HTTP\_DOWNLOAD
- /SOAP\_CORE/WS\_SEND

### Customer Profiles

You should set up the following customer profiles:

Name	Description
ZBASIC	Basic virus scanning profile
ZEXTENDED	Same as above with additional check for active content, and MIME-type detection

All active profiles should refer to ZEXTENDED, except the following, which should refer to ZBASIC.

- /SAPC\_RUNTIME/APC\_WS\_MESSAGE\_GET
- /SAPC\_RUNTIME/APC\_WS\_MESSAGE\_SET
- /SCET/GUI\_UPLOAD
- /SIHTTP/HTTP\_UPLOAD
- /SMIM\_API/PUT
- /SOAP\_CORE/WS\_RECEIVE
- /UI5/UI5\_INFRA\_APP/REP\_DT\_PUT

For ZEXTENDED, the following settings are recommended:

- CUST\_ACTIVE\_CONTENT = 1
- CUST\_CHECK\_MIME\_TYPE = 1
- CUST\_MIME\_TYPES\_ARE\_BLACKLIST = 0  
This setting indicates 'whitelisting' - which indicates entities that are OK.

These settings tell the virus scanner to scan for active content and check MIME types according to the specified whitelist of file types.



## Whitelist

Use the 'whitelisting' file type wherever possible.

Consider the following: the whitelist scanner should be as restrictive as possible. As a compromise, the list should also contain the complete set of file types required in all active customer scenarios. If you need to extend the whitelist, you should ensure that the list only contains MIME types from the [IANA List](#) .

## Template List of File Types

### i Note

Your whitelist should be as restrictive as possible. For example, you should delete non-needed types from the template list. A final whitelist is always a compromise between security and functionality.

Use the template list of file types for consideration.

- application/arj
- application/msword
- application/pdf
- application/postscript
- application/vnd.ms-excel
- application/vnd.ms-powerpoint
- application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.spreadsheetml.sheet
- application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.presentationml.presentation
- application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.wordprocessingml.document
- application/x-compressed
- application/x-dvi
- application/x-gzip
- application/x-zip-compressed
- application/xml
- application/zip
- image/bmp
- image/jpeg
- image/png
- image/vnd.dwg
- image/x-dwg
- text/plain
- text/richtext
- text/xml

## 9.3 Further Protection Against Active Content

### Lines of Defense

There are at least two lines of defense against active content. The first is performing virus scanning in order to avoid uploading malicious content in the first place.

The second line of defense is SAP WebDispatcher. An alternative is the Internet Communication Manager (ICM). These protect against malicious active content being executed at the front end. This uses additional HTTP-response headers to instruct browsers to behave in a specific way. SAP WebDispatcher and ICM both offer the possibility to modify HTTP-response headers.

For more information, see [Deleting, Adding, and Enhancing HTTP Header Fields](#) in the SAP NetWeaver documentation at <https://help.sap.com/nw75> [Internet Communication Manager \(ICM\) - SAP NetWeaver Administration of the ICM - SAP NetWeaver](#) [Modification of HTTP Requests](#) [Deleting, Adding, and Enhancing HTTP Header Fields](#).

SAP recommends adding the following headers:

- SetResponseHeader X-Content-Type-Options "nosniff"  
This tells the browser not to try reading the attached file with the assumed MIME type.
- SetResponseHeader X-XSS-Protection "1; mode=block"  
This prevents cross-site scripting.

#### ❁ Example

##### Example

Consider the following example of script code. It shows how to improve the security level. You need to adapt it to your own use case.

```
If %{RESPONSE_HEADER:Content-Disposition} regimatch ^inline [AND]
If %{RESPONSE_HEADER:Content-Type} regimatch html|xml|xsl
Begin
SetResponseHeader Content-Security-Policy "script-src 'none'; sandbox"
SetResponseHeader X-Content-Security-Policy "script-src 'none'; sandbox"
End
```

If such a Content-Security-Policy header is added to HTTP responses containing previously uploaded files (when displayed inline and having content type containing html, xml or xsl), the execution of Javascript will be prevented at the frontend by all up-to-date browser versions.

# 10 Additional System Hardening Activities

## Click-Jacking Protection

Click-jacking is an attack type where an attacker tries to hijack the clicks of an authenticated user in order to trigger malicious actions. This attack is based on framing the attacked page into an attacker-controlled enclosing page.

SAP S/4HANA uses a SAP NetWeaver protection to prevent click-jacking attacks. This is a whitelist-based solution that controls which pages are allowed to render your application within a frame. To enable the protection, you need to access and edit the whitelist.

A typical setup will contain host/port of the system (as seen from a browser) and host/port of any trusted system that hosts applications which are going to frame applications from the current system.

For more information, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002), enter *Using a Whitelist for Clickjacking Framing Protection* into the search bar, press  and open the search result with that title.

SAP GUI for HTML transactions, Web Dynpro applications, and non-SAPUI5-based applications already use this flexible protection mechanism. SAP Fiori launchpad currently uses a slightly different, high security solution.

## Unified Connectivity

If your SAP S/4HANA system can be accessed remotely using Remote Function Calls (RFCs), you can significantly increase protection by using the Unified Connectivity (UCON) administration framework.

Generally, external access to the function modules using RFCs is controlled by special authorization checks and the corresponding roles with purpose-specific assignments to users. UCON also provides a simple but comprehensive way of controlling which Remote Function Modules (RFM) can be called by other systems: an RFM can only be called externally if it is assigned to a Communication Assembly (CA).

External access is blocked for all RFMs not assigned to a CA. In this way, it is possible to control and restrict external access to RFMs independently from the user context.

For details, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002), enter *Unified Connectivity* into the search bar, press  and open the search result with that title.

## Switchable Authorizations Check Framework (SACF)

The Switchable Authorizations Check Framework (SACF) provides additional authorization checks for specific scenarios. These checks do not change the behavior of the application until you activate the respective scenario. A scenario definition comprises certain authorization objects and rules telling the system how to check them. An active scenario is a development object, which can be transferred through your landscape.


By default, most additional scenario-based authorizations checks are initially set to inactive in SAP S/4HANA (for compatibility reasons).

For more information, see the chapter *Activating Switchable Authorization Checks* in the SAP Whitepaper *Securing Remote Function Calls* which is attached to SAP Note [2008727](#) .

### i Note

From a security perspective, SAP strongly recommends to activate all scenario-checks in SAP S/4HANA in order to maximize the resilience of systems.

Use the transaction `SACF` for the customizing and transaction `SACF_COMPARE` for comparison.

Please also read the important information contained in SAP Note [1922808](#) .

For more information, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002), enter *Customizing Scenario-Based Authorizations* into the search bar, press `Enter` and open the search result with that title.

## Securing CALL TRANSACTION Statements

When a user manually launches an SAP transaction, the ABAP Kernel automatically checks the user's corresponding authorization (Authorization Object `S_TCODE`).

The system behaves differently if an SAP transaction is called by a program (ABAP statement `CALL TRANSACTION`). In this case, the authorization check (`S_TCODE-`) depends on the system configuration. This can be controlled using transaction `SE97` and profile parameter `auth/check/calltransaction`.

Two cases exist:

- **New installations**

We recommend setting the profile parameter `auth/check/calltransaction=3`. This switches on the authorization check for `CALL TRANSACTION` statements – as long as you have not explicitly switched it off using transaction `SE97`. This improves the security level because all roles need to contain appropriate authorizations.

- **Installations migrated from an SAP ERP enhancement package to SAP S/4HANA**

Roles formerly used in SAP ERP must be examined thoroughly and adopted with care into the new SAP S/4HANA environment. Only for the sake of a smooth transition you can avoid this temporarily by setting `auth/check/calltransaction=2`. This keeps the check behavior as it was before. However, as a permanent setting this is **not** recommended, as in the end you should adopt your roles to the new environment actively and with care.

For details, see the system documentation of transaction `SE97`.

# 11 Data Protection and Privacy

## Use

Data protection is associated with numerous legal requirements and privacy concerns. In addition to compliance with general data protection acts, it is necessary to consider compliance with industry-specific legislation in different countries. This section describes the specific features and functions that SAP provides to support compliance with the relevant legal requirements and data protection.

This section and any other sections in this Security Guide do not give any advice on whether these features and functions are the best method to support company, industry, regional or country-specific requirements. Furthermore, this guide does not give any advice or recommendations with regard to additional features that would be required in a particular environment; decisions related to data protection must be made on a case-by-case basis and under consideration of the given system landscape and the applicable legal requirements.

### i Note

In the majority of cases, compliance with data privacy laws is not a product feature.

SAP software supports data protection by providing security features and specific data-protection-relevant functions such as functions for the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data.

SAP does not provide legal advice in any form. The definitions and other terms used in this guide are not taken from any given legal source.

## Glossary

Term	Definition
<b>Personal data</b>	Any information relating to an identified or identifiable natural person ("data subject"). An identifiable natural person is one who can be identified, directly or indirectly, in particular by reference to an identifier such as a name, an identification number, location data, an online identifier or to one or more factors specific to the physical, physiological, genetic, mental, economic, cultural, or social identity of that natural person
<b>Purpose</b>	The information that specifies the reason and the goal for the processing of a specific set of <b>personal data</b> . As a rule, the purpose references the relevant legal basis for the processing of personal data.

Term	Definition
<b>Blocking</b>	A method of restricting access to data for which the primary <b>purpose</b> has ended.
<b>Deletion</b>	Deletion of <b>personal data</b> so that the data is no longer usable.
<b>Retention period</b>	The period of time between the end of the last business activity involving a specific object (for example, a business partner) and the deletion of the corresponding data, subject to applicable laws. The retention period is a combination of the residence period and the blocking period.
<b>End of purpose (EoP)</b>	The point in time when the processing of a set of personal data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, for example, when a contract is fulfilled. After the EoP has been reached, the data is blocked and can only be accessed by users with special authorizations (for example, tax auditors).

Some basic requirements that support data protection are often referred to as technical and organizational measures (TOM). The following topics are related to data protection and require appropriate TOMs:

**Access control:** Authentication features as described in section [User Administration and Authentication \[page 9\]](#).

**Authorizations:** Authorization concept as described in section [User Management \[page 9\]](#).

**Read access logging:** as described in section [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#).

**Transmission control / Communication security:** as described in section [Network and Communication Security \[page 18\]](#).

#### Input control / Change logging

**Availability control** as described in:

- Section [Data Storage Security \[page 22\]](#)
- SAP Business Continuity documentation in the SAP NetWeaver Application Help under [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► [SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA](#) ► [Function-Oriented View](#) ► [Solution Life Cycle Management](#) ► [SAP Business Continuity](#) ►

**Separation by purpose:** Is subject to the organizational model implemented and must be applied as part of the authorization concept.

#### ⚠ Caution

The extent to which data protection is ensured depends on secure system operation. Network security, security note implementation, adequate logging of system changes, and appropriate usage of the system are the basic technical requirements for compliance with data privacy legislation and other legislation.

You also need to make sure that no personal data enters the system in an uncontrolled or non-purpose related way, for example, in free-text fields, through APIs, or customer extensions. Note that these are also not subject to the RAL example configuration.

### Configuration of Data Protection Functions

Certain central functions that support data protection compliance are grouped in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

Additional industry-specific, scenario-specific or application-specific configuration might be required.

For information about the application-specific configuration, see the application-specific Customizing.

## More Information

You can find detailed information on data protection in the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Additional Information* ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►

## 11.1 Read Access Logging

### Use

Read access to personal data is partially based on legislation, and it is subject to logging functionality. The Read Access Logging (RAL) component can be used to monitor and log read access to data and provide information such as which business users accessed personal data (for example, fields related to bank account data), and when they did so.

In RAL, you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

You can display the configurations in the system by performing the following steps:

1. In transaction SRALMANAGER, on the *Administration* tab page, choose *Configuration*.
2. Choose the desired channel, for example, WebDynpro.
3. Choose *Search*. The system displays the available configurations for the selected channel.
4. Choose Display Configuration for detailed information on the configuration. For specific channels, related recordings are also be displayed.

### i Note

For a list of the delivered log domains, see the product assistance at SAP Help Portal under [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Prerequisites

Before you can use the delivered RAL configurations, the following prerequisites are met:

- You are using:
  - SAP NetWeaver 7.1:SP0
  - AS ABAP 7.51
  - Kernel 7.49
  - SAP\_UI 7.51 (UI5 1.40)
- The RAL configurations have been activated.
- You have enabled RAL in each system client.

## More information

For more information, see the following sections on [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002):

- Enter *System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP Only* into the search bar, press  and open the search result with that title. Navigate to the section *Read Access Logging*.
- Enter *Services for Application Developers* into the search bar, press  and open the search result with that title. Navigate to the section *Change Documents*.
- Enter *Read Access Logging (RAL) and OData* into the search bar, press  and open the search result with that title.

For up-to-date information on the delivered RAL configurations, see SAPNote [2347271](#) .

## 11.2 Deletion of Personal Data

Personal data in a system can be blocked as soon as the business activities for which this data is needed are completed and the residence time for the data has elapsed. After this time, only users who are assigned additional authorizations can access the data.

When the retention period has expired, personal data can be destroyed completely so that it can no longer be retrieved. Residence and retention periods are defined in the customer system.

For this purpose, SAP uses SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to help you set up a compliant information lifecycle management process in an efficient and flexible manner.

## More Information

For more information, see the application-specific sections in this security guide as well as at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [▶ Product Assistance](#) [▶ Cross Components](#) [▶ Data Protection](#) [▶](#).



## 11.3 Information Retrieval

Data subjects have the right to get information regarding their personal data undergoing processing, including the reason (purpose) for processing.

The SAP NetWeaver component *Information Retrieval Framework* can be used to carry out a cross-application search for personal data of a specified data subject. The data is retrieved from the system and displayed in a structured, easy-to-read list, subdivided according to the purposes for which the data was initially collected and processed.

### i Note

To be able to use the IRF, you must set up your own data model which is the basis for the retrieval process. The data model contains all relevant database tables that are searched for personal data. It describes links between tables, defines table clusters and how these clusters are linked to one another. The IRF assists you in automatically generating an initial data model which you must then verify/ enhance with the help of the IRF modeling tool.

Apart from setting up a data model, you must also maintain the purposes relevant to your organization.

Once you have set up a data model, you can use the following reports to retrieve personal data from the system:

- *Start Data Collection* report (transaction DTINF\_START\_COLL) to trigger the retrieval process.
- *Process Data Collection Results* report (transaction DTINF\_PROC\_COLL) to get an overview of all data collection requests as well as to display and download the search results.

## Prerequisites

You are using SAP Netweaver 7.52 SPO0 or higher.

## More Information

For more information about setting up the data model used by the IRF, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA* ► *Function-Oriented View* ► *Solution Lifecycle Management* ► *Information Retrieval Framework* ►.

For more information about data protection, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## 11.4 Consent Management

### Use

Any personal data collected or processed must be linked to a specific, pre-defined purpose, such as the fulfilment of a contract or legal obligation.

If there is no other legal basis for the lawful processing of personal data or if the data is to be sent to a third party, you must obtain consent from the data subject to use their personal data. This consent data can be stored in the SAP system as consent records.

Consent Management enables you to search for and display stored consent records as well as to import consent records as copies from either a file on your device or via the Consent Repository service available on the SAP Cloud Platform. In addition, the feature helps you to manage the retention of consent data, to control access to consent data as well as to support the process of blocking and deletion of business partner master data.

### Prerequisites

Before you can use Consent Management, the following prerequisites must be met:

#### Standard Authorization Objects

To use Consent Management features, your user must have a role with the `CM_CON` authorization object assigned. To further specify the tasks a user is allowed to carry out in the system you can make use of the activities `Display` and `Import`.

If you want to restrict the access to certain consent records, you can make use of the following authorization fields:

- Data Controller
- Data Subject ID Type
- Purpose Name
- Third Party Name
- Application Name

For example, you can determine that a user can only display consent records for a certain data controller or purpose. For more information about authorization object `CM_CON`, see transaction `SU21`.

#### Import Activities

- To import consent data that is stored on your device, the data must be available in JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) format. For more information about the JSON file structure required for Consent Management, see [2607792](#).

- To import consent records via the Consent Repository service, you first need to configure the sources from which you want to import consent data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [Data Protection](#) > [Consent Management](#) > [Configure Source Information](#).

## Process Flow

Consent Management allows for the following features:

- **Search for and Display Consent Records:** Use transaction `CM_DISPLAY_CONSENT` to search for and display already imported consent records. The system provides a detailed list containing consent information, for example information regarding the purpose for processing personal data, the data controller or third parties who are possibly involved.
- **Import Consent Records via Service:** Use transaction `CM_IMPORT_CONSENT_VS` to import consent records as copies via the Consent Repository service available on the SAP Cloud Platform. You can use the service to create and manage consent records, forms and purposes.
- **Import Consent Records from File:** Use transaction `CM_IMPORT_CONSENT_FF` to import consent data from a file that is stored on your device.

## Data Protection and Privacy

The following data protection and privacy features are available for Consent Management:

### Deletion of Personal Data

Consent Management processes personal data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note [1825544](#).

The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. Consent Management uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

SAP delivers an end of purpose (EoP) check for Consent Management. For more information about Consent Management, see the Product Assistance for [SAP S/4HANA](#) under [Cross Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) > [Consent Management](#) > [Data Protection in Consent Management](#) > [Business Partner End of Purpose \(EoP\) Check in Consent Management](#).

### Relevant Objects in Consent Management and Available Deletion Functionality

Object	Deletion Functionality: ILM Object
Consent record	CON_CNSNT

## Process Flow

1. Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
3. You do the following
  - Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: `CA_BUPA`).
  - Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.
4. Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.
5. If you have the needed authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP`.
6. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of Consent Management.

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management under **► Data Protection ► Authorization Management ►**. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under **► Data Protection ► Blocking und Unblocking ► Business Partner ►**.

## Change Log

Personal data is subject to frequent changes. Therefore, for review purposes or as a result of legal regulations, it may be necessary to track the changes made to this data. When these changes are logged, you should be able to check which employee made which change, the date and time, the previous value, and the current value, depending on the configuration. It is also possible to analyze errors in this way.

In Consent Management, changes are logged when importing consent records from file or via service. To display the relevant change documents, call up transaction `RSSTD100` and search for object class `CON_CONSENT`.

## Information Retrieval

Data subjects have the right to get information regarding their personal data undergoing processing, including the reason (purpose) for processing.

In Consent Management, you can retrieve a list of consent records associated with a data subject using the SAP NetWeaver component Information Retrieval Framework. For this, you must set up a data model including the database tables `CMD_CNSNT` and `CMD_CNSNT_TXT`.

For more information on how to set up a data model for the Information Retrieval Framework, see the Product Assistance for [SAP S/4HANA](#) under

## More Information

- For more information about Consent Management, go to [SAP NetWeaver](#), choose your release and then [▶ SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View ▶ Solution Lifecycle Management ▶ Information Retrieval Framework ▶](#).
- For more information about the Consent Repository service, see [https://help.sap.com/CONSENT\\_REPOSITORY](https://help.sap.com/CONSENT_REPOSITORY).
- For more information about the JSON file structure necessary for the import of consent records, see SAP Note [2607792](#).

# 12 SAP S/4HANA Cross Application Infrastructure

## 12.1 Data Security in SAP ILM

*SAP ILM* offers options for protecting data security from the archiving of data up to its storage and destruction. All system connections and ILM functions have authorization protection.

More information:

[Data Security in SAP NetWeaver ILM System Connections \[page 38\]](#)

[Users and Authorizations in SAP NetWeaver ILM \[page 39\]](#)

[Security of Stored Data in SAP NetWeaver ILM \[page 40\]](#)

[Logs in SAP NetWeaver ILM \[page 41\]](#)

### 12.1.1 Data Security in SAP ILM System Connections

#### System Landscape Components

The *SAP ILM* system landscape includes the following main components:

- Application system (AS ABAP)
  - WebDAV server on which ILM stores are set up
  - System on which the service for the control of ILM stores runs
- Since two different services are available for controlling ILM stores, two system landscape variants are possible.
- The *Storage and Retention Service (SRS)* runs either in the application system (AS ABAP) or on a separate AS ABAP.  
For more information, see [Configuring Storage and Retention Service for ILM Stores under SAP Information Lifecycle Management](#).
  - *XML Data Archiving Service (XML DAS)* runs on an AS ABAP.  
For more information, see [Configuring XML Data Archiving Service for ILM Stores under SAP Information Lifecycle Management](#).

#### Data Security for System Connections

Communication between systems takes places with HTTP connections.

##### HTTP Connection between Application System and ILM Store Service

If the service (*SRS* or *XML DAS*) runs on a separate system, you need an HTTP connection from the application system to that system. You use an HTTP or HTTPS protocol. The configuration of the HTTP connection is described in the documentation for the relevant service.

If you use the local *SRS* service of the application system to control ILM stores, you do not need a connection.

#### **HTTP Connection between ILM Store and ILM Store Service**

The ILM Stores that are set up on a WebDAV server need to be connected to a service with an HTTP connection. A WebDAV protocol, which is an enhancement of the HTTP protocol, is used. The configuration of the HTTP connection is explained in the documentation for the relevant service.

#### **User Authentication for System Connections**

The application system can access the service with an HTTP connection only if the connection is made by a user who has the corresponding authorizations. This user must be created in the system on which the service run and entered in the data for the HTTP connection.

In the case of a connection from the service to the WebDAV server, user authentication is performed according to the options offered by the WebDAV server. SAP supports basic authentication with a user of the WebDAV server (with password) as well as with SSL.

## **12.1.2 Users and Authorizations in SAP ILM**

### **User**

To make *SAP ILM* available, you need users for the communication between the participating systems (using HTTP connections).

For more information, see Data Security in SAP ILM System Connections under SAP Information Lifecycle Management.

### **Authorizations**

SAP delivers roles with the relevant authorizations for access to the functions of *SAP ILM*.

For more information, see the following topics under SAP Information Lifecycle Management:

Assigning Authorizations for Retention Management Cockpit

Assigning Authorizations for Retention Warehouse Cockpit

Transactions and Authorizations in SAP NetWeaver ILM

## 12.1.3 Security of Stored Data in SAP ILM

### Security of Archived Data in the File System

When storing archived data in the file system, you have read and write access to the file system with the technical system user of the SAP system. The system temporarily moves the archive files to the file system and then deletes them after forwarding them to the ILM store. The archive files in the file system and the ILM store are stored not in plain text but in binary text in an SAP-specific, compressed format.

A logical path defines the storage location of the archived data in the file system. You need to specify this path in Customizing for the archiving object.

For more information, see:

[Data Archiving](#) in the SAP NetWeaver Library

[Security Guide for ADK-Based Data Archiving](#) in the Security Guide of the SAP NetWeaver Library

### Security of Data in the ILM Store

To guarantee the non-changeability of data and the protection from early deletion, the resources (archive files) and their higher level collections (hierarchy nodes of the store) are stored on an ILM-certified WebDAV server.

### Metadata Security in the Store Hierarchy

To manage the store hierarchies, the service that you use to manage ILM stores saves the metadata to the system database. Depending on which service you use, the storage location of the metadata is:

ILM Store Service	Metadata Storage Location
Storage and Retention Service (SRS)	Database of the AS ABAP on which the SRS runs
XML Data Archiving Service (XML DAS)	Database of the AS ABAP on which <i>XML DAS</i> runs <i>XML DAS</i> uses the database pool alias <code>SAP/BC_XMLA</code> .

You can guarantee the security of the metadata with the standard functions of the database you are using.

For more information, see: [Database Access Protection, Security Aspects for Database Connections](#) in the SAP NetWeaver Library.



## Backup of Complete Data in the Retention Warehouse System

To ensure that the dataset you are managing in Retention Warehouse is still complete after the transfer from the legacy system, use the checksums function before and after the transfer and the ILM-compliant conversion of the data (archive files).

### 12.1.4 Logs in SAP ILM

In *SAP ILM*, logging depends on the service you use to control the stores.

Service Used	Type of Log File	Server	Description
<i>Storage and Retention Service (SRS)</i>	Log File for SRS	AS ABAP on which SRS runs (application system or separate system)	Can be called in application log Log object: ILM Subobject: ILM_SRS
<i>XML Data Archiving Service (XML DAS)</i>	Log File for XML DAS	AS Java on which XML DAS runs	Can be called in <i>LogViewer</i> File: applications.log Category: /Applications/Common/Archiving/XML_DAS
	Trace File for XML DAS	AS Java on which XML DAS runs	Can be called in <i>LogViewer</i> File: defaultTrace.trc Location: com.sap.archtech.daservice
<i>Service-Independent</i>	Log File of Connector	Application system (AS ABAP)	Can be called in the job log for AS ABAP
	System Log (syslog)	Application system (AS ABAP)	Entry in the system log (operation trace) with message ID DA1 and problem class S for each deletion of a resource or collection in the ILM store

Service Used	Type of Log File	Server	Description
	Log Files for ILM Functions	Application system (AS ABAP)	<p>Can be called in application log</p> <p>Log object: ILM</p> <p>Subobjects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ILM_ALINK_REFERENCES (ArchiveLink references)</li> <li>• ILM_CHANGE_RETENTION (Change of retention period)</li> <li>• ILM_CHECKSUM (Checksum generation)</li> <li>• ILM_DESTRUCTION (Data destruction)</li> <li>• ILM_LEGAL_CASE (Set legal holds)</li> <li>• ILM_LH_PROPAGATION (Using holds on data)</li> <li>• ILM_SWISS_KNIFE (Enhancing CDE contents in RW)</li> <li>• ILM_TRANS_ADMIN (Transfer of archive administration data from the legacy system to RW)</li> <li>• ILM_UOM (Comparing units of measure in RW)</li> <li>• IRM_RT (Rule determination)</li> <li>• GENERATE (Generating BW objects)</li> <li>• TRANSFER (Transferring table structures from RW to BW)</li> <li>• TRANSFER_VIEW (Transferring data views from RW to BW)</li> <li>• DELETE (Deleting BW objects and data)</li> <li>• WP_CREATE (Creating audit packages in RW)</li> </ul>

## 12.2 Payment Card Security

### 12.2.1 Before You Start

Since the measures described in this guideline for security in the use and administration of payment cards apply in various applications, see the security guides for those particular applications.

The most important SAP Notes that apply to secure handling of payment card data are shown in the table below.

SAP Note	Title	Comment
<a href="#">1032588</a>	Secure handling of credit card data in S/4HANA	
<a href="#">1151936</a>	Key replacement for encryption of payment card data	
<a href="#">662340</a>	SSF Encryption using SAPCryptolib	
<a href="#">1394093</a>	Security collective note	Summarizes information about various security-relevant problems

## 12.2.2 Authorizations

The functions for secure handling of payment cards use the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP security guide also apply to the secure handling of payment cards.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For the role maintenance for ABAP technology, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG).

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used as part of secure handling of payment cards.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
B_CCSEC	ACTVT	03	Display of unmasked payment card numbers
B_CCSEC	ACTVT	06	Deletion of data records no longer needed and log entries for displaying payment card data
B_CCSEC	ACTVT	71	Display of log entries for displaying payment card data
SSFVADM	ACTVT	01	Generating a key version
	SSFVAPPLIC	PAYCRV	

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
	ACTVT	06	Deleting a key version
	SSFVAPPLIC	PAYCRV	
	ACTVT	42	Execution of migration programs for SSF application
	SSFVAPPLIC	PAYCRV	PAYCRV

## 12.2.3 Data Storage Security

### Use

Since payment card data is needed by many different applications for operational processes, the data is stored on the database. If you choose the security level *Masked Display, and Encrypted When Saved*, the system stores payment card numbers in encrypted form on the database in the following database tables:

Database Table	Use	Comment
PCA_SECURITY_RAW	Payment Cards and SAP Business Partner	In S/4HANA systems, you must execute a migration program.
CCARDEC	Payment Cards in FI, SD and Customer Master	
CCSEC_ENC	Other payment card processes	The table is used if the indicator for periodic key replacement is <b>not</b> set in Customizing.
CCSEC_ENCV	Other payment card processes	The table is used if the indicator for periodic key replacement is set in Customizing.

The application database tables refer to these encrypted storage tables.

You can archive and delete the data using the following archiving objects or deletion programs:

Database Table	Deletion/Archiving	Comment
PCA_SECURITY_RAW	Archiving using archiving object CA_PCA_SEC	
CCARDEC	Deletion using program CCARDEC_DELETE	If the data is used in an unarchived FI document, customer master record, or order, the data is not deleted.

Database Table	Deletion/Archiving	Comment
CCSEC_ENC	Archiving using archiving object CA_PCA_SEC	
CCSEC_ENCV	Deletion using program RCCSECV_ DATA_DEL	The data cannot be deleted unless the last use was more than 500 days in the past.

## 12.2.4 Setting Up Encryption Software

To be able to encrypt payment card data in the system, you must install the function package SAPCRYPTOLIB. The function package SAPCRYPTOLIB contains the functions necessary for encryption. To execute the encryption software, you have to make general settings in Customizing for SAP NetWeaver. Choose [▶ Application Server ▶ System Administration ▶ Maintain the Public Key Information for the System ▶](#).

For more information, see SAP Note 662340.

## 12.2.5 Making Settings for Payment Card Security

You make settings for payment card security in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under [▶ Payment Cards ▶ Basic Settings ▶ Make Security Settings for Payment Cards ▶](#).

The following explanations refer to the settings there.

### Security Level

You can select from the following options:

- No Additional Security Measures
- Masked Display, Not Encrypted When Saved
- Masked Display and Encrypted When Saved

Masked display means that when you display or change objects that contain a payment card number, the system hides part of the number.

#### ❁ Example

For payment card number 1111222233334444, the system displays a value of 1111\*\*\*\*\*4444.

You can specify the number of visible characters at the beginning and end of the payment card number. The security standards of the payment card industry demand that a maximum of six characters are visible at the beginning, and four at the end.

This masked display is applied for all types of payment cards. If you also select encrypted saving, then the system applies this only to those payment card types that you specified explicitly in Customizing (see the section "Relevant Payment Card Types").

We recommend that you use the security level *Masked Display, and Encrypted When Saved*. You should specify the smallest number of visible characters possible that allows the payment cards to be identified (for example, using the last four characters).

## Unmasked Display

If card numbers are displayed in masked format, it is still sometimes necessary to display the number unmasked. In various transactions, we therefore provide a function for unmasked display of payment card numbers. You can make two specifications for this function in Customizing:

- Access log
- Additional authorization check

You can have the system record each display of an unmasked payment card in an access log. This enables you to monitor which users have displayed which payment card numbers and when.

You can use an additional authorization check for authorization object B\_CCSEC to restrict the use of the display of unmasked card numbers.

We recommend that you activate this additional authorization check and assign the appropriate authorization only to those user groups that need to access unmasked card numbers as part of their daily work. You should also activate the access log.

## Analyzing Access Logs

You can run reports on accessing of payment card data. For more information, see [Security-Relevant Logs and Tracing \[page 50\]](#).

## Key Replacement

By setting the *Key Replacement Active* indicator, you specify that the system supports periodic replacement of the keys (PSEs) used for encryption.

### Caution

This indicator is visible only if you installed S/4HANA 6.0 with Enhancement Package 4 and activated the business function *Periodic Key Replacement for Payment Card Encryption* (PCA\_XKEYV).

We recommend that you set this indicator.

## Relevant Payment Card Types

You can choose the card types (such as, AMEX, Mastercard, VISA) for which you want to activate encryption. The column for this is not visible in the settings for the payment card unless you have already made settings for payment card encryption in the business partner. This means that you have to have already executed the migration program or to have set up encrypted saving of further data records. You can make these settings in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under [▶ Payment Cards ▶ Basic Settings ▶ Maintain Payment Card Type ▶](#).

## 12.2.6 Relevant SSF Applications

For encryption and decryption using the SSF Framework, the applications communicate using an SSF application. The keys (PSEs) used for encryption and decryption are generated for each SSF application.

If you have not activated key replacement, then, for technical reasons, various SSF applications exist for the various storage files of encrypted payment card data. If you set the [Key Replacement Active](#) indicator, then only the SSF application PAYCRV is used after that point.

Application	SSF Application, If Key Replacement Inactive	SSF Application, If Key Replacement Active
Payment Cards and SAP Business Partner	PAYCRD (in S/4HANA systems)	PAYCRV
Payment Cards in FI, SD and Customer Master	CCARD	PAYCRV
Other payment card processes	PAYCRD	PAYCRV

The SSF application PAYCRV supports management of multiple key versions. This is not the case with the SSF applications PAYCRD and CCARD. Therefore, using the SSF application PAYCRV is mandatory for the process of periodic key replacement.

## 12.2.7 Generating Keys

The generation of the keys (PSEs) used for encryption and decryption differs depending on the SSF application:

- **SSF Application \*PAYCRV**

To generate a key version, on the SAP Easy Access screen, choose [▶ Cross-Application Components ▶ Security of Payment Card Data ▶ Encryption of Payment Cards ▶ Administration of Key Versions for PAYCRV ▶](#). The system automatically generates the PSEs and distributes them to the application servers. You can display them in the transaction STRUST (Trust Manager).

The transaction for administration of key versions, in addition to the overview of already generated key versions, also provides information on how many data records are encrypted and stored on the database for a version. There you can create new key versions and delete key versions that are no longer used.

- **SSF Applications CCARDEC and PAYCRD**

In transaction SSFA, create a new entry for an SSF application. Create the PSE in transaction STRUST, and make sure that you use the algorithm RSA.

## 12.2.8 Migration of Payment Card Data Stored in Unencrypted Form

You can use several migration programs to migrate payment card data stored in unencrypted form to encrypted payment card data. These programs comply with the naming convention RCCSEC\_MIGRATION\_\*. For information on which program you can use for your system, see the documentation of the individual programs.

You execute the program to store all payment card data in your system in encrypted form. For operative processes, you do not have to execute the migration programs. In addition, you can perform the conversion in several individual steps, whereby you convert only part of the data in each step.

Note that there are special issues related to the SAP Business Partner. For more information, see this [section \[page 48\]](#).

## 12.2.9 Migration of Payment Card Data on SAP Business Partner

The following section is relevant for you only if you use the SAP business partner.

For the SAP business partner in S/4HANA systems to support encrypted storage of payment card data, a one-time data migration is required.

Before this migration, the system manages the payment card data in the database tables listed below (among others). In both tables, the payment card number is in plain text.

Database Table	Use
CCARD	Data of payment card
BUTOCC	Relationship between SAP business partner and payment card using CCINS and CCNUM

You migrate the data of database table CCARD completely to the database tables PCA\_SECURITY\_\*. On the SAP Easy Access screen, choose [Cross-Application Components](#) > [Security of Payment Card Data](#) > [Encryption of Payment Cards](#) > [Migration of Credit Cards](#). The encrypted value of the credit card number is stored during this process in the table PCA\_SECURITY\_RAW. The relationship to the credit card is reflected in table CCARD by the field CARD\_GUID, and the fields CCNUM and CCINS are initialized. The system considers only those entries in table CCARD that are still used in table BUTOCC.



## Database Tables

Database Table	Use
PCA_SECURITY_*	Data of payment card
BUTOCC	Relationship between SAP business partner and payment cards using CARD_GUID

When migrating using the above program, you cannot spread the conversion over time. That means you have to completely convert the data in one run. The actual encryption can either take place directly during the migration, or you can encrypt the data later using program PCA\_MASS\_CRYPTING.

You are required to run the migration program even if you have not yet stored any payment card data in the business partner data (for instance, at the time of installation), but you want to store encrypted data in the future.

You cannot work with the system during the migration or after a partially successful migration, since it is not possible to predict how the executing programs will react. However, severe inconsistencies are to be expected.

To execute the migration program, you need an access code that SAP provides upon request. To request this code, enter a customer message under component AD-MD-BP. Refer to this security guide or to SAP Note 1032588.

For security reasons, the system stores a backup copy of the table entries in table CCARD\_COPY. After you have ensured that the system works correctly after the migration, you can delete the backup copy using program RCC\_MIGRATION\_DEL\_COPY.

If you are using Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA), and are using the business partner shadow table there to improve the performance of mass runs, also see the explanations in the Security Guide for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable in the section [Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard \[page 68\]](#).

## 12.2.10 Migration to SSF Application PAYCRV

If you already encrypted credit card data in the system (using the SSF applications PAYCRD or CCARD), you can migrate this data to the SSF application PAYCRV. As a result, the system then also replaces the keys for this data on a periodic basis.

Start the migration on the SAP Easy Access screen under [Cross-Application Components](#) [Security of Payment Card Data](#) [Encryption of Payment Cards](#) [Migration to SSF Application PAYCRV](#). You can migrate each of the affected database tables individually and you can enter a maximum runtime. This means that in this case you can spread the conversion out over time.

## 12.2.11 Migration to Current Key Version

Once you have generated a new key version, you can migrate the data, which was encrypted and stored under an older key version, to the current key version. During this process, the system decrypts the data record with

the older key version, encrypts the data with the current key version, and updates the database tables. After the migration is complete, the system does not contain any more data records that still use the older key version. At that point in time, you can specify that the older key version is deletable.

To run the migration, on the SAP Easy Access screen, choose ► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Security of Payment Card Data](#) ► [Encryption of Payment Cards](#) ► [Execute Conversion](#) . You can define parallel processing for the migration using the subarea. The entire dataset is divided into subareas represented by the numbers 000 to 999. The subareas contain a roughly equal number of encrypted records. You can start the migration program with intervals determined by the subarea, so that up to 1000 parallel jobs are possible. In addition, you can enter a maximum runtime. This means that you can make the conversion in stages.

## 12.2.12 Deleting a Key Version

Once the data of an old key version has been migrated completely to the current key version, the old key version receives the status *deletable*. To ensure the utmost security, the earliest the key version can actually be deleted is after an additional waiting period of 90 days after the successful migration.

## 12.2.13 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

### Use

You can have the system log users' access to unmasked payment card data. In Customizing, choose the setting [Access Log: Logs for Unmasked Display](#) (see [Making Settings for Payment Card Security \[page 45\]](#)).

The system updates the log on database table CCSEC\_LOG. You can carry out an analysis via the SAP Easy Access screen, under ► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Security of Payment Card Data](#) ► [Encryption of Payment Cards](#) ► [Evaluate Payment Card Log](#) . To analyze the access log, you need authorization for activity 71 of authorization object B\_CCSEC.

You can delete log records if they are at least one year old. To delete the records, on the SAP Easy Access screen choose ► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Security of Payment Card Data](#) ► [Encryption of Payment Cards](#) ► [Delete Payment Card Log](#) . To be able to run the deletion report, you need authorization for object B\_CCSEC with activity 06.

## 12.2.14 Recommended Implementation Steps

The following recommended implementation steps differ according to which of the following situations apply to you:

- You did not yet set a security level.
- You are already using the security level for saving payment card numbers in encrypted form, and you now want to implement the process for periodic key replacement.

## Variant 1: Security Level Not Yet Set

If you have not yet set a security level in Customizing, follow these steps to implement the process for encrypted storage and periodic key replacement for payment card numbers.

1. Create a key version. To do so, on the SAP Easy Access screen, choose ► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Security of Payment Card Data](#) ► [Encryption of Payment Cards](#) ► [Administration of Key Versions for PAYCRV](#) ►. (See [Generating Keys \[page 47\]](#))
2. Make settings for payment card security (see [Making Settings for Payment Card Security \[page 45\]](#)).
  1. Set the security level *Masked Display, and Encrypted When Saved*.
  2. Activate the access log.
  3. Activate the additional authorization checks for unmasked display and set up the user authorizations accordingly.
  4. Set the number of visible characters at the beginning and end of the payment card number.
  5. Activate the key replacement.
3. Specify the payment card types that you want to save in encrypted form. (See [Making Settings for Payment Card Security \[page 45\]](#))
4. Migrate the payment card data that was stored in unencrypted form. (See [Migration of Payment Card Data Stored in Unencrypted Form](#))
5. If you use SAP Business Partner, migrate your payment card data on SAP Business Partner. (See [Migration of Payment Card Data on SAP Business Partner \[page 48\]](#))

## Variant 2: Security Level "Masked Display, and Encrypted When Saved" Already Used

If you already set the security level *Masked Display, and Encrypted When Saved* in Customizing, and you already migrated the legacy data when implementing the security level, then perform the following steps to implement the process of periodic key replacement.

1. Create a key version. To do so, on the SAP Easy Access screen, choose ► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Security of Payment Card Data](#) ► [Encryption of Payment Cards](#) ► [Administration of Key Versions for PAYCRV](#) ►.
2. Activate the key replacement. (See [Making Settings for Payment Card Security \[page 45\]](#))
3. Migrate the stored encrypted data to the SSF application PAYCRV (see [Migration to SSF Application PAYCRV \[page 49\]](#)).

# 13 SAP S/4HANA Business Applications

## 13.1 Asset Management

### 13.1.1 Maintenance Operations

#### 13.1.1.1 Authorizations in Plant Maintenance

##### Standard Roles

SAP delivers business role templates which follow the naming convention SAP\_BR\_\*. The delivered business role templates are designed to cover typical activities of business users with a certain job profile.

##### Example

The delivered business role template SAP\_BR\_MAINTENANCE\_TECHNICIAN is designed for maintenance technicians. The role contains business catalogs which cover all the functions that a maintenance technician requires to carry out their work effectively and safely.

Another example business role template SAP\_BR\_MAINTENANCE\_PLANNER is designed for maintenance planners. The role contains business catalogs which cover a broad range of functions necessary for planning and executing maintenance activities.

Each business catalog contains one or more applications and is designed to support segregation of duty.

##### Note

For more information about how to create roles, see [Role Administration \[page 12\]](#).

### 13.1.2 Environment, Health and Safety

## 13.1.2.1 User Administration and Authentication

*Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

For more generic information see [User Administration and Authentication \[page 9\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

### 13.1.2.1.1 User Management

The table below shows the standard users that are necessary for operating *Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS). For more generic information see [User Management \[page 9\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

User ID	Type	Password	Description
Business processing user	Dialog user	To be entered	Business user of <i>EHS</i>
E-mail inbound processing user	Communication user	Not needed	User to process the incoming e-mails of <i>EHS</i>
Workflow engine batch user	Background user	Not needed	User for the background processing of workflows in <i>EHS</i>

You need to create the users after the installation. Users are not automatically created during installation. In consequence there is no requirement to change their user IDs and passwords after the installation.

#### i Note

Several business processes within EHS use SAP Business Workflow and e-mail inbound and outbound processing. It is not recommended that you grant the corresponding system users (such as WF\_BATCH for Workflow System or SAPCONNECT for e-mail inbound processing) all authorizations of the system (SAP\_ALL).

### 13.1.2.1.2 Communication Destinations

The table below shows an overview of the communication destinations used by *Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS). For more generic information, see the corresponding chapter in the *Introduction* section.

Destination	Delivered	Type	Description
<MOC system>	No	RFC (3, H)	Connection to the <i>SAP Management of Change</i> system (ABAP/3- and HTTP/H-Connection)
<OH system>	No	RFC	Connection to the <i>Occupational Health</i> application of <i>SAP EHS Management</i> as part of the <i>SAP ERP</i> system
<EWM system>	No	RFC	Connection to the <i>Extended Warehouse Management</i> system

### i Note

EHS does not provide any authorizations for:

- *SAP Management of Change*
- *Occupational Health* of *SAP EHS Management* as part of *SAP ERP*

For detailed information about communication destinations, see Customizing for *Environment, Health, and Safety* under ► [Foundation for EHS](#) ► [Integration](#) ► [Specify Destinations for Integration](#) ►.

## 13.1.2.2 ICF Security in Environment, Health, and Safety

To use an app in Environment, Health, and Safety, you have to activate the internet communication framework (ICF) service that is needed for this app.

For general information, see [ICF Security \[page 20\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

## Incident Management

To use *Incident Management* apps, proceed as follows:

- In your front-end system, open transaction SICF. Under `/default_host/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/`, activate the following UI5 services:
  - `repincidents1` (*Report Incident*)
  - `injillanalyss1` (*Injuries and Illnesses - Detailed Analysis*)
  - `incdntanalyss1` (*Incidents - Detailed Analysis*)
- In your back-end system, open transaction SICF. Under `/default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`, activate all Web Dynpro services that start with `ehhss` and `ehfnd`.

## Health and Safety Management

To use *Health and Safety Management* apps, proceed as follows:

- In your front-end system, open transaction SICF. Under `/default_host/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/`, activate the following UI5 services:
  - `/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/sbrt_appss1` (*Approved Chemicals, Risk Overview*)
  - `/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/ehschm_reps1` (*Chemical Risk Report*)
  - `/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/ehschm_achs1` (*Monitor Approved Chemicals*)
  - `/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/ehscha_mygs1` (*My Chemical Approvals*)
  - `/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/ehsrisk_lsts1` (*Monitor Risks*)
  - `/sap/bc/ui5_ui5/sap/ehsras_lsts1` (*My Risk Assessment Projects*)
- In your back-end system, open transaction SICF. Under `/default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`, activate all Web Dynpro services that start with `ehhss` and `ehfnd`.

## Environment Management

To use *Environment Management* apps, proceed as follows:

- In your back-end system, open transaction SICF. Under `/default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`, activate all Web Dynpro services that start with `ehenv` and `ehfnd`.

### 13.1.2.3 Data Storage Security

#### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

In *Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS), the *XML export for Incident Management* saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used by EHS and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

#### Logical File Names Used

The following logical file name has been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- `EHHSS_INCIDENTS_XML`

- Program R\_EHHSS\_ALL\_INC\_TO\_XML is using this logical file name and parameters used in this context.

## Logical Path Names Used

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path EHHSS\_BO\_XML\_EXPORT\_PATH.

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the [Security Audit Log](#).

For more information on data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.1.2.4 Data Protection

Data protection is very important in the following examples:

- In the incident management process, you have critical person-related information regarding absences or injuries.
- In the health and safety management process, personal data about the risk assessment lead and the other persons involved in a risk assessment are displayed.
- In the environment management process, data about persons assigned to, compliance scenarios, and persons involved in tasks of category *Action*, is displayed.

*Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS) assumes that agreements for storage of personal data are covered in individual work contracts. This also applies to notifications on initial data storage.

For more generic information, see [Data Protection \[page 29\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

#### 13.1.2.4.1 Deletion of Personal Data

##### Use

The *Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS) component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data in EHS.



For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

The following tables list the relevant application objects and the available deletion functionality for *Incident Management*, *Health and Safety Management*, and *Environment Management*.

### Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality in Incident Management

Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Incidents	Archiving object EHHSS_INC
Incident Summary Reports	Archiving object EHHSS_ISR

For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Asset Management* ► *Environment, Health, and Safety* ► *Incident Management (EHS-MGM-INC)* ► *Data Archiving in Incident Management* ►.

### Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality in Health and Safety Management

Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Risk Revisions	Archiving object EHHSS_RSV
Risks	Archiving object EHHSS_RSK
Risk Assessments	Archiving object EHHSS_RAS
Safety Instructions	Archiving object EHHSS_SI
Control Evaluations	Archiving object EHHSS_CEVL
Control Inspections	Archiving object EHHSS_CINS
Control Replacements	Archiving object EHHSS_CRPL
Sampling Campaigns	Archiving object EHHSS_SPLC
Samplings	Archiving object EHFND_SPLG
Chemical Approvals	Archiving object EHFND_CHA
Assignment of Person to Locations	Archiving object EHFND_LOCP
Assignment of Person to Jobs	Archiving object EHFND_JOBP

Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Sampled Person	Data destruction object EHFND_SPLNG_SAMPLED_PERSON

For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Asset Management* ► *Environment, Health, and Safety* ► *Health and Safety Management (EHS-MGM-RAS)* ► *Technical Solution Information* . You can find the information under the following nodes:

- [Data Archiving in Health and Safety Management](#)
- [Data Destruction in Health an Safety Management](#)

### Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality in Environmental Management

Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Compliance Scenario Actions	Archiving object EHENV_SAC

For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Asset Management* ► *Environment, Health, and Safety* ► *Environment Management (EHS-MGM-ENV)* ► *Data Archiving in Environment Management* .

### Relevant Applications and Available End of Purpose Checks

In addition to destroying data used for incident management, health and safety management, or environment management processes, EHS provides end of purpose checks (EoP) for central business partners. These checks determine whether dependent data for a certain central business partner is still relevant for business activities in EHS.

The following table lists the registered applications and the function module used for the end of purpose checks in EHS.

Application	End of Purpose Check	Further Information
Incident Management (EHS_INC)	EHHSS_INC_EOP_CHECK_BP	The check determines whether the business partner is used in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incidents</li> <li>• Tasks in incidents</li> </ul>

Application	End of Purpose Check	Further Information
Health and Safety (EHS_HS)	EHHSS_HS_EOP_CHECK_BP	The check determines whether the business partner is used in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Risk assessment projects</li> <li>• Tasks in risk assessment projects</li> <li>• Risks</li> <li>• Control inspections</li> <li>• Control evaluations</li> <li>• Control replacements</li> </ul>
Health and Safety (EHS_HS_EXPOSURE)	EHHSS_EXP_EOP_CHECK_BP	The check determines whether the business partner is assigned to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Job positions</li> <li>• Location positions</li> <li>• Samplings as sampled person</li> </ul>
Environment Management (EHS_ENV)	EHENV_EOP_CHECK_BP	The check determines whether the business partner is used in tasks of category <i>Action</i> .

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing under [Cross-Application Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking of Data](#) > [Business Partner](#).

### 13.1.2.4.2 Read Access Logging of Personal Data in Incident Management

#### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

*Incident Management* logs data of illnesses or injuries that are maintained in the *Edit Incident* screen (web dynpro application EHHSS\_INC\_REC\_OIF\_V3). Since this information is potentially sensitive and access to this information is in some cases legally regulated, you can use RAL to log the date when the data was accessed and by whom.

In the following configurations, the following fields are logged:

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
Involved Person - Basic Information	<concatenate name> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Injured Person Name</i></li> <li>• <i>Phone Number</i></li> <li>• <i>Email</i></li> </ul> <i>Role(s)</i> <i>Incident Type</i> <i>Privacy Case</i> <i>Injured on Site</i> <i>Injured on Duty</i> <i>Additional Criteria</i> <i>Fatality</i> <i>Location of Death</i> <i>Cause of Death</i> <i>Statement of Involved Person</i>	Logs basic information of the person who is involved in the incident.
Involved Person - Injury-Illness Information	<concatenate name> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Injured Person Name</i></li> <li>• <i>Phone Number</i></li> <li>• <i>Email</i></li> </ul> <i>Classification</i> <i>Injury/Illness Type</i> <i>Injury/Illness Description</i> <i>Body Part</i> <i>Body Part Description</i> <i>Body Side</i>	Logs information on the injuries or the illness of the person who is involved in the incident.

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
Involved Person - Treatment Information	<concatenate name> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Injured Person Name</i></li> <li>• <i>Phone Number</i></li> <li>• <i>Email</i></li> </ul> <i>First Physician</i> <i>Further Treatment Provider</i> <i>Treatment Beyond First Aid</i> <i>Emergency Room</i> <i>Inpatient Overnight</i> <i>Unconsciousness</i> <i>Immediate Resuscitation</i> <i>Comment</i> <i>To First Aid</i> <i>To Further Treatment</i>	Logs information on the treatment of the person who is involved in the incident.
Involved Person - Reports and Documents	<concatenate name> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Injured Person Name</i></li> <li>• <i>Phone Number</i></li> <li>• <i>Email</i></li> </ul> <i>File Name</i> (of report forms) <i>File Name</i> (of documents)	Logs the files of reports and documents that are assigned to the involved person.
Incident - Reports and Documents	<i>File Name</i> (of report forms) <i>Reference</i> (Report forms of person references) <i>File Name</i> (of documents) <i>Reference</i> (documents of person references)	Logs the files of reports and documents that are assigned to the incident.

## Further Information

You can find the configurations as described in the [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#) chapter.

### 13.1.2.4.3 Change Logging

Personal data may be subject to changes. If these changes are logged, you can check which employee made which change and when. *Environmental, Health, and Safety (EHS)* generates change documents for changes in specific fields of the relevant objects that contain personal data.

Under *Display Change Document Objects* (transaction SCDO), you can find the delivered change document objects. (EHS change document objects start with EHFND\*, EHHSS\*, and EHENV\*.) Under *Maintain Logging Setting* (transaction S\_AUT01), you can specify the fields to be logged.

For objects for which you activated the change logging, you can access the change documents by choosing the relevant entry from the *You can also* link. You can enter parameters to limit the changes that are displayed. To view change documents, you need the authorization object EHFND\_CHDC. In addition, under *Evaluate New Audit Trail* (transaction S\_AUT10) in *Enhancement Mode*, you can display all changes for the change document objects in *EHS*.

### More Information

- For more information about the use of change documents in *EHS*, see the *Product Assistance* documentation on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/s4hana>. Select your release, open the *Product Assistance*, and go to ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Asset Management* ► *Environment, Health, and Safety* ► *Foundation for EHS (EHS-SUS-FND)* ► *Technical Solution Information* ► *Creation of Change Documents* ►.
- For more technical information about logging changes, see the *SAP NetWeaver* documentation on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/nw75>. In section *Application Help*, open the *SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View* and go to ► *Application Server* ► *Application Server ABAP* ► *Other Services* ► *Audit Trail (BC-SRV-ASF-AT)* ► *Changing Table and Data Element Logging* ►.
- For more information about change documents, see the *SAP NetWeaver* documentation on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/nw75>. In the *Security* section, open the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* and go to ► *Security Guides for SAP NetWeaver Functional Units* ► *Security Guides for the Application Server* ► *Security Guides for AS ABAP* ► *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide* ► *Auditing and Logging* ► *Logging of Specific Activities* ► *Logging Using Change Documents* ►.

### 13.1.2.5 Virus Scanning

The interactive forms of *Environment, Health, and Safety (EHS)* can contain Java Script. Therefore, Java Script must be enabled in Adobe Acrobat Reader. In addition, e-mails with PDF attachments that contain Java Script must not be filtered out in the e-mail inbound and outbound process.

For more generic information see [Virus Scanning \[page 23\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

## 13.1.2.6 Other Security-Relevant Information

The following information is relevant for the security of *Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS).

### 13.1.2.6.1 Dispensable Functions with Impacts on Security

*Environment, Health, and Safety* (EHS) can be integrated with HR Time Management in Customizing. If the personnel time management (PT) integration is activated, time data (including absences) from HR is displayed in the incident. An additional option is available to trigger the creation HR Absences from the incident. For all actions, HR authorizations are checked.

### 13.1.2.6.2 Security Settings for the Report Incident App

You use the *SAP Cloud Platform, mobile service for SAP Fiori* to implement the app *Report Incident*. For more information on the security settings of the *SAP Cloud Platform, mobile service for SAP Fiori*, see the SAP Help Portal at <https://help.sap.com>. There, search for **SAP Cloud Platform, mobile service for SAP Fiori User Guide**.

## 13.2 Commerce

### 13.2.1 Subscription Billing and Revenue Management

#### 13.2.1.1 Convergent Invoicing, Receivables Mngmt and Payment Handling

The following section provides an overview of the security-relevant information that applies to Convergent Invoicing and Receivable Management and Payment Handling as part of Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA).

## 13.2.1.1.1 Data Storage Security

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following list shows the logical file names and paths used by Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

### Logical File Names Used in FI-CA and Logical Path Names

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

Program	Logical File Name Used by the Program	Logical Path Name Used by the Program
RFKIBI_FILE00	FICA_DATA_TRANSFER_DIR	FICA_DATA_TRANSFER_DIR
RFKIBI_FILEP01		
RFKKBI_FILEEDIT		
RFKKBIBG		
RFKKZEDG		
RFKKRLDG		
RFKKCMDG		
RFKKCRDG		
RFKKAVDG		
RFKKBIB0		
RFKKZE00		
RFKKRL00		
RFKKCM00		
RFKKCR00		
RFKKAV00		
RFKKKA00		



RFKKBIT0		
RFKKPCSF	FI-CA-CARD-DATA-S	FI-CA-CARD-DATA-S
RFKKPCDS		
RFKKCVSPAY	FI-CA-CVS	FI-CA-CVS
RFKK_CVSPAY_CONFIRM		
RFKKCVSCONFIRMDB		
RFKK_CVSPAY_CONFIRM_TEST		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_EXP	FI-CA-DOC-EXTRACT-DIR	FI-CA-DOC-EXTRACT-DIR
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_AEXP		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_IMP		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_EXTR		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_DEL		
Class CL_FKK_TEXT_FILE		
RFKKBIXBITUPLOAD	FI-CA-BI-SAMPLE FI-CA-BI-SAMPLE-DIR	FI-CA-BI-SAMPLE-DIR
RFKKCOL2	FI-CA-COL-SUB	FI-CA-COL-SUB
RFKKCOLL		
Transaction FP03DM (Mass Activity)		
Transaction FPCI (Mass Activity)	FI-CA-COL-INFO	FI-CA-COL-INFO
RFKKCOPM	FI-CA-COL-READ	FI-CA-COL-READ
READFILE		
RFKKCOPG	FI-CA-COL-TEST	FI-CA-COL-TEST
RFKKRDI_REPORT	FI-CA-RDI	FI-CA-RDI
RFKKRDI_REPORT_DIS		
SAPFKPY3	FI-CA-DTA-NAME	FI-CA-DTA-NAME
RFKKCHK01	FI-CA-CHECKS-EXTRACT	FI-CA-CHECKS-EXTRACT

Class CL_FKK_INFECO_SEND	FI-CA-INFECO	FI-CA-INFECO
RFKKBE_SAL1	FICA_BE_SAL	FICA_BE_SAL
RFKKBE_SAL2	FICA_BE_SAL_XML	FICA_BE_SAL_XML
RFKK1099	FI-CA-1099	FI-CA-1099
RFKKOP03	FICA_OPEN_ITEMS	FICA_OPEN_ITEMS
RFKKOP04		
RFKKOP07		
RFKKES_SAL1	FICA_TAX_REP_GEN	FICA_TAX_REP_GEN
RFKKES_SAL2		
RFKKRDI_REPORT	FI-CA-RDI	FI-CA-RDI
RFKKRDI_REPORT_DIS		
Transaction EMIGALL	ISMW_FILE	ISMW_ROOT

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information about data storage security, see the chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.2.1.1.2 Data Protection

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) processes personal data of business partners that might be subject to data protection legislation applicable in some countries.

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of this personal data. SAP delivers an end of purpose check for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA). You register the end of purpose check (EoP) in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of the SAP Business Partner.

#### Display of Blocked Data

Only if a user has special authorization, is it possible to display blocked business partner master data. However, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on this blocked business partner data.

However, FI-CA-specific data relating to a blocked business partner (as for example the contract account) users can display without having special authorization.

For more information on the blocking and deletion of personal data, on the end of purpose check and on displaying blocked data in Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable, see the Product Assistance of Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable under ► [Basic Functions](#) ► [SAP Business Partner](#) ► [Blocking and Deleting Personal Data](#) ►.

### Process Flow

Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM). You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available. You do the following:

1. Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: `CA_BUPA`).
2. Run transaction `FDPDR_BP_INIT` once for existing business partners for which you want to execute the end of purpose checks. New business partners you create are automatically included in the end of purpose checks.
3. Run transaction `FDPDR1` to prepare the end of purpose check of the central business partner. The function module `MKK_BUPA_EOP_CHECK` saved for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) in table `BUTEOPFM` provides the EoP check result obtained by transaction `FDPDR1` to transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP`.
4. Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.

Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.

If you have the needed authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP`.

You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA).

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under [Data Protection](#).

Define the settings for authorization management under [Authorization Management](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.

Define the settings for blocking under [Blocking and Unblocking Business Partner](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.

You configure the settings specific for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable in the Customizing for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable under ► [Technical Settings](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ► and [Data Deletion](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.

### 13.2.1.1.3 Payment Card Security According to PCI-DSS

#### i Note

The **Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS)** was jointly developed by major credit card companies in order to create a set of common industry security requirements for the protection of cardholder data. Compliance with this standard is relevant for companies processing credit card data. For more information, see <http://www.pcisecuritystandards.org> .

The following sections of the security guide support you in implementing payment card security aspects and outline steps that need to be considered to be compliant with the PCI-DSS.

Please note that the PCI-DSS covers more than the steps and considerations given here. Complying with the PCI-DSS lies completely within the customer's responsibility, and we cannot guarantee the customer's compliance with the PCI-DSS.

For current information about PCI-DSS in general, see SAP Note [1609917](#) .

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) processes all payment transactions with your business partners. For this purpose, Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable also processes credit card data. For processing credit card transactions, Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable follows the rules laid down by the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

Credit card data arrives in Contract Accounts Receivable in the following ways:

- You receive documents, which already contain credit card data in their supplements, by means of the IDoc interface or by means of BAPIs.
- You receive payments that already contain credit card data with the payment lot transfer program (RFKKZE00).
- External payment collectors and external cash desk services transfer credit card data using enterprise services with the payment to Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable.
- Financial Customer Care transfers credit card data for documents from SAP Customer Relationship Management using RFC.
- Customers or your employees add credit card data as follows:
  - Employees enter credit card data in the master records of business partners and prepaid accounts.
  - Employees enter payment card data in the *Maintain Bank Data* (FPP4) transaction.
  - Employees enter credit card data for payments in the cash desk, in the cash journal, in payment specifications and in promises to pay.
  - Customers enter credit card data online in SAP Biller Direct. SAP Biller Direct transfers the data to Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable.
- You adopt billable items with payment information using the generated RFC interfaces /1FE/<billable item class>\_BIT\_CREATE\_API.

The program for payment (such as the payment run or the cash desk) generates payment documents with supplements containing the credit card data. Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable transfers this credit card data to the payment card company or the clearing house using transaction FPPCDS (creation of file) or FPCS (online transfer).

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable stores the data as follows:

Object	Table(s)
Business Partner Master Record	BUT0CC
	CCARD
Payments in Payment Lot or Credit Card Lot	DFKKZP
Document	DFKKOPC
	DFKKOPKC
	DFKK_PCARD
Payment Data for a Payment Run	DPAYH
Payment Data for a Payment Using SAP Biller Direct or Financial Customer Care	DFKKOPC
Payment Specifications	DFKKIP_GRP
Promises to pay	DFKKPPD_PAY
Master Record of Prepaid Account	FKKPREPACC
Billable Items	Generated tables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• /1FE/0&lt;billable item class&gt;0PY</li> <li>• /1FE/0&lt;billable item class&gt;1PY</li> </ul>

You must restrict the display of the necessary objects by assigning authorizations, while at the same time ensuring that this authorization protection cannot be circumvented by database programs or customer-specific ABAP reports.

You can also make additional security settings for payment card data. For more information, see SAP Note [1032588](#) and the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide, section "Payment Card Security".

### Archiving

Only masked credit card information can be archived. Clear text credit card information should not be archived. Archiving encrypted credit card information is problematic because archived data should not be changed. Encrypted credit card information has to be re-encrypted with a different key, for example, with key rotation, as required by PCI-DSS. This change of data is not possible in an archive.

In technologies that are agnostic to the semantics of the data, such as Process Integration (PI), ABAP Web Services, or Forward Error Handling (FEH), archiving has to be disabled. IDocs that contain credit card information should not be archived.

### Interfaces (IDoc/Services)

#### Caution

According to PCI-DSS, IDoc segments are not allowed to store payment card numbers in clear text. However, during processing of an IDoc in the IDoc Framework, all values are stored temporarily, including

the clear text credit card number. For more information about how to process own IDocs containing credit card information, see the SAP NetWeaver SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under ► [Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies](#) ► [Security Guide ALE \(ALE Applications\) in SAP NetWeaver Release 7.30](#) .

If you exchange data between systems using IDoc messages, and this data contains unencrypted credit card information, you have to implement access restrictions and a deletion concept at the level of the file system.

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable processes payment card data in the following interfaces:

Type of Interface	Technical Name	Description
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACPREPAIDACCOUNT_CREA	<i>BAPI - FI-CA Prepaid Account: Create</i>
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACPREPAIDACCOUNT_CHNG	<i>BAPI - FI-CA Prepaid Account: Change</i>
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACPREPAIDACCOUNT_GETD	<i>BAPI - FI-CA Prepaid Account: Read detailed data</i>
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACDOCUMENT_CREATE	<i>BAPI: FI-CA Post Document</i>
RFC	FKK_PREP_PCARD_STORE	<i>Prepaid: Store Payment Data in DFKK_PCARD</i>
RFC	Event 1421 (function module FKK_SAMPLE_1421)	<i>Parallel Billing Call Settlement</i>
RFC	FKK_BUPA_MAINTAIN_SINGLE	<i>Maintain Business Partner</i>
RFC	/1FE/<billable item class>_BIT_CREATE_API	Generated RFC interfaces for transferring billable items with payment information
Enterprise Service	CashPointPaymentCreateNotification_In	<i>External Cash Point Payment</i>
Web Service	ECC_CASHPOINTPAYMENTCRTNO	<i>External Cash Point Payment</i>
File	Report RFKKPCDS	<i>Payment cards: Settlement</i>
ALE/IDoc	ALE_CTRACDOCUMENT_CREATE	<i>BAPI -&gt; IDoc: ALE_CTRACDOCUMENT_CREATE(FI-CA Post document)</i>

## RFC Debugging

### ⚠ Caution

Disable RFC debugging when you process credit card information in a productive system. Do not activate the *Set RFC Trace* option in your productive system. If this option is active, the system saves all input data of an RFC call in clear text to a file. If credit card numbers (PAN) are included in calls to some function

module, then this data would be stored to this file. Since these numbers have to be stored encrypted according to the PCI-DSS standard, activating this option would result in no longer being PCI compliant.

### Forward Error Handling (FEH)

#### ⚠ Caution

Disable Forward Error Handling for all services that contain credit card numbers in SAP Customizing.

### Card Verification Values (CVV)

#### ⚠ Caution

Do not process asynchronous services that contain a card verification code (CAV2, CID, CVC2, CVV2) or their values.

Note that in SAP services, these values correspond to the GDT `.PaymentCardVerificationValueText`. The reason is that the payload of asynchronous services is persisted in the database until the service is processed and persisting card verification values is not allowed according to PCI-DSS.

Synchronous services can be processed because their payload is not persisted.

### Access Logs

You can configure your system so that it logs access to payment card data via Dynpro and Web Dynpro. You make the settings in the SAP Customizing Implementation Guide under [▶ Cross-Application Components ▶ Payment Cards ▶ Basic Settings ▶ Make Security Settings for Payment Cards ▶](#) Choose a security level for which payment card data is to be displayed masked, and set the indicator *Additional authorization check for masked display*.

You can use the `CCSEC_LOG_SHOW` transaction to evaluate access to payment card data. To evaluate the access log, a user requires authorization for activity 71 of authorization object `B_CCSEC`.

For payment card data, you can also use Read Access Logging (RAL), which covers a large number of access channels, such as Remote Function Call and Web services.

## 13.3 Finance

## 13.3.1 Financial Accounting

### Network and Communication Security

Communication with external systems takes place using the standard channels provided by SAP basis technology:

- Application Link Enabling(ALE)/IDoc
- Standard interfaces to BI, CRM, and SRM systems
- Batch-Input  
Ensure that no unauthorized access can take place at the time of data transfer using encryption and with the help of your network.
- Remote Function Call(RFC) / Business Application Programming Interface (BAPI)
- File Interface  
Ensure that no unauthorized access can take place at the time of data transfer using encryption and with the help of your network.
- SAP Process Integration (PI)
- E-mail, fax

#### ❁ Example

- Financial Accounting has interfaces to *Taxware* and *Vertex* software used for performing tax calculations.
- Electronic advance return for tax on sales/purchases:
  - There is an interface for the electronic advance return for tax on sales and purchases using *Elster*. Communication takes place by means of XI.
  - You can digitally sign the electronic advance return for tax on sales/purchases.
- Payments and payment advice notes are dispatched using IDoc, and dunning notices are sent by e-mail or fax.

### Communication Destinations

All the technical users generally available can be used.

### Data Storage Security

Many of the *Financial Accounting* transactions access sensitive data. Access to this kind of data, such as financial statements, is protected by standard authorization objects.



## 13.3.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Financial Accounting

### Use

The `Financial Accounting` (FI) component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [Product Assistance](#) [Cross Components](#) [Data Protection](#).

### Available Deletion Functionality

ILM Objects in Financial Accounting (FI)

ILM Object	Description
AM_ASSET	Asset - Master Data, Values and Transactions
APPREQUEST	IM: Appropriation Request
CA_SEPA	Single Euro Payments Area (Mandate)
EC_PCA_ITM	Profit Center Acctg: Actual and Plan Line Items
EC_PCA_MD	Profit Center Master Data
EC_PCA_SUM	Profit Center Accounting: Totals Records
FI_ACCOUNT	G/L Account Master Data
FI_DOCUMNT	Financial Accounting Documents
FI_DUNNING_DESTRUCTION	Deleting Dunning Data
FI_INTEREST_DESTRUCTION	Deleting Interest Data
FI_PAYRQ	Payment Requests
FI_SCHECK	Prenumbered Checks
FI_SL_DATA	FI Special Ledger: Totals and Line Items
FI_TCJ_DOC	FI Cash Journal Documents
FI_TF_CRE	Vendor Transaction Figures
FI_TF_DEB	Customer Transaction Figures

ILM Object	Description
FI_TF_GLC (obsolete)	G/L Account Transaction Figures
FI_TF_GLF	G/L Transaction Figures (New)
FILOC_ES_RFASLD11B	ILM object for Spanish EC sales list
GLE_ECS	ECS: Archiving Object for ECS
MM_ACCTIT	MM- Accounting interface posting data
MM_MATBEL	Materials Management: Material Documents
SAPPCE_DP	Down Payment Chain
FINS_PLAN	Plan data records of table ACDOCP

## Available Check

Implemented Solution: End of Purpose Check

The following points are checked in the system:

- Checks whether an item belonging to this customer exists
- Checks that at least one parked document or fully saved document exist for this customer
- Checks whether a recurring entry original document exist that refers to the customer
- Checks whether a link to a vendor is maintained in the master record of the customer, and whether the clearing between the customer and vendor is active
- Checks whether the customer is used as an alternative payee
- Checks whether at least one saved document for this customer exists in the cash journal

If one of the points mentioned above doesn't apply, the system doesn't lock the customer. If these points don't apply, the system determines the last payment that was made for this customer and uses it as a reference date for the retention rules that are defined in ILM Customizing.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of `business partner master data` in Customizing for `Cross-Application Components` under `Data Protection`.

### 13.3.1.2 General Ledger Accounting (FI-GL)

## 13.3.1.2.1 Data Storage Security

### Logical Path and File Names

The FI-GL component saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used by the FI-GL component. They also show the programs for which these file names and paths apply.

### Logical File Names and Paths for FI-GL and FI-SL

#### Logical File Names

The following logical file names have been created to enable the validation of physical file names:

- **FI\_COPY\_COMPANY\_CODE\_DATA\_FOR\_GENERAL\_LEDGER\_OX**
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - RFBISA00
    - RFBISA01
    - RFBISA51
  - Parameter used in this context:
    - <PARAM\_1> *Program Name*
- **FI\_INFOSYS\_TRANSPORT**
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - RGRJTE00
    - RGRLTE00
    - RGRMTE00
    - RGR RTE00
    - RGRSTE00
    - RGRVTE00
    - RGRXTE00
    - RGSSTE00
    - RGSVTE00
    - RGRJT100
    - RGRMT100
    - RGSST100
    - RGSVT100
  - Parameter used in this context:
    - <PARAM\_1> Program name
- **FI\_VALUATION**

- Programs using this logical file name:
  - FAGL\_FCV
  - FAGL\_FC\_VALUATION
  - SAPF100
- Parameters used in this context:
  - <PARAM\_1> *Program name*
  - <PARAM\_2> Key date (from the selection screen)
  - <PARAM\_3> Valuation area (from the selection screen) for FAGL\_FCV and FAGL\_FC\_VALUATION valuation method (from the selection screen) for SAPF100

### Logical Path Names

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path **FI\_ROOT**.

## Logical File Names and Paths for FI-GL-IS (Information System)

### Logical File Names

The following logical file names have been created to enable the validation of physical file names:

- **FI\_EXTERNAL**

Programs using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:

Program	<PARAM_1>	<PARAM_2>	<PARAM_3>
RFAWVZ58	Program name (SY-REPID)	String 'AWV'	Parameter 'Key Date'
RFAWVZ5A	Program name (SY-REPID)	String 'AWV'	Parameter 'Key Date'
RFAWVZ5P	Program name (SY-REPID)	String 'AWV'	
RFAWVZ5A_NACC	Program name (SY-REPID)	String 'AWV'	Parameter 'Key Date'
RFAWVZ5P_NACC	Program name (SY-REPID)	String 'AWV'	
RFBIDETO	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Client'	
RFBIKRTO	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Client'	
RFFROE84	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Customers/ vendors'	Parameter 'Key Date'
RFFRDDE0	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Company Code'	Parameter 'Type'
RFFRLIST	Program name (SY-REPID)		
RFFRMOD1	Program name (SY-REPID)		

RFIDPTFO	Program name (SY-REPID)	Concatenated parameters <Company Code>_<Year>_<Period>	String 'READ' or 'WRITE'
RFLBOX00	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Procedure'	Parameter 'Input Record Format'
RFLBOX80	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Procedure'	Parameter 'Input Record Format'
RFLBOXIN	Program name (SY-REPID)	String 'LOCKBOX'	String 'BAI'
RFSBLIWO	Program name (SY-REPID)		

- **FI\_POSTING**

Programs using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:

Program	<PARAM_1>	<PARAM_2>	<PARAM_3>
RFBIBLT0	Program name (SY-REPID)		
RFEBCK00	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Document Type'	Parameter 'Session name'
RFEBCKT0	Program name (SY-REPID)		
SAPF100A	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Key Date'	

- **FI\_TAX**

Programs using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:

Program	<PARAM_1>	<PARAM_2>	<PARAM_3>
RFASLD02	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter year for 'Report- ing Quarter'	Parameter 'Reporting Quar- ter'
RFASLD11	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter year for 'Report- ing Quarter'	Parameter 'Reporting Quar- ter'
RFASLD11B	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter year for 'Report- ing Quarter'	Parameter 'Reporting Quar- ter'
RFUMPT00	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Company Code'	
RFUSVB10	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Posting Date' (lower value)	Parameter 'Posting Date' (higher value)
RFKQSU30	Program name (SY-REPID)		
RFUMPT00	Program name (SY-REPID)		

RFUSVS12	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Entity Respon- sible'	See note 1
RFUSVS14	Program name (SY-REPID)	Concatenated parameters <Company Code>_<Year>	See note 1
RFUVPT00	Program name (SY-REPID)	Parameter 'Company Code'	See note 2

Notes:

- Note 1  
If the file specified in the parameter "File for Leasing" is accessed, PARAM\_3 contains the value READ; consequently, the file content is read only and added to the output file.  
If the file specified in the parameter "UNIX File for Output" is accessed, PARAM\_3 contains the value "WRITE".
- Note 2  
If the file listed in the parameter "File Name - Application Server" on the "Periodic File O" tab page is accessed, PARAM\_3 contains the string PERIOD\_WRITE.  
If the file listed in the parameter "ECSL File Name (AS)" on the "Periodic File O" tab page is accessed, PARAM\_3 contains the string PERIOD\_READ.  
If the file listed in the parameter "XML File App. OP" on the "Annual File O/P" tab page is accessed, PARAM\_3 contains the string YEAR\_READ.  
If the file listed in the parameter "File Name - Application Server" on the "Annual File O/P" tab page is accessed, PARAM\_3 contains the string YEAR\_WRITE.

- **FI\_RFASLD12\_FILE**

Programs using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:

Program	<PARAM_1>
RFASLD02	Program name (SY-CPROG)

### Logical Path Names

The logical file names listed above use the following logical file paths:

Logical File Name	Logical File Path
FI_EXTERNAL	FI_ROOT
FI_POSTING	
FI_TAX	
FI_RFASLD12_FILE	FI_ERVJAB_FILE_PATH

## 13.3.1.3 Bank Accounting (FI-BL)

### Important SAP Notes

For a list of additional security-relevant SAP HotNews and SAP Notes, see the SAP Support Portal at <http://support.sap.com/securitynotes>.

## 13.3.1.4 Asset Accounting (FI-AA)

### Important SAP Notes

For a list of additional security-relevant SAP HotNews and SAP Notes, see the SAP Support Portal at <http://support.sap.com/securitynotes>.

### Standard Roles

Role	Description
SAP_BR_AA_ACCOUNTANT	Asset Accountant
SAP_AUDITOR_BA_FI_AA	AIS Fixed Assets
SAP_AUDITOR_BA_FI_AA_A	AIS - Fixed Assets (Authorizations)

### Standard Authorization Objects

For the list of standard authorization objects available for Asset Accounting, see transaction SU21, Object Class [Asset Accounting](#) (AM).

### Network and Communication Security

Asset Accounting provides BAPIs for communicating with third-party systems.

### Communication Destinations

For workflow tasks, you sometimes need either the [WF-BATCH](#) user or a user that you can use for background steps of this kind. To execute the decision steps required before reaching these background steps, you need a user that is explicitly assigned.

## 13.3.1.5 Special Purpose Ledger (FI-SL)

### Data Storage Security

#### Protect access to the file system with logical paths and file names

The Special Purpose Ledger saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to allow access explicitly to certain files in the file system without allowing access to other files (also called file traversals). You achieve this by entering logical paths and file names in the system, which are assigned to the physical paths and file names. This assignment is validated at runtime. If access to a file is requested that does not match any stored assignment, then an error occurs.

Access to the file system is protected for the following programs by the logical file name listed.

Program	Logical File Name Used by the Program	Parameter Used in Context	Logical Path Name Used by the Program
RGRJTE00	FI_INFOSYS_TRANSPORT	<PARAM_1> <i>Program Name</i>	FI_ROOT
RGRLTE00			
RGRMTE00			
RGR RTE00			
RGRSTE00			
RGRVTE00			
RGRXTE00			
RGSSTE00			
RGSVTE00			
RGRJT100			
RGRMT100			
RGSST100			
RGSVT100			
SAPMGLRV	FI_ROLLUP	<PARAM_1> <i>Program Name</i> (SY-CPROG)	FI_ROOT
SAPFGRWE	FI_REPORT_WRITER	<PARAM_1> <i>Program Name</i> (SY-CPROG – generated program name)	FI_ROOT

#### Activating the Validation of Logical Paths and File Names



These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-dependent). To determine which paths are used by your system, you can activate the appropriate settings in the Security Audit Log.

## 13.3.1.6 Corporate Close - Consolidation Foundation

### 13.3.1.6.1 Deletion of Personal Data

#### Use

The **Real-Time Consolidation** (FIN-RTC) component in SAP S/4HANA might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries.

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Consolidation Methods <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Transaction codes RTCTM and RTCRM</li> <li>Fiori App <a href="#">Define Validation Methods</a></li> </ul>	RTC_DPP_METHOD
Consolidation Models (transaction code RTCMD)	RTC_DPP_MODEL
Validation Rules (Fiori app <a href="#">Define Validation Rules</a> )	RTC_DPP_VALIDATION_RULE
Data Release Lock (Fiori app <a href="#">Consolidation Data Release Monitor</a> )	RTC_DPP_DATA_RELEASE_LOCK
Data Release Requests <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fiori app <a href="#">Consolidation Data Release Cockpit</a></li> <li>Fiori app <a href="#">Consolidation Data Release Monitor</a></li> </ul>	RTC_DPP_DATA_RELEASE_REQUEST
Rule Result Comments (Fiori app <a href="#">Consolidation Data Release Cockpit</a> )	RTC_DPP_RULE_RESULT_COMMENTS

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Task Logs (all programs that run currency translation and post journal entries, for example, transaction code <code>RTCCT</code> and Fiori app <i>Consolidation Data Release Cockpit</i> )	<code>RTC_DPP_TASK_LOG</code>

### i Note

For the deletion programs mentioned in the table above, you can also **Display Records**.

## Run Deletion Programs

SAP recommends scheduling regular jobs to run the deletion programs using the *Define Background Job* (`SM36`) transaction.

### 13.3.1.7 Central Finance (FI-CF)

The following functions are available for Central Finance:

#### Schedule Clean-Up Report in Source System

Data relating to FI/CO documents is temporarily stored in log tables in the source system before it can be transferred to Central Finance. To delete the temporary information from these tables, a clean-up program (`RFIN_CFIN_CLEANUP`) is run and must be scheduled regularly (for example, once a month). In the configuration of this program, you can define for how many periods a temporarily stored data record is kept before being deleted by the clean-up program (for example, so that an incorrect posting can be corrected).

#### Read Access Log for the Application Log

The application log for the Central Finance initial load may contain sensitive, personal data. Therefore, we provide a read access log for this application log (`CFIN_INITIAL_LOAD`) for the channel `DYNP`.

## 13.3.1.8 Joint Venture Accounting

### 13.3.1.8.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Joint Venture Accounting

#### Use

The *Joint Venture Accounting* component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) |> [Product Assistance](#) > [Cross Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) >.

#### Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Provided Deletion Functionality
Joint Venture partner data	Data destruction object JVA_PARTNER_DESTRUCTION

For more information, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) |> [Product Assistance](#) > [Enterprise Business Applications](#) > [Finance](#) > [Accounting and Financial Close](#) > [Joint Venture Accounting](#) > [Data Destruction in Joint Venture Accounting](#) >.

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available End of Purpose Check

Application Object	Implemented Solution	Further Information
Joint Venture partner data	End of Purpose Check (EoP)	<p>The EoP check is integrated into the ILM objects</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FI_ACCRECV (customer master data) for checking customer master data</li><li>• FI_ACCPAYB (vendor master data) for checking vendor master data</li></ul>

For more information, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Finance* ► *Accounting and Financial Close* ► *Joint Venture Accounting* ► *End of Purpose Check (EoP) for Business Partner* ►.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of Joint Venture partner data in Customizing under ► *Cross-Application Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

### 13.3.1.8.2 Deletion of Personal Data in Project Risk Management for Contractors

#### Use

The *Project Risk Management for Contractors* component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

#### Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Provided Deletion Functionality
Joint Venture partner data	Data destruction object / SAPPCE/JVA_PARTNER_DESTR

For more information, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Finance* ► *Accounting and Financial Close* ► *Joint Venture Accounting* ► *Project Risk Management for Contractors* ► *Data Destruction* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available End of Purpose Check

Application	Implemented Solution	Further Information
Joint Venture partner data	End of Purpose Check (EoP)	<p>The EoP check is integrated into the ILM objects</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FI_ACCRECV (customer master data) for checking customer master data</li><li>• FI_ACCPAYB (vendor master data) for checking vendor master data</li></ul>

For more information, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Finance* ► *Accounting and Financial Close* ► *Joint Venture Accounting* ► *Project Risk Management for Contractors* ► *End of Purpose Check (EoP) for Business Partner* ►.

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of Joint Venture partner data in Customizing under ► *Cross-Application Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## 13.3.2 Controlling

### 13.3.2.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Controlling

#### Use

The `Controlling` (CO) component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Available Deletion Functionality

ILM Objects in Controlling (CO)

ILM Object	Description
CO_ALLO_ST	Completely canceled documents contrib., val., ...
CO_CCMAST	Cost Center Master Data
CO_CEL_RCL	Reconciliation ledger: Totals and line items
CO_COPC	Archiving Product Costing Data
CO_ORDER	Orders with transaction data
CO_PROCESS	Business process, including transaction data
CO_TRANS	CO Line Items and Totals
COPAA_XXXX	Costing-based line items (Transaction: KE0I)
COPAB_XXXX	Costing-based object level (Transaction: KE0I)
COPA2_XXXX	Account-based line items (Transaction: KE0I)
COPAC_XXXX	Profitability segments (Transaction: KE0I)
PM_ORDER	Service and Maintenance Orders
FICO_MYUSLOG	My Unusual Items

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of `business partner master data` in `Customizing for Cross-Application Components` under `Data Protection`.

### 13.3.2.2 Network and Communication Security

*Controlling* is integrated with *Microsoft Office*. For information on security aspects with *Microsoft Office* applications, refer to the documentation of those products.

Communication in *Manager Self-Service* (MSS) and in the *Web Application for the Business Unit Analyst* (BUA) is based on *Remote Function Calls* (RFCs).

## 13.3.2.2.1 Communication Destinations

Technical users are required for communication over ALE, for batch reporting, and for third-party providers that access Controlling data.

## 13.3.3 Governance, Risk and Compliance for Finance

### 13.3.3.1 International Trade

The following security information applies to SAP S/4HANA for international trade only.

#### 13.3.3.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data in International Trade

International Trade might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries.

##### i Note

SAP S/4HANA for international trade does **not** use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. SAP S/4HANA for international trade uses SAP Business Partner (BP) instead to control the blocking and deletion of personal data.

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for defining the settings for blocking. Choose Customizing, then *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

#### 13.3.3.1.1.1 Intrastat-Declarations

Personal data of the contact person of the provider of information, for example first name, last name and e-mail address, is written into Intrastat declaration files to be compliant with the file formats defined by authorities. These file formats are country-specific and can be changed by authorities at any time.

Intrastat declaration files are saved outside the SAP S/4HANA system. Therefore, the management of those files and the deletion of personal data in those files must be done outside the SAP S/4HANA system.

## 13.3.3.1.2 Authorizations in International Trade

International trade uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver for Application Server ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver for Application Server ABAP also apply.

### 13.3.3.1.2.1 Business Catalogs in International Trade

Business catalogs are the central object for UI and authorization assignment to business users and for structuring and organizing the menu and authorization maintenance. If a user is assigned to a business catalog, he gains access to all apps included in the catalog and therefore requires the corresponding authorizations.

In On-Premise, business catalogs are defined by customers by composing the relevant apps based on their specific requirements. Authorizations are determined via the Fiori-PFCG integration when entering the catalog in the PFCG role menu. SAP delivers business catalogs as templates that customers may copy to create their own content. To give users access to the apps, must assign them to the Business catalogs.

#### Business Catalogs

Business Catalog: `SAP_SLL_BC_CLS_LEGCTRL`

*International Trade Classification - Legal Control*

#### Apps

- Manage Control Classes
- Manage Control Groupings
- Classify Products - Legal Control
- Reclassify Products - Legal Control

Business Catalog: `SAP_SLL_BC_CLS_CMMDTYCODE`

*International Trade Classification - Commodity Codes*

#### Apps

- Manage Commodity Codes
- Classify Products – Commodity Codes
- Reclassify Products – Commodity Codes

Business Catalog: `SAP_SLL_BC_CLS_ISSRVCCODE`

*International Trade Classification - Intrastat Service Codes*

#### Apps



- Manage Intrastat Service Codes
- Classify Products – Intrastat Service Codes
- Reclassify Products – Intrastat Service Codes

Business Catalog: SAP\_SLL\_BC\_INTRASTAT\_DECLN

*Intrastat - Declaration Management*

**Apps**

- Manage Intrastat Service Codes
- Classify Products – Intrastat Service Codes
- Reclassify Products – Intrastat Service Codes

Business Catalog: SAP\_SLL\_BC\_INTRASTAT\_SEL

*Intrastat - Selection Report Execution*

**Apps**

- Select Dispatches and Customer Returns
- Select Receipts and Returns to Supplier

Business Catalog: SAP\_SLL\_BC\_LICENSE\_MANAGE

*International Trade Compliance - License Management*

**Apps**

- Manage Licenses

Business Catalog: SAP\_SLL\_BC\_CMPLCDOC\_MANAGE

*International Trade Compliance - Document Management*

**Apps**

- Resolve Blocked Documents - Trade Compliance
- Manage Documents - Trade Compliance

### 13.3.3.1.2.1.1 Display Business Catalog in International Trade

You can manage authorization fields in PFCG role by using transaction PFCG. The authorization field is used in Business Partner display catalog.

Business Catalog: SAP\_CMD\_BC\_BP\_DISP

*Master Data - Business Partner Display*

Authorization Object	Description	Authorization Field
B_BUPA_GRP	Authorization Group for Business Partners	BGRU
B_BUPA_RLT	Business Partner Role	RLTYP

Business Partner Display Catalog Used by Intrastat Apps (POI)

If you assign business catalog `SAP_SLL_BC_INTRASTAT_DECLN` in a backend role, you also assign business catalog `SAP_CMD_BC_BP_DISP` in a backend role. Specify business partner role type `B_BUPA_RLT` with `ACTVT = 03 & RLTYF = 'SLLSTL'`. 'SLLSTL' is the contact person created as provider of information.

Business Partner Display Catalog Used by Legal Control Apps

If you assign business catalog `SAP_SLL_BC_LICENSE_MANAGE` in backend role, you also assign business catalog `SAP_CMD_BC_BP_DISP` in a backend role.

### 13.3.3.1.2.1.2 Manage Authorization for Generic Service in Business Catalog in International Trade

You can use the generic object services in the business catalog, to restrict application specific authorization fields by following the documentation of the following topics:

- [Generic Object Services \(GOS\) attachment service \[page 90\]](#)
- [Generic Service - Application Job SU22 Authorization Default \[page 90\]](#)

#### 13.3.3.1.2.1.2.1 Generic Object Services (GOS) attachment service

Integration with attachment service for license master

Manual action required

1. Assign Fiori catalog `SAP_SLL_BC_LICENSE_MANAGE` to PFCG role in backend.
  2. Input value for authorization object `S_GOS_ATT` manually.
- `BOROBJTYPE = ITRLICMSTR`
  - `ACTIVITY = 02 and 06`

#### 13.3.3.1.2.1.2.2 Generic Service - Application Job SU22 Authorization Default

Integration with application job for Intrastat selection reports

Manual action required

1. Assign Fiori catalog to PFCG role.
  2. Assign authorization default for selection reports.
- Transaction `VE01` [Select SD Dispatches and Returns](#)

- Transaction `MEIS` [Select MM Receipts and Returns](#)

### 13.3.3.1.2.1.2.3 Integration with Watch List Screening

Integration with application job for Watch List Screening reports

Manual action required

To enable batch job of [Postprocessing Watch List Screening](#), authorization object legal regulation is required. Following steps introduce how to import authorization default.

1. Open backend role with transaction `PF03`
2. Switch to section [Menu](#).
3. Insert node for transaction inside menu of backend role.
  - Transaction code `/SAPSLI/WLS_POSTPRO` [Postprocessing Watch List Screening](#).
  - Transaction codes `SM36` and `SM37` [Job Scheduling Basis](#).
4. Click on button maintain authorization data.
5. Choose expert mode to merge the change from authorization default.
6. Input value for legal regulation and basis authorization object.
7. Save your change.

### 13.3.3.1.2.2 Standard Authorization Objects in International Trade

The following table shows the default authorization objects that you need for international trade.

Authorization Object	Description
ITM_BUKRS	Authorization for Company Code
ITM_LGREG	Authorization for Legal Regulation
ITM_LMGGM	Authorization for Legal Regulation / License Type
/ECRS/RPHD	Intrastat Declaration
/ECRS/POIA	Provider of Information
/ECRS/SP	Selection Program for Intrastat Reporting
ITM_CLS_NC	Trade Classification: Auth. for Numbering Scheme Content
ITM_CLS_LR	Trade Classification: Authorization for Legal Regulation

Authorization Object	Description
ITM_CLS_NS	Trade Classification: Authorization for Numbering Scheme

For International Trade apps, you find the following authorization objects in the tables listed below:

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_CLS_NC	Classify Products - Commodity Codes
	Reclassify Products - Commodity Codes
	Classify Products - Intrastat Service Codes
	Reclassify Products - Intrastat Service Codes

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_CLS_LR	Classify Products - Legal Control
ITM_CLS_NS	Reclassify Products - Legal Control

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_CLS_NC	Manage Control Classes

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_CLS_LR	Manage Control Groupings

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_BUKRS	Manage Licenses
ITM_LMGM	
ITM_LGREG	
ITM_CLS_NS	
ITM_CLS_NC	
S_GOS_ATT	

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_BUKRS	Resolve Blocked Documents - Trade Compliance

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_LGREG	
ITM_CLS_NS	
ITM_CLS_NC	

Authorization Object	App Name
ITM_BUKRS	Manage Documents - Trade Compliance
ITM_LGREG	
ITM_CLS_NS	
ITM_CLS_NC	

Authorization Object	Transaction Name
/ECRS/SP	MEIS: Select Receipts, Returns to Supplier
	VE01: Select Dispatches, Customer Returns

## 13.3.4 Treasury Management

### 13.3.4.1 SAP Bank Communication Management (incl. SAP Integration Package for SWIFT)

#### About this Document

The Security Guide provides an overview of the specific security-relevant information that applies to the SAP *Bank Communication Management* including the SAP *Integration Package for SWIFT* .

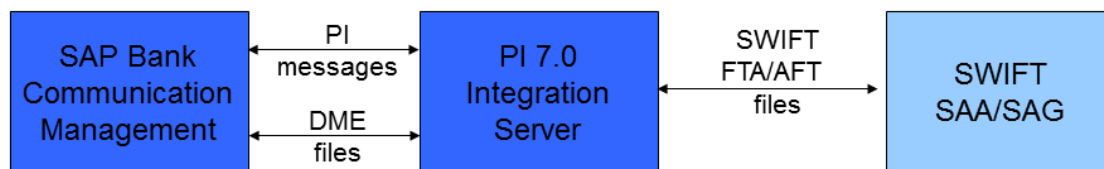
#### 13.3.4.1.1 Technical System Landscape

##### Use

*SAP Bank Communication Management* is responsible for the creation and approval of batches, the payment status monitor and bank statement monitor. Use of the *SAP Integration package for SWIFT* is **optional** ; it

provides a file interface to the *Swift Alliance Access/Alliance Gateway* (SWIFT is **not** SAP software and not part of SAP *Bank Communication Management* ).

The figure below shows an overview of the technical system landscape for *SAP Bank Communication Management* .



For more information about recommended security zone settings, see *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide (Complete)*.

## 13.3.4.1.2 User Management

### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users under which background processing jobs run.

The user types that are required for the SAP *Bank Communication Management* include:

- Individual users  
Dialog users are used for SAP GUI for Windows connections.
- Technical users  
Communication users are used for XI communication.

### Standard Users

The table below shows the standard users that are necessary for operating the SAP *Bank Communication Management* .

System	User ID	Type	Password	Description
SAP Bank Communication Management	For example: BRMXIUSER	Communication user	You specify the initial password during the installation.  The user ID and password are stored in the XI channel for the connection.	
XI Integration Server	For example: SWIFTADMIN	Default user	You specify the initial password during the installation.	Member of user group SWIFT_ADMINISTRATOR as described in the <a href="#">SAP Integration Package for SWIFT Configuration Guide</a> .

You need to create these users before XI configuration.

Assign role SAP\_XI\_IS\_SERV\_USER to user BRMXIUSER and role SWIFT\_ADMINISTRATOR to user SWIFTADMIN.

Creation of role SWIFT\_ADMINISTRATOR is described in the [SAP Integration Package for SWIFT Configuration Guide](#) .

### 13.3.4.1.3 Communication Destinations

The table below shows an overview of the communication destinations used by SAP [Bank Communication Management](#) .

Destination	Delivered	Type	User, Authorizations
INTEGRATION_SERVER	No	RFC	XIAPPLUSER  Role SAP_XI_APPL_SERV_USER
LCRSAPRFC	No	RFC	
SAPSLDAPI	No	RFC	

These destinations are not application-specific but they are required for the operation of the Exchange Infrastructure.

## 13.3.4.1.4 Data Storage Security

Master and transaction data of *SAP Bank Communication Management* is saved in the database of the SAP system in which *SAP Bank Communication Management* is installed.

Access to this data is restricted through the authorizations for authorization object `F_STAT_MON`. You can add this authorization object to the role or user that is used by you for payment medium creation.

Payment order related transaction data is distributed to connected systems using XI, especially if the optional Integration Package for SWIFT is used.

Access to data on natural persons in particular is subject to data protection requirements and must be restricted by assigning authorizations.

### Using Logical Path and Filenames to Protect Access to the File System

*SAP Bank Communication Management* saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used by *SAP Bank Communication Management* and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

#### Logical File Names Used in SAP Bank Communication Management

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- FI\_RFEBKATO\_FILE
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - RFEBKATO
- FI\_RFEBKATX\_FILE
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - RFEBKATX
- FI\_RFEBKAT1\_FILE
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - RFEBKAT1
- FI\_RFEBESTO\_FILE
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - RFEBESTO
- FI\_RFEBLBT1\_FILE
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - RFEBLBT1
- FI\_RFEBLBT2\_FILE
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - RFEBLBT2

Parameters used in this context: <PARAM\_1> Program name



## Logical Path Name Used in SAP Bank Communication Management

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path FI\_FTE\_TEST\_FILES .

### 13.3.4.2 SAP In-House Cash (FIN-FSCM-IHC)

In the following sections you can find information about the specific security functions for the *SAP In-House Cash* (FIN-FSCM-IHC) component.

In addition, you can access further information at the following places:

For information about the specific security functions for the component *Bank Customer Accounts* (IS-B-BCA), see *Bank Customer Accounts (BCA)* [page 559] in the Banking section.

Reason: *SAP In-House Cash* (FIN-FSCM-IHC) uses *Bank Customer Accounts* as the basis for various functions.

For information about the specific security functions for the component *Bank Accounting* (FI-BL), see the under *Bank Accounting (FI-BL)* [page 78] in the Banking section.

Reason: *SAP In-House Cash* (FIN-FSCM-IHC) uses various functions of *Bank Accounting* , such as the creation of data media for central payments.

#### 13.3.4.2.1 Security Aspects of Data, Data Flow and Processes

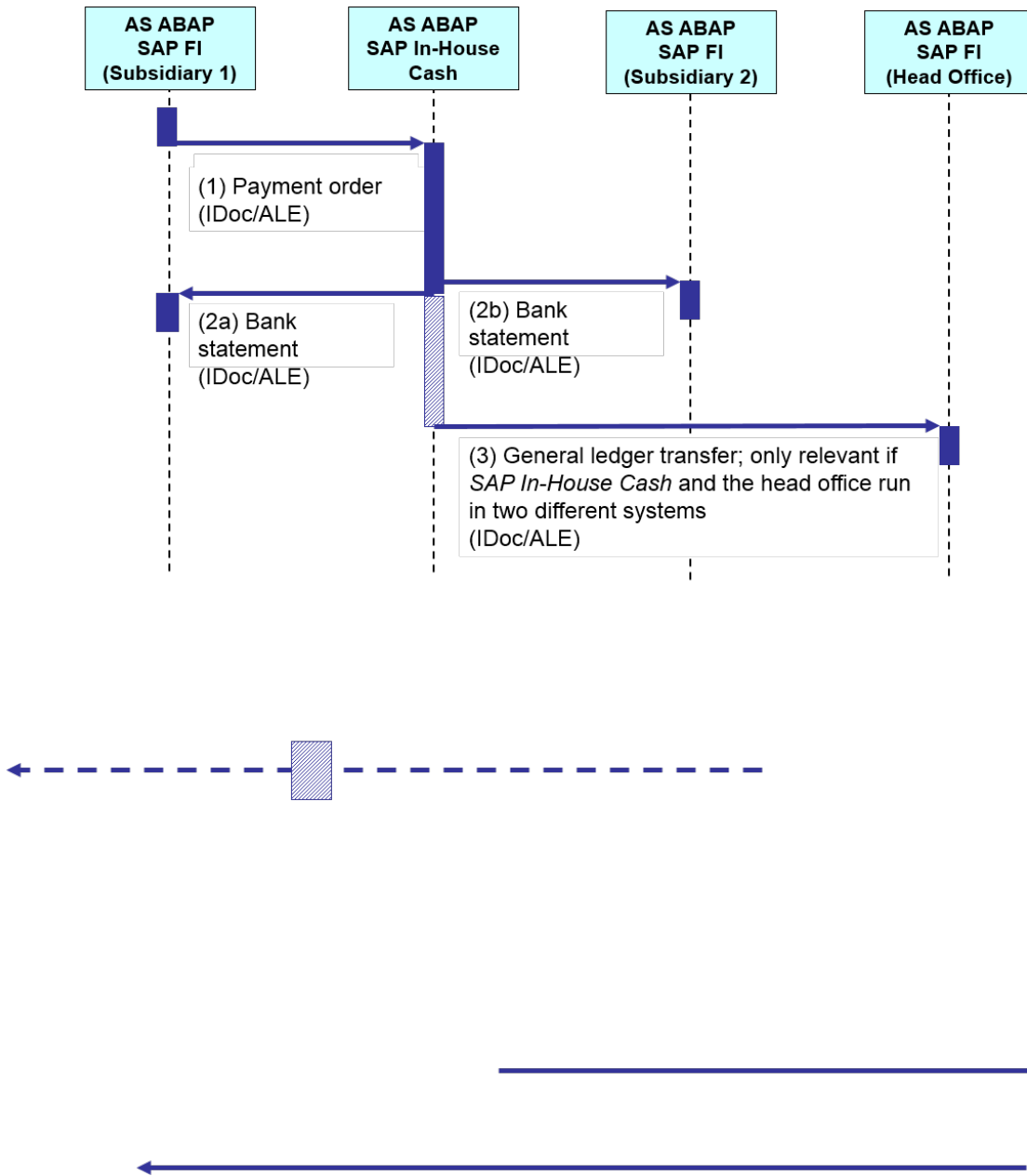
The following sections show an overview of the data flow in the processes of *SAP In-House Cash* .

##### i Note

The appropriate Security Guides apply for all of the external systems that you require when using the *SAP In-House Cash* component. Include these Security Guides in your cross-application security concept.

##### 13.3.4.2.1.1 Internal Payments

The figure below shows an overview of internal payments between two subsidiary companies and the transfer of the balances to the general ledger.



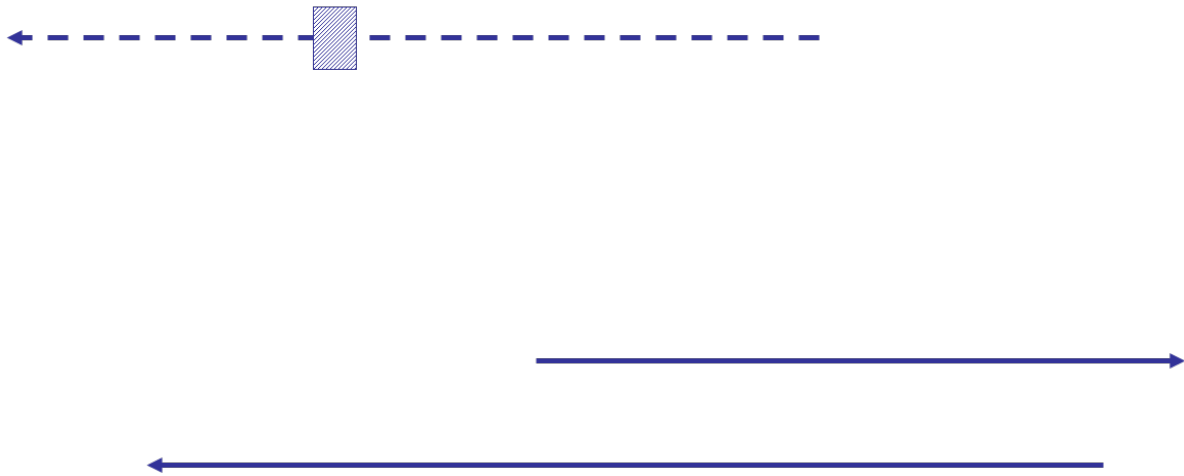
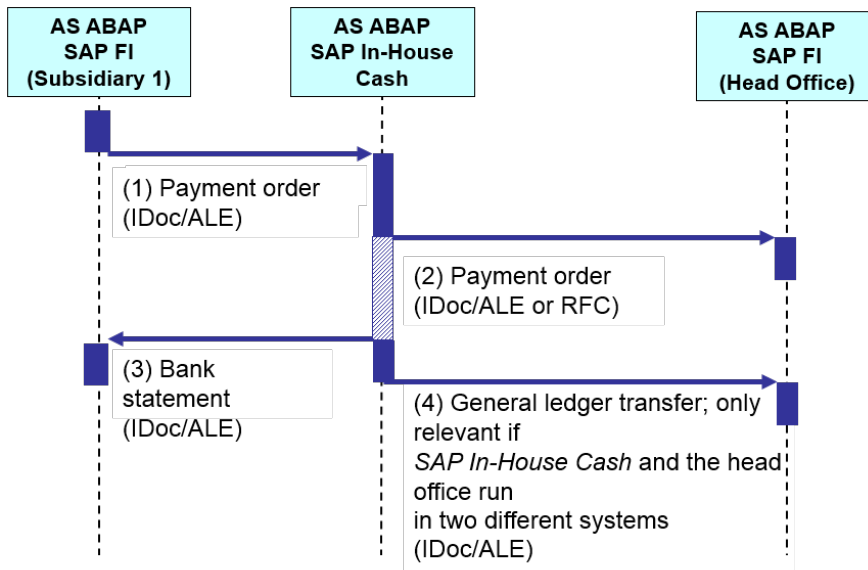
The table below shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	Payment order (IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user
2a	Bank statement (IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user

Step	Description	Security Measure
2b	Bank statement (IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user
3	General ledger transfer; only relevant if <i>SAP In-House Cash</i> and the head office are running in two different systems (IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user

### 13.3.4.2.1.2 Head Office Payments

The following figure shows an overview of the data flow if the head office takes over the payments for the payables of a single subsidiary company.



The table below shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	Payment order (IDoc/ ALE )	User type: dialog user or technical user
2	Payment order (IDoc/ ALE or RFC)	User type: dialog user or technical user

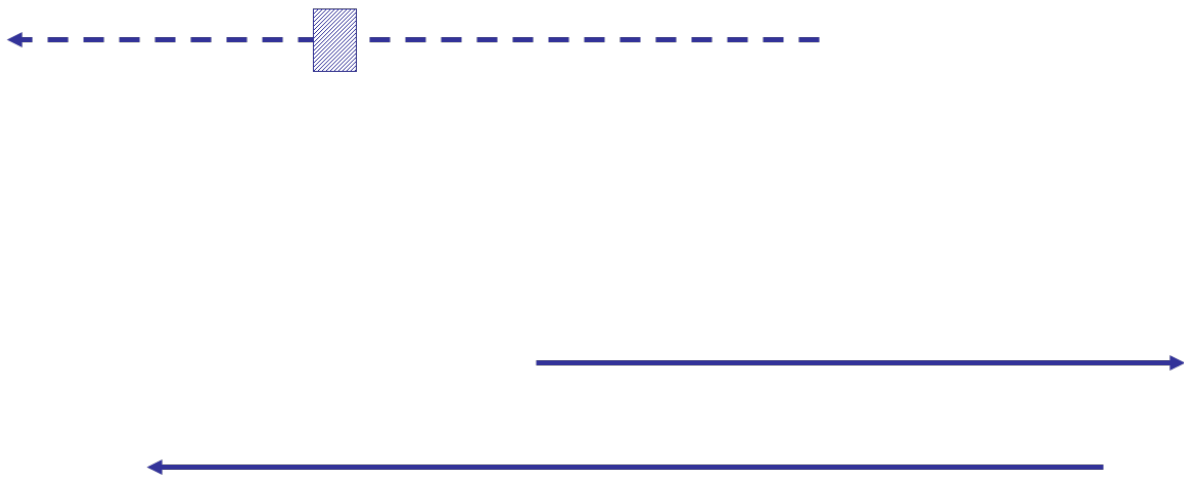
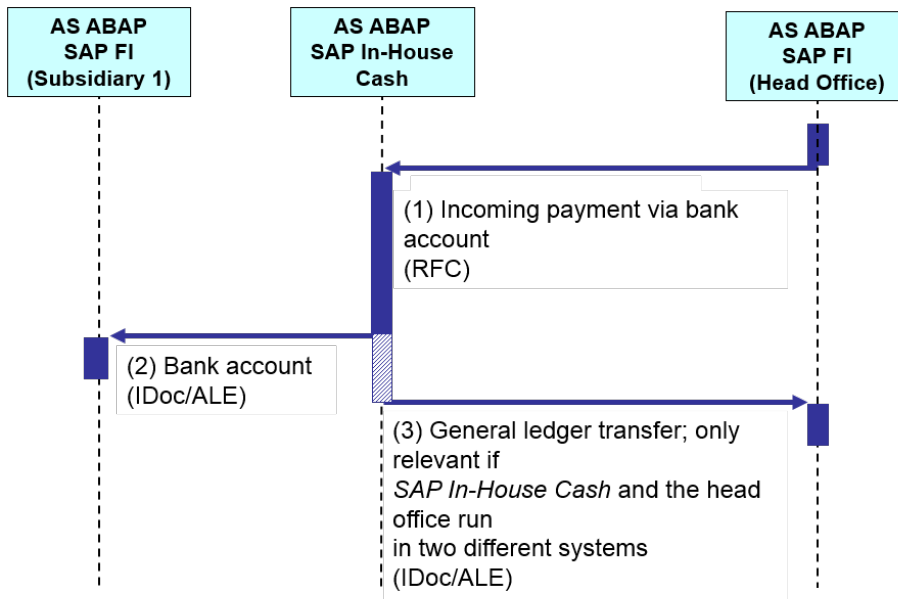
Step	Description	Security Measure
3	Bank statement (IDoc/ ALE )	User type: dialog user or technical user
4	General ledger transfer; only relevant if <i>SAP In-House Cash</i> and the head office are running in two different systems (IDoc/ ALE )	User type: dialog user or technical user

#### i Note

The type of communication for the second step depends on your settings. If you have activated the *In-House Cash (Enterprise)* (IHC\_EP) application, then communication is by RFC. Otherwise it is by IDoc/ ALE . You can find these settings in Customizing of *SAP In-House Cash* under *Basic Settings* → *Business Transaction Events/Event Control* → *Activate SAP Components* .

### 13.3.4.2.1.3 Central Incoming Payments

The figure below shows an overview of an incoming payment that is intended for a subsidiary company of the head office.



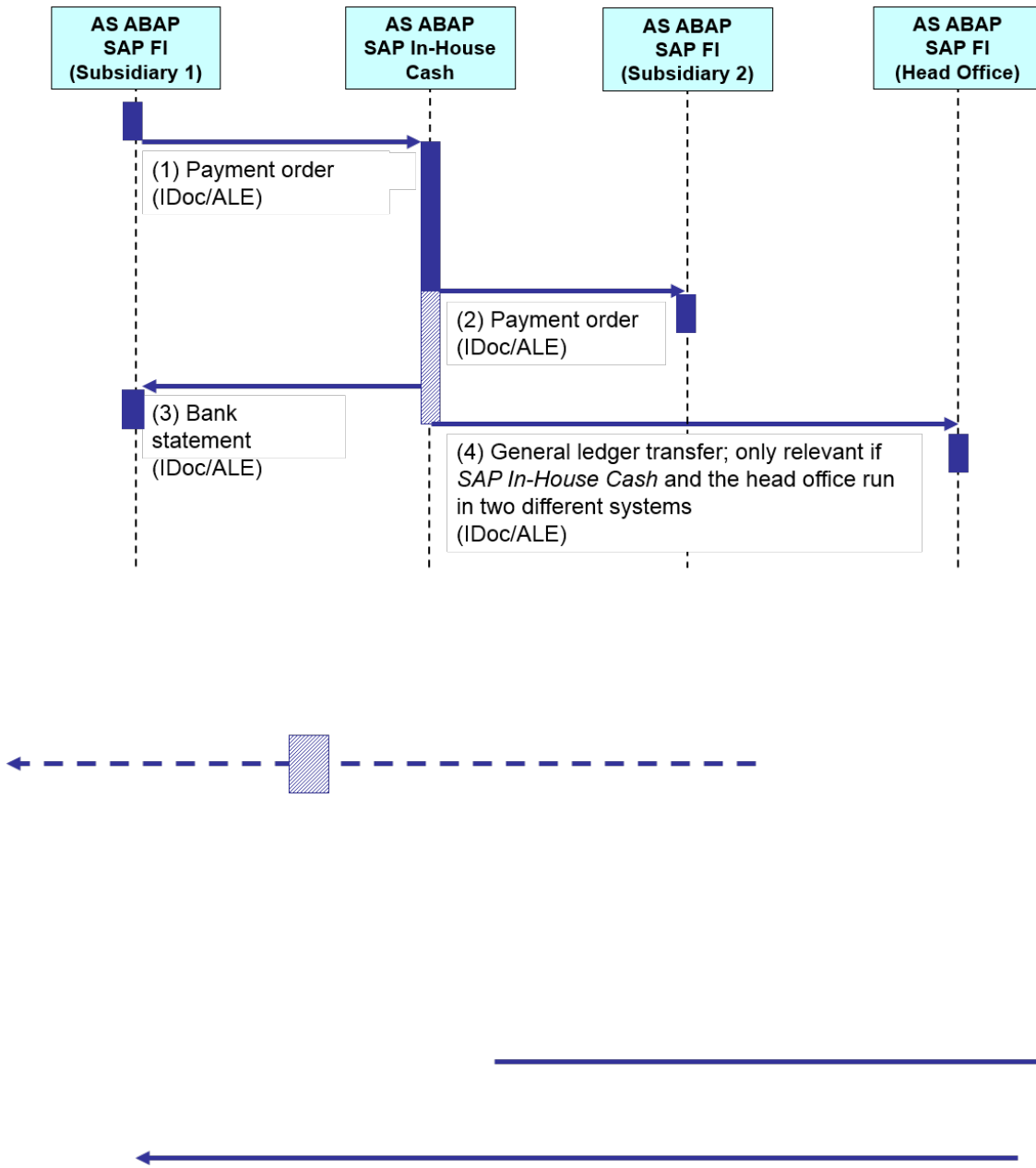
The table below shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	Incoming payment via bank statement (RFC)	Access authorization via RFC user
2	Bank statement (IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user

Step	Description	Security Measure
3	General ledger transfer; only relevant if <a href="#">SAP In-House Cash</a> and the head office are running in two different systems  (IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user

### 13.3.4.2.1.4 Local Payments

The figure below shows an overview of the data flow if a subsidiary company uses the house bank of a different subsidiary company for its payment that is located in the country of the payment recipient. This avoids having to make a foreign payment. The process flow is similar to [Head Office Payments \[page 99\]](#) .



The table below shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	Payment order(IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user
2	Payment order(IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user
3	Bank statement(IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user



Step	Description	Security Measure
4	General ledger transfer; only relevant if <i>SAP In-House Cash</i> and the head office are running in two different systems (IDoc/ALE)	User type: dialog user or technical user

## 13.3.4.3 Cash and Liquidity Management

### Network and Communication Security

Communication with external systems is possible using standard interfaces via BAPI, IDoc, and XI.

#### Communication Destinations

In certain cases, a technical user may be required for the use of BAPIs.

#### Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For more information, see [Internet Communication Framework Security \(ICF\) \[page 105\]](#).

#### Data Storage Security

You can use logical path and file names to protect access to the file system. For more information, see [Data Storage Security \[page 107\]](#).

### 13.3.4.3.1 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For Cash and Liquidity Management, the following services are needed:

- Web Dynpro services
  - WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_ACC\_MASTER
  - WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_ACC\_REVIEW

- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_ADAPT\_SIGN
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_BANK\_DATA
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_CHGREQ
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_HIERARCHY
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_HIER\_BP
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_HIER\_MAINTAIN
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_MASS\_CHANGE
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_REVIEW\_REPORT
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_REQOVERVIEW
- WDA\_FCLM\_REPORT
- WDA\_FCLM\_UPLOAD\_DOWNLOAD
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_SENTITEMS
- WD\_FCLM\_FPM\_OVP\_CFA
- WD\_FCLM\_FPM\_OVP\_FD
- WD\_FCLM\_FPM\_OVP\_FO
- Workflow services
  - ibo\_wda\_inbox
  - swf\_formabsenc
  - swf\_workplace
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_DOCUMENT
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_INBOX
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_SIGNOFF
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_CHANGE
  - USMD\_CREQUEST\_PROTOCOL2
  - USMD\_SSW\_RULE
  - USMD\_WF\_NAVIGATION
- POWL services
  - POWL
  - POWL\_COLLECTOR
  - powl\_composite
  - POWL\_EASY
  - POWL\_ERRORPAGE
  - POWL\_MASTER\_QUERY
  - POWL\_PERS\_COMP

Use the transaction **sicf** to activate these services. If your firewalls use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly. For more information about ICF security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.3.4.3.2 Data Storage Security

### Using Logical Paths and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Cash and Liquidity Management saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following list shows the logical paths and file names that are used in Cash and Liquidity Management and the programs for which these file names and paths apply. The logical paths and file names have been created to activate the validation of physical file names:

**Logical file names** used in Cash and Liquidity Management:

- FCLM\_CM\_MEMO\_RECORD\_EXPORT
  - Name of the program that uses this logical file name:  
RFTS6510\_CREATE\_STRUCTURE (transaction RFTS6510CS)
  - Parameters used in this context:  
No parameters
  - Logical path name:  
FCLM\_CM\_MEMO\_RECORD\_EXPORT
- FCLM\_CM\_MEMO\_RECORD\_IMPORT
  - Name of the program that uses this logical file name:  
RFTS6510 (transaction RFTS6510)
  - Parameters used in this context:  
No parameters
  - Logical path name:  
FCLM\_CM\_MEMO\_RECORD\_IMPORT

#### Activating the Validation of Logical Paths and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-dependent). To determine which paths are used by your system, you can activate the appropriate settings in the Security Audit Log.

## 13.3.4.3.3 Data Protection

## 13.3.4.3.3.1 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

Cash and Liquidity Management might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries.

You can use [SAP Information Lifecycle Management](#) (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data.

With Cash and Liquidity Management, SAP provides where-used checks (WUC) for you to identify data that are no longer in use.

For information about the Customizing of blocking and deletion, see [Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion](#).

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Cash and Liquidity Management itself does not directly use SAP ILM. But the integrated source applications, which have to comply with retention periods, use SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data.

Cash and Liquidity Management, however, provides the program [Aggregate Flows](#), which helps to reduce the data volume in database table `FQM_FLOW` for One Exposure from Operations.

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
One Exposure from Operations	<p>You use this transaction to delete flows with certainty level <code>ACTUAL</code> in One Exposure and substitute them with aggregation flows. They then no longer contain any person-related information.</p> <p>For more information, see the corresponding program documentation.</p>	<code>FQM_AGGREGATE_FLOWS</code>

### Where-Used Check (WUC)

A where-used check is a simple check to ensure data integrity in case of potential blocking. The checks in Cash and Liquidity Management check whether any dependent data for a certain business partner exists in the related tables.

If dependent data exists, that is, if the data is still required for business activities, the system does not block a certain BP. If you still want to block the data, the dependent data must be deleted by using the existing archiving and deletion tools or by using any other customer-specific solution.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

For the following application object, a where-used check (WUC) supporting the blocking of business partner master data is available:

Application	Related Table	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)
One Exposure from Operations	FQM_FLOW	WUC with function module FQM_BUPA_WUC_CHECK
Bank Relationship Management	FCLM_BAM_AMD FCLM_BAM_BNKABP2	WUC with function module FIN_FSCM_CLM_BAM

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management under [Cross-Application Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) > [Authorization Management](#).
- Check the following settings for blocking in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking of Data](#) > [Business Partner](#).
  - Under *Register Application Names for EoP Check* (view V\_BUTEOPAPP) you find *One Exposure from Operations* (FQM).
  - Under *Define Application Function Modules Registered for EoP Check* (view V\_BUTEOPFM) you find a list of application function modules. Each application that consumes business partners registered their function module in this view. These function modules are called by the blocking/unblocking report when performing the end-of-purpose checks.
    - FQM: Function module FQM\_BUPA\_WUC\_CHECK
    - Bank Account Management: Function module FIN\_FSCM\_CLM\_BAM

For more information about configuration, see the Customizing documentation.

### 13.3.4.4 Treasury and Risk Management

## 13.3.4.4.1 Data Storage Security

### Using Logical Paths and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

*SAP Treasury and Risk Management* (FIN-FSCM-TRM) saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following list shows the logical paths and file names that are used in *SAP Treasury and Risk Management* (FIN-FSCM-TRM) and the programs for which these file names and paths apply. The logical paths and file names have been created to activate the validation of physical file names:

Logical file names used in *SAP Treasury and Risk Management*

- FTRM\_FTR\_DEALDATA\_AMORTIZATION\_SCHEDULES\_IMPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTR\_INTF\_MAINFLOWS\_UPLOAD
    - No parameters are used in this context:
    - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_FTR\_DEALDATA\_IMPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_DF\_IMPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBDF06 [function *Datafeed: Import External Market Data in Datafeed Notation* (transaction TBD5 )]
    - No parameters are used in this context:
    - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_DF\_IMPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_DF\_SECURITIES\_IDS\_IMPORT\_FOR\_CUSTOMIZING
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBDF05 [function *Datafeed: Import Security ID Numbers* (transaction TBD2 )]
    - No parameters are used in this context:
    - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_DF\_IMPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_REQUEST\_LIST\_EXPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBFF01 [function *Market Data File Interface: Generate Rates and Prices Request List* (transaction TBDN )]
    - No parameters are used in this context:
    - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_EXPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_IMPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBFF01 [function *Market Data File Interface: Import Rates and Prices* (transaction TBDM )]
    - No parameters are used in this context:
    - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_IMPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_ERRORLOG\_EXPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBFF01 [function *Market Data File Interface: Import Rates and Prices* (transaction TBDM )]
    - No parameters are used in this context:

- The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_EXPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_SECURITIES\_YEAR\_END\_PRICES\_IMPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFDWZFFO
  - No parameters are used in this context:
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_IMPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_STATISTICS\_IMPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBFF20 [function *Market Data File Interface: Import Statistics Data* (transaction TVMD )]
  - No parameters are used in this context:
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_IMPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_TEMP\_TCURC\_EXPORT (*Treasury: Sequential Output File for TCURC*)
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RZKLAODC
  - No parameters are used in this context:
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_TEMP\_EXPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_TEMP\_TCURT\_EXPORT (*Treasury: Sequential Output File for TCURT*)
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RZKLAODT
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_TEMP\_EXPORT.
- FTRM\_FTR\_RED\_SCHEDULE (*Treasury: Redemption Schedule Parser*)
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - FTBAS\_SCHEDULE\_BATCH\_LOAD
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_FTR\_RED\_SCHEDULE.
- FTRM\_AN\_LIMIT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBLBI1 (*Batch Input Report for Creating Limits* )
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_AN\_LIMIT.
- FTRM\_AN\_INT\_LIMIT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBLBI1 (*Batch Input Report for Creating Limits*)
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_AN\_INT\_LIMIT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_DERIVATIVE\_PRICES\_ERRORLOG\_EXPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBFF30 (*Import DTB Derivative Prices*: transaction TVDT )
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_EXPORT.
- FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_DERIVATIVE\_PRICES\_IMPORT
  - Program that uses this logical file name:
    - RFTBFF30 (*Import DTB Derivative Prices*: transaction TVDT )
  - No parameters are used in this context.

- The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TCR\_MARKETDATA\_FF\_IMPORT.
- FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_DER
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - RJBDBTC3 (*Batch Input for Derivatives* )
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_DER.
- FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_MM
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - RJBDBTC2 (*Batch Input for Derivatives*)
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_MM.
- FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_FX
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - RJBDBTC1 (*Batch Input for FX Transactions* )
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_FX.
- FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_ERR\_FILE
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - Include MJBEHF01
  - No parameters are used in this context.
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_AN\_BATCH\_INPUT\_ERR\_FILE.
- FTRM\_TARO\_SEND
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - R\_TLR\_TARO\_SEND
  - No parameters are used in this context:
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TARO\_SEND (this is where the send program puts the files to be sent to the repository)
- FTRM\_TARO\_IMPORT
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - R\_TLR\_TARO\_IMPORT and R\_TLR\_TARO\_IMPORT\_REPORTS
  - No parameters are used in this context:
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TARO\_IMPORT (this is where the system expects files sent by the repository)
- FTRM\_TARO\_ARCHIVE
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - R\_TLR\_TARO\_IMPORT and R\_TLR\_TARO\_IMPORT\_REPORTS
  - No parameters are used in this context:
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TARO\_ARCHIVE (this is where imported files are stored if they were successfully imported)
- FTRM\_TARO\_ERROR
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - R\_TLR\_TARO\_IMPORT and R\_TLR\_TARO\_IMPORT\_REPORTS
  - No parameters are used in this context:
  - The logical file name uses the logical file path FTRM\_TARO\_ERROR (this is where imported files are stored if they were NOT successfully imported but caused an error)



## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log. For more information, see about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.3.4.4.2 Deletion of Personal Data in Treasury and Risk Management

The financial transactions portrayed in the Treasury and Risk Management are B2B transactions between your company and banks, financial institutions, brokers, or similar institutions. Likewise, the master data required for the processes in the Treasury and Risk Management relate to companies and financial institutions. In the Treasury and Risk Management, checks are implemented which do not allow using business partners which are natural persons. If you use business partners which are natural persons in the Treasury and Risk Management, you will get the following error message: *You cannot assign bus. partner &1 because the partner is a natural person* (message class `TI`, message number `031`). Consequently, the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data in *Treasury and Risk Management* using *SAP Information Lifecycle Management* (SAP ILM) is not needed in the Treasury and Risk Management, but also supported with an end of purpose check (function module `TRTM_BUPA_EOP_CHECK`).

#### i Note

If you use the *Treasury and Risk Management* to portray financial transactions with natural persons or your usage of the *Treasury and Risk Management* involves natural persons in other ways, you need to deploy separate supplementary technical and organizational measures to ensure that you respect the deadlines governing the storage and deletion of personal data. If these prerequisites are fulfilled, you can suppress the error message of these checks for natural persons by switching off the configurable message `031` of application area `TI` in Customizing activity *Change Message Control* under **Treasury and Risk Management** > *Transaction Manager* > *General Settings* > *Tools* > *Configurable Messages*.

If you only use Risk Management to analyze Transaction Manager data, it also applies that simplified blocking and deletion of personal data in Transaction Manager through SAP Information Lifecycle Management (SAP ILM) is not necessary; nevertheless, a where-used check (function module `RM_BUPA_WUC_CHECK`) is also available for this purpose.

If you use Risk Management to analyze data that also contains data on natural persons or your use of Risk Management otherwise involves natural persons, you must ensure you adhere to the retention period for personal data and its subsequent deletion by taking appropriate technical and administrative measures of your own.

## Trader and Contact Person

- **Traders**  
In the Transaction Manager, you define traders. These traders get authorizations and your employees in role Treasury Specialist - Front Office, which create financial transactions, get assigned a trader to their user. The trader name is visible in the financial transaction data. As the trader is part of the financial transaction data, the table entries for a trader are archived together with the financial transaction data. When a specific trader is not needed anymore, for example, the employee left your company, you remove the authorization for the trader using function *Trader Authorization* (transaction `TBT1`). In addition, you delete the entries for the user in the Customizing under *Define User Data*. If all financial transactions created by the trader are archived, you can delete the trader in the Customizing under *Define Trader*. You can use the function *Display Where-Used List of Traders* (transaction `FTR_DIS_TRADER`) to see in which tables a specific trader is entered.
- **Contact Persons**  
It is possible to enter the name of a contact person in financial transactions. These names are part of financial transaction data and archived together with the financial transactions. You can use the function *Display Where-Used List of Contact Persons* (transaction `FTR_DIS_CONTPERS`) to see in which tables a specific contact person is entered.

## Related Information

[Business Partner End of Purpose \(EoP\) Check in TRM - Transaction Manager \(FIN-FSCM-TRM-TM\) \[page 114\]](#)

### 13.3.4.4.2.1 Business Partner End of Purpose (EoP) Check in TRM - Transaction Manager (FIN-FSCM-TRM-TM)

The Transaction Manager (FIN-FSCM-TRM-TM) of the Treasury and Risk Management provides an (EoP) check to determine whether a business partner is still relevant for business activities in the application or can be blocked.

Application Name	Application Description	Business Partner Type
TRM-TM	Treasury and Risk Management - Transaction Manager	Business Partner

## Prerequisites

You have activated the business function *ILM-Based Deletion of Business Partner Data* (`BUFA_ILM_BF`).

## Technical Details


### ILM Objects

The EoP check evaluates retention policies and data for the following ILM objects:

- TRTM\_FTR Financial Transactions
- TRTM\_TPM Positions

### EoP Check Implementation

TRM provides the following functionality for the EoP check for business partner:

- The application searches for the following data with relation to business partners:
  - Counterparty and guarantor on table VTBFHA
  - Payer and present bank on table VTBFHAPO
  - Partner assignment on table VTBPA
  - Issuer security on table VWPANLA
  - Issuer commodity on table TRCOT\_CTY\_EXCHNG
  - Beneficiary, applicant, issuing bank, advising bank and confirming bank on table VTBFHAZU
  - Nominated bank on table TLCT\_NOMI\_BANK
- The end of business is reached when term end of related financial transaction, term end of security and term end of commodity is reached.
- The application returns the following time reference that represents the end of business date to the EoP check as Start of Retention Time (SoRT). This means that the following applies:
  - Term end with respect to each individual combination of company code and product type where the business partner is used in any of the data described above.
- The EoP check for Transaction Manager supports the use of application rule variants based on ILM rule groups: If you want to define differing residence and retention periods for business partner data depending on application specific condition fields, you can define application rule variants in Customizing at [Cross-Application Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking of Data](#) > [Business Partner](#) > [Assign Application Rule Variants and Rule Groups for EoP Check for Transaction Manager TRM-TM](#)  In this Customizing activity, you assign the application rule variants to ILM rule groups that you have created in transaction IRM\_CUST\_CSS (Information Retention Manager - Calling Customer-Specific Settings). To determine the retention rules, the ILM rule groups must also be entered in the corresponding retention rules for the ILM objects of Treasury and Risk Manangement in transaction IRMPOL (ILM Policies).
- The EoP check for Transaction Manager calculates the end of residence time (representing the EoP) based on residence periods maintained for ILM object CA\_BUPA that is active for audit area BUPA\_DP for the application name TRM-TM and the existing rule variants.

## Handling of Archived Data

Transaction Manager considers archived data in the following way for the EoP check of business partners:

- The EoP check implementation also considers data from archive files through the archive information system.

## See Also

For more information, see on SAP Help Portal for SAP S/4HANA <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> under [Product Assistance](#) > [\[Choose Language\]](#) > [Cross Components](#) > [SAP Information Lifecycle Management / Data Protection](#) >

## 13.3.5 Financial Operations

### 13.3.5.1 Contract Accounting

#### 13.3.5.1.1 Data Storage Security

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following list shows the logical file names and paths used by Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

#### Logical File Names Used in FI-CA and Logical Path Names

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

Program	Logical File Name Used by the Program	Logical Path Name Used by the Program
RFKIBI_FILE00	FICA_DATA_TRANSFER_DIR	FICA_DATA_TRANSFER_DIR
RFKIBI_FILEP01		
RFKKBI_FILEEDIT		
RFKKBIBG		
RFKKZEDG		
RFKKRLDG		

RFKKCMDG		
RFKKCRDG		
RFKKAVDG		
RFKKBIB0		
RFKKZE00		
RFKKRL00		
RFKKCM00		
RFKKCR00		
RFKKAV00		
RFKKKA00		
RFKKBIT0		
RFKKPCSF	FI-CA-CARD-DATA-S	FI-CA-CARD-DATA-S
RFKKPCDS		
RFKKCVSPAY	FI-CA-CVS	FI-CA-CVS
RFKK_CVSPAY_CONFIRM		
RFKKCVSCONFIRMDB		
RFKK_CVSPAY_CONFIRM_TEST		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_EXP	FI-CA-DOC-EXTRACT-DIR	FI-CA-DOC-EXTRACT-DIR
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_AEXP		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_IMP		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_EXTR		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR		
RFKK_DOC_EXTR_DEL		
Class CL_FKK_TEXT_FILE		
RFKKBIXBITUPLOAD	FI-CA-BI-SAMPLE FI-CA-BI-SAMPLE-DIR	FI-CA-BI-SAMPLE-DIR
RFKKCOL2	FI-CA-COL-SUB	FI-CA-COL-SUB

RFKKCOLL		
Transaction FP03DM (Mass Activity)		
Transaction FPCI (Mass Activity)	FI-CA-COL-INFO	FI-CA-COL-INFO
RFKKCOPM	FI-CA-COL-READ	FI-CA-COL-READ
READFILE		
RFKKCOPG	FI-CA-COL-TEST	FI-CA-COL-TEST
RFKKRDI_REPORT	FI-CA-RDI	FI-CA-RDI
RFKKRDI_REPORT_DIS		
SAPFKPY3	FI-CA-DTA-NAME	FI-CA-DTA-NAME
RFKKCHK01	FI-CA-CHECKS-EXTRACT	FI-CA-CHECKS-EXTRACT
Class CL_FKK_INFICO_SEND	FI-CA-INFICO	FI-CA-INFICO
RFKKBE_SAL1	FICA_BE_SAL	FICA_BE_SAL
RFKKBE_SAL2	FICA_BE_SAL_XML	FICA_BE_SAL_XML
RFKK1099	FI-CA-1099	FI-CA-1099
RFKKOP03	FICA_OPEN_ITEMS	FICA_OPEN_ITEMS
RFKKOP04		
RFKKOP07		
RFKKES_SAL1	FICA_TAX_REP_GEN	FICA_TAX_REP_GEN
RFKKES_SAL2		
RFKKRDI_REPORT	FI-CA-RDI	FI-CA-RDI
RFKKRDI_REPORT_DIS		
Transaction EMIGALL	ISMW_FILE	ISMW_ROOT

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out

which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information about data storage security, see the chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.3.5.1.2 Data Protection

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) processes personal data of business partners that might be subject to data protection legislation applicable in some countries.

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of this personal data. SAP delivers an end of purpose check for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA). You register the end of purpose check (EoP) in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of the SAP Business Partner.

#### Display of Blocked Data

Only if a user has special authorization, is it possible to display blocked business partner master data. However, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on this blocked business partner data.

However, FI-CA-specific data relating to a blocked business partner (as for example the contract account) users can display without having special authorization.

For more information on the blocking and deletion of personal data, on the end of purpose check and on displaying blocked data in Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable, see the Product Assistance of Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable under [▶ Basic Functions ▶ SAP Business Partner ▶ Blocking and Deleting Personal Data ▶](#).

#### Process Flow

Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM). You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available. You do the following:

1. Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: `CA_BUPA`).
2. Run transaction `FDPDR_BP_INIT` once for existing business partners for which you want to execute the end of purpose checks. New business partners you create are automatically included in the end of purpose checks.
3. Run transaction `FDPDR1` to prepare the end of purpose check of the central business partner. The function module `MKK_BUPA_EOP_CHECK` saved for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) in table `BUTEOPFM` provides the EoP check result obtained by transaction `FDPDR1` to transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP`.
4. Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.

Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.

If you have the needed authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP`.

You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA).

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under *Data Protection*.

Define the settings for authorization management under *Authorization Management*. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.

Define the settings for blocking under *Blocking and Unblocking Business Partner*. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.

You configure the settings specific for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable in the Customizing for Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable under ► *Technical Settings* ► *Data Protection* ▾ and *Data Deletion*. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.

## 13.3.5.1.3 Payment Card Security According to PCI-DSS

### Note

The **Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS)** was jointly developed by major credit card companies in order to create a set of common industry security requirements for the protection of cardholder data. Compliance with this standard is relevant for companies processing credit card data. For more information, see <http://www.pcisecuritystandards.org> .

The following sections of the security guide support you in implementing payment card security aspects and outline steps that need to be considered to be compliant with the PCI-DSS.

Please note that the PCI-DSS covers more than the steps and considerations given here. Complying with the PCI-DSS lies completely within the customer's responsibility, and we cannot guarantee the customer's compliance with the PCI-DSS.

For current information about PCI-DSS in general, see SAP Note [1609917](#) .

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) processes all payment transactions with your business partners. For this purpose, Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable also processes credit card data. For processing credit card transactions, Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable follows the rules laid down by the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

Credit card data arrives in Contract Accounts Receivable in the following ways:

- You receive documents, which already contain credit card data in their supplements, by means of the IDoc interface or by means of BAPIs.
- You receive payments that already contain credit card data with the payment lot transfer program (RFKKZE00).
- External payment collectors and external cash desk services transfer credit card data using enterprise services with the payment to Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable.
- Financial Customer Care transfers credit card data for documents from SAP Customer Relationship Management using RFC.
- Customers or your employees add credit card data as follows:
  - Employees enter credit card data in the master records of business partners and prepaid accounts.
  - Employees enter payment card data in the *Maintain Bank Data* (FPP4) transaction.



- Employees enter credit card data for payments in the cash desk, in the cash journal, in payment specifications and in promises to pay.
- Customers enter credit card data online in SAP Biller Direct. SAP Biller Direct transfers the data to Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable.
- You adopt billable items with payment information using the generated RFC interfaces `/1FE/<billable item class>_BIT_CREATE_API`.

The program for payment (such as the payment run or the cash desk) generates payment documents with supplements containing the credit card data. Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable transfers this credit card data to the payment card company or the clearing house using transaction `FPPCDS` (creation of file) or `FPCS` (online transfer).

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable stores the data as follows:

Object	Table(s)
Business Partner Master Record	BUT0CC CCARD
Payments in Payment Lot or Credit Card Lot	DFKKZP
Document	DFKKOPC DFKKOPKC DFKK_PCARD
Payment Data for a Payment Run	DPAYH
Payment Data for a Payment Using SAP Biller Direct or Financial Customer Care	DFKKOPC
Payment Specifications	DFKKIP_GRP
Promises to pay	DFKKPPD_PAY
Master Record of Prepaid Account	FKKPREPACC
Billable Items	Generated tables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <code>/1FE/0&lt;billable item class&gt;OPY</code></li> <li>● <code>/1FE/0&lt;billable item class&gt;1PY</code></li> </ul>

You must restrict the display of the necessary objects by assigning authorizations, while at the same time ensuring that this authorization protection cannot be circumvented by database programs or customer-specific ABAP reports.

You can also make additional security settings for payment card data. For more information, see SAP Note [1032588](#) and the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide, section "Payment Card Security".

### Archiving

Only masked credit card information can be archived. Clear text credit card information should not be archived. Archiving encrypted credit card information is problematic because archived data should not be changed.

Encrypted credit card information has to be re-encrypted with a different key, for example, with key rotation, as required by PCI-DSS. This change of data is not possible in an archive.

In technologies that are agnostic to the semantics of the data, such as Process Integration (PI), ABAP Web Services, or Forward Error Handling (FEH), archiving has to be disabled. IDocs that contain credit card information should not be archived.

## Interfaces (IDoc/Services)

### ⚠ Caution

According to PCI-DSS, IDoc segments are not allowed to store payment card numbers in clear text. However, during processing of an IDoc in the IDoc Framework, all values are stored temporarily, including the clear text credit card number. For more information about how to process own IDocs containing credit card information, see the SAP NetWeaver SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under [▶ Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies](#) > [Security Guide ALE \(ALE Applications\) in SAP NetWeaver Release 7.30](#).

If you exchange data between systems using IDoc messages, and this data contains unencrypted credit card information, you have to implement access restrictions and a deletion concept at the level of the file system.

Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable processes payment card data in the following interfaces:

Type of Interface	Technical Name	Description
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACPREPAIDACCOUNT_CREA	<i>BAPI - FI-CA Prepaid Account: Create</i>
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACPREPAIDACCOUNT_CHNG	<i>BAPI - FI-CA Prepaid Account: Change</i>
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACPREPAIDACCOUNT_GETD	<i>BAPI - FI-CA Prepaid Account: Read detailed data</i>
BAPI	BAPI_CTRACDOCUMENT_CREATE	<i>BAPI: FI-CA Post Document</i>
RFC	FKK_PREP_PCARD_STORE	<i>Prepaid: Store Payment Data in DFKK_PCARD</i>
RFC	Event 1421 (function module FKK_SAMPLE_1421)	<i>Parallel Billing Call Settlement</i>
RFC	FKK_BUPA_MAINTAIN_SINGLE	<i>Maintain Business Partner</i>
RFC	/1FE/<billable item class>_BIT_CREATE_API	Generated RFC interfaces for transferring billable items with payment information
Enterprise Service	CashPointPaymentCreateNotification_In	<i>External Cash Point Payment</i>
Web Service	ECC_CASHPOINTPAYMENTCRTNO	<i>External Cash Point Payment</i>

<b>File</b>	Report RFKKPCDS	<i>Payment cards: Settlement</i>
<b>ALE/IDoc</b>	ALE_CTRACDOCUMENT_CREATE	<i>BAPI -&gt; IDoc: ALE_CTRACDOCUMENT_CREATE(FI- CA Post document)</i>

## RFC Debugging

### ⚠ Caution

Disable RFC debugging when you process credit card information in a productive system. Do not activate the *Set RFC Trace* option in your productive system. If this option is active, the system saves all input data of an RFC call in clear text to a file. If credit card numbers (PAN) are included in calls to some function module, then this data would be stored to this file. Since these numbers have to be stored encrypted according to the PCI-DSS standard, activating this option would result in no longer being PCI compliant.

## Forward Error Handling (FEH)

### ⚠ Caution

Disable Forward Error Handling for all services that contain credit card numbers in SAP Customizing.

## Card Verification Values (CVV)

### ⚠ Caution

Do not process asynchronous services that contain a card verification code (CAV2, CID, CVC2, CVV2) or their values.

Note that in SAP services, these values correspond to the GDT `.PaymentCardVerificationValueText`. The reason is that the payload of asynchronous services is persisted in the database until the service is processed and persisting card verification values is not allowed according to PCI-DSS.

Synchronous services can be processed because their payload is not persisted.

## Access Logs

You can configure your system so that it logs access to payment card data via Dynpro and Web Dynpro. You make the settings in the SAP Customizing Implementation Guide under [▶ Cross-Application Components ▶ Payment Cards ▶ Basic Settings ▶ Make Security Settings for Payment Cards](#). Choose a security level for which payment card data is to be displayed masked, and set the indicator *Additional authorization check for masked display*.

You can use the `CCSEC_LOG_SHOW` transaction to evaluate access to payment card data. To evaluate the access log, a user requires authorization for activity 71 of authorization object `B_CCSEC`.

For payment card data, you can also use Read Access Logging (RAL), which covers a large number of access channels, such as Remote Function Call and Web services.

## 13.3.5.2 Settlement Management

### 13.3.5.2.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Settlement Management

The Settlement Management (LO-AB) application might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Customer Settlement List	<p>See the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Document Categories in Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Customer Settlement List</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object AB_DOCUMENT assigned to archiving object WBU.</p> <p>For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Functions for Document Processing</i> ► <i>Archiving of Settlement Management Documents</i> ► <i>Customer Settlement Lists (LO-AB)</i> ►.</p> <p>Report: WLF_UPDATE_AB_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE</p>

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Customer Settlement	<p><a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>For more information see the product assistance for SAP Document Categories in Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Customer Settlement</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object AB_DOCUMENT assigned to archiving object WCI.</p> <p>For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Functions for Document Processing</i> ► <i>Archiving of Settlement Management Documents</i> ► <i>Customer Settlements (LO-AB)</i> ►.</p> <p>Report: WLF_UPDATE_AB_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE .</p>
Supplier Billing Document	<p>See the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Document Categories in Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Supplier Billing Document</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object AB_DOCUMENT assigned to archiving object WLF.</p> <p>For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Functions for Document Processing</i> ► <i>Archiving of Settlement Management Documents</i> ► <i>Supplier Billing Documents (LO-AB)</i> ►.</p> <p>Report: WLF_UPDATE_AB_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE .</p>

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Settlement Document List	<p>See the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Document Categories in Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Settlement Document List</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object AB_DOCUMENT assigned to archiving object WRECH.</p> <p>For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Functions for Document Processing</i> ► <i>Archiving of Settlement Management Documents</i> ► <i>Settlement Document Lists (LO-AB)</i> ►.</p> <p>Report: WLF_UPDATE_AB_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE .</p>
Supplier Settlement List	<p>See the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Document Categories in Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Supplier Settlement List</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object AB_DOCUMENT assigned to archiving object WREG.</p> <p>For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Functions for Document Processing</i> ► <i>Archiving of Settlement Management Documents</i> ► <i>Supplier Settlement Lists (LO-AB)</i> ►.</p> <p>Report: WLF_UPDATE_AB_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE .</p>

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Expense Settlement	<p>See the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Document Categories in Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Expense Settlement</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object AB_DOCUMENT assigned to archiving object WSI.</p> <p>For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Functions for Document Processing</i> ► <i>Archiving of Settlement Management Documents</i> ► <i>Expense Settlements (LO-AB)</i> ►.</p> <p>Report: WLF_UPDATE_AB_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE .</p>
Settlement Document	<p>See the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Document Categories in Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Settlement Document</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object AB_DOCUMENT assigned to archiving object WZR.</p> <p>For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Functions for Document Processing</i> ► <i>Archiving of Settlement Management Documents</i> ► <i>Settlement Documents (LO-AB)</i> ►.</p> <p>Report: WLF_UPDATE_AB_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE .</p>

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Condition Contract	<p>See the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Finance</i> ► <i>Financial Operations</i> ► <i>Settlement Management</i> ► <i>Condition Contract Management</i> ► <i>Condition Contract</i> ►.</p>	<p>ILM object WCB_COCO assigned to archiving object WCB_COCO.</p> <p>Report: WCB_UPDATE_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE.</p>

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Settlement Management (LO-AB)	End of purpose (EoP) check	SAP delivers an end of purpose check for Settlement Management (LO-AB). All applications register either an end of purpose (EoP) check in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of business partner data or a where-used check (WUC). For information about the Customizing of blocking and deletion for LO-AB, see <i>Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion</i> .

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings the related to the blocking and deletion of customer and supplier master data in Customizing for *Logistics - General* under ► *Business Partner* ► *Deletion of Customer and Supplier Master Data*. ►.

## 13.3.6 Real Estate Management



## 13.3.6.1 Real Estate Management

### Authorizations

#### Standard Roles of Real Estate Management

Role	Description
SAP_RE_APPL	Real Estate Management (including administration and Customizing)
SAP_EP_RW_REFX_I	AC - Flexible Real Estate Management
SAP_EP_RW_REFX_II	AC - Flexible Real Estate Management - support processes

### Network and Communication Security

External heating expenses settlement is available in Real Estate Management. To make this settlement possible, the necessary files must be generated in the SAP system in an internal SAP format. You then need to send the data medium to the settlement company.

### Trace and Log Files

The change documents provide information on changes to the authorization group and to the person responsible for the object.

### Data Storage Security

#### Using Logical Paths and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Flexible Real Estate Management (RE-FX) saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths that are used by Flexible Real Estate Management (RE-FX), and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

#### Logical File Names Used in Flexible Real Estate Management (RE-FX)

The logical file name `REFX_CREATE_TAPE` makes it possible to validate physical file names in Flexible Real Estate Management (RE-FX). The following programs use this logical file name:

- RFRESCMLTAPE
- RFRESCMLTAPECO
- RFRESCSETTLE
- RFRESCSETTLESC
- RFRESCCONTINUE
- RFRESCBOOKING
- RFRESCSETTLCO
- RFRESCCONTINUECO
- RFRESCPOSTCO

### Logical Path Names Used in Flexible Real Estate Management (RE-FX)

The logical file names of Flexible Real Estate Management (RE-FX) listed above all use the logical file path `REFX_ROOT`.

### Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

The logical paths and file names are entered in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

## 13.3.6.2 Deletion of Personal Data in RE-FX

### Use

The Flexible Real Estate Management (RE-FX) component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002)  
▶ [Product Assistance](#) ▶ [Cross Components](#) ▶ [Data Protection](#) ▶

### Relevant Archiving Objects

Archiving Object	Technical Name
Architectural Object	REFX_AO
Adjustment Measure	REFX_AT
Business Entity	REFX_BE

<b>Archiving Object</b>	<b>Technical Name</b>
Buildings	REFX_BU
Comparative Group of Apartments	REFX_CG
Real Estate Contract	REFX_CN
Cash Flow of Contracts	REFX_CNCF
Joint Liability	REFX_JL
Land Register	REFX_LR
RE: Move Planning	REFX_MP
Notice of Assessment	REFX_NA
Contract Offer	REFX_OF
Offered Object	REFX_OO
Option Rate Determination per Object/Subobject	REFX_OR
Other Public Register	REFX_PE
Participation Group	REFX_PG
Parcel of Land	REFX_PL
Property	REFX_PR
RE Document	REFX_RADOC
Parcel Update	REFX_RC
Rental Object	REFX_RO
Cash Flow of Rental Objects	REFX_ROCF
RE Search Request	REFX_RR
Reservation	REFX_RS
Recurring Reservation	REFX_RSREC
Service Charge Settlement	REFX_SCSE
Settlement Unit	REFX_SU
Correction Object	REFX_TC

## Available Check

Implemented Solution: End of Purpose (EoP) check

For more information, see SAP Note [2134204](#).

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under Data Protection.

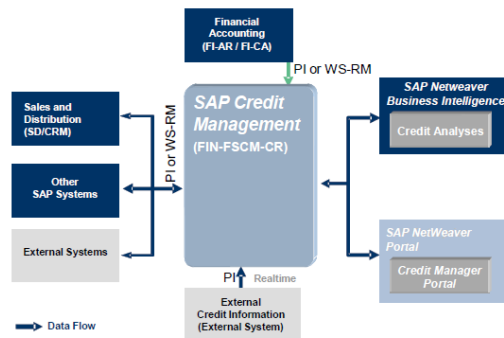
## 13.3.7 Receivables Management

### 13.3.7.1 SAP Credit Management

#### 13.3.7.1.1 Technical System Landscape

##### Use

This figure shows an overview of the technical system landscape for *SAP Credit Management*.



### Technical System Landscape

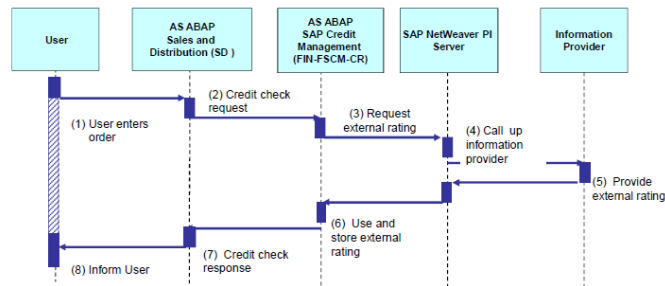
To exchange messages with external information providers, you have to use the Integration Server. For accounting systems as well as Sales and Distribution (SD) systems, you can configure the communication either via the Integration Server or via a point to point connection using Web Services Reliable Messaging (WSRM). The SAP Business Information Warehouse is connected via Remote Function Call (RFC).

For more information about recommended security zone settings, see *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide (Complete)*.

For *SAP Credit Management* the business package for the Credit Manager provides you with portal content so that you can use the functions from *SAP Credit Management* in the portal. Security-relevant information about the use of the portal content is available in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* for the usage types Enterprise Portal Core (EPC) and SAP Enterprise Portal (EP) in the portal security guide.

## 13.3.7.1.2 Security Aspects of Data, Data Flow, and Processes

This figure shows an example of a data flow for the *SAP Credit Management* application.



This table shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	User enters order	User types: dialog or internet user
2	Credit check request	Communication protocol HTTPS or HTTP
3	Request external rating	Communication protocol HTTPS or HTTP
4	Call up information provider	Communication protocol HTTPS or HTTP
5	Provide external rating	Not applicable
6	Use and store external rating	Not applicable
7	Credit check response	Communication protocol HTTPS or HTTP
8	Inform user	Not applicable

## 13.3.7.1.3 User Management

### Standard Users

This table shows the standard users that are necessary for operating *SAP Credit Management*.

System	User ID	Type	Password	Description
<i>SAP Credit Management</i> , client systems	For example, CREDITXUSER	Communication user	You specify the initial password during the installation.  The user ID and password are stored in the XI channel for the connection.	This is required for communication between <i>SAP Credit Management</i> and client systems using the XI channel.

You need to create this user before XI configuration. Assign both roles `SAP_FIN_FSCM_CR_USER` and `SAP_XI_IS_SERV_USER` to the user. The user and password are added to the XI channel logon data that you create when you configure your exchange server.

## 13.3.7.1.4 Authorizations

### Defining Authorizations

You can control the right of access to *SAP Credit Management* data by assigning authorizations – separately by credit segment and activity - to the authorization object `F_UKM_SGMT`. The fields of this authorization object are:

You can restrict the access to credit segment-independent master data of *SAP Credit Management* (for example, the score) by using the authorization object for business partner roles (`B_BUPA_RLT`) with the role Business Partner Credit Management (`UKM000`).

You can restrict the access to logs (application logs) of *SAP Credit Management* using the authorization object `S_APPL_LOG`.

For *SAP Credit Management*, the following forms are relevant for object name and subobject:

Object Name	Subobject	Meaning
FIN-FSCM-CR	BW-SCORING	Transfer of score from BW
FIN-FSCM-CR	COMMITMENT	Credit exposure update
FIN-FSCM-CR	CREDITCHECK	Credit check

Object Name	Subobject	Meaning
FIN-FSCM-CR	MONITOR	Update entries for external credit Information
FIN-FSCM-CR	SEARCH_ID	Search ID at credit information provider
FIN-FSCM-CR	REPLICATE	Replicate FI-CA score
FIN-FSCM-CR	EVENTING	Log of events occurred
FIN-FSCM-CR-MASS	ERROR	Logs of mass changes, can be differentiated by the severity of the error
	ERROR_BIG	
	ERROR_PROG	
	ERROR_UPD	
	INFO	
	STATISTICS	
	SUCCESS	
	WARNING	

### 13.3.7.1.5 Communication Destinations

#### Use

This table shows an overview of the communication destinations (RFC) used by *SAP Credit Management*.

Connection Destinations when Using the Integration Server

Destination	Delivered	User, Authorizations
INTEGRATION_SERVER	No	XIAPPLUSER  Role SAP_XI_APPL_SERV_USER
LCRSAPRFC	No	
SAPSLDAPI	No	

These destinations are not application-specific but they are required for the operation of SAP Process Integration.

For point to point connections via Web Services Reliable Messaging (WSRM), you use the SOA Manager in both systems to create the logical port and the endpoint.



## 13.3.7.1.6 Data Storage Security

### Use

Master and transaction data of *SAP Credit Management* are saved in the database of the SAP system in which *SAP Credit Management* is installed. They are not distributed to connected systems via XI, however they can be optionally extracted to SAP Business Information Warehouse.

Access to this data is restricted through the authorizations for authorization object F\_UKM\_SGMT. Authorizations for this authorization object are provided for role SAP\_FIN\_FSCM\_CR\_USER in the standard delivery; you can copy the role and adapt it as required. For more information about authorization object F\_UKM\_SGMT, see the configuration guide of *SAP Credit Management*.

Access to data on natural persons in particular is subject to data protection requirements and must be restricted by assigning authorizations.

## 13.3.7.1.7 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

### Use

All changes to the master data of *SAP Credit Management* are recorded as change documents in the business partner record. Changes automatically executed by the system as a follow-on process to an event appear under the name of the communication user if the event was triggered by an XI message.

### Example

A credit check is initiated by SD; the system detects that the validity date of the credit limit has expired and determines a new credit limit on the basis of the Customizing settings.

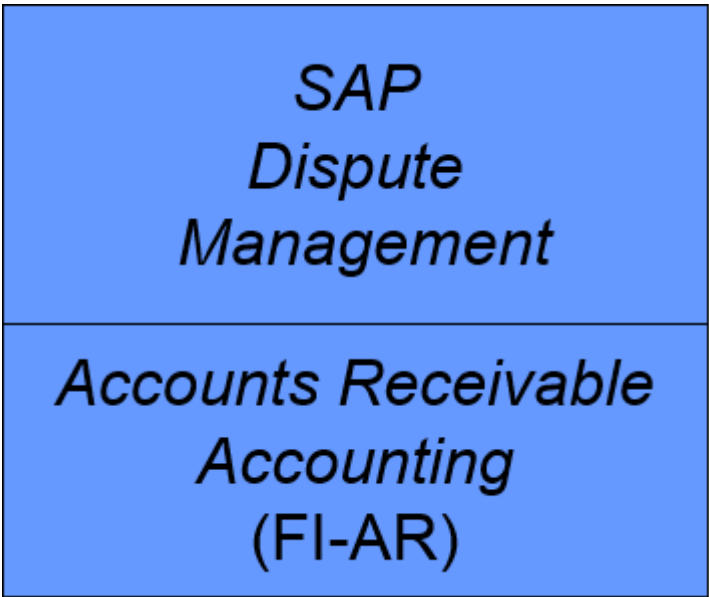
## 13.3.7.2 SAP Dispute Management

### 13.3.7.2.1 Technical System Landscape

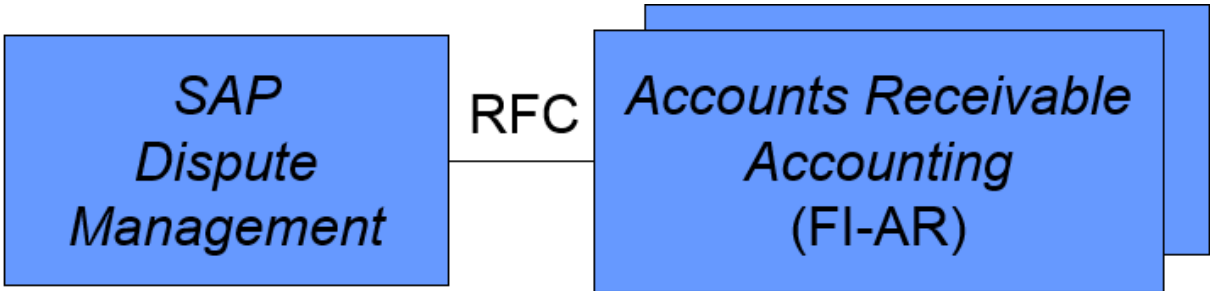
#### Use

You can use *SAP Dispute Management* in a **one-system scenario** or in a **multiple-system scenario**. If you use *SAP Dispute Management* in a one-system scenario, this means that you use *SAP Dispute Management* in the same system as *Accounts Receivable*. In a multiple-system scenario, you run *SAP Dispute Management* in a separate system. This communicates with the Accounts Receivable system connected by means of synchronous and asynchronous BAPI calls and dialog calls.

The figure below shows an overview of the technical system landscape for *SAP Dispute Management* in a one-system scenario.



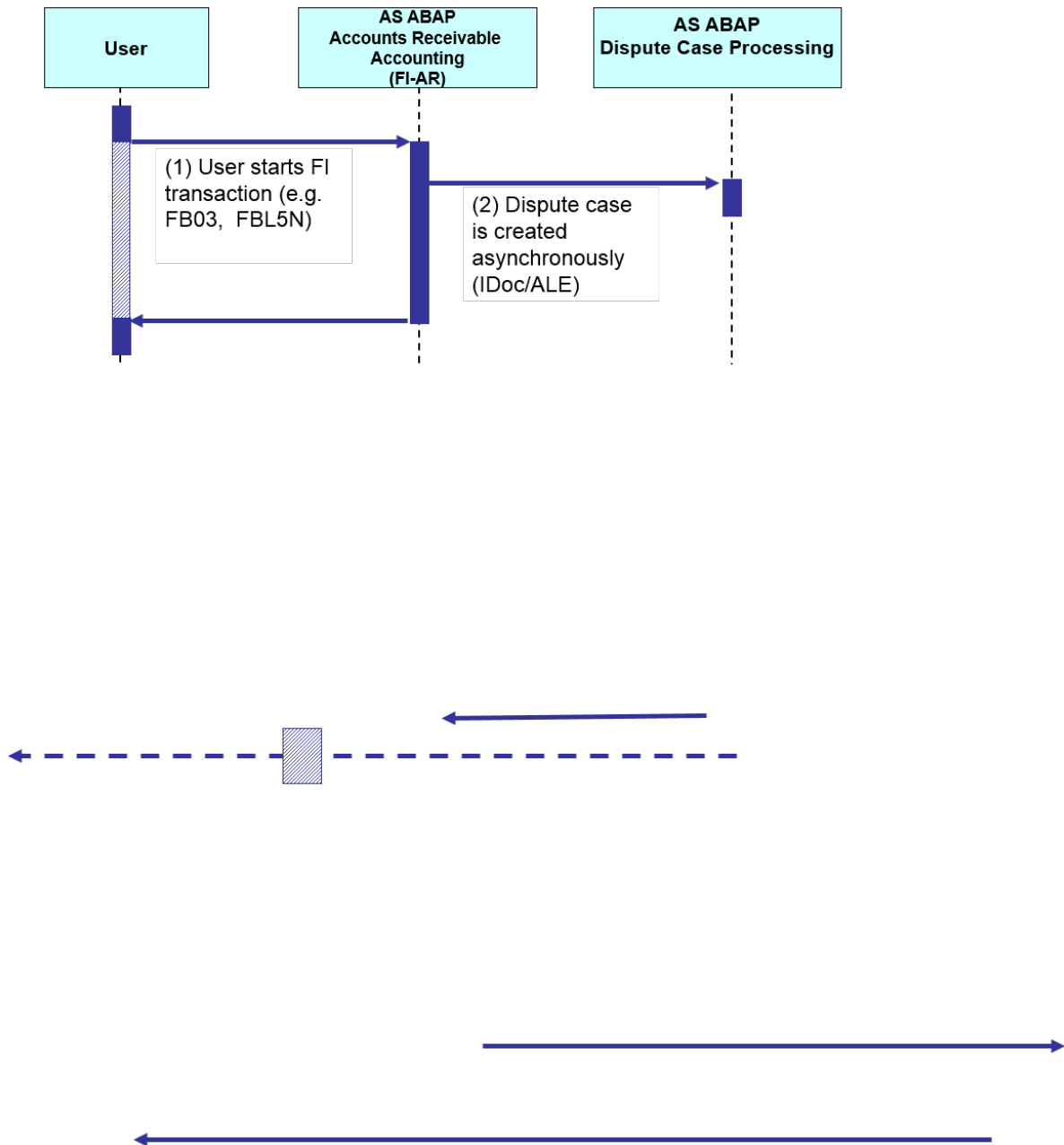
The figure below shows an overview of the technical system landscape for *SAP Dispute Management* in a multiple-system scenario.



For *SAP Dispute Management*, with *Business Package for Dispute Manager* you can also use portal content to use the functions of *SAP Dispute Management* in the portal. For security-relevant information about using the portal content, see the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* for the usage types Enterprise Portal Core (EPC) and Enterprise Portal (EP) in the Portal security guide.

### 13.3.7.2.2 Security Aspects of Data, Data Flow, and Processes

The figure below shows an example of the data flow that occurs when you create a dispute case in a multiple-system scenario:



The table below shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	User starts FI transaction (for example, FBO3 for document display or FBL5N for line item list)	User type: Dialog user
2	Dispute case is created asynchronously (IDoc/ALE)	User type: Technical user or, when the Trusted/Trusting connection is used, dialog user (see also <a href="#">User Administration [page 140]</a> )

As already mentioned under [Technical System Landscape \[page 137\]](#), *SAP Dispute Management* uses BAPI calls (IDocs) asynchronously for the data flow between the Accounts Receivable system and the Dispute Case Processing system. The following IDocs are affected:

- Sending system: Accounts Receivable Accounting, receiving system: Dispute Case Processing
  - [AttributesChange](#)
  - [Create](#)
  - [Process](#)
- Sending system: Dispute Case Processing, receiving system: Accounts Receivable Accounting
  - [AttributeSynchronize](#)
  - [StatusChanged](#)
  - [WriteOff](#)

If you are using *SAP Dispute Management* in a one-system scenario, synchronous BAPI calls are used instead.

## 13.3.7.2.3 User Management

### User Administration Tools

The table below shows the user management tools for *SAP DisputeManagement*.

User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Prerequisites
User and role maintenance with <a href="#">SAPNetWeaver AS ABAP</a> (transactions SU01 and PFCG )	For more information, see User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP in the SAP NetWeaver documentation.	

### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that users who perform their tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users who perform their tasks using background processing.

The user types that are required for *SAP Dispute Management* include:

- Individual users:
  - For each individual user in your system, you need dialog users for the following purposes:
    - To use the system via *SAP GUI for Windows*
    - If you use *SAPDisputeManagement* in a multiple system scenario and the RFC destinations used use a Trusted/Trusting system relationship, calls to the other system are performed using the current user from the calling system. Therefore, for each user a valid user must also exist in the target system.
- Technical users:
  - Background users can be used for processing in the background.
  - If you use *SAPDisputeManagement* in a multiple system scenario and the RFC destinations concerned are configured such that they do **not** use a Trusted/Trusting system relationship, you need the following technical users for the RFC destinations:
    - Communication users are used for synchronous and asynchronous BAPI calls (IDocs).
    - Dialog users are used for dialog calls that take place remotely in the other system.

For more information about these user types, see under User Types in the Security Guide for *SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP*.

## Standard Users

If you use *SAP Dispute Management* in a multiple system scenario and there is **no** Trusted/Trusting system relationship between the systems involved, you have to configure corresponding users for the RFC communication between the systems involved.

Note that in *SAP Dispute Management*, asynchronous BAPI calls, synchronous BAPI calls, and dialog calls take place between the systems involved. There are calls from the Dispute Case Processing system to the system for Accounts Receivable Accounting and vice versa.

The table below shows the users required if you use *SAP Dispute Management* in a multiple system scenario and there is **no** Trusted/Trusting system relationship between the systems involved.

Standard Users

System	User ID	Type	Password	Description
System for Dispute Case Processing	Example: ALERE-MOTE1_COM	Communication users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	These users are used when synchronous or asynchronous BAPI methods are called from the Accounts Receivable system in the Dispute Case Processing system.

System	User ID	Type	Password	Description
System for Dispute Case Processing	Example: ALERE-MOTE1_DIA	Dialog users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	This user is used for dialog calls from the Accounts Receivable Accounting system in the Dispute Case Processing system.
Accounts Receivable Accounting system	Example: ALERE-MOTE2_COM	Communication users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	These users are used when synchronous or asynchronous BAPI methods are called from the Dispute Case Processing system in the Accounts Receivable system.
Accounts Receivable Accounting system	Example:ALERE-MOTE2_DIA	Dialog users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	This user is used for dialog calls from the Dispute Case Processing system in the Accounts Receivable Accounting system.

Create the users and enter them in the corresponding RFC destinations. You can assign user IDs as required. The user IDs above are merely examples.

## 13.3.7.2.4 Communication Destinations

### Use

The following table shows an overview of the communication destinations (RFC) that you need for *SAP Dispute Management* if you use it in a multiple-system scenario. You can use these communication destinations to establish communication between the Financial Accounting system and the Dispute Case Processing system.

You can assign names for your RFC destinations as required. The names of the RFC destinations that are specified in the table are merely examples. The destinations are not delivered in the standard system; you need to create them yourself.

Destination	Description	User, Authorizations
Example: DM2FIN_DIAG	This destination is used for dialog calls that take place from the Dispute Case Processing system to the Accounts Receivable system by means of RFC.	<p><b>RFC user (dialog) in Accounts Receivable</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_DM_AR_RFC_DIALOG</p> <p>Contains the authorizations required by a user to call SAP Dispute Management dialog methods using RFC from the Dispute Case Processing system in the Accounts Receivable system.</p> <p>Examples of such methods are including open items in a dispute case and navigating from a dispute case to a linked line item.</p>
Example: DM2FIN_COMM	This destination is used for synchronous and asynchronous (IDocs) BAPI calls that take place from the Dispute Case Processing system to the Accounts Receivable system.	<p><b>RFC user (communication) in Accounts Receivable</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_DM_AR_RFC_COMM</p> <p>Contains the authorizations required by a user to call synchronous and asynchronous SAP Dispute Management BAPI methods from the Dispute Case Processing system in the Accounts Receivable system.</p> <p>Examples of such methods are the automatic write off of dispute cases and automatic notification of Accounts Receivable when confirming and voiding cases.</p>
Example: FIN2DM_DIAG	This destination is used for dialog calls that take place from the Accounts Receivable system to the Dispute Case Processing system by means of RFC.	<p><b>RFC user (dialog) in Dispute Case Processing</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_DM_RFC_DIALOG</p> <p>Contains the authorizations for a user with which the DISPLAY method is called in the Dispute Case Processing system from the Accounts Receivable system by RFC. The role contains the authorizations necessary for displaying the dispute case.</p>

Destination	Description	User, Authorizations
Example: FIN2COL_COMM	This destination is used for synchronous and asynchronous (IDocs) BAPI calls that take place from the Accounts Receivable system to the Dispute Case Processing system.	<p><b>RFC user (communication) in Dispute Case Processing</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_DM_RFC_COMM</p> <p>Contains the authorizations required by a user to call synchronous and asynchronous BAPI methods from the Accounts Receivable system in the Dispute Case Processing system.</p> <p>Examples of such methods are creating dispute cases from Accounts Receivable and automatically changing dispute cases using clearing transactions in Accounts Receivable.</p>

## Set up RFC destinations for the ALE scenario

When you set up the RFC destinations for the ALE scenario, check whether the option of trusted/trusting system relationship is relevant for you. Using an RFC trusted/trusting system relationship between two SAP systems means that in the case of an RFC (Remote Function Call) from the trusted to the trusting system, **no** password is sent for the logon to the trusting system. You can configure the RFC destinations in such a way that the call in the target system occurs with the current user from the calling system without a password being specified or entered on the logon screen. This has the following advantages, for example:

- When changes to objects or data are logged in the called system, this logging takes place with the current user from the calling system. This makes it easier to track changes that occurred through RFC.
- You can assign individual authorizations to the users in the called system. As such you can differentiate which actions or functions are accessible to the user in the called system irrespective of the user.

With this procedure, you must create the users that are to be allowed to execute using RFC functions in the called system as well. Note that in the ALE scenario of *SAP Dispute Management*, RFC calls take place from the Accounts Receivable system to the Dispute Case Processing system and vice versa. A trust relationship between SAP systems is **not** mutual. This means that you can choose whether one system is to be designated as trusted for the other system and vice versa, or whether you want to define the trust relationship only in one direction.

In Customizing of ALE (*Application Link Enabling*), you can also define different RFC destinations for dialog calls, for BAPI calls, and for sending IDocs. As such you can also define an RFC destination for the dialog calls that use the trusted/trusting system relationship and use the current user from the calling system for the RFC calls in the target system, whilst you define an RFC destination for BAPI calls and for the sending of IDocs that does not use the trusted/trusting system relationship and in which you enter a communication user.

### i Note

Note the following if your Accounts Receivable system is known as a trusted system by the Dispute Case Processing system and you want to configure the RFC destination used for sending IDocs so that it uses the



trusted/trusting system relationship and the RFC calls in the target system with the current user from the calling system:

IDocs are sent to the Dispute Case Processing system from the Accounts Receivable system when items are cleared in the Accounts Receivable system, the clearing of items is reset, or partial payments are executed on items for which a promise to pay exists for the corresponding invoice. If the corresponding RFC destination uses the trusted/trusting system relationship, and carries out the call in the target system with the current user from the calling system, this means that the user triggering the clearing, reset of clearing, or partial payment must also be defined in the Dispute Case Processing system. You must therefore create **all** users who carry out clearing, resets of clearing, or partial payments in the Accounts Receivable system, and therefore affect dispute cases, in the Dispute Case Processing system.

### 13.3.7.2.5 Data Storage Security

#### Use

Master data, transaction data, and Customizing data of *SAP Dispute Management* are stored in the database of the SAP system.

Access to the database is restricted by the authorization objects of *SAP Dispute Management*.

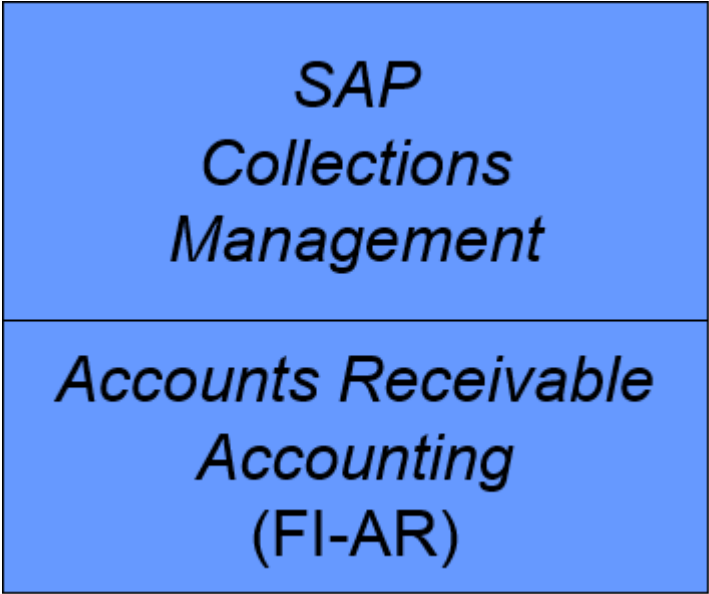
## 13.3.7.3 SAP Collections Management

### 13.3.7.3.1 Technical System Landscape

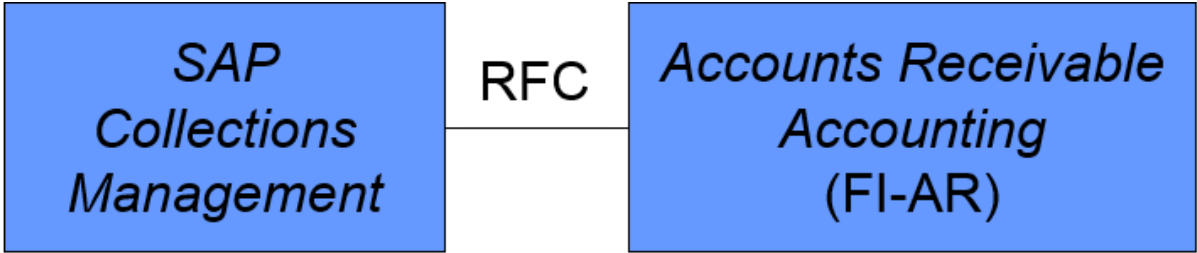
#### Use

You can use *SAP Collections Management* in a **one-system scenario** or in a **multiple-system scenario**. If you use *SAP Collections Management* in a one-system scenario, this means that you use *Collections Management* in the same system as Accounts Receivable. In a multiple-system scenario, you run *Collections Management* in a separate system. This communicates with the Accounts Receivable system connected by means of synchronous and asynchronous RFC calls and dialog calls.

The figure below shows the technical system landscape in a **one-system scenario**:

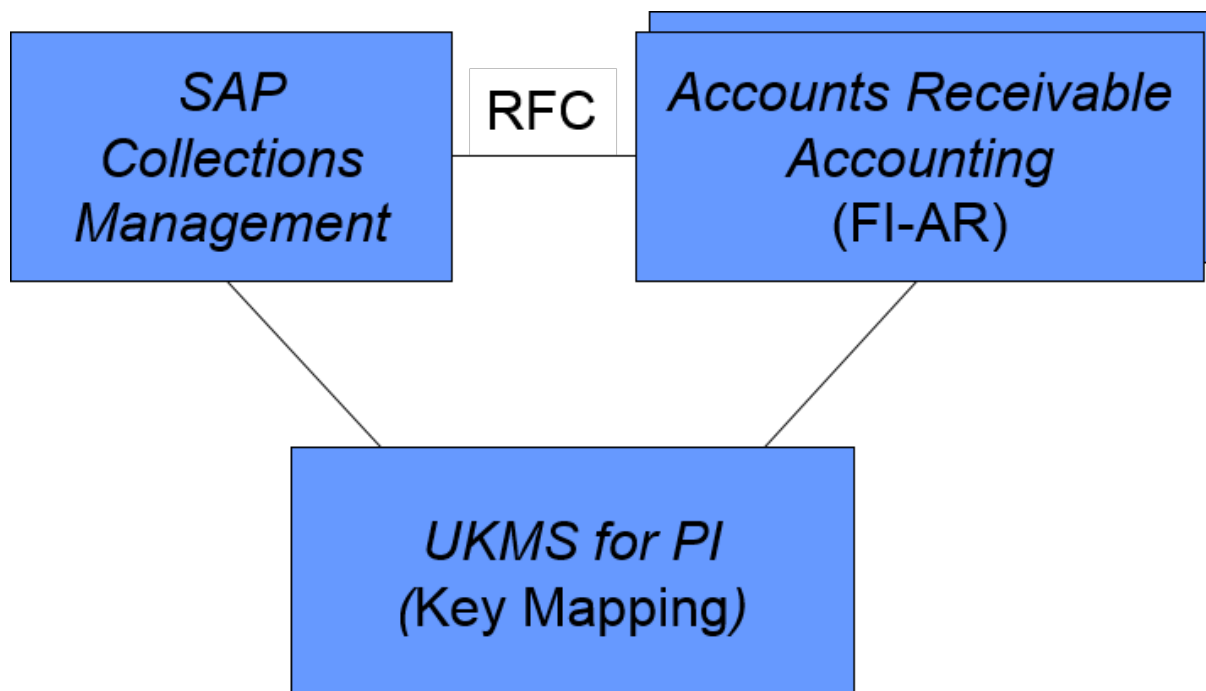


The following figure shows the technical system landscape in a **multiple-system scenario**:



If you connect several FI systems in a multiple-system scenario but have **not** installed a central system for processing customer master data, then you can resolve conflicts when assigning numbers with the connection of *Unified Key Mapping Service* to *SAP NetWeaver Process Integration* (UKMS connection to *SAP NetWeaver PI*).

The figure below shows the technical system landscape in a **multiple-system scenario with several FI systems**:



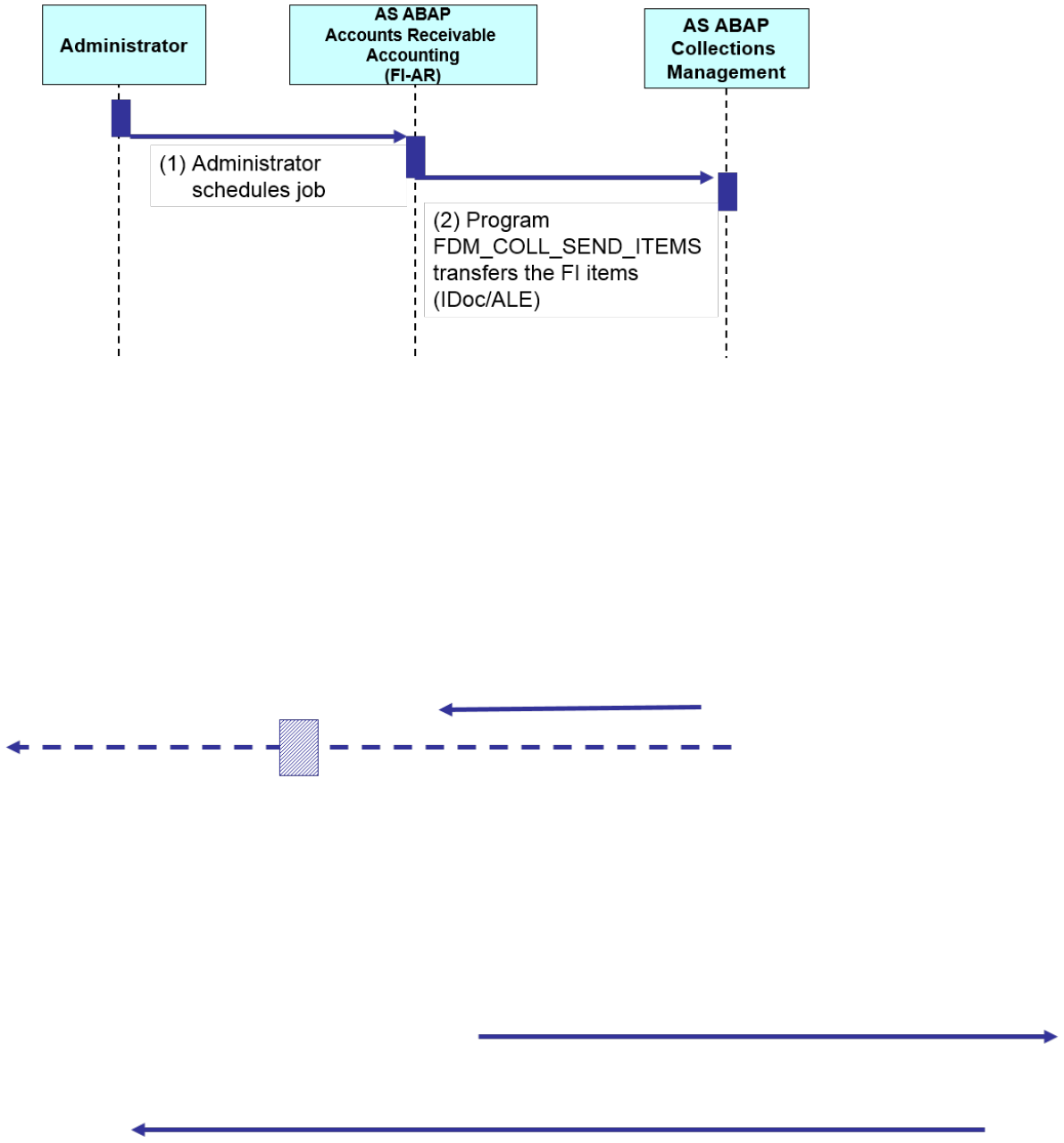
For additional information, see the SAP NetWeaver library under [Business Services](#) > [Unified Key Mapping Service](#) > [Connection to SAP NetWeaver Process Integration](#).

### 13.3.7.3.2 Security Aspects of Data, Data Flow, and Processes

The following sections show an overview of the data flow in a multiple-system scenario.

#### 13.3.7.3.2.1 Transfer of Transaction Data

The figure below shows the transfer of transaction data, meaning FI items, from the *Accounts Receivable* (FI-AR) system to the Collections Management system. This is data that the system needs for creating the worklists.

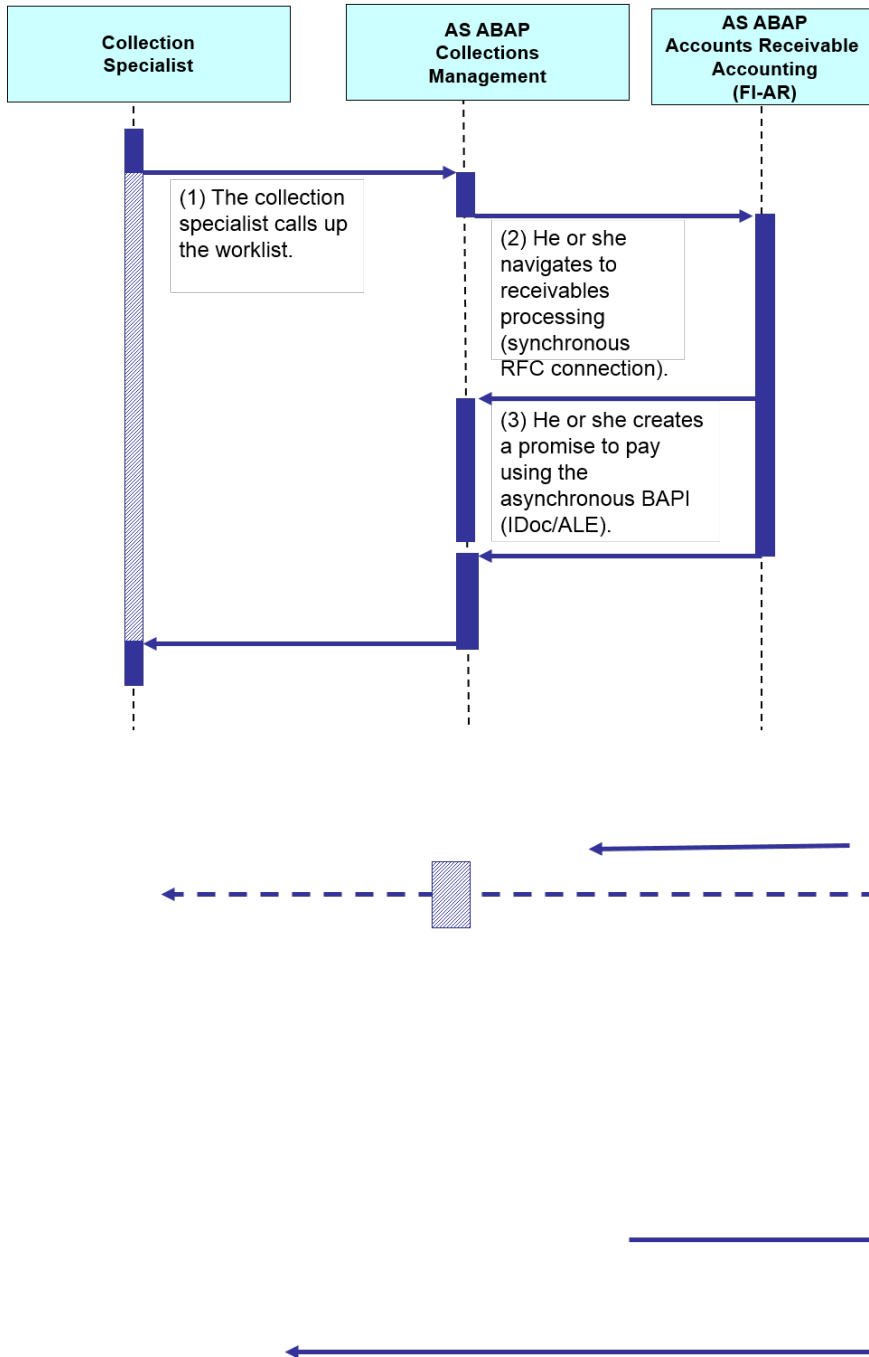


The table below shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	The administrator schedules the job.	User type: Dialog user
2	Program FDM_COLL_SEND_ITEMS transfers the FI items (IDoc/ALE)	User type: Technical user or, when the Trusted/Trusting connection is used, dialog user (see also )

### 13.3.7.3.2 Processing of Items in the Worklist

The figure below shows how a collection specialist processes an item in his worklist, so creating a promise to pay.



The table below shows the security aspect to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	The collection specialist call up the worklist (transaction UDM_SPECIAL-IST)	User type: Dialog user
2	He then navigates to receivables processing (synchronous RFC connection)	User type: Dialog user
3	He creates a promise to pay with asynchronous BAPI (IDoc/ALE)	User type: Technical user or, when the Trusted/Trusting connection is used, dialog user

### 13.3.7.3.3 User Management

#### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that users who perform their tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users who perform their tasks using background processing.

The user types that are required for *SAP Collections Management* include:

- Individual users:
  - For each individual user in your system, you need dialog users for the following purposes:
    - To use the system via *SAP GUI for Windows*
    - If you use *SAP Collections Management* in a multiple system scenario and the RFC destinations used use a Trusted/Trusting system relationship, calls to the other system are performed using the current user from the calling system. Therefore, for each user a valid user must also exist in the target system.
- Technical users:
  - Background users can be used for processing in the background.
  - If you use *SAP Collections Management* in a multiple system scenario and the RFC destinations concerned are configured such that they do **not** use a Trusted/Trusting system relationship, you need the following technical users for the RFC destinations:
    - Communication users are used for synchronous and asynchronous BAPI calls (IDocs).
    - Dialog users are used for dialog calls that take place remotely in the other system.

#### Standard Users

If you use *SAP Collections Management* in a multiple system scenario and there is **no** Trusted/Trusting system relationship between the systems involved, you have to configure corresponding users for the ALE/RFC communication between the systems involved.

Note that in *SAP Collections Management*, asynchronous BAPI calls (IDocs), synchronous BAPI calls, and dialog calls take place between the systems involved. There are calls from the Collections Management system to the system for Accounts Receivable Accounting and vice versa.

The following table shows the standard users required if you use *SAP Collections Management* in a multiple system scenario and there is **no** Trusted/Trusting system relationship between the systems involved.

System	User ID	Type	Password	Description
Collections Management system	Example: ALE-DIAG1	Dialog users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	This user is used for dialog calls from the Accounts Receivable Accounting system in the Collections Management system.
Collections Management system	Example: ALE-COMM1	Communication users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	This user is used for synchronous BAPI calls or asynchronous BAPI calls (IDocs) from the Accounts Receivable Accounting system in the Collections Management system.
Accounts Receivable Accounting system	Example: ALE-DIAG2	Dialog users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	This user is used for dialog calls from the Collections Management system in the Accounts Receivable Accounting system.
Accounts Receivable Accounting system	Example: ALE-COMM2	Communication users	The user ID and password are stored in the RFC destination for the connection.	This user is used for synchronous BAPI calls or asynchronous BAPI calls (IDocs) from the Collections Management system in the Accounts Receivable Accounting system.

Create the users required and enter them in the corresponding RFC destinations. You can assign user IDs as required. The user IDs above are merely examples.

## 13.3.7.3.4 Communication Destinations

### Use

The following table shows an overview of the communication destinations that you need for *SAP Collections Management* if you use it in a multiple-system scenario. You can use these communication destinations to establish communication between the Financial Accounting system and the system that contains SAP Collections Management.

You can assign names for your RFC destinations as required. The names of the RFC destinations that are specified in the table are merely examples. The destinations are not delivered in the standard system; you need to create them yourself.

Destination	Description	User, Authorizations
Example: COL2FIN_DIAG	This destination is used for dialog calls that take place from the Collections Management system to the Accounts Receivable system by means of RFC.	<p><b>RFC user (dialog) in Receivables Processing</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_COL_AR_RFC_DIALOG</p> <p>Contains the authorizations for a user with which the navigate to receivables processing from the worklist by means of RFC. The authorizations permit the following activities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display of invoice data</li> <li>Display of payment data</li> <li>Display of invoice history</li> <li>Creation, change, or display of a contact person</li> </ul>
Example: COL2FIN_COMM	This destination is used for synchronous and asynchronous (IDocs) BAPI calls that take place from the Collections Management system to the Accounts Receivable system.	<p><b>RFC user (communication) in Accounts Receivable</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_COL_AR_RFC_COMM</p> <p>Contains authorizations for a user with which synchronous and asynchronous BAPI methods are called from the SAP Collections Management system in the Accounts Receivable system.</p> <p>An example of such a method is the automatic notification to Accounts Receivable when promises to pay are confirmed and voided.</p>



Destination	Description	User, Authorizations
Example: FIN2COL_DIAG	This destination is used for dialog calls that take place from the Accounts Receivable system to the Collections Management system by means of RFC.	<p><b>RFC user (dialog) for collections management functions</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_COL_RFC_DIALOG</p> <p>Contains authorizations for a user with which dialog methods are called in the SAP Collections Management system from the Financial Accounting system by means of RFC.</p> <p>For example, navigation from receivables processing to the detail display of the promise to pay or dispute case.</p>
Example: FIN2COL_COMM	This destination is used for synchronous and asynchronous (IDocs) BAPI calls that take place from the Accounts Receivable system to the Collections Management system.	<p><b>RFC user (communication) for collections management</b></p> <p>Role: SAP_FIN_FSCM_COL_RFC_COMM</p> <p>Contains authorizations for a user with which synchronous and asynchronous methods are called in the SAP Collections Management system from the Financial Accounting system.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>Posting of IDocs with data from Financial Accounting</p> <p>Creation of dispute cases, promises to pay, customer contacts, and resubmissions</p> <p>Reading of attributes of dispute cases, promises to pay, customer contacts, and resubmissions for display in receivables processing</p>

## Possible additional necessary destinations

If you connect several FI systems in a multiple-system scenario and use the connection of *Unified Key Mapping Service* to *SAP NetWeaver Process Integration* (UKMS connection to *SAP NetWeaver PI*) to resolve conflicts when assigning numbers, you also need to set up the following destinations:

- Calls from the of accounts receivable system to the system of *SAP NetWeaver PI* (PI system)
- Calls from the *Collections Management* system to the PI system

For additional information, see Customizing of *SAP Collections Management* under ► *Basic Settings for Collections Management* ► *Business Partners* ► *Master Data Distribution for Several FI Systems* ►, if you have activated business function *FSCM Functions 2* (FIN\_FSCM\_CCD\_2).

For additional information about the security aspects of the *CRM Middleware* that you can use as a tool for master data replication, see the Security Guide for *SAP Customer Relationship Management*.

## Set up RFC destinations for the ALE scenario

When you set up the RFC destinations for the ALE scenario, check whether the option of trusted/trusting system relationship is relevant for you. Using an RFC trusted/trusting system relationship between two SAP systems means that in the case of an RFC (Remote Function Call) from the trusted to the trusting system, no password is sent for the logon to the trusting system. You can configure the RFC destinations in such a way that the call in the target system occurs with the current user from the calling system without a password being specified or entered on the logon screen. This has the following advantages, for example:

When changes to objects or data are logged in the called system, this logging takes place with the current user from the calling system. This makes it easier to track changes that occurred through RFC.

You can assign individual authorizations to the users in the called system. As such you can differentiate which actions or functions are accessible to the user in the called system irrespective of the user.

With this procedure, you must create the users that are to be allowed to execute using RFC functions in the called system as well. Note that in the ALE scenario of *SAP Collections Management*, RFC calls take place from the Accounts Receivable system to the Collections Management system and vice versa. A trust relationship between SAP systems is not mutual. This means that you can choose whether one system is to be designated as trusted for the other system and vice versa, or whether you want to define the trust relationship only in one direction.

In the Customizing of ALE (*Application Link Enabling*), you can also define different RFC destinations for dialog calls, for BAPI calls, and for sending IDocs. As such you can also define an RFC destination for the dialog calls that use the trusted/trusting system relationship and use the current user from the calling system for the RFC calls in the target system, whilst you define an RFC destination for BAPI calls and for the sending of IDocs that does not use the trusted/trusting system relationship and in which you enter a communication user.

### i Note

Note the following if your Accounts Receivable system is known as a trusted system by the Collections Management system and you want to configure the RFC destination used for sending IDocs so that it uses the trusted/trusting system relationship and carries out the RFC calls in the target system with the current user from the calling system:

IDocs are sent to the Collections Management system from the Accounts Receivable system when items are cleared in the Accounts Receivable system, the clearing of items is reset, or partial payments are executed on items for which a promise to pay exists for the corresponding invoice. If the corresponding RFC destination uses the trusted/trusting system relationship, and carries out the call in the target system with the current user from the calling system, this means that the user triggering the clearing, reset of clearing, or partial payment must also be defined in the Collections Management system. You must therefore create all users who carry out clearing, resets of clearing, or partial payments in the Accounts Receivable system, and therefore affect promises to pay, in the Collections Management system.

## 13.3.8 SAP S/4HANA Financial Closing cockpit

### 13.3.8.1 Authorizations

The *SAP S/4HANA Financial Closing cockpit* uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to the *SAP S/4HANA Financial Closing cockpit*.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`) on the AS ABAP and the User Management Engine's user administration console on the AS Java.

For more information about how to create roles, go to the [SAP Help Portal](#) and search for *User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP*. There, go to ► [Configuration of User and Role Administration](#) ► [Role Administration](#) ►

### Authorizations for Business Intelligence (BI) iViews

BI authorizations are maintained separately from the authorizations in the *SAP S/4HANA Financial Closing cockpit*. You need the standard BI authorizations for executing queries.

For more information, go to the [SAP Help Portal](#) and search for *Data Warehouse Management*. There, go to ► [Authorizations](#) ► [Authorizations for Working with Queries](#) ►.

## 13.3.9 Travel Management

## 13.3.9.1 Travel Management

### Authorizations

Standard Roles in Travel Management (for Web Dynpro ABAP-Based Applications)

Role	Description
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_TRAVELER_2	<p><i>Traveler</i></p> <p>The role contains the authorization profile needed to execute the applications of the <i>Travel and Expenses</i> Employee Self-Service (ESS) in <i>SAP NetWeaver Portal</i>.</p>
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_TRAVELER_EXT_TP	<p><i>Traveler</i></p> <p>Users with this role can execute the work center for travelers and the corresponding applications in NWBC. NWBC calls a third-party travel planning solution instead of SAP Travel Planning.</p> <p>The role contains the authorization profile needed to execute the applications of the <i>Travel and Expenses</i> ESS in <i>SAP NetWeaver Portal</i>.</p>
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_ESS_TRAVELER_2	<p><i>ESS Single Role for Travelers</i></p> <p>Users with this role can execute the work center for travelers and the corresponding applications in NWBC.</p> <p>This role is integrated into the ESS role for Web Dynpro ABAP-based applications (<i>SAP_EMPLOYEE_ESS_WDA_1</i>).</p>
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_ASSISTANT_2	<p><i>Travel Assistant</i></p> <p>Users with this role can execute the work center for travel assistants and the corresponding applications in NWBC.</p> <p>The role contains the authorization profile needed to execute the applications of the <i>Travel and Expenses</i> ESS in <i>SAP NetWeaver Portal</i>.</p>
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_ESS_ASSISTANT_2	<p><i>Travel Assistant</i></p> <p>Users with this role can execute the work center for travel assistants and the corresponding applications in NWBC.</p>
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_APPROVER_2	<p><i>Approving Manager</i></p> <p>Users with this role can execute the work center for approving managers and the corresponding applications in NWBC.</p> <p>This role is integrated into the MSS role for Web Dynpro ABAP-based applications (<i>SAP_MANAGER_MSS_NWBC</i>).</p>

Role	Description
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_POLICY_ADMIN_2	<p><i>Travel Policy Administrator</i></p> <p>Users with this role can execute frequently used Customizing applications for policy management in NWBC.</p>
SAP_FI_TV_TIC_AGENT	<p><i>Travel Interaction Center Agent</i></p> <p>This role authorizes service agents to run the required transactions and Web Dynpro ABAP-based applications in the Travel Management system from within the Travel Interaction Center.</p> <p>The Travel Interaction Center is a Shared Services Center in <i>SAP Customer Relationship Management (SAP CRM)</i>.</p>

### Authorization Profiles

The standard system contains the travel profile FI-TV (infotype 0470 of *Human Resources Management (HCM)*). Alternatively, you can create the authorization profile by means of organizational assignment using the HR feature *TRVCP*.

### Authorization Objects

For all general functions, *Travel Management* uses the authorization object P\_TRAVL.

The transfer of results from expense reports to *accounting* is protected by the authorization object F\_TRAVL.

The travel plan status is protected by the authorization object F\_TRAVL\_S.

## Network and Communication Security

In Travel Management, you can set up connections to the following *global distribution systems (GDS)*:

- *Amadeus*  
The partner is responsible for the Gateway.
- *Galileo*  
The partner is responsible for the Gateway.

Alternatively or in addition, you can use *SAP NetWeaver Process Integration* to set up direct connections to the following travel service providers:

- Flight reservation systems, for example, low-cost carrier providers  
Depending on the partner, communication with the Web services is HTTPS or HTTP based.
- Hotel reservation systems such as HRS  
Depending on the partner, communication with the Web services is HTTPS or HTTP based. For the communication channel, you can make various security settings. For more information, see the *Configuration Guide*.
- Rail portals such as Deutsche Bahn (BIBE)  
Communication with the Web services is HTTPS based.

Alternatively, instead of using SAP Travel Planning, you can use third-party online booking systems (third-party travel planning) such as:

- [GetThere](#)  
Communication with the Web services of [GetThere](#) (and of [Sabre](#), if applicable) is HTTPS based. In [SAP NetWeaver Portal](#), you can use Single Sign-On (SSO) to automatically log on the SAP Travel Management users to a third-party online booking system.
- [e-Travel](#)  
Communication with the Web services of [e-Travel](#) is HTTPS based. In [SAP NetWeaver Portal](#), you can use SSO to automatically log on the SAP Travel Management users to a third-party online booking system.

For credit card clearing in [Travel Management](#), you can use [SAP NetWeaver Process Integration](#) to set up direct connections to credit card companies. You agree upon the safeguarding of the connection with the respective partner. For more information, see [SAP Library](#) under [▶ Travel Management \(FI-TV\) ▶ Travel Expenses \(FI-TV-COS\) ▶ Credit Card Clearing ▶](#).

## Data Storage Security

[Travel Management](#) transmits credit card information to the named partners. The data in the SAP system **cannot** be accessed.

[Travel Management](#) supports secure handling of credit card data.

To set up connections to third-party systems, such as reservation systems, you might require company IDs and user-specific technical passwords, which you can define in Customizing or in user-specific infotypes. In Customizing, this data is protected by standard authorization objects for Customizing.

[Travel Management](#) imports data from files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). You do this by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that are assigned to the physical paths and file names. The system validates the assignment at runtime and issues an error message if access to a directory is requested that does **not** match any assignment defined.

### 13.3.9.2 Deletion of Personal Data in FI-TV

#### Use

The [Travel Management \(FI-TV\)](#) component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) [▶ Product Assistance ▶ Cross Components ▶ Data Protection ▶](#).

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

For information, see SAP Note [2028594](#).

## Relevant Application and Available WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution	Further Information
Travel Expenses (FI-TV-COS)	Where-used check (WUC)	SAP Note <a href="#">2028595</a>

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under Data Protection.

## 13.4 Human Resources

### 13.4.1 User Management

#### Use

User management for Human Resources uses the mechanisms provided by *SAP NetWeaver Application Server* (ABAP, Java, or ABAP and Java), for example, tools, user types, and password policies. See the sections below for an overview of how these mechanisms apply to Human Resources. In addition, there is a list of the standard users that are necessary for operating Human Resources.

#### User Administration Tools

The table below shows the tools for user management in Human Resources.

Tool	Description
User and role maintenance with SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP (transactions SU01 and PFCG)	For more information, look for <i>User Administration and Identity Management in ABAP Systems</i> in the documentation of SAP NetWeaver at <a href="http://help.sap.com/netweaver">http://help.sap.com/netweaver</a> .
User Management Engine of SAP NetWeaver AS for Java	This tool is used for user management of HR portal roles (business packages).  For more information, look for <i>User Management Engine</i> in the documentation of SAP NetWeaver at <a href="http://help.sap.com/netweaver">http://help.sap.com/netweaver</a> .

## User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, it may be necessary that individual users who perform tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not users who run background processing jobs.

The specific user types that are required for human resources include:

- Individual users
  - Administrator
    - Personnel Administration
    - Benefits Administration
  - Manager
    - Personnel Administration
    - Benefits Administration
    - Compensation Administration
    - Training and Event Management
  - Specialists for
    - Personnel Administration
    - Talent Management
    - Benefits Administration
    - Compensation Administration
    - Training and Event Management
- Technical users

Technical users are required for the following business processes:

  - WF-BATCH user

If you want to use the workflow functions for the different *Personnel Management* functions, you must create a WF-BATCH system user in the standard system.
  - Distribution of master data through ALE technology. For more information, see the documentation for the report RHALEINI (*HR: ALE Distribution of HR Master Data*).
  - *Compensation Management* (PA-CM): For the integration with the *Award* function, the technical user requires authorization for the following functions:
    - Call RFC function module HRCM\_RFC\_LTI\_ACCRUALDATA\_GET (*Determine awards data for accumulating accruals*)



- Read the *Award* infotype (0382), authorization object P\_ORGIN
- *Budget Management* (PA-PM)
  - You use background processing to create commitments in accounting with a RFC connection. Depending on the process and the system landscape used, it may be necessary to set up a user for the background processing. You can use your own user (an additional logon is required) or set up a special commitment engine user.

For more information about these user types, see the Security Guide for *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP* under <http://help.sap.com/netweaver>.

## 13.4.2 Authorizations

The authorizations topic plays a fundamental role in the area of Human Resources since access to personnel data must be carefully protected. In SAP Human Resources, there is a two-part concept for setting up authorizations. You should familiarize yourself with this concept if you use Human Resources components.

*Human Resources* uses the authorization concept provided by *SAP NetWeaver Application Server*. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for authorizations detailed in the Security Guide for *SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP* and in the Security Guide for *SAP NetWeaver AS Java* also apply to *Human Resources*.

### i Note

Furthermore, Human Resources has specific **structural authorizations** for which the organizational assignment is checked to see whether a user may perform an activity.

For detailed information about authorizations in *Human Resources*, see SAP Library for *SAP S/4HANA Human Resources* and the section *Authorizations for Human Resources*.

The *SAP NetWeaver Application Server* authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the *SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP*.

## Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by the Personnel Management components listed under "Description".

### i Note

The standard roles for Human Resources components that are described in a separate chapter of this Security Guide are also in the "Authorizations" section. The same applies to the self-service components [Employee Self-Service \[page 215\]](#) and [Manager Self-Service \[page 230\]](#) that are also described under

► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Self-Services](#) ► in this Security Guide.

## Standard Roles

Role	Description
SAP_HR_BN*	Roles for the PA-BN ( <i>Benefits</i> ) component
SAP_HR_CM*	Roles for the PA-CM ( <i>Compensation Management</i> ) component
SAP_HR_CP*	Roles for the PA-CM-CP ( <i>Personnel Cost Planning</i> ) component
SAP_HR_OS*	Roles for the PA-OS ( <i>Organizational Structure</i> ) component
SAP_HR_PA_XX_*	Roles for the international versions and country versions of the PA-PA ( <i>Personnel Administration</i> ) component
SAP_HR_PA_PF_XX_*	Roles for the PA-PF ( <i>Pension Schemes</i> ) component
SAP_HR_PD*	Roles for the PA-PD ( <i>Personnel Development</i> ) component
SAP_HR_RC*	Roles for the PA-RC ( <i>Recruitment</i> ) component
SAP_HR_REPORTING	Role for the Human Resources Analyst
	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete. We recommend that you no longer use this role.</p> </div>
SAP_ASR_ADMINISTRATOR	Enhancement of the role SAP_HR_PA_XX_* for the HR administrators that use the functions of the component PA-AS ( <i>HR Administrative Services</i> )

For the roles marked with an asterisk (\*), several roles exist for each of the components. For roles with xx, where xx represents the SAP country key, various roles exist for each of the country versions.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by *Human Resources*.

### i Note

For more information about the authorization objects for Human Resources, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [Product Assistance](#) > [Enterprise Business Applications](#) > [Human Resources](#) > [HR Tools](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) > [Technical Aspects](#) > [Authorization Objects](#).

## Most Important Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Name	Description
P_ORGIN	HR master data	Used to check the authorization for accessing HR infotypes. The checks take place when HR infotypes are edited or read.
P_ORGINCON	HR master data with context	This authorization object consists of the same fields as the authorization object P_ORGIN, and also includes the field PROFIL (structural profile). A check using this object enables user-specific contexts to be mapped in HR master data.
P_ORGXX	HR master data – extended check	You can use this object to determine that other fields are also to be checked. You can determine whether this check is to be performed in addition to or as an alternative to the <i>HR Master Data</i> authorization check.
P_P_ORGXXCON	HR master data - extended check with context	This authorization object consists of the same fields as the authorization object P_ORGXX, and also includes the field PROFIL (structural profile). A check using this object enables user-specific contexts to be mapped in HR master data.
P_TCODE	HR: Transaction Code	This authorization object checks some specific SAP Human Resources transactions.
PLOG	Personnel planning	Determines for which types of information processing a user has authorization.
PLOG_CON	Personnel planning with context	This authorization object consists of the same fields as the object PLOG, and also includes the field PROFIL (structural profile). The check using this object enables user-specific contexts to be mapped.

Authorization Object	Name	Description
P_ASRCONT	Authorization for process content	The Authorization for Process Content object is used by the authorization check for <i>HR Administrative Services</i> . It checks the authorization for access to various process contents and also runs through the authorization objects that you have specified in Customizing in the table T77S0 (see note below). For more information, see <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Human Resources</i> ► <i>Shared Services</i> ► <i>HR Administrative Services (PA-AS)</i> ► <i>HCM Processes and Forms</i> ► and section <i>Authorization Concept of HCM Processes and Forms</i> .
P_DEL_PERN	Deletion of personnel numbers in live systems	This authorization object is used in the report RPUDELPP and facilitates the deletion of personnel numbers in live systems. It is used by two roles, one for requesting the deletion and one for performing the deletion. These roles need to be assigned to two different users (double verification principle).
P_EICAU	Authorization for activity in the Employee Interaction Center	This authorization object checks the authorization for editing EIC activities. For more information, see <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Human Resources</i> ► <i>Shared Services</i> ► <i>Employee Interaction Center (EIC)</i> ► <i>General Settings</i> ► and section <i>Authorization Concept for Employee Interaction Center (EIC)</i> .

### i Note

In Customizing for certain authorization objects, you can specify whether they are to be checked. The table T77S0 in the *Group for Semantic Short Text for PD Plan* AUTSW groups all central switches and settings for the *Human Resources* authorization check. Note that changes to the settings severely affect your authorization concept.

For more information about changing the main authorization switch, see Customizing for [Personnel Administration](#) and choose ► [Tools](#) ► [Authorization Management](#) ▾.

### 13.4.3 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Change documents are created for the infotypes of SAP Human Resources, on the basis of which you can trace changes to infotype data. For more information, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Enterprise Business Applications](#) ► [Human Resources](#) ► [HR Tools](#) ▾ in the following sections:

- [Creating Change Documents for Personnel Administration Infotypes](#)
- [Creation of Change Documents for Personnel Planning Infotypes](#)

## 13.4.4 Core HR and Payroll

### 13.4.4.1 Core HR

#### About This Chapter

This section of the Security Guide provides an overview of security-relevant information for [Core HR](#).

#### Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

The following sections contain the security-relevant information that is specific to Personnel Management:

- [Important SAP Notes](#)  
This section lists the most important SAP Notes for the security of Personnel Management.
- [Authorizations](#)  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept used for Personnel Management.
- [Communication Channel Security](#)  
This section provides an overview of the communication paths used by Personnel Management and provides information on how you can best protect them.
- [Communication Destinations](#)  
This section provides an overview of the communication destination for the components of Personnel Management and the country-specific components of Personnel Administration.
- [Data Storage Security](#)  
This section provides an overview of the critical data used by Personnel Management, as well as the security mechanisms used.

- [Security for Additional Applications](#)  
This section contains information about temporary sequential (TemSe) data storage, which only temporarily stores data from country-specific reports from Personnel Administration.
- [Other Security-Relevant Information](#)  
This section contains information about security-relevant Customizing for infotype records and indicates the reports that perform database statistics and consistency checks without checking the user's authorizations.
- Chapter with the security-relevant information for the component [HCM Processes and Forms](#)

### 13.4.4.1.1 Authorizations

#### Use

The Personnel Management components use the two-part authorization concept from SAP Human Resources. For more information, see section [Authorizations](#) in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for [Human Resources](#) section.

#### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by the Personnel Management components.

Role	Description
SAP_HR_OS*	Roles for the PA-OS (Organizational Structure) component
SAP_HR_PA_xx_*	Roles for the international versions and country versions of the component PA-PA (Personnel Administration)

#### **i** Note

For the roles marked with an asterisk (\*), several roles exist for each of the components. For roles with "xx", where "xx" represents the SAP country key, various roles exist for each of the country versions.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The Personnel Management components use the standard authorization objects from SAP Human Resources. For more information about the authorization objects for Human Resources, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal at [► Human Resources ► HR Tools ► Authorizations for Human Resources ► Technical Aspects ► Authorization Objects ►](#).

## 13.4.4.1.2 Communication Channel Security

### Use

The table below shows the communication channels used by *Personnel Management*, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
Interface Toolbox (Transaction PU12)	ALE	Master data, <i>Benefits</i> data, organizational data as defined by the user	
SAP BW	Extractor program	Master data, organizational data, <i>Personnel Development</i> data	
SAP CO (for distributed systems)	RFC	Cost centers, orders, and so on	Authorizations for CO objects are required here
External files	ASCII	<i>Personnel Administration</i> data	Applicable only for country versions Australia and New Zealand
MS Word	Report interface with SAP NetWeaver		Office Integration
Connection of PDF-based print forms to the archive	HTTP(S)	Person-related data (for example, employee photo)	

DIAG and RFC connections can be protected using *Secure Network Communications* (SNC). The Secure Sockets Layer protocol (SSL protocol) protects HTTP connections.

### i Note

If you convert the protocol from HTTP to HTTPS and use PDF-based print forms, see SAP Note 1461447.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under *Transport Layer Security*.

## 13.4.4.1.3 Communication Destinations

### Use

Specific communication destinations are available for the *Personnel Management* components and *Personnel Administration* country-specific components.

## Features

The function group HRPDV\_SERVICES contains the following Remote Function Calls (RFCs) for displaying and updating the position attributes. The communication user requires authorization for the authorization object S\_RFC to execute Remote Function Calls.

Function Group	Function Module	Description
HRPDV_SERVICES	HRPDV_GET_ROOT_OBJECT	Gets the root object for the user
	HRPDV_ORG_PATHROOTS	Root object specification
	HRPDV_CREATE_POSITION	Creates a new position in the organizational unit
	HRPDV_GET_POSITION_ATTR	Gets the corresponding position attributes
	HRPDV_UPDATE_POSITION_ATTR	Updates the corresponding position attributes
	HRPDV_COPY_POSITION	Copies an existing position and the corresponding attributes several times
	HRPDV_DELIMIT_POSITION	Delimits an existing position
	HRPDV_POSITION_SEARCH	Enables a search for positions based on <i>Object and Data Provider</i> (OADP)
	HRPDV_GET_TIME_CONSTRAINTS	Gets the time constraints information of the corresponding position infotypes and relationships
	HRPDV_TRANSFER_EMPLOYEE	Enables the conversion of an employee from one position to another or creates an additional personnel assignment for the employee
HRPDV_GET_POSITION_F4_HELPS	Returns the input help values for the infotype fields <i>Account Assignment</i> and <i>Employee Subgroup</i>	

### Benefits (PA-BN)

When evaluating retirement benefits for employees, service-related data is sent to an external system using IDocs. The Benefits system places the IDocs in a special port. External systems can collect the IDocs from this port. The external systems evaluate the retirement benefits based on the transferred data and then send them with an inbound IDoc back to the SAP system.

There are no special functions from the Benefits system side to protect this data.

### Compensation Management (PA-CM)



The self-service scenario *Salary Benchmarking* (HRCMP0053) exchanges data with external benchmarking providers. You communicate synchronously and online using HTTPS protocol (HyperText Transfer Protocol with SSL).

### Personnel Administration

- HR Administrative Services  
*HR Administrative Services* can transfer personal data from *SAP E-Recruiting* and return data to *SAP E-Recruiting*. For more information, see the Security Guide for *SAP E-Recruiting* under *Communication Destinations*.
- Pension Fund (PA-PF)
  - You can create files with *SAP List Viewer* (ALV) and TemSe ( *Temporary Sequential Objects* ).
  - There is no encryption of data in the standard SAP system.

## 13.4.4.1.4 Data Storage Security

The infotypes in *Personnel Management* contain particularly sensitive data. This data is protected by central authorization objects.

### i Note

For more information about authorization objects, see section *Authorizations* in the SAP S/4HANA security guide for *Human Resources*.

### Examples of infotypes containing particularly sensitive data:

- International infotypes for *Personnel Administration* (PA-PA)
  - *Personal Data* (0002)
  - *Basic Pay* (0008)
  - *Bank Details* (0009)
  - *Family Member/Dependents* (0021)
- *Personnel Development* (PA-PD)
  - *Qualifications*
  - *Appraisals*
- *Personnel Cost Planning and Simulation* (PA-CP)
  - *Planning of Personnel Costs* (0666), contains salary-based information
- *Management of Global Employees* (PA-GE)
  - *Compensation Package Offer* (0706)

### Other sensitive Personnel Management data

- Budget Management

The Budget Management component accesses the salary data of employees and displays data from the Controlling (CO) and Funds Management (FI-FM) components. The standard authorization concept for *Human Resources*, *Controlling*, and *Funds Management* is used for these processes. The following authorization objects are also available to protect the data:

- P\_ENCTYPE ( *HR: PBC - Financing* ): Determines which funds reservation types a user can access and which activities the user is allowed to perform.
- P\_ENGINE ( *HR: Authorization for Automatic Commitment Creation* ): Determines which activities a user is allowed to perform when creating commitments.
- Pension Fund (PA-PF)  
Access to salary data, pensions, and benefits entitlements is protected by the following authorization objects:
  - P\_ORIGIN ( *HR: Master Data* )
  - P\_CH\_CK ( *HR-CH: Pension Fund: Account Access* )
  - P\_NL\_PKEV ( *Bevoegdheidsobject voor PF-gebeurtenissen* )
- Personnel Cost Planning (PA-CM-CP and PA-CP)  
The old *Personnel Cost Planning* (PA-CM-CP) and the new *Personnel Cost Planning and Simulation* (PA-CP) components both save salary-relevant information to the clusters of the database PCL5. You can control access rights using the authorization object P\_TCODE ( *HR: Transaction Code* ).
- Employee Interaction Center (PA-EIC)  
The *EIC Authentication* infotype (0816) enables question and response pairs to be saved that an agent of *Employee Interaction Center* then uses to identify a calling employee. You can only maintain the infotype with the *Authentication for EIC* Employee Self-Service.
- HR Administrative Services (PA-AS)  
The personnel file and all process instances are saved with intermediate statuses and history to the *Case Management* databases.

### 13.4.4.15 Security for Additional Applications

*Personnel Administration* country-specific components use several reports that store security-relevant and sensitive data. This data includes employee data relating to salary, tax, social insurance, pension contributions, and garnishments.

The data is stored in temporary sequential (TemSe) files and used when printing legal forms, statistics, and business reports. Access to TemSe is controlled by the authorization object S\_TMS\_ACT. Data encryption is not necessary here. For a list of all reports and programs using TemSe, see the *Personnel Administration* documentation for your country version.

You can also download data directly from the front-end server (for example, PC/terminal) or application server without first storing the data records in the TemSe. To do so, you copy the data to a data carrier that you can then send to the authorities.

### 13.4.4.16 Other Security-Relevant Information

Use

## Other security-relevant Customizing for infotype records

With the field *Access Auth.* (Access Authorization) in table V\_T582A (*Infotype attributes (Customizing)*), you can control access to an infotype record depending on whether the record belongs to the area of responsibility of a person responsible on the current date. For more information, see Customizing for *Personnel Management* under ► *Personnel Administration* ► *Customizing Procedures* ► *Infotypes* ► *Infotypes* ▾. Note in particular the help for the *Access Authorization* field.

## Technical utilities without integrated authorization check

The following technical utilities read data without the user's authorizations being checked. You should therefore only assign relevant report authorizations to roles containing system administrator functions.

- Reports with the prefix RHDBST\*: Database statistics
- Reports with the prefix RHCHECK\*: Consistency checks for *Organizational Management* and *Personnel Development* data.

*If required, you can use the following reports (developed for SAP internal use) for testing purposes. However, SAP does not accept any responsibility for these reports:*

- Report RPCHKCONSISTENCY: (*Consistency check for HR master data*)
- Report RPUSCNTC (*Find Inconsistencies in Time Constraints*)

## 13.4.4.17 HCM Processes and Forms

### About this Document

This chapter provides an overview of the security-relevant information that applies to *HCM Processes and Forms* (PA-AS).

### Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

The *HCM Processes and Forms* chapter comprises the following sections:

- *Before You Start*  
This section contains references to other Security Guides that build the foundation for the *HCM Processes and Forms* chapter and a list of the most important SAP Notes for *HCM Processes and Forms* regarding security.
- *Authorizations*  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept that applies to *HCM Processes and Forms*.
- *Internet Communication Framework Security*  
This section provides an overview of the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) services that are used by *HCM Processes and Forms*.

- [Security for Additional Applications](#)  
This section provides information on a Business Add-In (BAI) that can be used for the attachment handling of *HCM Processes and Forms*.
- [Other Security-Relevant Information](#)  
This section provides information on the possibility of protecting the Customizing views of *HR Administrative Services* by using a grouping option for the authorization check to prevent users without authorization from maintaining person-related data.

### 13.4.4.1.7.1 Authorizations

#### Use

*HCM Processes and Forms* uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to *HCM Processes and Forms*.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`) on the AS ABAP.

#### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see section [Role Administration](#) in the SAP Library for *SAP S/4HANA Identity Management*.

### Role and Authorization Concept for HCM Processes and Forms

The authorization concept for *HCM Processes and Forms* is described under the section [Authorization Concept of HCM Processes and Forms](#) in the SAP Library for *SAP S/4HANA HCM Processes and Forms*.

#### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used for *HCM Processes and Forms* authorizations.

Standard Roles for HCM Processes and Forms

Role	Name	Description
SAP_ASR_HRADMIN_SR_HCM_CI_3	HR Administrator: NWBC Role	This single role contains the authorizations for the HR Administrator role.

Role	Name	Description
SAP_ASR_EMPLOYEE_SR_HCM_CI_3	ESS Single Role for HCM PF Services	This single role contains the authorizations for the Employee role in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_ASR_EMPLOYEE	HR Administrative Services : Employee	This single role contains the authorizations for the Employee role in the <i>Business Package for Employee Self-Service</i> (up to and including 1.4.1).
SAP_ASR_MANAGER	HR Administrative Services : Manager	This single role contains the authorizations for the Manager role.

### Note

The Employee and Manager roles use *HCM Processes and Forms*. For security-relevant information regarding these components, see the sections *Employee Self Service* and *Manager Self Service* under *Self Services* in the S/4 HANA Security Guide.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by *HCM Processes and Forms*:

Authorization Object	Name	Comment
S_RFC	Authorization Check for RFC Access	
S_SCMG_CAS	Case Management: Case	These authorization objects manage access to the <i>Process Object</i> of <i>HCM Processes and Forms</i> .
S_SCMG_FLN	Case Management: Authorization by Field	
S_SRMGS_CT	Records Management: Authorizations for Document Content	These authorization objects manage access to the digital Personnel File in the HR Administrator Role.
S_SRMGS_DC	Records Management: Authorization for Documents	
S_SRMGS_PR	Records Management: Authorizations for Attributes	
S_SRMSY_CL	SAP Records Management : General Authorization Object	
S_TCODE	Transaction Code Check at Transaction Start	

Authorization Object	Name	Comment
P_ASRCNT	Authorization for Process Content	This authorization object manages the rights to start and execute processes with <a href="#">HCM Processes and Forms</a> .

## 13.4.4.1.7.2 Internet Communication Framework Security

### Use

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For [HCM Processes and Forms](#), the following services are needed which you can find under the path `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`:

- `asr_form_display`
- `asr_keyword_search`
- `asr_launchpad`
- `asr_mass_start_process`
- `asr_OBJECT_SEARCH`
- `asr_pa_pd_processes_display`
- `ars_personnel_file`
- `asr_processes_display`
- `ASR_PROCESS_EXECUTE_FPM`
- `asr_process_select`
- `ars_profiles_show`
- `asr_srch_pd_process`

### Activities

Use the transaction `SICF` to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

### More Information

For more information, see [Activating and Deactivating ICF Services](#) in the SAP NetWeaver Library documentation.

### 13.4.4.1.7.3 Security for Additional Applications

For the uploading of attachments in *HCM Processes and Forms* you can use Business Add-In (BAI) `HRASR00ATTACHMENT_HANDLING` for defining the file types allowed and the maximum size of attachments. For more information, see the BAI documentation in the SAP S/4HANA system.

### 13.4.4.1.7.4 Other Security-Relevant Information

#### Authorizations for the Implementation Guide for HR Administrative Services

The views in the Implementation Guide for HR Administrative Services are protected separately by a grouping for the authorization check to prevent users without authorization maintaining person-related data. Under the field name `DICBERCLS` (*Authorization Group*), you can set the following in the authorization object

`S_TABU_DIS`:

- Switch `PASC`: Authorization check for all views of HR Administrative Services in which no Customizing settings were made that affect authorization checks for the users of HR Administrative Services.
- Switch `PASA`: Additional authorization check for the views that may affect the authorization check for users of HR Administrative Services.

### 13.4.4.1.8 Personnel & Organization

#### About This Chapter

This chapter of the Security Guide provides an overview of the security-relevant information for *Personnel & Organization* (PA-PAO).

#### Role and Authorization Concept for Personnel & Organization

The *Personnel & Organization* component uses the following authorization concepts:

- **SAP NetWeaver authorization concept** (based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles)  
For this purpose, the roles mentioned in section *Standard Roles* are available as a template. You can copy the standard roles to the customer name space and adjust them to suit your requirements. You use the profile generator (transaction `PF00`) to maintain roles.
- Structural Authorizations (HCM-specific authorization concept)  
You configure structural authorizations in Customizing for *Personnel & Organization* by choosing the following path: ► *Security* ► *Authorizations* ► *Structural Authorizations* ►  
For more information about the structural authorization check, see *Structural Authorization Check* (in SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under ► *Human Resources* ► *HR Tools* ► *Authorizations for Human Resources* ►).




#### Standard Roles

The following standard single roles are available for the *Personnel & Organization* component: *Single Roles for Personnel & Organization*.

### Gateway Information

For information on security information for Gateway, please see:

[Security Settings in the SAP Gateway](#)

The SAP Gateway Foundation Security Guide available via <http://help.sap.com/nw74>  [Security Information](#)  [Security Guide](#)  and search for the document *SAP NetWeaver Gateway Foundation Security Guide*.

## 13.4.4.2 Payroll (PY)

### About This Chapter

This section of the Security Guide provides an overview of security-relevant information for *Payroll* (PY).

### Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

The chapter “Payroll” comprises the following main sections:

- [Important SAP Notes](#)  
This section lists the most important SAP Notes with regard to the security of Payroll.
- [User Management](#)  
This section provides an overview of the user types required for Payroll.
- [Authorizations](#)  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept used for Payroll.  
Note also the section [Authorizations](#) for Human Resources overall.
- [Communication Channel Security](#)  
This section provides an overview of the communication paths used by Payroll.
- [Data Storage Security](#)  
This section provides an overview of the critical data used by Payroll, as well as the security mechanisms used.
- [Security for Third-Party Applications or Additional Applications](#)  
This section contains security information that applies for additional applications that are used together with Payroll (for example, the Interface Toolbox or B2A: Communication with Authorities).
- [Country-Specific Features](#)  
This section contains additional security-relevant information for some country versions.



#### i Note

The information in the chapter “Payroll (PY)” applies for **all** country versions of Payroll. The country-specific sections only contain **additional** country-specific information, if any exists.



## 13.4.4.2.1 Important SAP Notes

The following table lists the most important SAP Notes with regard to the security of Payroll.

Title	SAP Note	Comment
Analyzing HR authorizations	<a href="#">902000</a> 	Contains general information about authorizations in the attachments
Q&A: How to customize Payroll Accounting postings in Rel.4.x	<a href="#">116523</a> 	Explains that the display authorizations for posting to Accounting are controlled using the report authorizations (that is, there are no table authorizations)

## 13.4.4.2.2 User Management

### Definition

User management for *Payroll* uses the mechanisms provided by the *SAP Web Application Server* ( ABAP), for example, tools, user types, and password policies. For an overview of how these mechanisms apply for *Payroll* , see the sections below. In addition, there is a list of the standard users that are necessary for operating *Payroll* .

### User Management Tools

The table below shows the tools to use for user management with *Payroll* .

User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Prerequisites
User and Role Maintenance (transaction PFCG)	You can use the Role Maintenance transaction PFCG to generate profiles for your <i>Payroll</i> users.	

### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users under which background processing jobs run.

The user types required for *Payroll* include:

- Individual users
  - Administration user
  - Payroll manager
  - Payroll specialist
- Technical users
  - Payroll procedure administrator
  - ALE user for posting payroll results to Accounting

For more information about these user types, see the SAP Web AS ABAP Security Guide under *User Types*.

## 13.4.4.2.3 Authorizations

### Role Concept and Authorization Concept for Payroll

*Payroll* uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP, which is based on the assignment of authorizations to users using roles.

The roles named as “standard roles” are available as templates. You can copy the standard roles into the customer-specific namespace and adjust them to suit your requirements. To maintain roles, you use the Profile Generator (transaction PFCG).

#### Standard Roles

The following table shows examples of standard roles that are used by the *Payroll* component.

Standard Roles

Role	Description
SAP_HR_PY_xx_PAYROLL-ADM	Payroll administrator <xx>
SAP_HR_PY_xx_PAYROLL-MANAGER	Payroll manager <xx>
SAP_HR_PY_xx_PAYROLL-PROC-ADM	Payroll procedure administrator <xx>
SAP_HR_PY_xx_PAYROLL-SPEC	Payroll specialist <xx>
SAP_HR_PY_xx_*	Roles for mapping country-specific tasks within Payroll
SAP_HR_PY_PAYROLL-LOAN-ADM	Loan accounting administrator

xx stands for the country key. For the roles marked with an asterisk (\*), additional roles exist for each of the countries.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

*Payroll* uses the authorization objects that are usually available for Human Resources. For more information, see *Authorizations* .

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used by Payroll .

## Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Objects	Name	Description	Additional Information
P_PBSPWE	Process Workbench Engine (PWE) authorization	Authorizations for the Process Workbench Engine(PWE)	
P_PCLX	HR: Cluster	Check when accessing HR files on the PCLx (x = 1, 2, 3, 4) databases	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">▶ Authorizations for Human Resources</a> > <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> > <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> > <a href="#">P_PCLX (HR: Cluster)</a> >
P_PCR	HR: Personnel control record	Authorization check for the personnel control record (transaction PA03)	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">▶ Authorizations for Human Resources</a> > <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> > <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> > <a href="#">P_PCR (HR: Personnel Control Record)</a> >
P_PE01	HR: Authorization for personnel calculation schemes	Authorization check for personnel calculation schemes	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">▶ Authorizations for Human Resources</a> > <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> > <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> > <a href="#">P_PE01 (HR: Authorization for Personnel Calculation Schemas)</a> >
P_PE02	HR: Authorization for personnel calculation rule	Authorization check for personnel calculation rules	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">▶ Authorizations for Human Resources</a> > <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> > <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> > <a href="#">P_PE02 (HR: Authorization for Personnel Calculation Rule)</a> >

Authorization Objects	Name	Description	Additional Information
P_PYEVD0C	HR: Posting document	Protection of actions on payroll posting documents	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under ▶ <a href="#">Authorizations for Human Resources</a> ▶ <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> ▶ <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> ▶ <a href="#">P_PYEVD0C (HR: Posting Document)</a> ▶
P_PYEV0R0N	HR: Posting run	Control of actions that are possible for posting runs	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under ▶ <a href="#">Authorizations for Human Resources</a> ▶ <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> ▶ <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> ▶ <a href="#">P_PYEV0R0N (HR: Posting Run)</a> ▶
P_0CWBEN0H	HR: Activities in the Off-Cycle Workbench	Used for the authorization check in the Off-Cycle Workbench.	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under ▶ <a href="#">Authorizations for Human Resources</a> ▶ <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> ▶ <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> ▶ <a href="#">P_0CWBEN0H (HR: Activities in the Off-Cycle Workbench)</a> ▶
S_TMS_0CT	Actions on TemSe objects	The authorization determines who may execute which operations on which TemSe objects	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under ▶ <a href="#">Authorizations for Human Resources</a> ▶ <a href="#">Technical Aspects</a> ▶ <a href="#">Authorization Objects</a> ▶ <a href="#">S_TMS_0CT (TemSe: Actions on TemSe Objects)</a> ▶

For documentation about authorization objects, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA and choose ▶ [Human Resources](#) ▶ [HR Tools](#) ▶ [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) ▶ [Technical Aspects](#) ▶ [Authorization Objects](#) ▶.

## Authorizations for Posting Data to Accounting

The authorization check for posting data to Accounting is performed using report authorizations. This means that the different level of detail of the data comes from calling different reports and can be restricted using corresponding report authorizations.

When posting data to Accounting, the following authorization checks are made:

- Report RPCIPA00
  - Authorization object S\_Program, based on report RPCIPA00
  - Authorization object P\_PYEVRUN, based on:
    - Run type PP
    - Run information (simulation, productive)
    - Activity (display)
- Report RPCIPS00
  - Authorization object S\_Program, based on report RPCIPS00
  - Authorization object P\_PYEVD0C, based on:
    - Company code of document
    - Activity (display of contents of posting document)
- Report RPCIPD00
  - Authorization object S\_Program, based on report RPCIPD00
  - Authorization object P\_PYEVD0C, based on:
    - Company code of document
    - Activity (display of detailed posting information with data related to personnel number)

For more information, see SAP Note 1235291.

## 13.4.4.2.4 Communication Channel Security

### Use

The table below shows the communication channels used by *Payroll*, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
Interface Toolbox (Transaction PU12)	ALE, local files	Determined by the user	Salary data, HR master data
Display posting runs (transaction PCP0)	ALE	Data for cost accounting	Salary data (accumulated in part)
Display documents from Accounting	ALE	Documents from Accounting	

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
Data medium files (creation in Accounting)	Local files	Files for transfer of bank transfers to the banks	Salary data
Display original document for an external wage component in infotype <i>External Wage Components</i> (0579)	RFC	Documents from Accounting	Additional salary data from external systems

RFC connections can be protected using Secure Network Communications (SNC). For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

In addition, there is also an authorization check for calling the RFC-capable function module itself (CALL FUNCTION 'AUTHORITY\_CHECK\_RFC'). For more information, see SAP NetWeaver Library and choose RFC Programming in ABAP.

For more information about the security of ALE connections, see SAP NetWeaver Security Guide ALE.

## 13.4.4.2.5 Data Storage Security

### Data Storage

The payroll results are saved as compressed to an INDX-like table. In the standard system, access is protected using the read and write authorizations for the infotypes and the authorizations for the required cluster.

The Payroll data and the posting to Accounting are saved to the databases of SAP NetWeaver Application Server (AS) ABAP. Payroll uses the standard security concept of SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP for this.

The payroll results in the table `PCL2` are protected using the authorization object `P_PCLX`.

The posting data is stored in the table `PPOIX` and other transparent tables. Access to the posting data is regulated using the report authorizations. For more information, see *Authorizations* under *Payroll*.

#### ⚠ Caution

Data stored in database tables can be displayed using the transactions `SE16` or `SE16N` even **without** an application-specific authorization check. To prevent this, you remove the authorizations for these transactions in productive systems or adjust them accordingly.

For more information, see SAP NetWeaver Library under Authorization Checks and in SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP.

## Using Logical Paths and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Payroll saves data in files in the local file system. Therefore, it is important to assign explicit access to the corresponding files in the file system without access to other directories or files (also called directory traversal). This is achieved by entering logical paths and file names in the system that are assigned to the physical paths and file names. This assignment is validated at runtime. If access to a directory is requested that does not correspond to a stored assignment, an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths that are used by Payroll, and the reports for which these file names and paths are valid:

### Logical File Names and Path Names Used in Payroll

The following logical file names and logical file paths were created using transaction `FILE` to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names	Logical File Path
HR_XX_DIR_RPUFCP01	RPUFCP01	HR_XX_DIR_RPUFCP01

In addition, country-specific logical file names and file paths were created for some country versions. For more information, see the following sections of the Security Guide:

- Country-Specific Features: Canada
- Country-Specific Features: Germany
- Country-Specific Features: Great Britain
- Country-Specific Features: Non-Profit Organizations
- Country-Specific Features: Singapore
- Country-Specific Features: USA
- Country-Specific Features: Other Countries

### Activating Validation of Logical Paths and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding reports. Due to downward compatibility reasons, the validation is deactivated by default at runtime. To activate the validation at runtime, you maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-dependent). To determine which paths are used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information, see the following:

- [Logical File Names](#)
- [Protecting Access to the File System](#)
- [Security Audit Log](#)

## 13.4.4.2.6 Security for Additional Applications

### Display of Documents Using Remote Function Call (RFC)

#### Posting Data to Accounting

Administrators for Accounting can use the transaction PCPO ( *Display posting runs* ) to display posting documents for Human Resources by choosing **► Goto ► Document Overview ► Goto ► Accounting Documents ►**. The administrator requires a user for Human Resources that has the corresponding report authorizations for posting data to Accounting (see *Authorizations* under *Payroll* ). You can also deactivate this option by removing the corresponding ALE function module.

Conversely, the authorization check for displaying documents from Accounting must be made from the HR system to Accounting.

#### External Wage Components

From the *External Wage Components* infotype (0579), users can display the original document for an external wage component. The document is displayed using the function module HR\_PCIF\_SHOW\_RECEIPT, which calls an RFC-capable function module in the external system. This function module then has to perform its own checks.

The function module BAPI\_WAGE\_COMP\_EXT\_GET\_LIST is used to display a list of data of the *External Wage Components* infotype (0579). This uses the function module HR\_CHECK\_AUTHORITY\_INFITY for the authorization check.

For the detailed view, the function module BAPI\_WAGECOMPEXT\_GETDETAIL is used. This uses the function module HR\_READ\_INFOTYPE for the authorization check.

For more information, see SAP Note 318789.

### Interface Toolbox and Outsourcing

The interface toolbox (transaction PU12) uses the cluster IF. It uses the following authorization objects:

- P\_PCLX
- P\_PCR
- S\_TMS\_ACT
- P\_PBSPWE

Outsourcing uses ALE and local files with file access using transaction AL11. This is controlled using user exits in the interface toolbox.

In the standard system, Outsourcing uses the logical system FILEPORT. You can use the transaction WE21 to define customer-specific logical systems.

The XML conversion to IDOC is made using the function module OUT\_IDOC\_XML\_TRANSFORM of the function group HROT and the function group IDOC\_XML1 (RSIDOCWF). The function module GUI\_DOWNLOAD (function group SFES) is also called for the conversion.



## Communication with Authorities

For more information, see [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#).

### TemSe Files

The country versions for Payroll use reports in which sensitive data is displayed. For example, this data can be from the following sensitive areas:

- Salary
- Tax
- Social insurance
- Pension contributions
- Court orders

This data is saved in temporary sequential (TemSe) files. The TemSe process is used for the following purposes:

- To create and output statutory forms, statistics, and analyses
- To download data for the front end server or application server directly, without storing the data as TemSe objects beforehand. The data can then be transferred from the front end server or application server to a data medium that can be transferred to the authorities.
- For posting data to Accounting

#### Caution

We recommend you **no longer** use the TemSe process for posting data to Accounting. If you run Accounting and Human Resources in separate systems, we recommend instead that you use Application Link Enabling (ALE). For more information, see SAP Notes 560301, 121614, and 125164.

You can control access to the TemSe objects within the SAP S/4HANA system using the authorization object S\_TMS\_ACT ([TemSe: Actions on TemSe Objects](#)). Data encryption is not necessary here.

You can find information about the TemSe objects for your country version in the [Payroll](#) documentation for your country version.

### 13.4.4.2.6.1 B2A: Communication with Authorities

This section of the Security Guide provides an overview of security-relevant information for [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#). [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#) is based on SAP S/4HANA Central Component and Human Resources. Therefore, the corresponding sections in the Security Guide also apply for [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#).

[B2A: Communication with Authorities](#) is used by the following country versions:

- Switzerland  
For more information, see [Country-Specific Features: Switzerland](#)

- Germany  
For more information, see [B2A: Communication with Authorities \(PY-DE-BA\)](#).
- Great Britain  
For more information, see [Country-Specific Features: Great Britain](#)

## Underlying Security Guides

Security Guide of Scenario, Application, or Component	Path
Secure Store and Forward (SSF)	SAP NetWeaver Developers' Guide in SAP NetWeaver Library under Secure Store and Forward Mechanism (SSF)
SAP Business Connector (BC)	<a href="#">SAP Business Connector Security Guide</a>
SAP NetWeaver Exchange Infrastructure/Process Integration (XI/PI)	<a href="#">SAP Process Integration (PI) Security Guides</a>

## Important SAP Notes

Currently, there are no security-relevant SAP Notes for B2A.

## Authorizations

For more information, see [Authorizations](#).

### 13.4.4.2.6.1.1 Authorizations

#### Use

[B2A: Communication with Authorities](#) uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#).

## Roles and Authorization Concept for B2A: Communication with Authorities

### Standard Roles

Currently, there are no application-specific roles available.

### Standard Authorization Objects

The following table shows the authorization objects relevant for security used by *B2A: Communication with Authorities*.

Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_B2A ( <i>HR-B2A: B2A Manager</i> )	MOLGA	Country Grouping: Unique identifier for a country, for example, 01 for Germany	You use this authorization object to determine the authorization check for B2A Manager. You need to maintain this authorization object only if you use B2A Manager.
	B2A_WERKS		Authorization Check – Personnel Area
	B2A_BTRTL		Authorization Check – Personnel Subarea
	SAGRP		Area – identifies an application in Human Resources
	DOCTY		Document Type – includes documents of the same type within an area within the framework of the B2A functions
	B2A_ACTIO		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• S – Send Messages</li> <li>• D – Detail View for Messages</li> <li>• R – Reorganize Messages</li> <li>• L – Delete Messages</li> <li>• Z – Convert Status of Messages</li> </ul>

## 13.4.4.2.7 Country-Specific Features

The following chapters contain information on country-specific features.

## 13.4.4.2.71 Country-Specific Features: Australia

### Sensitive Data

The Human Resources infotypes often contain sensitive data. This data is protected by central authorization objects. For the country version for Australia (PY-AU, PA-PA-AU), this affects the tax file number (TFN number) in the infotype *TFN Australia* (0227), for example.

### More Information

[Payroll \(PY\)](#)

## 13.4.4.2.72 Country-Specific Features: Canada

### Data Storage Security

For general information about data storage security in Payroll, see [Data Storage Security](#) under *Payroll*.

The following contains specific information about the logical file names and path names for *Payroll Canada* (PY-CA).

#### Logical File Names Used in Payroll Canada

The following logical file names were created to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names and Reports

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names
HR_CA_DIR_CRA_XML_FILE_NAME_APPV	RPCYERK3_XML
HR_CA_DIR_CRA_XML_FILE_NAME_FEND	RPCYERK3_XML
HR_CA_DIR_CRA_XML_SCH_NAME_FEND	RPCYERK3_XML
HR_CA_DIR_MRQ_XML_FILE_NAME_APPV	RPCYERK3_MRQ_XML
HR_CA_DIR_MRQ_XML_FILE_NAME_FEND	RPCYERK3_MRQ_XML
HR_CA_DIR_MRQ_XML_SCH_NAME_APPV	RPCYERK3_MRQ_XML
HR_CA_DIR_MRQ_XML_SCH_NAME_FEND	RPCYERK3_MRQ_XML
HR_CA_DIR_ROE_FILE_NAME	RPCROEK0_DISPLAY_XML
HR_CA_DIR_ROE_FILE_NAME	RPCROEK0_XMPORTER

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names
HR_CA_DIR_XML_FILE_NAME_FEND	RPCXMLK0_VALIDATE
HR_CA_DIR_XML_SCH_NAME_FEND	RPCXMLK0_VALIDATE

### Logical Path Names Used in Payroll Canada

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path `HR_CA_FILE_PATH`.

## Particularly Sensitive Data

The Human Resources infotypes often contain sensitive data. This data is protected by central authorization objects. For the country version for Canada, this includes the social insurance number (SNI number) in the infotype *Personal Data* (0002).

## More Information

See *Payroll (PY)* in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide.

## 13.4.4.2.7.3 Country-Specific Features: Switzerland

### Authorizations

The country version for Switzerland (PA-PA-CH, PY-CH) uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for Switzerland.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for Switzerland uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- *Authorizations* (Personnel Management)
- *Authorizations* (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for Switzerland.

## Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_CH_PK	KONNR (Individual PF Account Number)		HR-CH: Pension Fund: Account Access (see <a href="#">▶ Authorizations for Human Resources ▶ Technical Aspects ▶ Authorization Objects ▶ P_CH_PK (HR-CH: Pension Fund: Account Access) ▶</a> )
	AUTGR (HR-CH: Authorization group for PF accounts)		
	PKKLV (HR-CH: Pension fund : Authorization level for account access)		

For the documentation for the authorization object P\_CH\_PK, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA and choose [▶ Human Resources ▶ HR Tools ▶ Authorizations for Human Resources ▶ Technical Aspects ▶ Authorization Objects ▶](#).

## Communication Channel Security

The following table presents the communication paths used by the country version for Switzerland for [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#), the protocol used by the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
ELM (Uniform Wage Notification Procedure)	External communication between PI* and distributor/authorities: HTTPS	Personnel data	Personal data
	Internal communication between HR backend system and PI: RFC Adapter		
	Internal communication between PI and PI: HTTP(S)		

\* PI = SAP NetWeaver Exchange Infrastructure/Process Integration (XI/PI)

You can use Secure Network Communications (SNC) to protect RFC connections. The Secure Sockets Layer protocol (SSL protocol) protects HTTP connections.

### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

For more information about B2A security, see [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#).

## More Information

See S/4 Security Guide for Human Resources and choose [Payroll \(PY\)](#)

### 13.4.4.2.7.4 Country-Specific Features: Germany

#### Authorizations

The country version for Germany (Payroll and/or Personnel Administration) uses the standard authorization concept used by S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for S/4HANA also apply to the country version for Germany (PY-DE, PA-PA-DE).

#### Standard Roles

For information about the standard roles used by Payroll, see [Authorizations](#).

The following table shows the standard roles that the country version for Germany also uses.

Standard Roles

Role	Description
SAP_AUDITOR_TAX_HR	Role HR-DE Audit § 147 AO (Template) for Personnel Administration Germany (PA-PA-DE)

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for Germany uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for Germany.

## Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_DBAU_SKV HR: DBAU: Construction Industry Germany - Social Fund Procedure	ACTVT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add or Create</li> <li>Display</li> <li>Delete</li> </ul>	<p>This object is only used in Construction Pay Germany and then only within the framework of the report for the social fund procedure. A check is made as to which reports are to be run by an administrator using which parameters or worksteps.</p> <p>For more information, see SAP Library for S/4HANA under <a href="#">P_DBAU_SKV (HR: DBAU: Construction Pay Germany – Social Fund Procedure)</a></p>
	REPID	ABAP Report Name: Contains the name of a report in which the authorization object is checked, for example, the evaluation report for the social fund procedure. The authorization granted applies only to this report.	
	RZNUM	Data Center Number for Construction Industry Social Fund  Determines the data center numbers to which a granted authorization applies	
	ZVKAS	Social Fund  Determines the social funds for which a granted authorization applies	
P_DE_BW HR-DE: SAPScript Statements	BEWID	Statement Identifier  Identifies exactly one statement within Statements	<p>This object determines the authorization check within Statements (with SAPScript) for German Payroll.</p> <p>For more information, see SAP Library for S/4HANA under <a href="#">P_DE_BW (HR-DE: Statements SAPScript)</a></p>



Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
	BSUBJ	Functional Area ID for Statements  Logical subdivision of statements according to individual topics  Values 01–04	
	BACT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• E = Creation of Statements</li> <li>• A = Asynchronous Archiving</li> <li>• S = Fast Data Entry/Ad-hoc Query</li> <li>• D = Create Data Records</li> <li>• V = Administrative Archived Statements</li> <li>• Z = Display Archived Statements</li> </ul>	

For the documentation for the authorization objects, see SAP Library for S/4HANA and choose [Human Resources](#) > [HR Tools](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) > [Technical Aspects](#) > [Authorization Objects](#).

## Data Storage Security

For general information about data storage security in Payroll, see [Data Storage Security](#).

The following contains specific information about the logical file names and path names for [Payroll Germany](#) (PY-DE).

### Logical File Names Used in Payroll Germany

The following logical file names and logical file paths were created to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names, Reports, and File Paths

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names	Logical File Path
HR_DE_DIR_B2A_KK_ZERTLIST	RPUSVKD0	HR_DE_B2A_KK_ZERTLIST
HR_DE_DIR_B2A_KK_ZERTREQUEST	RPUSVKD0	HR_DE_B2A_KK_ZERTREQUEST
HR_DE_DIR_B2A_KK_ZERTRESPONSE	RPUSVKD0	HR_DE_B2A_KK_ZERTRESPONSE

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names	Logical File Path
HR_DE_DIR_RBM_IN	RPCRBMD0_INBOUND	HR_DE_DIR_RBM_IN
HR_DE_DIR_RBM_OUT	RPCZFADD_INBOUND	HR_DE_DIR_RBM_OUT
HR_DE_DIR_RBM_PRO	RPCRBMD0_INBOUND	HR_DE_DIR_RBM_PRO
HR_DE_DIR_RPCAODD0	RPCAOPD0 RPCOADD0	HR_DE_TX_DATENUEBERLASSUNG_PFA D
HR_DE_DIR_RPCHEBD0	RPCHEBD0	HR_DE_DIR_RPCHEBD0
HR_DE_DIR_RPCHECD1	RPCHECD1	HR_DE_DIR_RPCHECD1
HR_DE_DIR_RPCHEFD0	RPCHEFD0	HR_DE_DIR_RPCHEFD0
HR_DE_DIR_RPCSVGD0	RPCSVGD0	HR_DE_DIR_RPCSVGD0
HR_DE_DIR_RPLEHAD3	RPLEHAD3	HR_DE_DIR_RPLEHAD3
HR_DE_DIR_RPSKGOD0	RPSKGOD0	HR_DE_DIR_RPSKGOD0
HR_DE_DIR_RSPSDD0	RSPSDD0	HR_DE_DIR_RSPSDD0
HR_DE_DIR_RPURZBD0	RPURZBD0	HR_DE_DIR_RPURZBD0
HR_DE_DIR_RPUTXCD0	RPUTXCD0	HR_DE_TX_RPUTXED0_PFAD
HR_DE_DIR_RPUTXED0	RPUTXED0	HR_DE_TX_RPUTXED0_PFAD
HR_DE_DIR_RPUVEODD	RPUVEODD	HR_DE_DIR_RPUVEODD
HR_DE_DIR_RPUWEDDA	RPUWEDDA	HR_DE_DIR_RPUWEDDA
HR_DE_DIR_RPUZVCD2	RPUZVCD2	HR_DE_PBSZV2006_NOTIFS
HR_DE_DIR_RPUZVTD2	RPUZVTD2	HR_DE_PBSZV2006_NOTIFS
HR_DE_DIR_RPXKHS0	RPXKHS0	HR_DE_DIR_RPXKHS0
HR_DE_DIR_ZFA_INCOMING	RPCZFADD_INBOUND	HR_DE_DIR_ZFA_INCOMING
HR_DE_DIR_ZFA_OUTGOING	RPCZFADD_INBOUND	HR_DE_DIR_ZFA_OUTGOING
HR_DE_DIR_ZFA_PROCESSED	RPCZFADD_INBOUND	HR_DE_DIR_ZFA_PROCESSED

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) under S/4HANA Security Guide Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.2.7.4.1 B2A: Communication with Authorities (PY-DE-BA)

### About This Chapter

This section of the Security Guide provides an overview of security-relevant information for [B2A: Communication with Authorities \(PY-DE-BA\)](#).

### References to Cross Chapters

[B2A: Communication with Authorities \(PY-DE-BA\)](#) is based on SAP S/4HANA, Human Resources, or Personnel Management. Therefore, the corresponding Security Guides also apply to [B2A: Communication with Authorities \(PY-DE-BA\)](#). Note in particular the most important sections or specific restrictions that are entered in the following table.

### Underlying Security Guides

Security Guide of Scenario, Application, or Component	Path
Secure Store and Forward (SSF)	SAP NetWeaver Developers' Guide in SAP NetWeaver Library under Secure Store and Forward Mechanism (SSF)
SAP Business Connector (BC)	SAP Business Connector Security Guide
SAP NetWeaver Exchange Infrastructure/Process Integration (XI/PI)	SAP Process Integration (PI) Security Guides

### Important SAP Notes

Currently, there are no security-relevant SAP Notes for B2A.

### Configuration

For information about the general settings for setting up [B2A: Communication with Authorities \(PY-DE-BA\)](#), see Customizing for Payroll under [► Payroll: Germany ► Communication with Authorities \(B2A\) ►](#).

## Data Flow and Process

- ELSTER: The data is encrypted and signed before being transferred from the HR system to the tax authorities.
- ELENA: The data is encrypted and signed before being transferred from the HR system to the pension insurance.
- SI (DEUEV, ...): The data is encrypted and signed before being transferred from the HR system to the health insurance fund.

## Authorizations

For more information, see [Authorizations](#) under *B2A: Communication with Authorities*.

### 13.4.4.2.7.4.1.1 Communication Channel Security

#### Use

The following table shows the communication paths that *B2A: Communication with Authorities* (PY-DE-BA) uses, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
ELSTER	HTTP  Internal: HR system -> Middleware (BC or PI): Communication channel RFC  External: Middleware -> Tax authorities: Communication channel HTTP	Personnel data	Person-related data
ELENA	HTTP/HTTPS/E-mail	Personnel Data	Person-related data
SI (DEUEV, ...)	HTTP/E-mail	Personnel data	Person-related data
ZfA/PRN	VPN	Personnel data	Person-related data

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

## Communication Destinations

The following table provides an overview of the communication destinations that *B2A: Communication with Authorities* (PY-DE-BA) uses.

Destination	Provided	Type	Description
HR_DE_ELSTER	No	RFC	Transfer of data for ELSTER to middleware (BC, XI)
HR_DE_ELENA	No	HTTP/HTTPS	Transfer of data for ELENA to pension insurance
HR_DE_GKV	No	HTTP	Transfer of data for GKV to health insurance

## Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

- ELSTER: Tracing for error analysis using BI/BC is possible.
- ELENA: Tracing for error analysis using BC is possible.
- SI (DEUEV, ...): Tracing for error analysis using ICM (transaction: SMICM) is possible.
- ZfA/PRN: Tracing for error analysis using ICM (transaction: SMICM) is possible.

## 13.4.4.2.75 Country-Specific Features: Denmark

### Authorizations

The country version for Denmark (PA-PA-DK, PY-DK) uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for Denmark.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for Denmark uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for Denmark.

## Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_DK_PBS	PBSFIRMA	HR_DK (Company Used for PBS)	Authorization check for PBS companies (see <a href="#">P_DK_PBS (HR-DK: Authorization check for access to PBS company)</a> )

For the documentation for the authorization object P\_DK\_PBS, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA and choose [► Human Resources](#) > [HR Tools](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) > [Technical Aspects](#) > [Authorization Objects](#) > .

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) under SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources

## 13.4.4.2.7.6 Country-Specific Features: Spain

### Authorizations

The country version for Spain (PA-PA-ES, PY-ES) uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for Spain.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for Spain uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for Spain.

## Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_ES_PA_OK	INFTY (Infotype)		Authorization check for the function codes that are permitted for the HR master data of the country version for Spain
	SUBTY (Subtype)		
	PES_SRPES (Lock indicator for HR master record)		
	PES_FCODE (Function code)		
	ACTVT (Activity)		

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) under SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.2.7.7 Country-Specific Features: Great Britain

### Communication Channel Security

The following table presents the communication paths used by the country version for Great Britain (PY-GB, PA-PA-GB) for [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#), the protocol used by the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
E-Filing	Internal communication between HR backend system and middleware: HTTP(S) (SAP Business Connector (BC): TCP/IP or PI*: Proxy)  External communication between middleware and tax authorities: HTTP(S)	Personnel Data	Personal Data

\* PI = SAP NetWeaver Exchange Infrastructure/Process Integration (XI/PI)

HTTP connections are protected using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

For more information about B2A security, see [B2A: Communication with Authorities](#).

## Communication Destinations

You can communicate with the GB Inland Revenue Gateway. The communication channel is encrypted with 128 Bit SSL. The employees' tax data is transferred via RFC connections and using the protocol HTTPS.

## Data Storage Security

For general information about data storage security in Payroll, see [Data Storage Security](#).

The following contains specific information about the logical file names and path names for [Payroll Great Britain](#) (PY-GB).

### Logical File Names Used in Payroll Great Britain

The following logical file names were created to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names and Reports

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names
HR_GB_DIR_RPUASHG0	RPUASHG0
HR_GB_DIR_RPUHESG1	RPUHESG1
HR_GB_DIR_RPUTPSG0	RPUTPSG0
HR_GB_DIR_RPUUSSG0	RPUUSSG0
HR_GB_DIR_RPUUSSG1	RPUUSSG1

### Logical Path Names Used in Payroll Great Britain

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path `HR_GB_DIR_FILEPATH`.

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) under SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources



## 13.4.4.2.7.8 Country-Specific Features: The Netherlands

### Authorizations

The country version for The Netherlands (PA-PA-NL, PY-NL) uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for The Netherlands.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for The Netherlands uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for The Netherlands.

#### Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_NL_AEDM	JUPER (Legal person) ACTVT (Activity)		HR: Authorization object for Day-one-announcement
P_NL_LA06	JUPER (Legal person) ACTVT (Activity)		HR: Authorization object for wage return 2006
P_NL_PKAB	ACTVT (Activity)		Authorization object for PF Actuarial file
P_NL_PKEV	KASSE (Pension Fund) EVENT (HR-NL: Event) PKELV (Authorization level for reading event)		Authorization object for PF events
P_NL_PKFKT	PKNL_PKFKT (PK Function)		Authorization object for PF functions
P_NL_PKFXV	KASSE (Pension Fund) PKNL_FXVIE (Function view of fund)		Authorization object for PF function views
P_NL_PKTB	ACTVT (Activity)		Authorization object for PF pay scale calculation

## Communication Destinations

You can use the *Gemeentelijke Basis Administratie* (GBA) interface to upload the inbound data for retirement pension plan for the country version for The Netherlands.

## More Information

See *Payroll (PY)* in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.2.7.9 Country-Specific Features: Italy

### Important SAP Notes

The following table presents the most important SAP Notes regarding security for the country version for Italy (PA-PA-IT, PY-IT).

Title	SAP Note	Comment
Change of master data in a productive payroll	<a href="#">385319</a> 	

## Authorizations

The country version for Italy uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for Italy.

### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for Italy uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

### Country-Specific Authorization Objects

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for Italy.

## Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_IT_UERST	P_RESET (Reject posting for social insurance)		Authorization for termination of social insurance (report RPCUEDIO)

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources

## 13.4.4.2.7.10 Country-Specific Features: Non-Profit Organizations

### Data Storage Security

For general information about data storage security in Payroll, see [Data Storage Security](#).

The following contains specific information about the logical file names and path names for [Payroll for Non-Profit Organizations](#) (PY-NGO).

#### Logical File Names Used in Payroll for Non-Profit Organizations

The following logical file names were created to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names and Reports

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names
HR_UNUCMT_LOADER_FILE	HUNUCMT_LOADER

#### Logical Path Names Used in Payroll for Non-Profit Organizations

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path `HR_UN_FILEPATH`.

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources

## 13.4.4.2.711 Country-Specific Features: Norway

### Authorizations

The country version for Norway (PY-NO, PA-PA-NO) uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for Norway.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for Norway uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for Norway.

Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_NO_ALTIN	ACTVT (Activity)		Norway: Authorization to send data to Altinn Portal

### More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.2.712 Country-Specific Features: New Zealand

### Sensitive Data

The Human Resources infotypes often contain sensitive data. This data is protected by central authorization objects. For the country version for New Zealand (PY-NZ, PA-PA-NZ), this affects the employee IRD number in the infotype [IRD Nbr New Zealand](#) (0309). You have the following options for accessing the number:

- Directly using the infotype [IRD Nbr New Zealand](#) (0309) with the transaction [Maintain HR Master Data](#) (PA30)
- By choosing the [IRD Number](#) pushbutton in the infotype [Tax New Zealand](#) (0313).

The authorizations required to read or change the IRD number depend on the authorizations in the user profile.

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

### 13.4.4.2.7.13 Country-Specific Features: Russia

#### Authorizations

The country version for Russia (PA-PA-RU, PY-RU) uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for Russia.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for Russia uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for Russia.

Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_RU_0294C	AUTHC (Authorization level)		HR-RU: Authorization for checking records of infotype 0294
P_RU_PKMN	HR_RU_EVNT (Count parameter)		Authorization for checking HR_RU_PF DMS – Package Manager
	HR_RU_PKID (Package type)		
	HR_RU_REGN (Registration number)		
	HR_RU_USER (Name of processor who changed the object)		

## More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.2.714 Country-Specific Features: Saudi Arabia

### Authorizations

The country version for Saudi Arabia (PA-PA-SA, PY-SA) uses the standard authorization concept of SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to this country version.

#### Standard Authorization Group

Authorization group `PCSA` is provided with this country version.

## 13.4.4.2.715 Country-Specific Features: Singapore

### Data Storage Security

For general information about data storage security in Payroll, see [Data Storage Security](#).

The following contains specific information about the logical file names and path names for [Payroll Singapore](#) (PY-SG).

#### Logical File Names Used in Payroll Singapore

The following logical file names were created to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names and Reports

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names
HR_SG_DIR_NRSFILENAME	RPCNRSR0_XML_ALV

#### Logical Path Names Used in Payroll Singapore

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path `HR_SG_DIR_NRS`.

### More Information

See [Payroll \(PY\)](#) in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.2.7.16 Country-Specific Features: USA

### Important SAP Notes

The following table presents the most important SAP Notes regarding security for the country version for USA (PA-PA-US, PY-US).

Title	SAP Note	Comment
Tax Reporter Transaction and Spool Security	<a href="#">430595</a>	

### Authorizations

The country version for USA uses the standard authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described for SAP S/4HANA also apply to the country version for USA.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The country version for USA uses the security-relevant authorization objects that are available for Personnel Management and Payroll.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) (Personnel Management)
- [Authorizations](#) (Payroll)

The following table shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are also used in the country version for USA.

Country-Specific Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_USTR	ACTVT (Activity)		Authorizations for Tax Report
	PERSA (Personnel Area)		
	BTRTL (Personnel Subarea)		

### Communication Channel Security

The following table shows the communication paths that the country version for USA uses, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
BSI Tax Factory for tax calculation	RFC	Tax data for the country version for USA	

You can use Secure Network Communications (SNC) to protect RFC connections.

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

## Communication Destinations

You can exchange data with local servers or terminals for the VET and EEO reports for the country version for USA. You can use this function to download files from the application server to a presentation server. You then receive the text files required by the authorities with the output format `.txt`. This output format complies with the law.

The data is **not** encrypted in the standard system. It is your decision as to the level of encryption that you want to use if you want to send the data to the Federal Commission or Department of Labor.

The following table presents an overview of the communication destinations that the country version for USA uses.

Communication Destinations

Destination	Provided	Type	Description
BSI	For country version for USA	RFC with the function module <code>PAYROLL_TAX_CALC_US</code>	<code>PAYROLL_TAX_CALC_US_50</code> <code>PAYROLL_TAX_CALC_US_60</code> <code>PAYROLL_TAX_CALC_US_70</code>

## Data Storage Security

For general information about data storage security in Payroll, see [Data Storage Security](#).

The following contains specific information about the logical file names and path names for *Payroll USA* (PY-US).

### Logical File Names Used in Payroll USA



The following logical file names were created to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names and Reports

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names
HR_US_TR_XML_SCHEMA	RPCTRTU1_XML

### Logical Path Names Used in Payroll USA

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path HR\_US\_TR.

## Particularly Sensitive Data

The Human Resources infotypes often contain sensitive data. This data is protected by central authorization objects. For the country version for USA, this includes the social security number (SSN number) in the infotype *Personal Data* (0002).

## Other Security-Relevant Information

You can use the interface toolbox (transaction PU12) to update the taxability model. Currently, there are no special authorizations for this. For more information about the interface toolbox, see section *Security for Additional Applications* under *Payroll*.

You have the following options to prevent unauthorized or unintentional updates of the database PCL4:

- You can use the feature UTXSS to activate and deactivate the authorization checks for the tax report.
- You can use the feature UTXSP to specify codes for spool authorizations depending on the tax company and the tax class.

For more information, see the documentation of the features in the SAP S/4HANA system.

## More Information

See *Payroll (PY)* in the S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.2.7.17 Country-Specific Features: Other Countries

### Data Storage Security

For general information about data storage security in Payroll, see *Data Storage Security*.

The following contains specific information about the logical file names and path names for *Payroll for Other Countries* (PY-XX).

### Logical File Names Used in Payroll for Other Countries

The following logical file names and logical file paths were created to facilitate the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names, Reports/Function Modules, and File Paths

Logical File Name	Reports or Function Modules That Use These Logical File Names	Logical File Path
HR_XX_DIR_B2AFILE	Report H99_B2AFILE	HR_XX_DIR_B2AFILE
HR_XX_DIR_RPUFCP01	Report RPUFCP01	HR_XX_DIR_RPUFCP01
HR_XX_DIR_RH_CALL_ORGDISPLAY	Function module RH_CALL_ORGDISPLAY	HR_XX_DIR_RH_CALL_ORGDISPLAY
HR_XX_DIR_RHMOVE40	Report RHMOVE40	PD_DATASET
HR_OT_FILEPORT	Report RPUOTFL0	HR_OT_DIR_FILEPORT

## More Information

See *Payroll (PY)* in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## 13.4.4.3 Self-Services

### 13.4.4.3.1 Important SAP Notes

#### Definition

This chapter of the Security Guide provides you with information about the following self-service components:

- *Business Unit Analyst (BUA)*
- *Project Self-Services (PSS)*
- *Higher Education and Research (IS-HER-CSS)*
- *General Parts (PCUI\_GP)*

If not stated otherwise, the security settings for user management and authorizations apply to all of the aforementioned components.

*The following self-service components have their own sections in this chapter:*

- [Employee Self-Service](#)
- [Manager Self-Service](#)

### i Note

For these components, all security-relevant information is included in the relevant subsections.

## Important SAP Notes

The table below shows important SAP Notes that apply to the security for some [Self-Service](#) applications. For more information about standard roles for assigning authorization in the Self-Service applications, see the [Authorizations](#) section of this Security Guide.

Important SAP Notes

SAP Note Number	Title	Comment
846439	PSS: Authorizations and roles for Web Dynpro	This SAP Note contains the authorization objects and the default values defined for the Web Dynpro applications for <a href="#">Project Self-Services</a> (component EP-PCT-PLM-PSS).

## 13.4.4.3.2 User Management

### Use

User management for [Self-Service](#) applications uses the mechanisms provided with the [SAP NetWeaver Application Server](#), for example, tools, user types, and password policy. For an overview of how these mechanisms apply for [Self-Service](#) applications, see the sections below.

## User Administration Tools

The table below shows the tools to use for user management and user administration with the [Self-Service](#) applications.

User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Prerequisites
User and role maintenance in SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP (transactions SU01 and PFCG)	You can use the Role Maintenance (PFCG) transaction to generate profiles for your self-service users.	

For more information, see the User and Roles section in SAP Library for *SAP NetWeaver* (see also [help.sap.com](https://help.sap.com) > [Documentation](#) > [SAP NetWeaver](#) > ).

## User Types

For information about the *user types*, see the *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide*.

### → Recommendation

For portal roles, we recommend that you set up the connection between the portal and the connected systems (ECC system, J2EE Engine, BW system) such that each individual user has access.

## Standard Users

Component	Standard Users
Project Self-Service Business Unit Analyst	No standard users exist in the standard SAP system for these components.
Higher Education and Research	For information about the standard users for this component, see the Security Guide for this component.

## 13.4.4.3.3 Authorizations

### Use

The *Self-Service* applications use the authorization concept provided by *SAP NetWeaver Application Server*. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide for ABAP* also apply to the *Self-Service* applications.

The *SAP NetWeaver Application Server* authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the *Profile Generator* (transaction PFCG). For more information, see *Editing Roles and Authorizations for Web Dynpro Services*.

## Standard Roles

### Business Unit Analyst and Project Self-Services

There are no standard roles for these components.

## Higher Education and Research

For information about the standard roles for this component, see the Security Guide for this component.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the general security-relevant authorization objects that are used by the *Self-Service* applications.

Standard Authorization Objects for Self-Service Applications:

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
S_RFC	RFC_NAME	Depends on service	Saves data when the back-end system is accessed via RFC from the Web Dynpro front end.

## Higher Education and Research

For information about the standard authorization objects for this component, see the Security Guide for this component.

## Internal Service Request and Personnel Change Requests

For information about standard authorization objects for the *Internal Service Request (ISR)* and *Personnel Change Requests*, see SAP Note 623650.

## 13.4.4.3.3.1 Maintain Roles and Authorizations for Web Dynpro Services

### Use

You use this procedure to maintain roles, their associated Web Dynpro services, and authorizations.

### Procedure

1. In transaction PFCG, create a role or select an existing default role for the component. Choose *Create Role* or copy the existing default role.
2. Assign the services you require to the role.
  1. On the *Menu* tab page, choose *Authorization Default*. The *Service* dialog box appears.
  2. Select the *External Service* checkbox.
  3. Select *WEBDYNPRO* as the external service type.

4. In the *Service* field, select the Web Dynpro service you require.
  5. Choose *Save*.  
The authorization objects and default values maintained for the service are then displayed in the menu tree structure.  
In the same manner, select all the Web Dynpro services that you want to use.
3. Assign the required authorizations.  
To do this, choose the *Authorizations* tab page to maintain the authorization objects and values in accordance with your requirements.

For more detailed information about role maintenance, see Role Maintenance In the *Users and Roles* section in SAP Library for *SAP NetWeaver* (see also ► [help.sap.com](http://help.sap.com) ► *Documentation* ► *SAP NetWeaver* ►).

### 13.4.4.3.3.2 Authorizations for Controlling Services (BUA)

The table below shows the standard authorization objects that are used by the controlling services in *Business Unit Analyst (BUA)*.

#### i Note

These authorization objects are also used by the controlling services in *Business Package for Manager Self-Service (MSS)*.

Authorization Object	Description
K_CCA	General authorization object for Cost Center Accounting.  Is checked in the relevant Monitor iViews, Master Data iViews, and Express Planning services.
K_ORDER	General authorization object for internal orders.  Is checked in the relevant Monitor iViews, Master Data iViews, and Express Planning services.
K_PCA	Area responsible, Profit Center.  Is checked in the relevant Monitor iViews, Master Data iViews, and Express Planning services.
K_CSKS_PLA	Cost element planning.  Is checked in the relevant Express Planning services.
K_FPB_EXP	Authorization object for Express Planning.  This authorization object checks the Express Planning Framework call and the planning round call. The actual plan data is protected by the authorization objects for the individual Express Planning services.

## i Note

For more information about the fields for the authorization objects K\_CCA, K\_ORDER, and K\_PCA, see SAP Note 15211.

### 13.4.4.3.4 Employee Self-Service

#### About This Document

This chapter provides an overview of the security-relevant information that applies to Employee Self-Service (CA-ESS).

The following deployment options are available for Employee Self-Service (ESS):

- **Business Package for Employee Self-Service** (up to and including 1.50)  
This Business Package is a “classic” SAP Business Package that runs in the SAP Enterprise Portal. The Portal role consists of worksets and iViews based on Web Dynpro ABAP technologies.
- **Business Package for Employee Self-Service (WDA)**  
This Business Package also runs in the SAP Enterprise Portal but it has only one workset with one iView that launches the role structure with the applications maintained in the back-end system. In this business package, all applications are based on Web Dynpro ABAP technology.
- **Employee Self-Service in SAP Business Client for HTML**  
The role structure of this deployment option is maintained in the back-end system with the SAP role maintenance transaction `PF03G`. All applications available with this role are based on Web Dynpro ABAP technology.

## i Note

Some parts of the security information in this chapter only apply to individual ESS deployment options. In this case, you will find a comment explaining for which deployment option this information is valid right at the beginning of each section. If not stated otherwise, the security information in this chapter applies to all ESS deployment options.

#### See also:

- For more information about the roles in SAP Enterprise Portal, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal at [▶ Cross-Application Functions in SAP ERP ▶ Roles ▶ Business Packages \(Portal Content\) ▶](#).
- For more information about the roles in SAP Business Client, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal at [▶ Cross-Application Functions in SAP ERP ▶ Roles ▶ Roles in SAP NetWeaver Business Client ▶](#).
- For more information about SAP Business Client, see SAP Library for SAP NetWeaver on SAP Help Portal at [▶ SAP NetWeaver by Key Capability ▶ Application Platform by Key Capability ▶ ABAP Technology ▶ UI Technology ▶ SAP NetWeaver Business Client ▶](#).

## Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

This chapter comprises the following sections with security-related topics specific to Employee Self-Service:

- *Before You Start*  
This section comprises references to other Security Guides that are relevant for Employee Self-Service and a list of the most important notes for Employee Self-Service regarding security.
- *User Administration and Authentication*  
This section provides an overview of the following user administration and authentication aspects for Employee Self-Service:
  - *User Management*  
This section contains information about the user types that are required by Employee Self-Service and standard users for Employee Self-Service.
  - *Integration into Single Sign-On Environments*  
This topic describes how the Employee Self-Service supports Single Sign-On mechanisms.
- *Authorizations*  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept that applies to Employee Self-Service.
- *Session Security Protection*  
This section provides information on activating secure session management.
- *Network and Communication Security*  
This section provides an overview of the communication paths used by Employee Self-Service and the security mechanisms that apply. It also includes our recommendations for the network topology to restrict access at the network level:
  - *Communication Channel Security*
  - *Network Security*
  - *Communication Destinations*
- *Internet Communication Framework Security*  
This section provides an overview of the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) services that are used by Employee Self-Service.
- *Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing*  
This section provides an overview of the logging and tracing mechanisms that apply to Employee Self-Service.

### 13.4.4.3.4.1 User Administration and Authentication

User management for Employee Self-Service uses the mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP:

The security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP Security Guide apply for *Employee Self-Service (WDA) in SAP NetWeaver Business Client for HTML* apply to the ESS business packages (*Business Package for Employee Self-Service*) and *Business Package for Employee Self-Service (WDA)*.

In addition to these guidelines, information about user administration and authentication that specifically applies to Employee Self-Service is included in the following sections:

- *User Management*



- [Integration into Single Sign-On Environments](#)

## 13.4.4.3.4.1.1 User Management

### Use

User management for *Employee Self-Service (WDA) in SAP NetWeaver Business Client for HTML* uses the mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP.

For an overview of how these mechanisms apply to Employee Self-Service, see the sections below.

### User Administration Tools

The table below shows the tools to use for user management and user administration with Employee Self-Service.

#### User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Comment
User maintenance for ABAP-based systems (transaction SU01)	You use the user maintenance transaction to generate users in the ABAP-based systems and to assign authorization profiles.	Used for all ESS deployment options
Role maintenance (transaction PFCG)	You use the role maintenance transaction to generate authorization profiles for your self-service users.  For more information, see <a href="#">User and Role Administration of AS ABAP</a> .	Used for all ESS deployment options

#### Note

For the ESS business packages, you must perform user mapping for the users in the ABAP system and the Portal. For more information, see [Assigning Portal Roles to Users](#).

#### Caution

Ensure that you give end users general reading permission for the SAP Enterprise Portal. For more information, see SAP Note [939412](#).

## User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively must change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users under which background processing jobs run.

User types that are required for Employee Self-Service include:

- Individual users:
  - Dialog users (Used for SAP GUI for Windows or RFC connections)
  - Internet users (Same policies apply as for dialog users, but used for Internet connections).
- Technical users:
  - Service users .

For more information on these user types, see User Types in the [SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP Security Guide](#).

### i Note

For the [Business Package for Employee Self-Service](#) (up to and including 1.41), we recommend you set up the connection between the SAP Enterprise Portal and the connected systems (ECC system, J2EE Engine, BW system) so that each individual user has access. This does not apply to the [Business Package for Employee Self-Service \(WDA\)](#).

## Standard Users

For Employee Self-Service, no standard users are delivered.

### 13.4.4.3.4.1.2 Integration into Single Sign-On Environments

#### Use

Employee Self-Service supports the Single Sign-On (SSO) mechanisms provided by SAP NetWeaver. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to Employee Self-Service.

For more information about the available authentication mechanisms, see User Authentication and Single Sign-On in the [SAP NetWeaver Library](#).

## Configuration of Web Services with Client Certificates

For ESS applications of the [Business Package for Employee Self-Service](#), the use of client certificates should be configured for authentication when users access the J2EE Engine using an end-to-end connection. To achieve this, follow the instructions under [Configuring the Use of Client Certificates for Authentication](#).

## 13.4.4.3.4.2 Authorizations

### Use

Employee Self-Service uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to ESS.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`) on the AS ABAP.

#### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see [Role Administration](#).

## Role and Authorization Concept for Employee Self-Service

Employee Self-Service embraces services from a variety of SAP applications and also uses the authorizations of these individual components. Most of these services belong to HCM components, see [Authorizations for Human Resources](#).

## Standard Roles

The tables below show the standard roles that are used for authorizations by the [Business Package for Employee Self-Service](#) (up to and including [1.50](#)) and by [Employee Self-Service \(WDA\)](#).

Standard Roles for the Business Package for Employee Self-Service

Role	Name	Description
SAP_ESSUSER_ERP05	Single Role with all Non-Country-Specific Functions	Single role that comprises all non country-specific functions.
SAP_EMPLOYEE_ERP05_XX	ESS ERP05: Country-Specific Functions for <Country>	Single role comprising country-specific functions. A separate role exists for each country version (XX = country ID). The corresponding composite role is SAP_EMPLOYEE_ERP05.

Role	Name	Description
SAP_ASR_EMPLOYEE	HR Administrative Services: Employee	Enhancement of the role SAP_ESSUSER_ERP05 for the employees that use the functions of the component PA-AS (HR Administrative Services) in the <i>Business Package for Employee Self-Service</i> (up to and including 1.4.1).

### ⚠ Caution

For the *Business Package for Employee Self-Service*, you also need SAP Note [857431](#) for generating the authorization profiles.

#### Standard Roles for Employee Self-Service (WDA)

Role	Name	Description
SAP_EMPLOYEE_XX_ESS_WDA_2	ESS International Single Role	Authorizations for all international services in Employee Self-Service (WDA). For more information about this and all other Employee Self-Service (WDA) roles, see <i>Single Roles for Employee Self-Service (WDA)</i> .
SAP_EMPLOYEE_AU_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Australia	Authorizations for country-specific services for Australia in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_CA_ESS_WDA_2	ESS Single Role for Canada	Authorizations for country-specific services for Canada in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_CH_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Switzerland	Authorizations for country-specific services for Switzerland in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_CN_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for China	Authorizations for country-specific services for China in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_DE_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Germany	Authorizations for country-specific services for Germany in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_HK_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Hong Kong	Authorizations for country-specific services for Hong Kong in Employee Self-Service (WDA).

Role	Name	Description
SAP_EMPLOYEE_IN_ESS_WDA_2	ESS Single Role for India	Authorizations for country-specific services for India in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_JP_ESS_WDA_2	ESS Single Role for Japan	Authorizations for country-specific services for Japan in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_MY_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Malaysia	Authorizations for country-specific services for Malaysia in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_PT_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Portugal	Authorizations for country-specific services for Portugal in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_SG_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Singapore	Authorizations for country-specific services for Singapore in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_TH_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for Thailand	Authorizations for country-specific services for Thailand in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_EMPLOYEE_US_ESS_WDA_1	ESS Single Role for the United States	Authorizations for country-specific services for the USA in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_ESS_TRAVELER_2	ESS Single Role for the Traveler	Authorizations for ESS services for the traveler role in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_ASR_EMPLOYEE_SR_HCM_CI_3	ESS Single Role for HCM P&F Services	Authorizations for international ESS services from the <i>HR Process and Forms</i> application in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_PM_EMPLOYEE_HCM_CI_1	ESS Single Role for HCM PM Services	Authorizations for ESS services from the <i>Performance Management</i> application in Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_TMC_EMPLOYEE_6	Employee in Talent Management	Authorizations for ESS services from the <i>Talent Management and Talent Development</i> application in Employee Self-Service (WDA). For more information, see <i>Employee in Talent Management</i> .

Role	Name	Description
SAP_RCF_ESS_SR_ERC_CI_4	E-Recruiting services for ESS (WDA)	Authorizations in SAP E-Recruiting for employees that use SAP E-Recruiting services in ESS (WDA).
/SAPSRM/EMPLOYEE_ESS	SAP SRM Employee for ESS	Authorizations in SAP SRM for employees that use services from Purchasing in ESS (WDA).

### Note

The composite role `SAP_EMPLOYEE_ESS_WDA_2`, which contains the single roles listed above (except for the last two roles), is required for *Employee Self-Service (WDA) in SAP NetWeaver Business Client for HTML*. For more information on all roles for ESS (WDA), see also *Roles in Employee Self-Service (WDA)*.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The following table presents the general authorization objects relevant for security that are used by the *Business Package for Employee Self-Service* (up to and including 1.50).

Standard Authorization Objects for Self-Service Applications

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
S_RFC	RFC_NAME	Depends on service	Saves data from RFC access to Web Dynpro front end to the back-end system.

Apart from these authorization objects, all Employee Self-Service deployment options use the authorization objects from the following application areas or application components:

- *Human Capital Management*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Human Capital Management > Authorizations](#).
- *SAP E-Recruiting*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Human Capital Management > Talent Management > SAP E-Recruiting > Authorizations](#).
- *HCM Processes and Forms*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Human Capital Management > Personnel Administration \(PA\) > HCM Processes and Forms > Authorizations](#).
- *Travel Management*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Accounting > Financial Accounting > Travel Management \(FI-TV\)](#).

### 13.4.4.3.4.3 Session Security Protection

#### Use

To increase security and prevent access to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookie(s), we recommend activating secure session management.

We also highly recommend using SSL to protect the network communications where these security-relevant cookies are transferred.

#### Session Security Protection on the AS ABAP

The following section is relevant for *Employee Self-Service (WDA)*:

To prevent access in javascript or plug-ins to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookies (SAP\_SESSIONID\_<sid>\_<client>), activate secure session management. With an existing security session, users can then start applications that require a user logon without logging on again. When a security session is ended, the system also ends all applications that are linked to this security session.

Use the transaction SICF\_SESSIONS to specify the following parameter values shown in the table below in your AS ABAP system:

Session Security Protection Profile Parameters

Profile Parameter	Recommended Value	Comment
icf/ set_HTTPOnly_flag_on_cookies	0	Client-Dependent
login/ticket_only_by_https	1	Not Client-Dependent

For more information, a list of the relevant profile parameters, and detailed instructions, see *Activating HTTP Security Session Management on AS ABAP* in the AS ABAP security documentation.

### 13.4.4.3.4.4 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is extremely important in protecting your system. Your network needs to support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined network topology can eliminate many security threats based on software flaws (at both the operating system level and application level) or network attacks such as eavesdropping. If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, then there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the back-end system's database or files. Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server LAN (local area network), they cannot exploit well-known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

The network topology for Employee Self-Service is based on the topology used by the SAP NetWeaver platform. Therefore, the security guidelines and recommendations described in the SAP NetWeaver Security

Guide also apply to Employee Self-Service. Details that specifically apply to Employee Self-Service are described in the following sections:

- [Communication Channel Security](#)  
This topic provides an overview of the communication channels used by Employee Self-Service, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.
- [Network Security](#)  
This topic describes the recommended network topology for Employee Self-Service. It shows the appropriate network segments for the various client and server components and where to use firewalls for access protection. It also includes a list of the ports needed to operate Employee Self-Service.
- [Communication Destinations](#)  
This topic describes the information needed for the various communication paths, for example, which users are used for which communications.

For more information, see the following sections in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide:

- Network and Communication Security
- Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies

## 13.4.4.3.4.4.1 Communication Channel Security

### Use

DIAG and RFC connections can be protected using Secure Network Communications (SNC). HTTP connections are protected using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.

For more information, see Transport Layer Security in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend using secure protocols (SSL, SNC) whenever possible.

## SSL connections for Adobe Document Services

For ESS applications to perform security-related functions such as digitally signing PDF documents or launching of PDF forms, you must set up an SSL connection to the Web service. To achieve this, follow the instructions under [Configuration of the Web Service SSL Connection](#) in the Adobe Document Services Configuration Guide.

## 13.4.4.3.4.4.2 Network Security

### Ports

The Employee Self-Service runs on SAP NetWeaver and uses the port from the AS ABAP (for [Employee Self-Service \(WDA\)](#)).



For more information, see the topics for AS ABAP Ports in the corresponding SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

For other components, for example, SAPinst, SAProuter, or the SAP Web Dispatcher, see <https://help.sap.com/viewer/ports>.

### 13.4.4.3.4.4.3 Communication Destinations

#### Use

The tables below provide an overview of the communication destinations required for the three Employee Self-Service deployment options.

#### Employee Self-Service (WDA) in SAP Business Client for HTML

For this deployment option, you have to maintain RFC connections using the transaction SM59, see also the following table 1.

Table 1: Connection Destinations for Employee Self-Service (WDA) in NWBC for HTML

Destination	Delivered	Type	Recommended User Authorizations	Description
SAP_ECC_HumanResources	No	ABAP connection	n/a	System alias for the ECC HCM system
SAP_ECC_HumanResources_HTTP	No	HTTP connection	n/a	System alias for the ECC HCM system
SAP_SRM	No	ABAP connection	n/a	System alias for the SRM system for Purchasing applications
SAP_SRM_HTTP	No	HTTP connection	n/a	System alias for the SRM system for Purchasing applications
SAP_EREC_TalentManagement	No	ABAP connection	n/a	System alias for the SAP E-Recruiting system
SAP_EREC_TalentManagement_HTTP	No	HTTP connection	n/a	System alias for the SAP E-Recruiting system

#### Business Package for Employee Self-Service (WDA)

For the this deployment option, you have to maintain system aliases in the Portal System Landscape Administration, see also the following table 2.

Table 2: Connection Destinations for the Business Package for Employee Self-Service (WDA)

Destination	Delivered	Type	Recommended User Authorization	Description
SAP_ECC_HumanResources	Yes	Entry in Portal System Landscape Administration	n/a	System alias for the ECC HCM system
SAP_SRM	Yes	Entry in Portal System Landscape Administration	n/a	System alias for the SRM system for Purchasing applications
SAP_EREC_TalentManagement	Yes	Entry in Portal System Landscape Administration	n/a	System alias for the SAP E-Recruiting system

## More Information

For the Business Package for Employee Self-Service (WDA):

- [Setting Up the System Landscape](#)

For the Business Package for Employee Self-Service:

- [Setting Up the System Landscape](#)

## 13.4.4.3.4.5 Internet Communication Framework Security

### Use

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For Employee Self-Service (WDA), the following services are needed which, unless stated otherwise, you can find in the path `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`:

For general ESS applications:

- HRESS\_A\_MENU
- HRESS\_A\_PERSINFO
- hress\_a\_payslip
- HRESS\_A\_TCS

For applications from *HCM Processes and Forms* (PA-AS):

- asr\_form\_display
- ars\_personnel\_file
- asr\_processes\_display

- ASR\_PROCESS\_EXECUTE\_FPM

For applications from *Cross-Application Time Sheet* (CA-TS) and *Personal Time Management* (PT):

- hress\_a\_cats\_1
- hress\_a\_cats\_print
- hress\_a\_corrections
- hress\_a\_lea\_team\_calendar
- hress\_a\_ptarq\_leavreq\_appl
- HRESS\_A\_PTARQ\_TIMEACC
- HRESS\_A\_TIME\_DATESEL
- hress\_a\_time\_persel

For applications from *Benefits* (PA-BN):

- HRESS\_A\_BEN\_PART\_OVERVIEW
- HRESS\_A\_BENEFITS\_ENROLLMENT
- HRESS\_A\_BEN\_PRINT\_ENRO\_FORM
- HRESS\_A\_BEN\_FSA\_CLAIMS
- HRESS\_A\_BEN\_PRINT\_ENRO\_FORM
- HRESS\_A\_BEN\_PRINT\_CONF\_FORM

For applications from *Performance Management* (PA-PD-PM):

- HAP\_CONFIGURATION
- HAP\_DOCUMENT\_LINK
- HAP\_MAIN\_DOCUMENT
- HAP\_QUALIFICATION\_PROFILE
- HAP\_START\_PAGE\_POWL\_UI\_ESS
- HAP\_a\_ESS\_Startpage

For applications from *Travel Management* (FI-TV):

- FITE\_EXPRESS\_EXPENSES
- FITE\_REQUEST\_DELETE
- FITE\_EXPENSES\_DELETE
- FITP\_PLAN\_CANCEL
- FITV\_UNLOCK\_PERSNO
- FITV\_TRIP\_FORM
- FITV\_ROUTING
- FITP\_PROFILE
- FITE\_REQUEST
- FITP\_PLANNING FITE\_EXPENSES
- FITV\_POWL\_TRIPS

And in the path `default_host/sap/bc/bsp/sap/:`

- fitv\_bsp\_pfcg

For applications from *Self-Service Procurement* (SRM-EBP-SHP) in the path /default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sapsrm/:

- WDA\_L\_FPM\_OIF
- WDA\_L\_FPM\_OVP
- WDA\_L\_PRINT\_PREVIEW

For applications from *ERP E-Procurement* (MM-PUR-SSP):

- /SRMERP/WDA\_I\_SC\_ESS
- /SRMERP/WDA\_I\_SC\_FS\_ESS
- /SRMERP/WDA\_I\_WSCP

For applications from *SAP E-Recruiting* (PA-ER):

- All services with the prefix hrrcf in the path /default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/
- All services in the path /default\_host/sap/bc/erecruiting/
- All services with the prefix hrrcf\_wd in the path /default\_host/sap/bc/bsp/sap/

#### **i** Note

You activate the services in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under ► [Technical Settings](#) ► [User Interfaces](#) ► [Candidate](#) ► [Front-End Candidate](#) ► [Specify E-Recruiting Services \(Web Dynpro ABAP\)](#) ►.

For country-specific applications:

- HRESS\_A\_PAYINFO
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_AU\_PS
- Hress\_a\_rep\_ca\_tfr
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_CH\_PKB1
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_CH\_PKB4
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_CN\_CTXD
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_HK\_IR56B
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_HK\_IR56F
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_HK\_IR56G
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_IN\_FORM16
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_JP\_YEA\_DEP
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_JP\_YEA\_INS
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_JP\_YEA\_WTS
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_MY\_EA
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_MY\_PCB2
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_PT\_IID
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_SG\_IR21
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_SG\_IR8A
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_SG\_IR8E
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_SG\_IR8S
- HR\_EA\_A\_OVERVIEW\_EE
- HR\_EA\_A\_OVERVIEW\_CU

- HR\_EA\_A\_OVERVIEW\_AP
- HR\_EA\_A\_OVERVIEW\_TO
- HRESS\_A\_REP\_IN\_SSITP
- HRESS\_A\_CLAIM\_IN
- HRESS\_A\_ITDCL\_IN
- HRESS\_FWS\_EMP\_CALENDAR
- ASR\_PROCESS\_EXECUTE\_FPM

## Activities

Use the transaction `SICF` to activate these services.

If your firewalls use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

## More Information

For more information, see *Activating and Deactivating ICF Services in the SAP NetWeaver Library* documentation.

For more information about ICF security, see the *RFC/ICF Security Guide*.

### 13.4.4.3.4.6 Leave Request-Specific Virus Scan Profile (ABAP)

Attackers can abuse a file upload to modify displayed application content or to obtain authentication information from a legitimate user. Usually, virus scanners are not able to detect files designed for this kind of attack.

For this reason, the standard SAP Virus Scan Interface includes an enhancement option to protect the user and/or the SAP system from potential attacks.

For more information about the behavior of the virus scanner when default virus scan profiles (VSP) are activated, see SAP note [1693981](#) (Unauthorized modification of displayed content).

SAP *Leave Request* Application (`HRESS_A_PTARQ_LEAVREQ_APPL`) changes this behavior so that the file types (`EXE`, `RAR`, `DLL`) are blocked.

When you have created and activated the application-specific virus scan profile (`SIHTTP/HTTP_UPLOAD`), this profile produces the following impact: The MIME sniffing check is activated, and the MIME type `APPLICATION/OCTET-STREAM` will be blocked.

## 13.4.4.3.4.7 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Employee Self-Service relies on the logging and tracing mechanisms from SAP NetWeaver.

For more information, see the following topics:

- For the AS ABAP (relevant for *Employee Self-Service (WDA)*):  
[Auditing and Logging](#)

## 13.4.4.3.5 Manager Self-Service

### About This Document

This chapter provides an overview of the security-relevant information that applies to Manager Self-Service (EP-PCT-MGR).

The following deployment options are available for Manager Self-Service (MSS):

- **Business Package for Manager Self-Service**  
This Business Package is a “classic” SAP Business Package that runs in the SAP Enterprise Portal. The Portal role consists of worksets and iViews based on Web Dynpro ABAP technologies.
- **Manager Self-Service in SAP Business Client**  
The role structure for this deployment option is maintained in the back-end system with the SAP role maintenance transaction `PECG`. All applications available with this role are based on Web Dynpro ABAP technology.

### i Note

Some parts of the security information in this chapter only apply to one of the MSS deployment options. In this case, you will find a comment explaining for which deployment option this information is valid right at the beginning of each section. If not stated otherwise, the security information in this chapter applies to both MSS deployment options.

### See also:

- For more information about the roles in SAP Enterprise Portal, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal at [Cross-Application Functions in SAP ERP > Roles > Business Packages \(Portal Content\)](#).
- For more information about the roles in SAP Business Client, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal [Cross-Application Functions in SAP ERP > Roles > Roles in SAP NetWeaver Business Client](#).
- For more information about SAP Business Client, see SAP Library for SAP NetWeaver on SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/netweaver> [SAP NetWeaver by Key Capability > Application Platform by Key Capability > ABAP Technology > UI Technology > SAP NetWeaver Business Client](#).

## Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

This chapter comprises the following sections with security-related topics specific to Manager Self-Service:

- *Before You Start*  
This section comprises references to other Security Guides that are relevant for Manager Self-Service and a list of the most important notes for Manager Self-Service regarding security.
- *User Administration and Authentication*  
This section provides an overview of the following user administration and authentication aspects for Manager Self-Service:
  - *User Management*  
This section contains information about the user types that are required by Manager Self-Service and standard users for Manager Self-Service.
  - *Integration into Single Sign-On Environments*  
This topic describes how the Employee Self-Service supports Single Sign-On mechanisms.
- *Authorizations*  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept that applies to Manager Self-Service.
- *Session Security Protection*  
This section provides information about activating secure session management, which prevents JavaScript or plug-ins from accessing the SAP logon ticket or security session cookie(s).
- *Network and Communication Security*  
This section provides an overview of the communication paths used by Manager Self-Service and the security mechanisms that apply. It also includes our recommendations for the network topology to restrict access at the network level:
  - *Network Security*
  - *Communication Destinations*
- *Internet Communication Framework Security*  
This section provides an overview of the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) services that are used by Manager Self-Service.
- *Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing*  
This section provides an overview of the logging and tracing mechanisms that apply to Manager Self-Service.

### 13.4.4.3.5.1 User Administration and Authentication

User management for Manager Self-Service uses the mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP.

The security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP apply for *Manager Self-Service in SAP NetWeaver Business Client*.

In addition to these guidelines, information about user administration and authentication that specifically applies to Manager Self-Service is included in the following sections:

- *User Management*
- *Integration into Single Sign-On Environments*

## 13.4.4.3.5.1.1 User Management

### Use

User management for Manager Self-Service uses the mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP (for example, tools, user types, and password policies).

For an overview of how these mechanisms apply for Manager Self-Service, see the sections below.

### User Administration Tools

The table below shows the tools to use for user management and user administration with Manager Self-Service.

User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Comment
User maintenance for ABAP-based systems (transaction SU01)	You use the user maintenance transaction to generate users in the ABAP-based systems.	Used for both MSS deployment options
Role maintenance (transaction PFCG)	You use the role maintenance transaction to generate profiles for your self-service users.  For more information, see <a href="#">User and Role Administration of AS ABAP</a> .	Used for both MSS deployment options

#### Note

For the [Business Package for Manager Self-Service](#), it is necessary to perform user mapping for the users in the ABAP system and the Portal. For more information, see [Assigning Portal Roles to Users](#).

### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively must change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users under which background processing jobs run.

The user types that are required for the Manager Self-Service are Individual users:

- Dialog users (Used for SAP GUI for Windows or RFC connections)
- Internet users (Same policies apply as for dialog users, but used for Internet connections).

For more information about these user types, see User Types in the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP Security Guide.



### → Recommendation

For the *Business Package for Manager Self-Service*, we recommend you set up the connection between the SAP Enterprise Portal and the connected systems (ECC system, J2EE Engine, BI system) so that each individual user has access. This does not apply to *Manager Self-Service in SAP NWBC*.

## Standard Users

For Manager Self-Service, no standard users are delivered.

### 13.4.4.3.5.1.2 Integration into Single Sign-On Environments

#### Use

Manager Self-Service supports the Single Sign-On (SSO) mechanisms provided by SAP NetWeaver. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to Manager Self-Service.

For more information about the available authentication mechanisms, see User Authentication and Single Sign-On in the *SAP NetWeaver Library* and [Integration into Single Sign-On Environments \[page 12\]](#).

## Configuration of Web Services with Client Certificates

For MSS applications of the *Business Package for Manager Self-Service*, the use of client certificates should be configured for authentication when users access the J2EE Engine using an end-to-end connection. To achieve this, follow the instructions under [Configuring the Use of Client Certificates for Authentication](#).

### 13.4.4.3.5.2 Authorizations

#### Use

Manager Self-Service uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to Manager Self-Service. The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`) on the AS ABAP.

#### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see [Role Administration](#).

## Role and Authorization Concept for Manager Self-Service

Manager Self-Service embraces services from a variety of SAP applications and also uses the authorizations of these individual components. Many services belong to HCM components, see [Authorizations for Human Resources](#).

### → Recommendation

For Manager Self-Service, we highly recommend that you use the HCM-specific structural authorization check in addition to the general SAP authorization check. For more information see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal at [Human Resources > HR Tools > Authorizations for Human Resources > Structural Authorization Check](#).

## Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used for authorizations by Manager Self-Service.

Standard Roles for Manager Self-Service

Role	Description
SAP_ASR_MANAGER	Authorizations for the functions of the PA-AS component (HR Administrative Services) for line managers in Manager Self-Service.
SAP_TIME_MGR_XX_ESS_WDA_1	Authorizations for line managers in Manager Self-Service for services used to approve leave requests and working times from Employee Self-Service (WDA).
SAP_TMC_MANAGER	Authorizations for managers relating to Talent Management activities.  For more information, see <a href="#">Manager in Talent Management</a> .  The structural authorization profile TMS_MAN_PROF is also available as a template for the manager.  For more information, see Customizing for <a href="#">Talent Management and Talent Development</a> under <a href="#">Basic Settings</a> → <a href="#">Authorizations in Talent Management</a> → <a href="#">Define Structural Authorizations</a> .
SAP_RCF_MANAGER	Authorizations for the Manager role, which enables access to SAP E-Recruiting from the Portal (Manager Self Service).
SAP_MANAGER_MSS_OTH_NWBC	Authorizations for remote system applications including applications from SAP E-Recruiting.

Role	Description
SAP_HR_LSO_HR-MANAGER	Authorizations for the applications of the HR Manager Training role of the SAP Learning Solution component.
SAP_HR_LSO_MANAGER	Authorizations for the applications of the Manager role of the SAP Learning Solution component.
SAP_FI_TV_WEB_APPROVER	Authorizations for applications of the Travel Approver role of the SAP Travel Management component.
SAP_HR_CPS_DET_PLAN_L_SR_NWBC	Authorizations for applications of the manager role of the Personnel Cost Planning component.
SAP_SR_MSS_FIN_5	Authorizations for the Financials applications in Manager Self-Service.

### ⚠ Caution

For the *Business Package for Manager Self-Service*, you also need SAP Note [844639](#) for generating the authorization profiles.

### i Note

The composite role SAP\_MANAGER\_MSS\_NWBC, which contains the single roles listed above, is required for *Manager Self-Service in SAP NetWeaver Business Client*.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The following section provides an overview of the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by Manager Self-Service.

Standard Authorization Objects for the Business Package for Manager Self-Service

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
S_RFC	RFC_NAME	Depends on service	Saves data from RFC access to Web Dynpro front end to the back-end system.

Standard Authorization Objects for Controlling Services in MSS (Both Deployment Options)

Authorization Object	Description
K_CCA	General authorization object for Cost Center Accounting.  Is checked in the relevant Monitor iViews, Master Data iViews, and Express Planning services.

Authorization Object	Description
K_ORDER	<p>General authorization object for internal orders.</p> <p>Is checked in the relevant Monitor iViews, Master Data iViews, and Express Planning services.</p>
K_PCA	<p>Area responsible, Profit Center.</p> <p>Is checked in the relevant Monitor iViews, Master Data iViews, and Express Planning services.</p>
K_CSKS_PLA	<p>Cost element planning.</p> <p>Is checked in the relevant Express Planning services.</p>
K_FPB_EXP	<p>Authorization object for Express Planning.</p> <p>This authorization object checks the Express Planning Framework call and the planning round call. The actual plan data is protected by the authorization objects for the individual Express Planning services.</p>

### i Note

For more information about the fields for the authorization objects K\_CCA, K\_ORDER, and K\_PCA, see SAP Note [15211](#).

Apart from these authorization objects, both Manager Self-Service deployment options use the authorization objects from the following application areas or application components:

- *Human Capital Management*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Human Capital Management > Authorizations](#).
- *SAP E-Recruiting*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Human Capital Management > Talent Management > SAP E-Recruiting > Authorizations](#).
- *HCM Processes and Forms*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Human Capital Management > Personnel Administration \(PA\) > HCM Processes and Forms > Authorizations](#).
- *Travel Management*  
See the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide at [Accounting > Financial Accounting > Travel Management \(FI-TV\)](#).

## Authorizations for Business Intelligence (BI) iViews (BP MSS)

For the BI iViews in the *Business Package for Manager Self-Service*, users need the standard BI authorizations for executing queries. For more information, see *Authorization Check When Executing a Query* (in the *Data Warehouse Management* section of the documentation for SAP NetWeaver Business Intelligence).

In Human Capital Management, BI queries use a BI variable for personalization. Data is read from the DataStore object for personalization `OPERS_VAR`. If required, you can fill this DataStore Object from structural authorizations (see *Structural Authorizations - Values* (`OPA_DS02`) and *Structural Authorizations - Hierarchy* (`OPA_DS03`)).

## More Information

For more information, see the SAP Help Portal BI Content documentation for Human Resources at <http://help.sap.com> ► *SAP NetWeaver* ► *SAP NetWeaver by Key Capability* ► *Information Integration by Key Capability* ► *BI Content* ► *BI Content 705* ► *Human Resources* ► *Organizational Management* ► *ODS Objects* ►.

### 13.4.4.3.5.3 Session Security Protection

#### Use

To increase security and prevent access to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookie(s), we recommend activating secure session management.

We also highly recommend using SSL to protect the network communications where these security-relevant cookies are transferred.

#### Session Security Protection on the AS ABAP

The following section is relevant for *Manager Self-Service in SAP NetWeaver Business Client*:

To prevent access in javascript or plug-ins to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookies (`SAP_SESSIONID_<sid>_<client>`), activate secure session management. With an existing security session, users can then start applications that require a user logon without logging on again. When a security session is ended, the system also ends all applications that are linked to this security session.

Use the transaction `SICF_SESSIONS` to specify the following parameter values shown in the table below in your AS ABAP system:

Session Security Protection Profile Parameters

Profile Parameter	Recommended Value	Comment
<code>icf/ set_HTTPOnly_flag_on_cookies</code>	0	Client-Dependent
<code>login/ticket_only_by_https</code>	1	Not Client-Dependent

For more information, including a list of the relevant profile parameters and detailed instructions, see *Activating HTTP Security Session Management on AS ABAP* in the AS ABAP security documentation.

## 13.4.4.3.5.4 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is extremely important in protecting your system. Your network needs to support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined network topology can eliminate many security threats based on software flaws (at both the operating system level and application level) or network attacks such as eavesdropping. If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, then there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the back-end system's database or files. Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server LAN (local area network), they cannot exploit well-known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

The network topology for Manager Self-Service is based on the topology used by the SAP NetWeaver platform. Therefore, the security guidelines and recommendations described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to Manager Self-Service. Details that specifically apply to Manager Self-Service are described in the following topics:

- [Network Security](#)  
This topic describes the recommended network topology for Manager Self-Service. It shows the appropriate network segments for the various client and server components and where to use fire walls for access protection. It also includes a list of the ports needed to operate Manager Self-Service.
- [Communication Destinations](#)  
This topic describes the information needed for the various communication paths, for example, which users are used for which communications.

For more information, see the following sections in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide:

- Network and Communication Security
- Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies

### 13.4.4.3.5.4.1 Network Security

#### Ports

Manager Self-Service runs on SAP NetWeaver and uses the ports from the AS ABAP (for [Manager Self-Service in SAP NWBC](#)).

For more information, see the topic for AS ABAP Ports in the corresponding SAP NetWeaver Security Guides.

For other components, for example, SAPinst, SAProuter, or the SAP Web Dispatcher, see <https://help.sap.com/viewer/ports>.

### 13.4.4.3.5.4.2 Communication Destinations

The tables below provide an overview of the communication destinations required for the MSS deployment options.

## Manager Self-Service in SAP Business Client

For this deployment option, you have to maintain RFC connections using the transaction SM59, see also the following table 1.

Table 1: Connection Destinations for Manager Self-Service in SAP Business Client

Destination	Delivered	Type	Recommended User Authorizations	Description
SAP_ECC_HumanResources	No	ABAP connection	n/a	System alias for the ECC HCM system
SAP_ECC_HumanResources_HTTP	No	HTTP connection	n/a	System alias for the ECC HCM system
SAP_ECC_FINANCIALS	No	ABAP connection	n/a	System alias for the ECC FI system for Financials applications
SAP_ECC_FINANCIALS_HTTP	No	HTTP connection	n/a	System alias for the ECC FI system for Financials applications
SAP_EREC_TalentManagement	No	ABAP connection	n/a	System alias for the SAP E-Recruiting system
SAP_EREC_TalentManagement_HTTP	No	HTTP connection	n/a	System alias for the SAP E-Recruiting system

### 13.4.4.3.5.5 Internet Communication Framework Security

#### Use

You should only activate the services needed for the applications running in your system. For Manager Self-Service in SAP Business Client, the following services are needed which you can find under the path `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`:

For applications from the *Suite Inbox* (CA-EPT-IBO):

- IBO\_WDA\_INBOX

For applications from *HCM Processes and Forms* (PA-AS):

- asr\_form\_display
- asr\_mass\_start\_process
- asr\_pa\_pd\_processes\_display

- asr\_processes\_display
- ASR\_PROCESS\_EXECUTE\_FPM
- asr\_process\_select
- asr\_srch\_pd\_process

For applications from *Cross-Application Time Sheet* (CA-TS) and *Personal Time Management* (PT):

- HRMSS\_A\_CATS\_APPROVAL
- HRESS\_A\_PTARQ\_LEAVREQ\_APPL
- HRESS\_A\_LEA\_TEAM\_CALENDAR

For applications from *Talent Management and Talent Development* (PA-TM):

- HRTMC\_EMPLOYEE\_PROFILE
- HRTMC\_LONG\_PROFILE
- hrtmc\_side\_by\_side
- HRTMC\_TA\_ASSESSMENT
- HRTMC\_TA\_DASHBOARD
- HRTMC\_TA\_DEV\_PLAN
- hrtmc\_teamviewer

For applications from *Performance Management* (PA-PD-PM):

- HAP\_MAIN\_DOCUMENT
- HAP\_START\_PAGE\_POWL\_UI\_MSS
- HAP\_A\_PMP\_PIE\_CHART
- HAP\_A\_PMP\_GOALS
- HAP\_A\_PMP\_OVERVIEW
- HAP\_A\_PMP\_MAIN

For applications from *Enterprise Compensation Management* (PA-ECM):

- HCM\_ECM\_PLANNING\_OVERVIEW\_OIF
- HCM\_ECM\_PLANNING\_UI\_GAF
- HCM\_ECM\_PROFILE\_OIF
- HCM\_ECM\_SIDEBYSIDE\_OIF
- HCM\_ECM\_TEAMVIEWER\_OIF

For applications from *Personnel Cost Planning* (PA-CP):

- WDA\_HCP\_DET\_PLAN

For applications from *SAP Learning Solution* (PE-LSO):

- LSO\_MANAGE\_PARTICIPANTS
- LSO\_MANAGE\_MANDATORY\_ASSIGN

For applications from *SAP E-Recruiting* (PA-ER):

- default\_host/sap/bc/erecruiting/dataoverview
- hrrcf\_a\_dataoverview
- hrrcf\_a\_requi\_monitor
- hrrcf\_a\_req\_assess



- hrrcf\_a\_tp\_assess
- hrrcf\_a\_qa\_mss
- hrrcf\_a\_substitution\_manager
- hrrcf\_a\_substitution\_admin

### iNote

You activate the services in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting at [Technical Settings](#) > [User Interfaces](#) > [Manager Involvement](#) > [Specify E-Recruiting Services for MSS](#).

For applications from *Travel Management* (FI-TV):

- FITV\_POWL\_APPROVER
- FITV\_TRIP\_FORM
- FITV\_POWL\_PERSONALIZATION

For applications from the *Financials* (FI) application area:

- QISR\_UI\_STATUSOVERVIEW
- QISR\_UI\_STATUSOVERVIEW
- QISR\_UI\_STATUSOVERVIEW
- FPB\_EXP\_OVERVIEW
- FCOM\_PBC\_MONITOR
- FCOM\_PBC\_MONITOR
- FPB\_VARIANCE\_MONITOR\_OVERVIEW
- FCOM\_EQM\_MONITOR
- FPB\_LINEITEM\_MONITOR\_OVERVIEW
- FPB\_VARIANCE\_MONITOR\_OVERVIEW
- FPB\_LINEITEM\_MONITOR\_OVERVIEW
- FCOM\_EQM\_MONITOR
- FCOM\_PBC\_MONITOR
- FCOM\_PBC\_MONITOR
- FPB\_LINEITEM\_MONITOR\_OVERVIEW
- FPB\_VARIANCE\_MONITOR\_OVERVIEW

## Activities

Use the transaction `SICF` to activate these services.

If your firewalls use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

## More Information

For more information, see *Activating and Deactivating ICF Services* in the SAP NetWeaver Library documentation.

For more information about ICF security, see the *RFC/ICF Security Guide*.

### 13.4.4.3.5.6 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Manager Self-Service relies on the logging and tracing mechanisms from SAP NetWeaver.

For more information, see the following topics:

- For the AS ABAP (relevant for *Manager Self-Service in SAP NetWeaver Business Client*):
  - Auditing and Logging
  - Tracing and Logging (for NWBC)

## 13.4.5 Talent Management

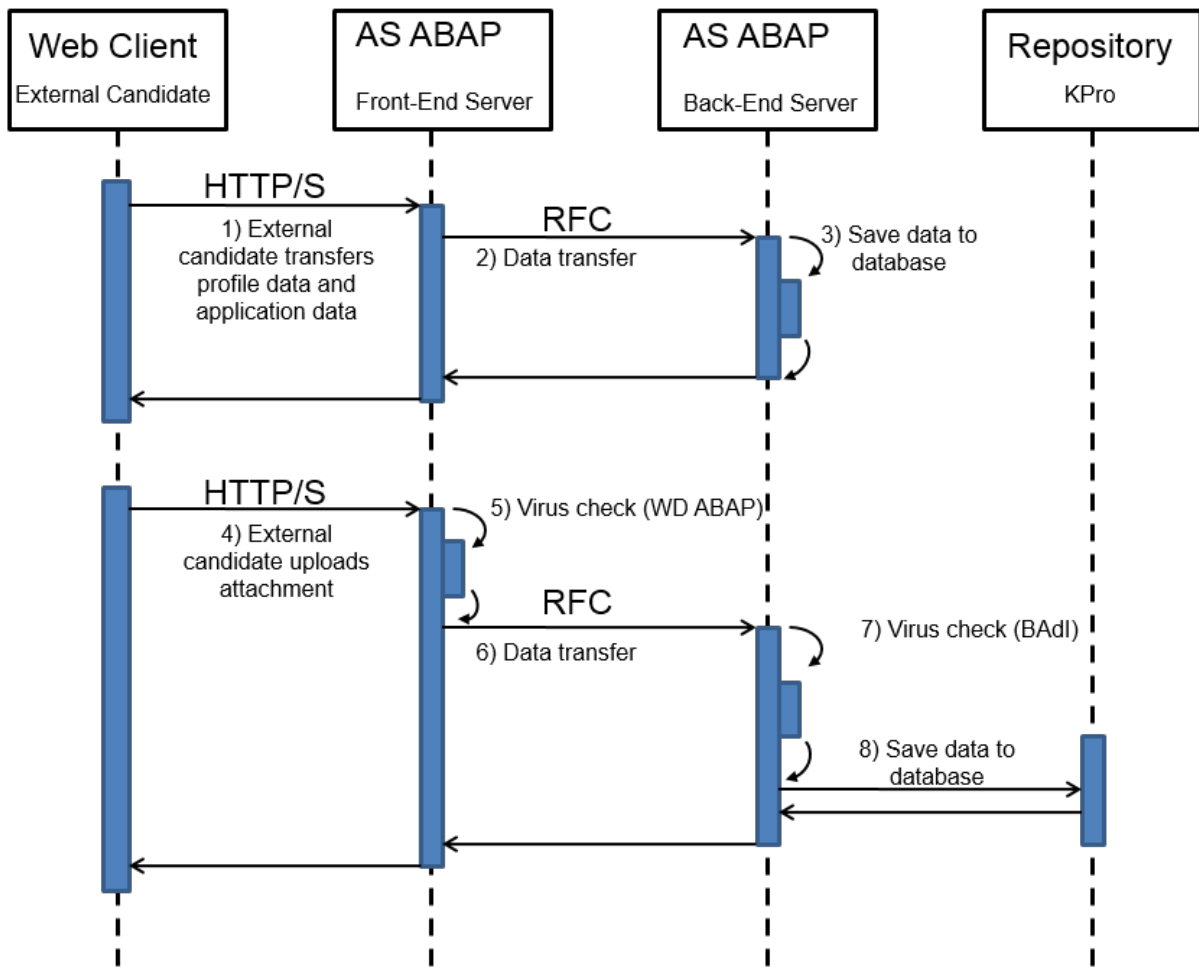
### 13.4.5.1 SAP E-Recruiting

#### 13.4.5.1.1 Security Aspects of Data Flow and Processes

The following section provides an overview of the data flows in the security-relevant scenarios for SAP E-Recruiting.

##### 13.4.5.1.1.1 Data Entry by External Candidate in Distributed System

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario: Data entry by the external candidate in the distributed system



The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	External candidate transfers profile data and application data	External candidate has to confirm the data privacy statement.
2	Data transfer	Access authorization using RFC user
3	Save data to database	Not relevant
4	External candidate uploads attachments	Not relevant
5	Virus check (WD ABAP)	Standard virus check provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server (front-end server)
6	Data transfer	Not relevant

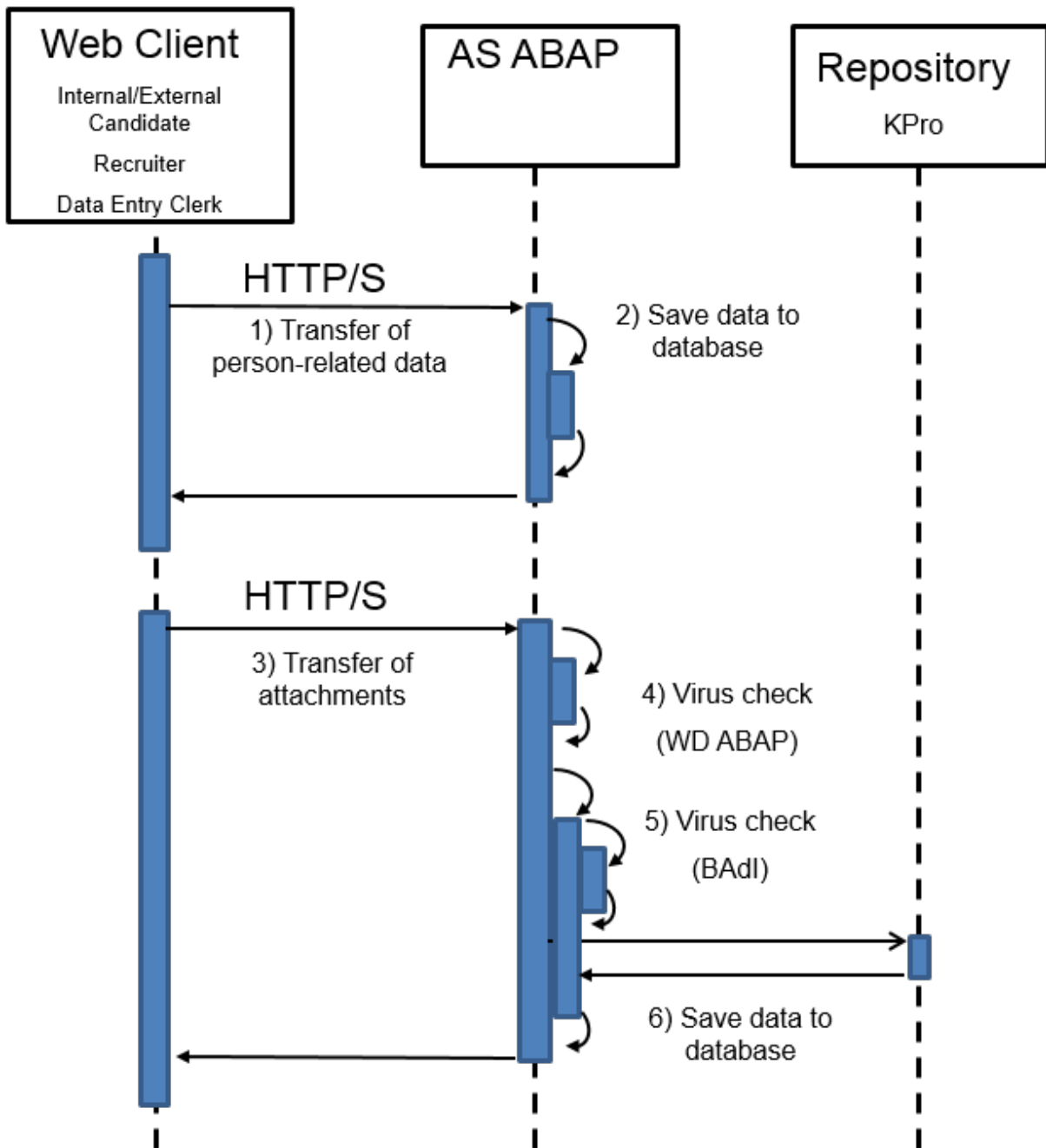
Step	Description	Security Measure
7	Virus check (BAdI)	Additional virus check using the BAdI HRRCF00_DOC_UPLOAD (backend server) (see Customizing activity <a href="#">BAdI:Upload Documents</a> )
8	Save data to database	Not relevant

### 13.4.5.1.1.2 Data Entry in Nondistributed System

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario: Data entry in nondistributed system.

The data flow is relevant within the framework of the following scenarios:

- The internal or external candidate maintains his or her profile and application.
- The recruiter maintains a candidate's profile.
- The recruiter or data entry clerk enters an application in the system.



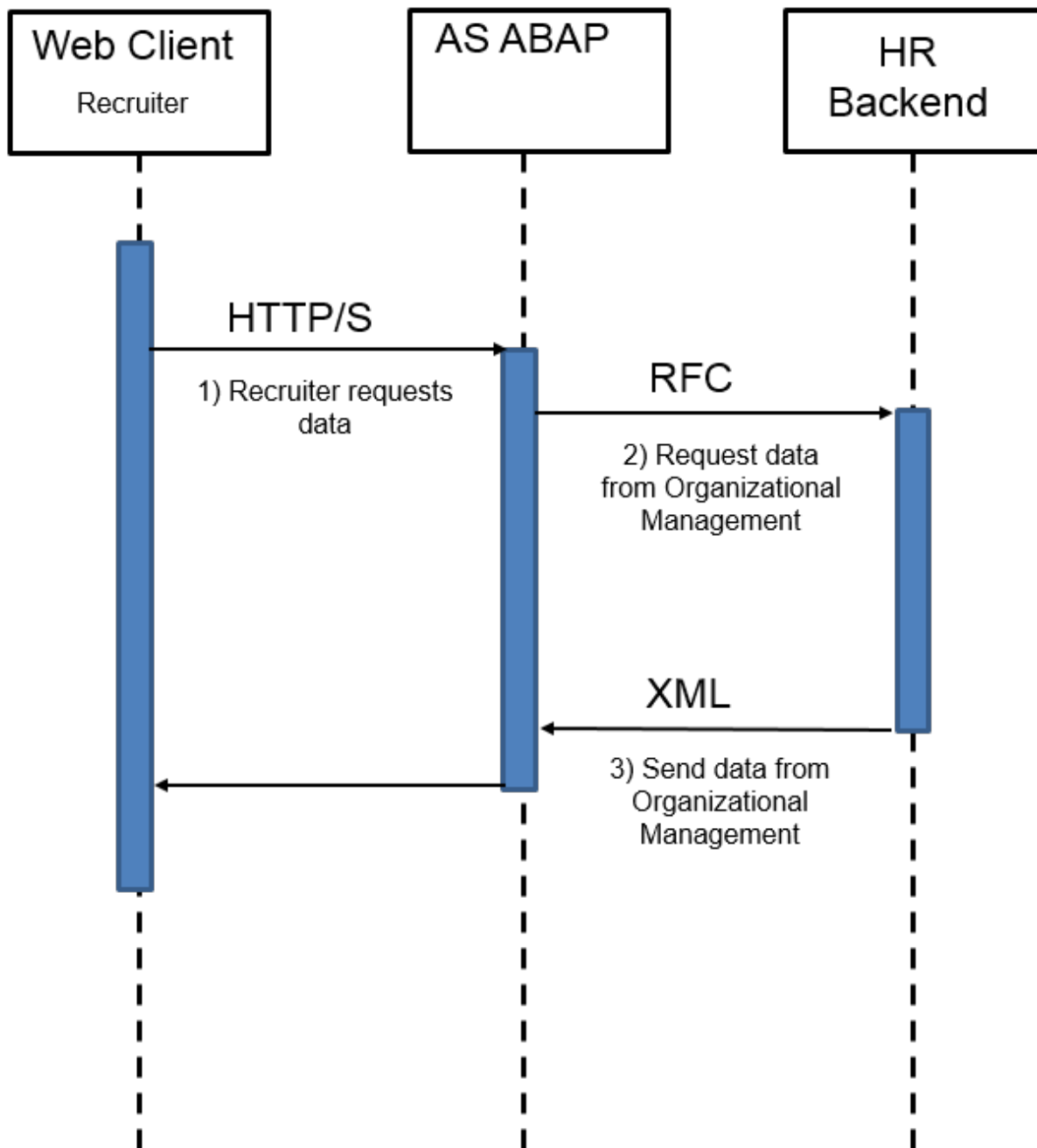
The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	Transfer of data	External candidate has to confirm the data privacy statement.
2	Save data to database	Not relevant

Step	Description	Security Measure
3	Transfer of attachments	Not relevant
4	Virus check (WD ABAP)	Standard virus check provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server (front-end server)
5	Virus check (BAdI)	Additional virus check using the BAdI HRRCF00_DOC_UPLOAD (backend server) (see Customizing activity <a href="#">BAdI:Upload Documents</a> )
6	Save data to database	Not relevant

### 13.4.5.1.1.3 Integration of Org. Mgmt/E-Recruiting in Distributed System

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario: Integration of Organizational Management in SAP E-Recruiting in a distributed system.



The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

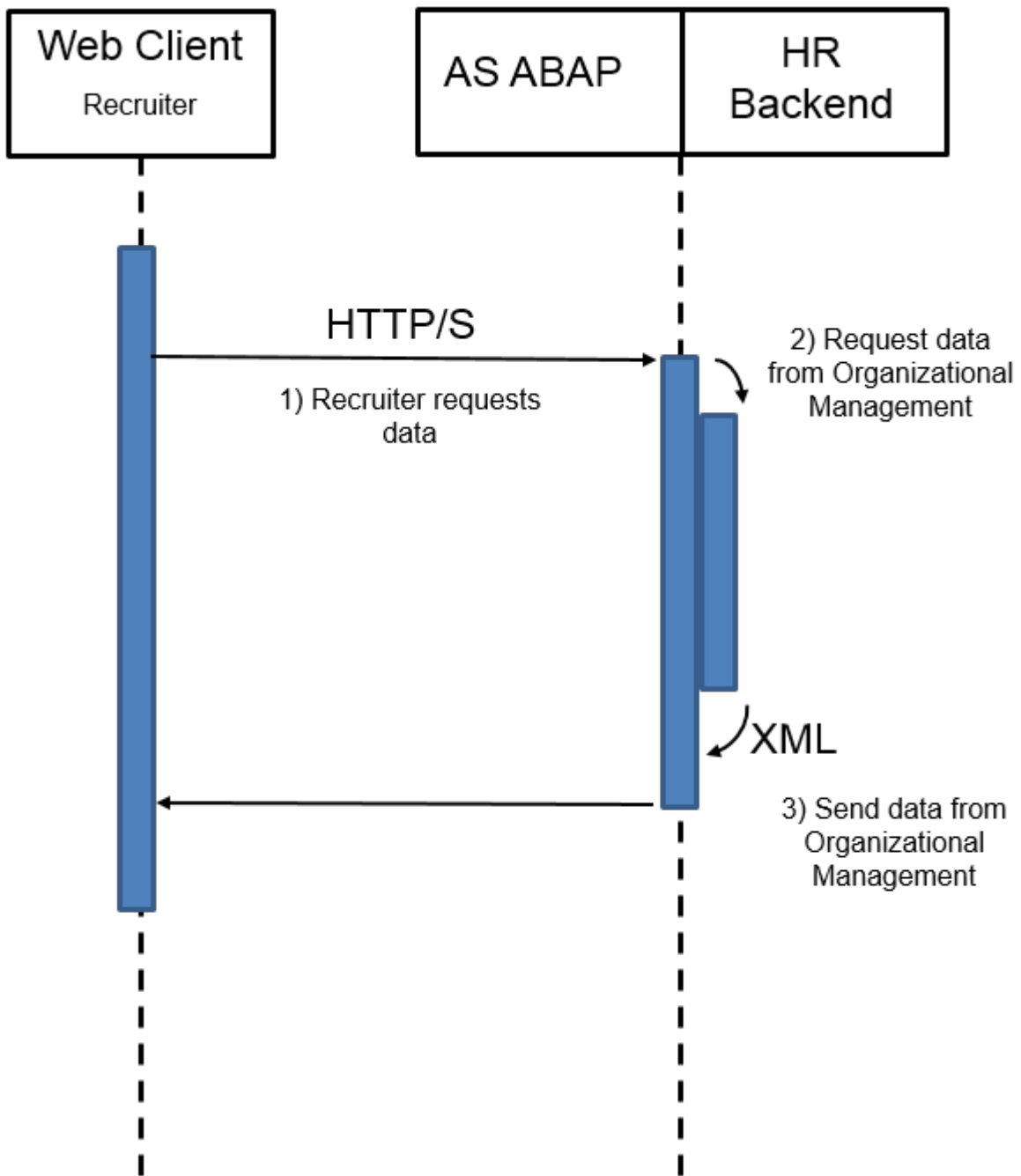
Step	Description	Security Measure
1	The recruiter requests data overviews for organizational units, positions, or jobs.	Not Relevant

Step	Description	Security Measure
2	The SAP NetWeaver Application Server requests the Organizational Management data using RFC in the connected HR system.	Access authorization using RFC user
3	The HR system transfers the data using XML to the SAP NetWeaver Application Server.	XML encryption

### 13.4.5.1.1.4 Integration of Org. Mgmt/E-Recruiting in Integrated System

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario: Integration of Organizational Management in SAP E-Recruiting in an integrated system.





The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	The recruiter requests data overviews for organizational units, positions, or jobs.	Not Relevant

Step	Description	Security Measure
2	The SAP NetWeaver Application Server requests the Organizational Management data in the integrated HR system.	Not relevant
3	The integrated HR system transfers the data using XML to the SAP NetWeaver Application Server.	XML encryption

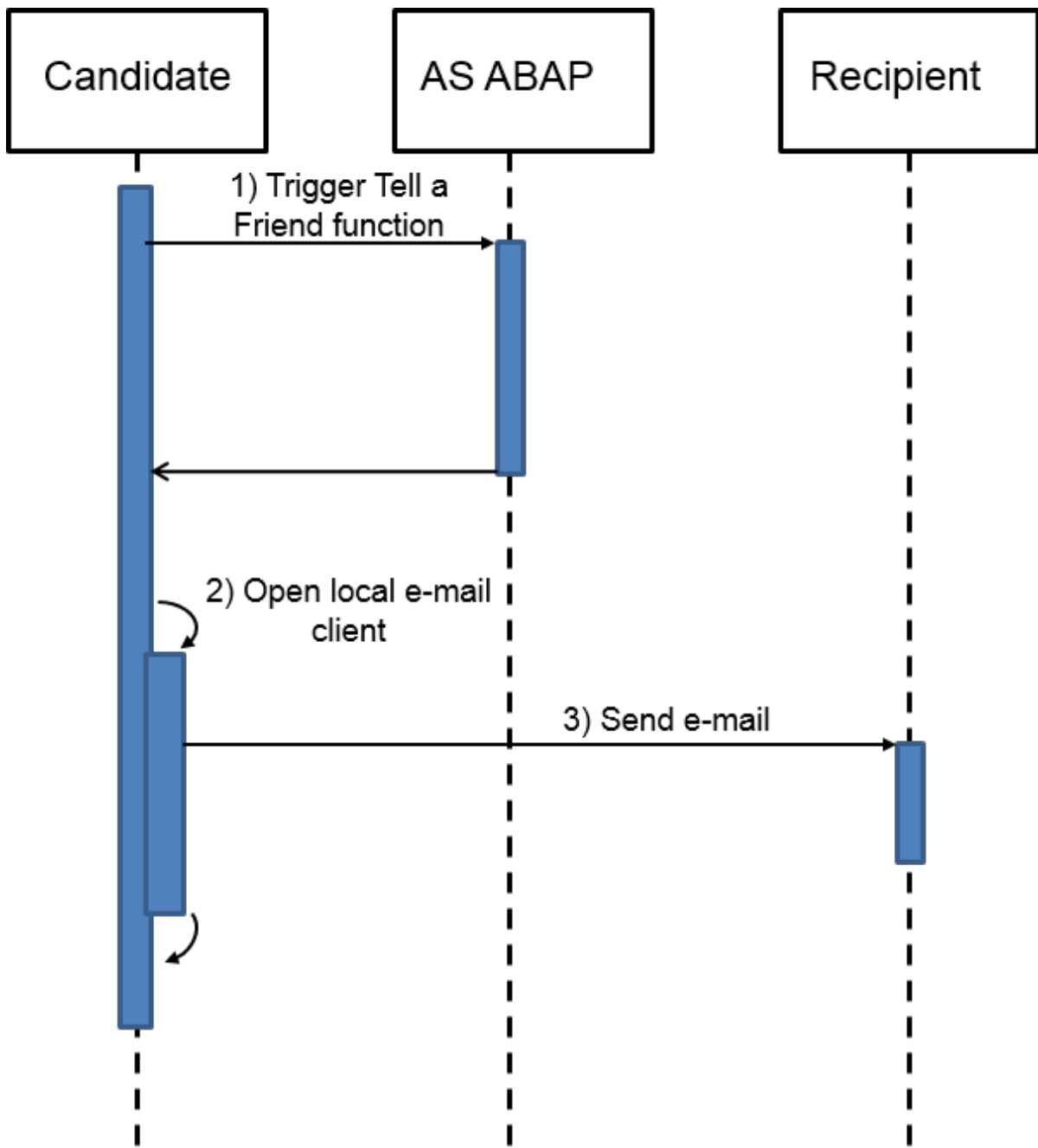
### 13.4.5.1.1.5 Recommendation of Job Posting (Tell a Friend)

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario: The candidate uses the *Tell A Friend* function to inform another person about an employment opportunity.

The process runs as described below if you enter the value MAILTO or MAILTO\_REGONLY for the parameter TF\_SEND\_METHOD in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under *Technical Settings* → *User Interfaces* → *Candidate* → *Backend Candidate* → *Assign Values to Interface Parameters (Web Dynpro ABAP)*.

We recommend that you do not use the default delivery TF\_SEND\_METHOD = '' as this means that the e-mails with the recommendation letter are sent using your e-mail server. As the candidate is responsible for specifying the recipient and content of the e-mail message to be sent, undesirable content could be sent from the sender address of your e-mail server.

For more information, see the documentation for the Customizing activity *Assign Values to Interface Parameters (Web Dynpro ABAP)* and SAP Note [1390162](#).



The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

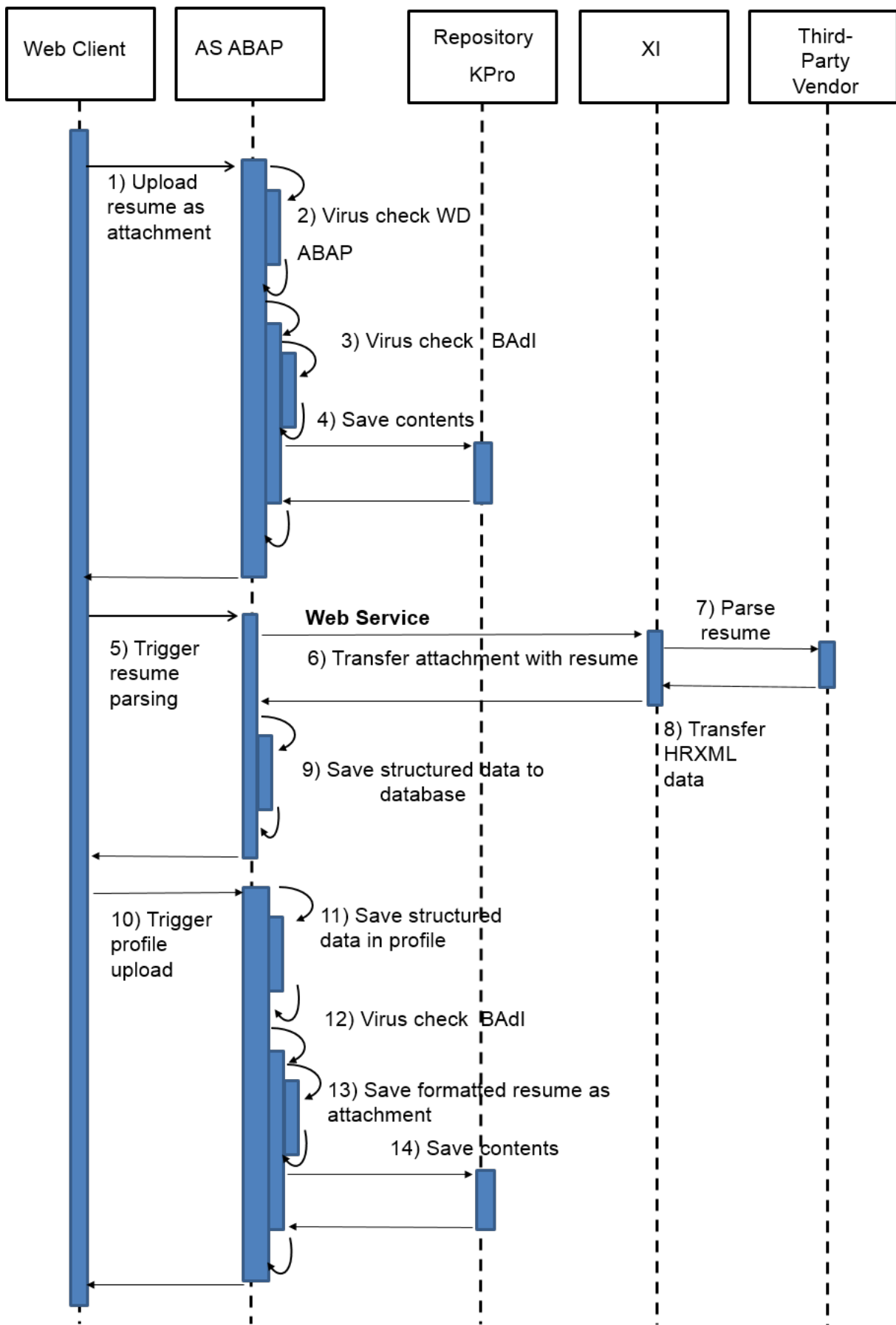
Step	Name	Security Measure
1	Trigger Tell a Friend function	Not relevant

Step	Name	Security Measure
2	Open local e-mail client	The e-mail client (for example, Microsoft Outlook) is opened locally on the candidate's computer. This client (and not the central e-mail client) then sends the e-mail. You activate this process using the parameter TF_SEND_METHOD in the Customizing activity <a href="#">Assign Values to Interface Parameters (Web Dynpro ABAP)</a> .
3	Send e-mail	Not relevant

### 13.4.5.1.1.6 Resume Parsing (Candidate, Integrated System)

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario:

The candidate uploads his or her resume as an attachment and then sends it to a third-party vendor for parsing. The front end and backend for the candidate's user run on the same system.

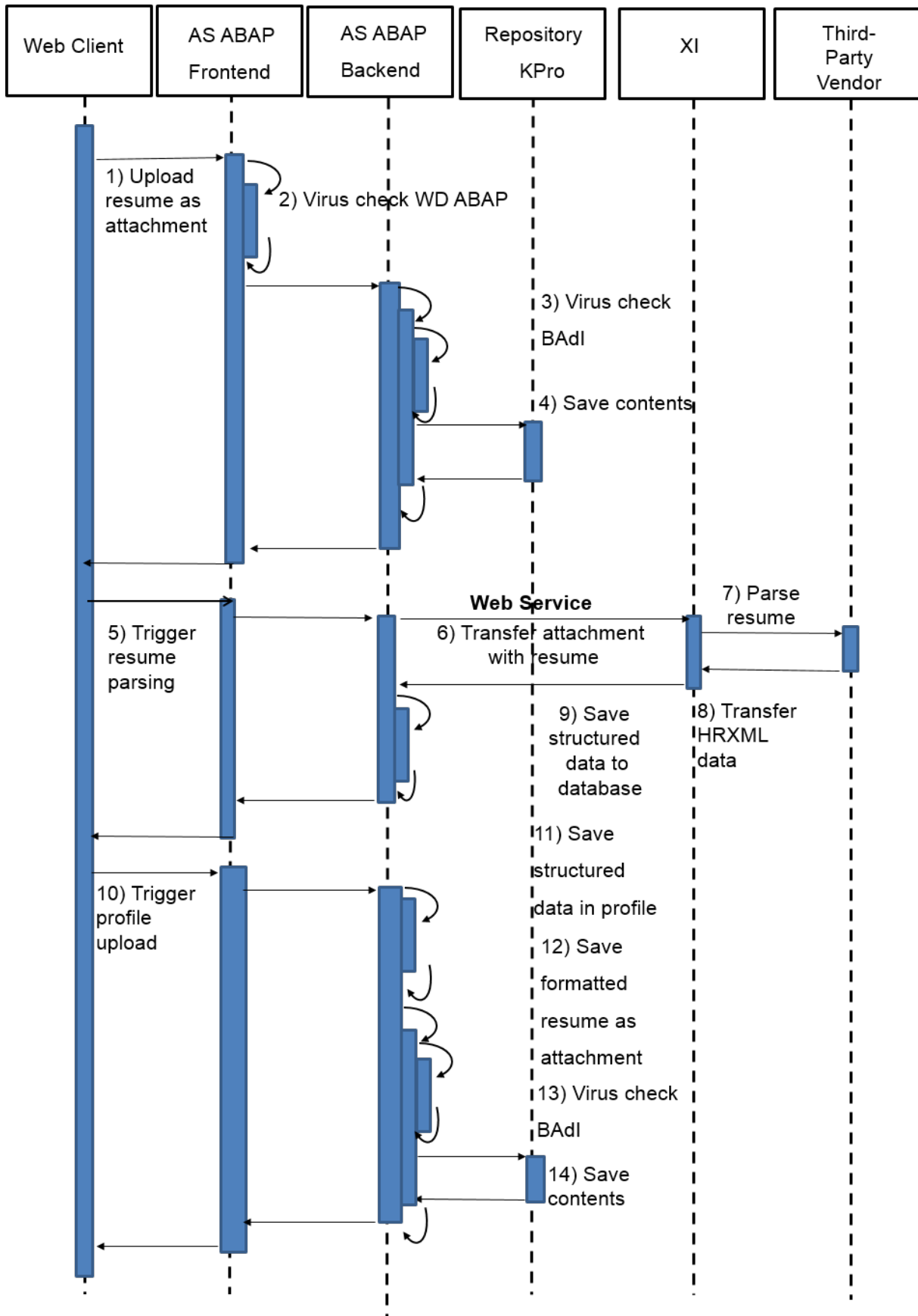


The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Name	Security Measure
1	Upload resume as attachment	Not relevant
2	Virus check WD ABAP	Standard virus check provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server (front-end server)
3	Virus check BAdI	Additional virus check using the BAdI HRRCF00_DOC_UPLOAD (backend server)  (see Customizing activity <a href="#">BAdI: Upload Documents</a> )
4	Save contents	Not relevant
5	Trigger Resume Parsing	Not relevant
6	Transfer attachment with resume	Not relevant
7	Parse resume	For XI-relevant security topics, see <a href="#">Process Integration (PI) Security Guides</a> .
8	Transfer HRXML data	HRXML coding
9	Save structured data to database	Not relevant
10	Trigger profile upload	Not relevant
11	Save structured data in profile	Not relevant
12	Virus check BAdI	Additional virus check using the BAdI HRRCF00_DOC_UPLOAD (backend server)  (see Customizing activity <a href="#">BAdI: Upload Documents</a> )
13	Save formatted resume as attachment	Not relevant
14	Save contents	Not relevant

### **13.4.5.1.1.7 Resume Parsing (Candidate, Distributed Scenario)**

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario: The candidate uploads his or her resume as an attachment and then sends it to a third-party vendor for parsing. The front end and backend for the candidate's user run on different systems.





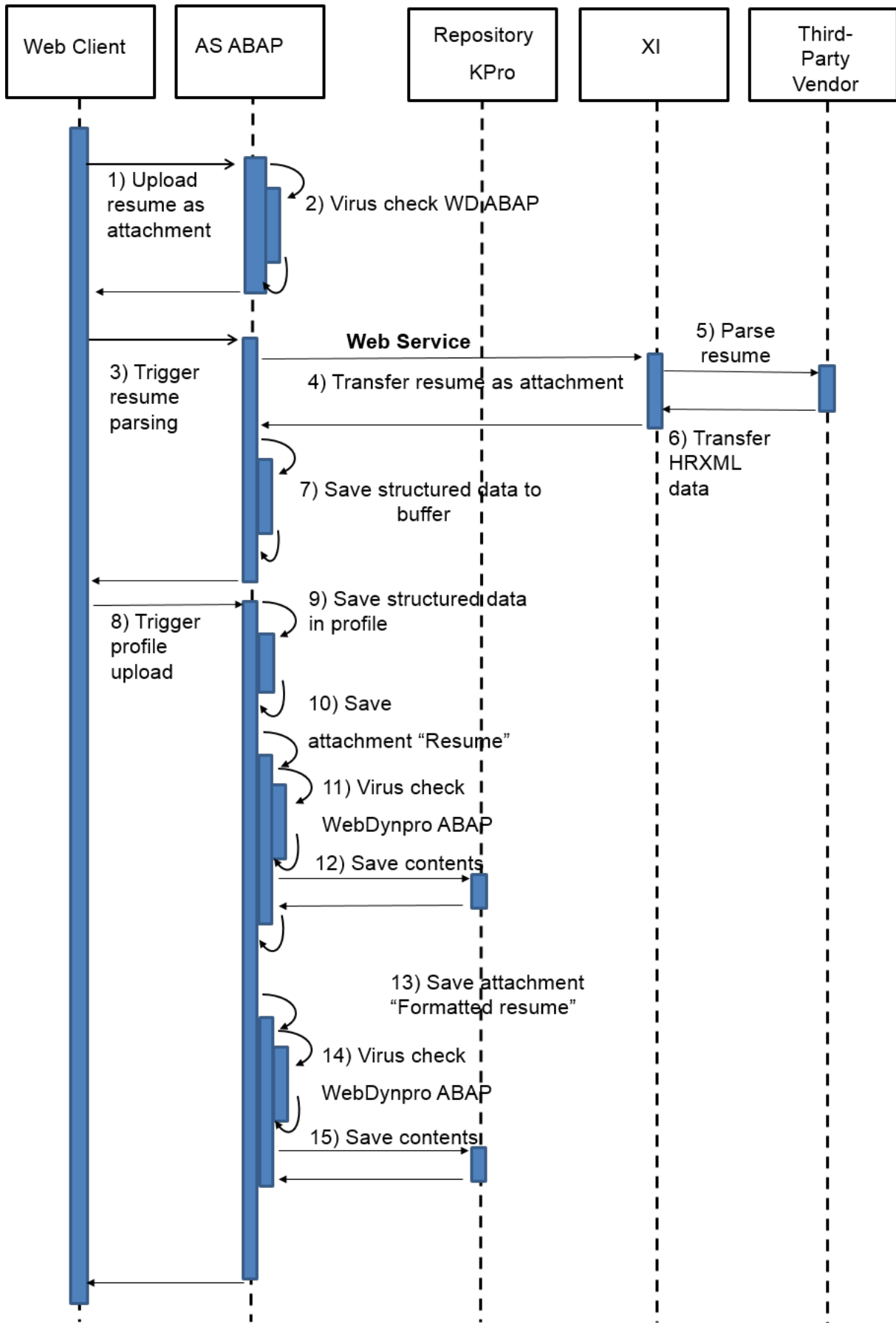
The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Name	Security Measure
1	Upload resume as attachment	Not relevant
2	Virus check WD ABAP	Standard virus check provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server (front-end server)
3	Virus check BAdI	Additional virus check using the BAdI HRRCF00_DOC_UPLOAD (backend server)  (see Customizing activity <a href="#">BAdI: Upload Documents</a> )
4	Save contents	Not relevant
5	Trigger Resume Parsing	Not relevant
6	Transfer attachment with resume	Not relevant
7	Parse resume	For XI-relevant security topics, see <a href="#">SAP Process Integration (PI) Security Guides</a> .
8	Transfer HRXML data	HRXML coding
9	Save structured data to database	Not relevant
10	Trigger profile upload	Not relevant
11	Save structured data in profile	Not relevant
12	Virus check BAdI	Additional virus check using the BAdI HRRCF00_DOC_UPLOAD (backend server)  (see Customizing activity <a href="#">BAdI: Upload Documents</a> )
13	Save formatted resume as attachment	Not relevant
14	Save contents	Not relevant

### 13.4.5.1.1.8 Resume Parsing (Recruiter)

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario:

The recruiter uploads a candidate's resume as an attachment and then sends it to a third-party vendor for parsing. The data is then transferred to the corresponding fields of the form for the *Entry of External Applications* application.

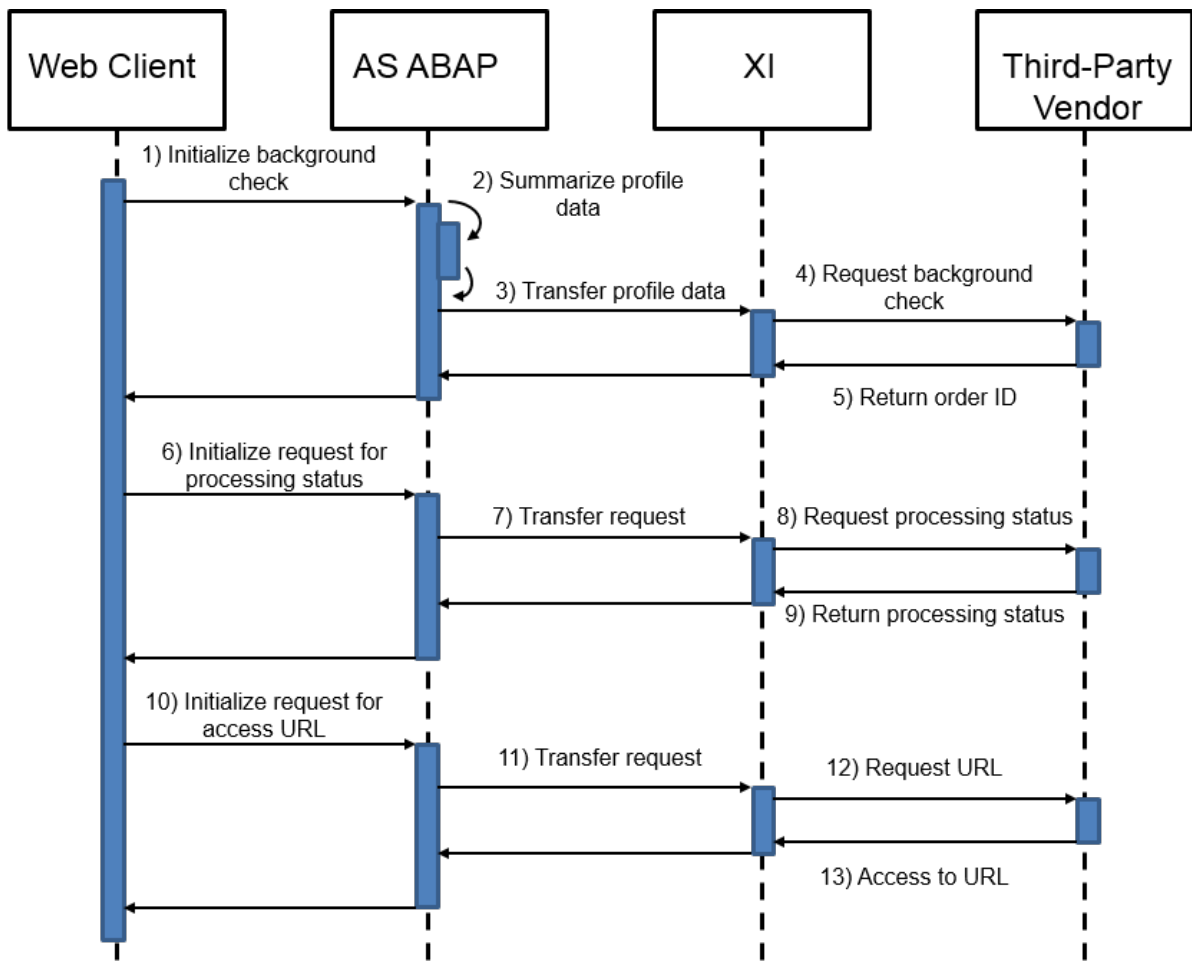


The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Name	Security Action
1	Upload resume as attachment	Not relevant
2	Virus check WD ABAP	Standard virus check provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server (front-end server)
3	Trigger Resume Parsing	Not relevant
4	Transfer resume as attachment	Not relevant
5	Parse resume	For XI-relevant security topics, see <a href="#">SAP Process Integration (PI) Security Guides</a> .
6	Transfer HRXML data	HRXML coding
7	Save structured data to buffer	Not relevant
8	Trigger profile upload	Not relevant
9	Save structured data in profile	Not relevant
10	Save attachment "Resume"	Not relevant
11	Virus check WD ABAP	Standard virus check provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server (front-end server)
12	Save contents	Not relevant
13	Save attachment "Formatted resume"	Not relevant
14	Virus check WD ABAP	Standard virus check provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server (front-end server)
15	Save contents	Not relevant

### 13.4.5.1.1.9 Background Check

The figure below provides an overview of the data flow for the following scenario: The recruiter forwards data regarding a candidate's education, work experience, or qualifications to an external provider, who then checks that this data is correct.



The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Name	Security Measure
1	Initialize background check	Not Relevant
2	Summarize profile data	Not Relevant
3	Transfer profile data	Not Relevant
4	Request background check	For XI-relevant security topics, see: SAP Process Integration Security Guide
5	Return order ID	Not Relevant
6	Initialize request for processing status	Not Relevant
7	Transfer request	Not Relevant

Step	Name	Security Measure
8	Request processing status	For XI-relevant security topics, see: SAP Process Integration Security Guide
9	Return processing status	Not Relevant
10	Initialize request for access URL	Not Relevant
11	Transfer request	Not Relevant
12	Request URL	For XI-relevant security topics, see: SAP Process Integration Security Guide
13	Access to URL that the third-party vendor uses to display the report for the background check	Not Relevant

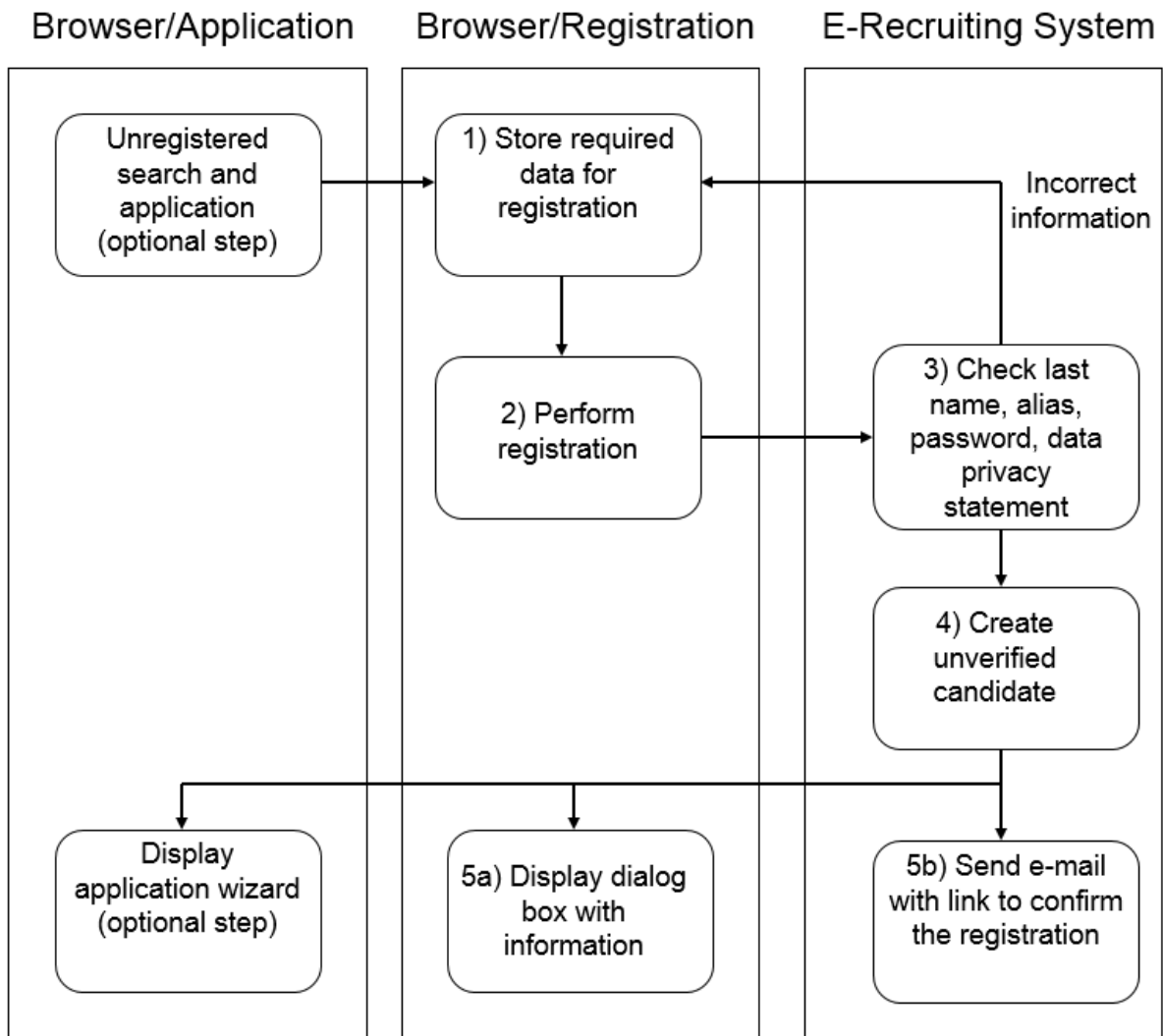
### 13.4.5.1.10 Registration Process with E-Mail Verification

The figures below provide an overview of a candidate's registration process with e-mail verification. This is relevant for persons who want to register their details in the Talent Warehouse or for persons who want to submit an application for an employment opportunity and who have to register their details first in order to do so. The process description is divided into two parts in the figures below. The first figure shows the process up to the point in time when the system sends a confirmation mail for the e-mail address. The second figure shows the process from the moment that the candidate finds this e-mail in his or her e-mail inbox.

For more information about the registration process, see section [Registration with E-Mail Verification](#) in the SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under [Human Resources](#) > [Talent Management](#) > [SAP E-Recruiting \(PA-ER\)](#) > [Candidate](#) > [Storage of Data in Talent Warehouse](#) > [Registration](#) . For more information about the application process with registration at the same time, see section [Online Application of Unregistered Candidate](#) in the SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under [Human Resources](#) > [Talent Management](#) > [SAP E-Recruiting \(PA-ER\)](#) > [Candidate](#) .

#### i Note

This process is relevant if the switch RECFA VERIF is set in the Customizing activity [Set System Parameters](#) .

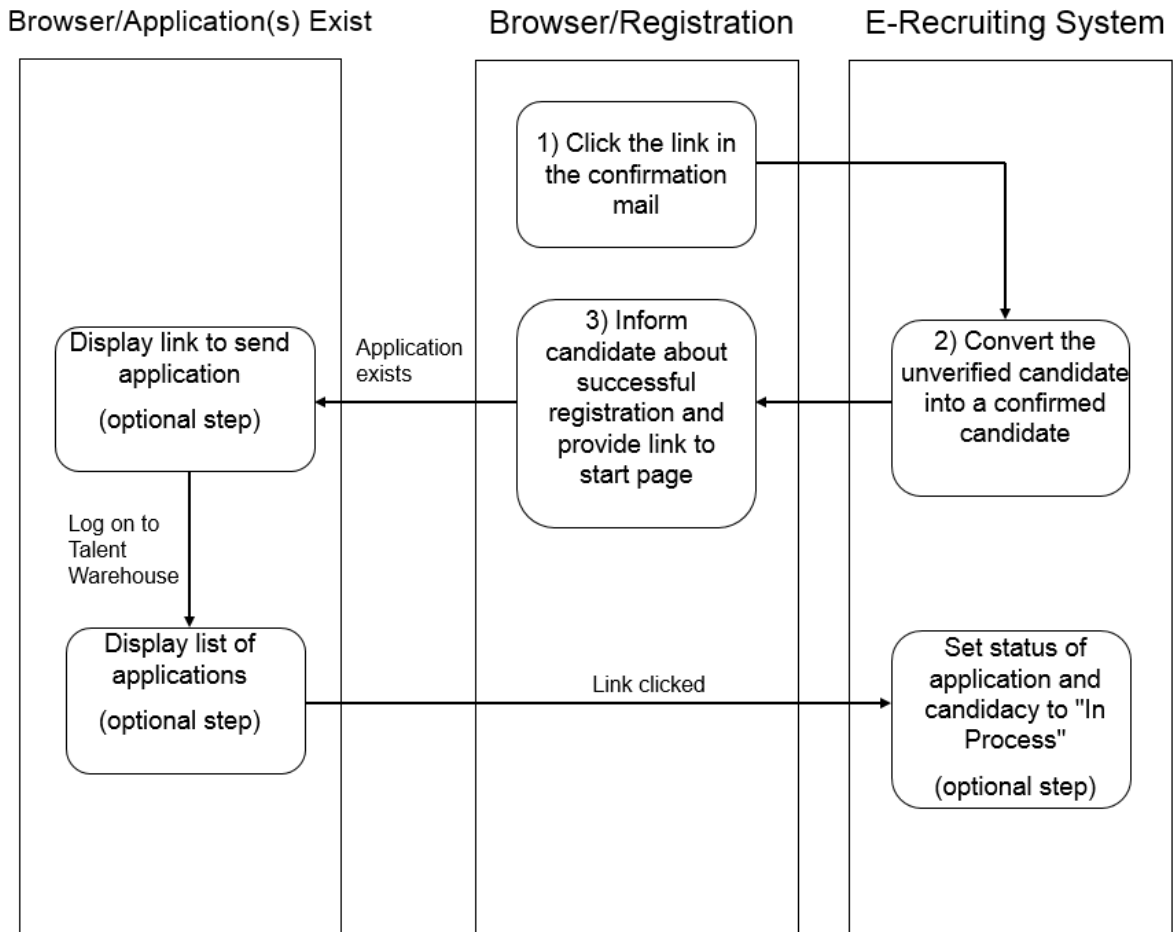


The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Description	Security Action
Optional step	The unregistered candidate finds a suitable job posting and submits an application for this posting. In this case, the candidate has to register his or her details before the application can be submitted. (Continue with step 1)	For the unregistered candidate, the system uses the service user that is assigned to the corresponding ICF service in the Customizing activity <i>Specify E-Recruiting Services (WebDynpro ABAP)</i> .

Step	Description	Security Action
1	The unregistered candidate calls the screen page for the registration and enters the data required for the registration in the Talent Warehouse.	For the unregistered candidate, the system uses the service user that is assigned to the corresponding ICF service in the Customizing activity <i>Specify E-Recruiting Services (WebDynpro ABAP)</i> .
2	The unregistered candidate performs the registration.	
3	The system checks the information for completeness and correctness and, if applicable, asks the unregistered candidate to correct the information.	
4	The system creates an unverified candidate.	In the <i>Candidate Overview</i> infotype (5102) in the <i>Status of E-Mail Verification</i> field, the system enters the value 1 ( <i>Outstanding</i> ). At the same time, the system creates a user for the candidate.
5a	The system informs the candidate that the registration process was triggered and that he or she will receive a confirmation mail.	
5b	At the same time, the system sends a confirmation mail via the mail server to the e-mail address stored by the candidate. This contains a link that the candidate must use to confirm his or her e-mail address and so complete the registration.	If the user does not subsequently confirm his or her e-mail address, the user cannot access the Talent Warehouse.  In the Customizing activity <i>Determine Rules for Periodic Services</i> , you can specify for how long the link for confirming the e-mail address is to be valid.
Optional step	If the candidate has registered his or her details as part of submitting an application, the system now displays the application wizard. The candidate can complete the application but cannot send it until he or she has confirmed the e-mail address and completed the registration process.	





The table below lists the security aspect that has to be taken into account for the process step and the security action that is taken.

Step	Description	Security Action
1	The unverified candidate finds the confirmation mail in his or her e-mail inbox, opens the mail, and clicks the link to confirm the e-mail address.	<p>In the Customizing activity <i>Determine Rules for Periodic Services</i>, you can specify the following (in addition to the validity period of the link for the confirmation):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Period after which a reminder mail is sent to the unverified candidate</li> <li>• Maximum number of possible requests for a new confirmation mail</li> <li>• Option whether candidates can request a new confirmation mail even though the validity period of the last confirmation mail sent was exceeded</li> </ul>

Step	Description	Security Action
2	The system converts the unverified candidate into a confirmed candidate.	In the <i>Candidate Overview</i> infotype (5102) in the <i>Status of E-Mail Verification</i> field, the system enters the value 0 ( <i>Confirmed</i> ).
3	The candidate is informed about the successful registration. At the same time, the candidate receives a link that he or she can use to log on to the Talent Warehouse.	For security reasons, the confirmation does not contain the password that the user needs to log on to the Talent Warehouse and which he or she entered on the registration screen.
Optional step	If the candidate registered his or her details while submitting an application and has already created one or more applications, the system displays a link that the candidate can then use to display a list of the applications.	To do this, the candidate has to log on to the Talent Warehouse with his or her user alias and password.
Optional step	The system displays a list of applications that have not yet been sent. The candidate submits an application.	The candidate can now submit applications because his or her e-mail address has now been confirmed.
Optional step	The system set the status of the application and the candidacy to <i>In Process</i> .	Recruiters can now view the application and the candidate profile.

### 13.4.5.1.1.11 Deregistration and Deletion of External Candidates

#### Definition

In SAP E-Recruiting, there is a two-step process to delete a candidate. The first step is deregistering the external candidate. The second step is deleting the candidate data from the Talent Warehouse.

This document describes how the system handles the candidate's data in the different scenarios.

#### **i** Note

If you delete the external candidates via the `HRRCF_CAND` archiving object and the functions of the *SAP Information Lifecycle Management* (ILM) at the same time with the processes described here, data inconsistencies may occur. For more information, see *Destroying Candidate Data Using HRRCF\_CAND*.

## Candidates delete their registration themselves

For information about the service, see [Deleting the Registration](#).

If the candidate requests the deletion of his or her own registration, the system performs the following steps:

- The [Registration of Candidate Deleted](#) indicator is set in infotype 5102 (Candidate Overview).
- The candidate's user is locked.
- The workflow ERCCandDerig is triggered. The workflow runs automatically in the background. For information about which data of the candidate is processed by the workflow, see the documentation for the [Workflow for Deleting a Candidate's Registration](#).

The remaining data for the candidate is retained in the database.

## Administrator deletes the registration of external candidates

For information about the service, see [Deleting Registration of External Candidates](#).

If the administrator deletes the registration of an external candidate, the system performs the following steps:

- The [Registration of Candidate Deleted](#) indicator is set in infotype 5102 (Candidate Overview).
- The workflow ERCCandDerig is triggered. The workflow runs automatically in the background. For information about which data of the candidate is processed by the workflow, see the documentation for the [Workflow for Deleting a Candidate's Registration](#).

The remaining data for the candidate is retained in the database.

## Administrator deletes the external candidates

Even after an external candidate is deregistered, the candidate's data still exists in the system. To delete the candidate completely from the system, the administrator has to delete the external candidate.

For information about the service, see [Deleting External Candidates](#).

### i Note

The administrator can only delete candidates for whom there are no applications or assignments with the status [In Process](#) or [To Be Hired](#).

When deleting data, the system also takes into account the legal time limits for retaining data (see the end of this document).

When the candidates are deleted, the associated business partners are not deleted, but are archived. You can delete business partners later using the transaction BUPA\_ DEL.

If the prerequisites for the deletion are met, the system executes the following steps:

- Deletion of the candidate's applications and any related objects:
  - HR object Application

- Audit Trails
- Documents for the application in Knowledge Provider (KPro)
- Activities
- Deletion of the candidate's candidacies and any related objects:
  - HR object Candidacy
  - Documents for the candidacy in Knowledge Provider (KPro)
  - Activities
- Deletion of the job agents created by the candidate
- Deletion of the candidate and any related objects:
  - HR object Candidate
  - The candidate's user in the backend system; in the distributed system, also the candidate's user in the front-end system
  - Documents for the candidate in Knowledge Provider (KPro)
  - Activities

### Delete External Candidates (report)

Another option for deleting external candidates is to use the RCF `_DELETE_EXT_CAND` report.

You call this report in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under [Tools](#) → [Delete External Candidates](#). For more information, see the documentation for the Customizing activity.

We recommend you use this report instead of using the [Delete External Candidates](#) service as the report enables you to use multiple selection criteria. In this way, the user can specifically select deregistered candidates, for example.

The report is otherwise identical to the [Delete External Candidates](#) service.

### Retention periods for candidate-based data

You enter the retention periods that the report has to take into account in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under [Store Legal Periods](#). For more information, see the documentation of the Customizing activity.

## 13.4.5.1.12 Sending E-Mails Using the Workflow

SAP E-Recruiting uses workflows that send various documents by e-mail.

The table below shows the workflows and lists the e-mails that are sent using the relevant workflows.

E-Mails Using Workflows

Workflow Template	Description	E-Mail Recipient	E-Mail Content	How E-Mail Is Sent
WS51800042	ERCAAdjEntry	-	-	-
WS51900003	ERCSendPwd	Candidate	Send password	Method
WS51900005	ERCStatusChg	Candidate	Confirmation of receipt of application	Method

Workflow Template	Description	E-Mail Recipient	E-Mail Content	How E-Mail Is Sent
		Candidate	Correspondence: Rejection	Method
		Recruiter	Notification that application is withdrawn	WF E-Mail
WS51900006	ERCCandDerig	Candidate	Confirmation that candidate has been deregistered	Method
WS51900007	ERCAprReqWD	Approver	Notification to the approver	WF E-Mail
		Requester	Notification of the decision	WF E-Mail
WS51900008	ERCObjCreate	Candidate	Acknowledge Candidate	Method
		Candidate	Verification mail	Method
WS51900009	ERCActCreate	-	-	-
WS51900010	ERCStatChg_2	Candidate	Confirmation of receipt of application	Method
		Candidate	Correspondence: Rejection	Method
		Recruiter	Notification that application is withdrawn	WF E-Mail
WS51900011	ERCActCrea_2	-	-	-
WS51900018	ERCSendVerif	Candidate	Confirmation mail	Method

### 13.4.5.1.2 User Administration and Authentication

SAP E-Recruiting uses the user management and authentication mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver platform, in particular the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP also apply to SAP E-Recruiting.

In addition to these guidelines, we include information about user administration and authentication that specifically applies to SAP E-Recruiting in the following topics:

- User Management  
This topic lists the tools to use for user management, the types of users required, and the standard users that are delivered with SAP E-Recruiting.

- Integration into Single-Sign-On Environments  
This topic describes how SAP E-Recruiting supports Single Sign-On mechanisms.

## 13.4.5.1.2.1 User Management

### Definition

User management for SAPE-Recruiting uses the mechanisms provided by SAP Web Application Server ABAP such as tools, user types, and password policies. For an overview of how these mechanisms apply for SAPE-Recruiting, see the sections below.

### User Administration Tools

The following table shows the tools to use for user management and user administration for *SAPE-Recruiting*.

User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Prerequisites
User and Role Maintenance (transaction PFCG)	You can use the Role Maintenance transaction PFCG to generate profiles for the SAPE-Recruiting users.	
Technical Settings for User Management in SAPE-Recruiting	For more information on user profiles and the roles, see Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under <a href="#">▶ Technical Settings ▶ User Administration</a> .	
Workflow Settings	For more information, see the Customizing for SAPE-Recruiting under <a href="#">▶ Technical Settings ▶ Workflow ▶ Workflow in E-Recruiting</a> .	You use the SAP Workflow.

### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not users who run background processing jobs.

#### i Note

For more information, see the Customizing for SAPE-Recruiting under [▶ Technical Settings ▶ User Administration ▶ Create Special Users](#).

The user types required for SAPE-Recruiting are:

- Reference user  
You can create reference users to simplify authorization maintenance. You assign different roles to each reference user. If you then assign a reference user to a user, the user inherits all of the reference user's role attributes and authorization profile.
- Service user  
Some scenarios are accessible for registered users only; other scenarios are also accessible for unregistered users (registration, job postings, direct application). You must assign a service user to these services so that an unregistered user can use them.
- Background User for Workflow  
To be able to use the workflow functions, you must create a system user (such as WF-BATCH) in the standard system.  
For more information, see the Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under ► [Technical Settings](#) ► [Workflow](#) ► [Workflow in E-Recruiting](#) ►.  
In SAP E-Recruiting, you must assign a candidate to this user. To do this, you can use the report `RCF_CREATE_USER`, irrespective of whether you run SAP E-Recruiting and the HR system on the same instance or on different instances.  
For more information, see [Background User for Workflow](#) under ► [Talent Management](#) ► [SAP E-Recruiting](#) ► [Authorizations](#) ► in the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources.

## Standard Users

We do not deliver standard users within SAP E-Recruiting.

### 13.4.5.1.2.2 Integration into Single Sign-On Environments

The most widely-used supported mechanisms are listed below. For a complete list, see the link provided below.

- Secure Network Communications (SNC)  
SNC is available for user authentication and provides for an SSO environment when using the SAP GUI for Windows or Remote Function Calls.
- SAP logon tickets  
SAP E-Recruiting supports the use of logon tickets for SSO when using a Web browser as the frontend client. In this case, users can be issued a logon ticket after they have authenticated themselves with the initial SAP system. The ticket can then be submitted to other systems (SAP or external systems) as an authentication token. The user does not need to enter a user ID or password for authentication but can access the system directly after the system has checked the logon ticket.
- Client certificates  
As an alternative to user authentication using a user ID and passwords, users using a Web browser as a frontend client can also provide X.509 client certificates to use for authentication. In this case, user authentication is performed on the Web server using the Secure Sockets Layer Protocol (SSL Protocol) and no passwords have to be transferred. User authorizations are valid in accordance with the authorization concept in the SAP system.
- Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) 2.0

SAML 2.0 provides a standards-based mechanism for SSO. The primary reason to use SAML 2.0 is to enable SSO across domains.

SAP E-Recruiting supports the Single Sign-On (SSO) mechanisms provided by SAP NetWeaver. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to SAP E-Recruiting.

For more information about the available authentication mechanisms, see *User Authentication and Single Sign-On* in the SAP NetWeaver Library.

### 13.4.5.1.3 Authorizations

SAP E-Recruiting uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to SAP E-Recruiting.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the SAP Web AS ABAP.

#### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see section *Role Administration* under *Identity Management* in the SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA.

The following section shows the standard roles and the relevant authorization objects that SAP E-Recruiting uses. These are:

- Background User for Workflow
- Recruiter, Administrator, and Data Entry Clerk
- Manager
- Candidate

### Authorization Object S\_ICF

We strongly recommend that you use the authorization object *S\_ICF* to safeguard the Web Dynpro applications in SAP E-Recruiting. For the relevant applications, see the ICF service tree (transaction *SICF*) under */default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap*. The names of the applications in SAP E-Recruiting start with ERC for the recruiter and the administrator, and with HRRCF for the candidate.

You can safeguard each application by entering a character string for it in the *SAP Authorization* field under *Service Data* and using this character string in the field *ICF\_VALUE* of the authorization object *S\_ICF* in the corresponding user roles. For more information, see the documentation for *Authorization Object S\_ICF*.

For information about services relevant for SAP E-Recruiting in the ICF service tree, see *Internet Communication Framework Security of SAP E-Recruiting*.



## 13.4.5.1.3.1 Background User for Workflow

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard role that SAP E-Recruiting uses for the background user. SAP E-Recruiting requires this background user for the execution of the workflow. The background user is usually the WF-BATCH user.

Standard Role for the Workflow

Role	Description
SAP_RCF_INT_CANDIDATE_SERVER	<i>Internal Candidate (Server)</i> under <i>Roles (User Profiles)</i>  This role provides the necessary authorizations for an internal candidate in SAP E-Recruiting that are required on the backend system when using a separated system (front-end and backend on different systems).

You have to create a corresponding candidate for the background user of the workflow. You use the RCF\_CREATE\_USER report to do this. For more information, see the Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under [Technical Settings](#) → [Workflow](#) → [Workflow in E-Recruiting](#) .

For the background user to be used in SAP E-Recruiting, the background user requires the authorization to make status changes to the SAP E-Recruiting objects (authorization object P\_RCF\_STAT) in addition to all of the authorizations usually assigned to an internal candidate.

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by SAP E-Recruiting .

For more information, see section [Authorizations](#) for SAP E-Recruiting under [Roles \(User Profiles\)](#) .

Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_RCF_APPL	RCF_APPL	SAP E-Recruiting applications	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which SAP E-Recruiting applications a user can call.  The authorization object is used for the (internal and external) candidates' applications.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
R_RCF_VIEW	RCF_VIEW	SAP E-Recruiting data overviews	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which data overviews a user can access.
P_RCF_POOL	RCF_POOL	The following ways to access the candidate pool directly are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Status-Independent Access to Candidates (DIRECT_ACC)</li> <li>• Recognition of Multiple Applicants (DUPL_CHECK)</li> <li>• Maintenance of Candidate Data (CAND_MAINT)</li> </ul>	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which type of direct access a user can have to the candidates in the Talent Pool.
P_RCF_STAT	OTYPE RCF_STAT	SAP E-Recruiting objects and permitted object status	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting the authorization for status changes to SAP E-Recruiting objects (for example, candidate, application, candidacy).
P_RCF_ACT	ACTVT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activities, processes, and the following accesses to the activities:</li> <li>• Add or Create</li> <li>• Change</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul>	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which type of access a user can have to activities. An activity in SAP E-Recruiting is therefore identified through the assigned process and through the activity type.

### 13.4.5.1.3.2 Recruiter, Administrator, and Data Entry Clerk

#### Standard Roles

The following table shows the standard roles that are used by SAP E-Recruiting for recruiters, administrators, and data entry clerks .

Standard Roles for Recruiters, Administrators, and Data Entry Clerks

Role	Description
SAP _ RCF _ REC _ ADMIN _ ERC _ CI _ 2	<p>Recruiting Administrator (Obsolete)</p> <p>Administrator for SAP E-Recruiting</p> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP _ ERC _ REC _ ADMIN _ CI _ 4.</p> </div>
SAP _ RCF _ REC _ ADMIN _ ERC _ CI _ 4	<p>Recruiting Administrator (NWBC) (Obsolete)</p> <p>You need this role if you want to use the Recruiting Administrator based on SAP Business Client for HTML. The role is a composite role consisting of the single roles SAP _ RCF _ REC _ ADMIN _ SR _ ERC _ CI _ 4 and SAP _ RCF _ REC _ ADMIN _ ERC _ CI _ 2.</p> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP _ ERC _ REC _ ADMIN _ CI _ 4.</p> </div>
SAP _ RCF _ REC _ ADMIN _ SR _ ERC _ CI _ 4	<p>Recruiting Administrator (NWBC) (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role contains the recruiting administrator's menu for display based on SAP Business Client for HTML.</p> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP _ ERC _ REC _ ADMIN _ CI _ 4.</p> </div>
SAP _ ERC _ REC _ ADMIN _ CI _ 4	<p>Recruiting Administrator</p>
SAP _ RCF _ DATA _ TYPIST _ ERC _ CI _ 2	<p>Data Entry Clerk (Obsolete)</p> <p>The role contains the authorization for minimum data entry for incoming paper applications.</p> <div> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP _ RCF _ DATA _ TYPIST _ ERC _ CI _ 4.</p> </div>
SAP _ RCF _ DATA _ TYPIST _ ERC _ CI _ 4	<p>Data Entry Clerk</p>

Role	Description
SAP_RCF_RECRUITER_ERC_CI_2	<p>Recruiter (Obsolete)</p> <p>The role has access to the following data:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Candidate data: The data is displayed for all candidates who stored their data in the Talent Pool.</li> <li>• All publications</li> <li>• All requisition data</li> <li>• All application data</li> <li>• All data for the selection processes</li> </ul> <p>The role also contains the authorization for minimum data entry for incoming paper applications.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_RECRUITER_CI_4.</p> </div>
SAP_RCF_RECRUITER_ERC_CI_4	<p>Recruiter (NWBC) (Obsolete)</p> <p>You need this role if you want to use the Recruiter based on SAP Business Client for HTML. The role is a composite role consisting of the single roles SAP_RCF_RECRUITER_SR_ERC_CI_4 and SAP_RCF_RECRUITER_ERC_CI_2.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_RECRUITER_CI_4.</p> </div>
SAP_RCF_RECRUITER_SR_ERC_CI_4	<p>Recruiter (NWBC) (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role contains the recruiter's menu for display based on SAP Business Client for HTML.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_RECRUITER_CI_4.</p> </div>
SAP_ERC_RECRUITER_CI_4	Recruiter

Role	Description
SAP_RCF_RES_RECRUITER_ERC_CI_2	<p>Restricted Recruiter (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role contains the same authorizations as the Recruiter role. However, restricted recruiters cannot change the status of requisitions and publications (see authorization object P_RCF_STAT).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is available only if you activate the business function HCM_ERC_CI_3.</p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_RES_RECRUITER_CI_4.</p> </div>
SAP_ERC_RES_RECRUITER_CI_4	Restricted Recruiter

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by SAP E-Recruiting .

For more information, see the documentation for SAP E-Recruiting under Authorizations.

### Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_RCF_WDUI	RCF_APPL	SAP E-Recruiting applications	<p>Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which SAP E-Recruiting application a user can call.</p> <p>The authorization object is used for the recruiter's, administrator's, and data entry clerk's applications.</p>
R_RCF_VIEW	RCF_VIEW	Data Overview	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which data overviews a user can access.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_RCF_POOL	RCF_POOL	The following ways to access the candidate pool directly are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Status-Independent Access to Candidates (DIRECT_ACC)</li> <li>• Recognition of Multiple Applicants (DUPL_CHECK)</li> <li>• Maintenance of Candidate Data ( CAND _MAINT)</li> </ul>	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which type of direct access a user can have to the candidates in the Talent Pool.
P_RCF_STAT	OTYPE RCF_STAT	SAP E-Recruiting objects and permitted object status	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting the authorization for making status changes to SAP E-Recruiting objects (for example, candidate, application, candidacy).
P_RCF_ACT	ACTVT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add or Create</li> <li>• Change</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul>	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which type of access a user can have to activities. An activity in SAP E-Recruiting is therefore identified through the assigned process and through the activity type.
CA_POWL	POWL_APPID, POWL_CAT , POWL_LSEL, POWL_QUERY, POWL_RA_AL, POWL_TABLE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• POWL_APPID: ERC-WORKCENTER</li> </ul>	Authorization object that specifies the authorizations for the Personal Object Worklist ( POWL ) iViews.

### 13.4.5.1.3.3 Manager

Using the *Manager Involvement in E-Recruiting* business function (Manager Self-Service) affects the two software components SAP Enterprise Extension HR (EA-HR) and SAP E-Recruiting (ERECRUIT). You have to create an RFC connection from the HR system (EA-HR) to the E-Recruiting system (ERECRUIT). You store an

anonymous service user (that was defined in the E-Recruiting system) for this RFC connection. The SAP \_RFC\_MANAGER\_SERVICE role is assigned to the service user.

## Standard Roles

The following table shows the standard roles that are used by SAP E-Recruiting for managers .

Standard Roles for Manager Scenario

Role	Description
SAP_RCF_MANAGER	<p><i>Manager</i></p> <p>This role is required so that managers can access SAP E-Recruiting from the Portal ( <i>Manager Self Service</i> ).</p> <p>The manager wants to fill the vacant jobs in his or her area. To do this, the manager creates requisitions with the status <i>In Process</i> that are then processed further by recruiters.</p> <p>The role has access to the following data:</p> <p>Candidate data: The manager can see only the candidate data that is assigned to requisitions for which the manager is responsible.</p> <p>Requisition data and data for selection processes: The manager can only see data for which he or she is responsible.</p> <p>The role also contains the authorization to respond to questionnaires about candidates that are assigned to the relevant requisitions.</p>
SAP_RFC_MANAGER_SERVICE	<p>Service user</p> <p>This role is required to request a requisition from the HR system. The service user to which this role is assigned must exist in the E-Recruiting system.</p>

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by SAP E-Recruiting .

For more information, see the documentation for SAP E-Recruiting under [Authorizations \(Recruitment\)](#) .

## Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_RCF_APPL	RCF_APPL	SAP E-Recruiting applications	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which SAP E-Recruiting applications a user can call.
R_RCF_VIEW	RCF_VIEW	SAP E-Recruiting data overviews	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which data overviews a user can access.
P_RCF_POOL	RCF_POOL	The following ways to access the candidate pool directly are available:  Status-Independent Access to Candidates (DIRECT_ACC)  Recognition of Multiple Applicants (DUPL_CHECK)  Maintenance of Candidate Data ( CAND_MAINT)	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which type of direct access a user can have to the candidates in the Talent Pool.
P_RCF_STAT	OTYPE RCF_STAT	SAP E-Recruiting objects and permitted object status	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting the authorization for status changes to SAP E-Recruiting objects (for example, candidate, application, candidacy).
P_RCF_ACT	ACTVT	Add or Create  Change  Delete	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which type of access a user can have to activities. An activity in SAP E-Recruiting is therefore identified through the assigned process and through the activity type.



## 13.4.5.1.3.4 Candidate

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by SAP E-Recruiting for candidates .

Standard Roles for Candidate Scenario

Role	Description
SAP_RCF_UNREG_CANDIDATE_CLIENT	<p>Unregistered Candidate (Client) (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role contains the necessary authorizations for unregistered candidates/service users that are required on the front-end system when using a separated system (front-end and backend on different systems).</p> <p>If you execute unregistered scenarios directly on the back-end system, you must also assign this role to the service user in the backend system.</p> <div><p><b>i Note</b></p><p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_UNR_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4.</p></div>
SAP_ERC_UNR_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4	Unregistered Candidate (Client)
SAP_RCF_UNREG_CANDIDATE_SERVER	<p>Unregistered Candidate (Server)</p> <p>This role provides the necessary authorizations for an unregistered candidate/service user in SAP E-Recruiting that are required on the backend system when using a separated system (front-end and backend on different systems).</p>
SAP_RCF_UNREGISTERED_CANDIDATE	<p>(Unregistered) Candidate – Service User (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role provides the necessary authorizations for an unregistered candidate/service user in SAP E-Recruiting that are required when using the front-end and backend on one system.</p> <div><p><b>i Note</b></p><p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_UNR_CANDIDATE_CI_4.</p></div>
SAP_ERC_UNR_CANDIDATE_CI_4	Unregistered Candidate

Role	Description
SAP_RCF_EXT_CANDIDATE_CLIENT	<p>External Candidate (Client) (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role contains the necessary authorizations for external candidates that are required on the front-end system when using a separated system (front-end and backend on different systems).</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_EXT_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4.</p> </div>
SAP_ERC_EXT_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4	External Candidate (Client)
SAP_RCF_EXT_CANDIDATE_SERVER	<p>External Candidate (Server)</p> <p>This role provides the necessary authorizations for an external candidate in SAP E-Recruiting that are required on the backend system when using a separated system (front-end and backend on different systems).</p>
SAP_RCF_EXTERNAL_CANDIDATE	<p>External Candidate (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role may only display its own data. The role can only see job postings that you published via publications using the external posting channels.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_EXT_CANDIDATE_CI_4.</p> </div>
SAP_ERC_EXT_CANDIDATE_CI_4	External Candidate
SAP_RCF_INT_CANDIDATE_CLIENT	<p>Internal Candidate (Client) (Obsolete)</p> <p>This role contains the necessary authorizations for internal candidates that are required on the front-end system when using a separated system (front-end and backend on different systems).</p> <p>If you allow internal candidates direct access to the backend system, you must also assign this role to the reference user for internal candidates in the backend system.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_INT_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4.</p> </div>

Role	Description
SAP_ERC_INT_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4	Internal Candidate (Client)
SAP_RCF_INT_CANDIDATE_SERVER	Internal Candidate (Server)  This role provides the necessary authorizations for an internal candidate in SAP E-Recruiting that are required on the backend system when using a separated system (front-end and backend on different systems).
SAP_RCF_INTERNAL_CANDIDATE	Internal Candidate (Obsolete)  This role may only display its own data. The role can only see job postings that you published via publications using the internal posting channels.  The role does not have access to the following data: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Requisition data</li> <li>• Posting data</li> <li>• Application data</li> <li>• Data for the selection process</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_INT_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4.</p> </div>
SAP_ERC_INT_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4	Internal Candidate
SAP_RCF_ESS_SR_ERC_CI_4	E-Recruiting Services for ESS (WDA) (Obsolete)  This role contains the authorizations in SAP E-Recruiting for employees that use E-Recruiting services in ESS WDA (Employee Self-Service Web Dynpro ABAP).  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This role is obsolete and has been replaced with the role SAP_ERC_INT_CAND_CLIENT_CI_4.</p> </div>

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by SAP E-Recruiting .  
For more information, see the documentation for SAP E-Recruiting under Authorizations (Recruitment) .

## Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_RCF_APPL	RCF_APPL	SAP E-Recruiting applications	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which SAP E-Recruiting applications a user can call.  The authorization object is used for the (internal and external) candidates' applications.
R_RCF_VIEW	RCF_VIEW	SAP E-Recruiting data overviews	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which data overviews a user can access.
P_RCF_STAT	OTYPE RCF_STAT	SAP E-Recruiting objects and permitted object status	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting the authorization for making status changes to SAP E-Recruiting objects (for example, candidate, application, candidacy).
P_RCF_ACT	ACTVT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add or Create</li> <li>• Change</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul>	Authorization object that specifies within SAP E-Recruiting which type of access a user can have to activities. An activity in SAP E-Recruiting is therefore identified through the assigned process and through the activity type.

## Additional Standard Authorization Objects when Using Candidate Scenario with Front-end and Backend on Separate Systems

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
S_RCF	ACTTV RFC_NAME RFC_TYPE		Authorization object for RFC access  (For more information, see the documentation for <a href="#">Authorization Object S_RFC</a> .)

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
S_RFCALC	ACTTV		Authorization check for RFC users (for example, <i>Trusted System</i> )  (For more information, see the documentation for <i>Authorization Object S_RFCACL</i> .)
	RFC_CLIENT		
	RFC_EQUSER		
	RFC_INFO		
	RCF_SYSID		
	RCF_TCODE		
	RCF_USER		
S_ICF	ICF_FIELD	Internet Communication Framework Service	Authorization checks for using services in Internet Communication Framework (SICF), for calling remote function modules using an RFC destination (SM59), and for configuring proxy settings (SICF).  (For more information, see the documentation for <i>Authorization Object S_ICF</i> .)

**i Note**

You can use the authorization object S\_ICF to safeguard the use of RFC destinations and access to individual SICF services.

## 13.4.5.1.4 Session Security Protection

### Definition

To prevent access in JavaScript or plug-ins to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookies, we recommend activating secure session management.

We also highly recommend using SSL to protect the network communications where these security-relevant cookies are transferred.

## Session Security Protection on the AS ABAP

To prevent access in JavaScript or plug-ins to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookies (SAP\_SESSIONID\_<sid>\_<client>), activate [Secure Session Management](#). With an existing security session, users can then start applications that require a user logon without logging on again. When a security session is ended, the system also ends all applications that are linked to this security session.

Use the transaction SICF\_SESSIONS to specify the following parameter values shown in the table below in your AB ABAP system:

Session Security Protection Profile Parameters

Profile Parameter	Recommended Value	Comment
<a href="#">icf/set_HTTPOnly_flag_on_cookies</a>	0	Client-dependent
<a href="#">login/ticket_only_by_https</a>	1	Not client-dependent

For more information and detailed instructions, see section [Activating HTTP Security Session Management on AS ABAP](#) in the AS ABAP security documentation.

### 13.4.5.1.5 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is extremely important in protecting your system. Your network needs to support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined network topology can eliminate many security threats based on software flaws (at both the operating system and application level) or network attacks such as eavesdropping. If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, then there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the backend system's database or files. Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server LAN (local area network), they cannot exploit well-known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

The network topology for SAP E-Recruiting is based on the topology used by the SAP NetWeaver platform. Therefore, the security guidelines and recommendations described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to SAP E-Recruiting. Details that specifically apply to SAP E-Recruiting are described in the following topics:

- **Communication Channel Security**  
This topic describes the communication paths and protocols used by SAP E-Recruiting.
- **Network Security**  
This topic describes the recommended network topology for SAP E-Recruiting. It shows the appropriate network segments for the various client and server components and where to use firewalls for access protection. It also includes a list of the ports needed to operate SAP E-Recruiting.
- **Communication Destinations**  
This topic describes the information needed for the various communication paths, for example, which users are used for which communications.

For more information, see the following sections in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide:

- **Network and Communication Security**

- Security Aspects for Connectivity and Interoperability

### 13.4.5.1.5.1 Communication Channel Security

#### Use

The table below shows the communication channels used by SAP E-Recruiting, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
Front-end client that uses SAP GUI for Windows as the application server	DIAG	All Customizing data	Passwords
Front-end client that uses a Web browser as the application server	HTTP, HTTPS	All application data	Passwords, personal data

**i Note**  
We generally recommend using HTTPS

DIAG and RFC connections can be protected using *Secure Network Communications* (SNC). HTTP connections are protected using the *Secure Sockets Layer* (SSL) protocol.

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

### Printing

SAP E-Recruiting has numerous options for printing contents. For information about security while printing, see the *SNC User's Guide*.

## 13.4.5.1.5.2 Network Security

### Definition

You can operate SAP E-Recruiting in different ways. You can run the front end and backend for candidates' users on different systems. You can also operate SAP E-Recruiting and the HR system integrated on one system or on different instances.

We recommend that you run the front end and backend of candidates' users on different systems and that you do not integrate SAP E-Recruiting and the HR system on one system.

### Firewall Settings

For more information, see *Using Firewall Systems for Access Control* in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### Ports

SAP E-Recruiting runs on SAP NetWeaver and uses the ports from AS ABAP. For more information, see the topics for *AS ABAP Ports* in the corresponding SAP NetWeaver Security Guides.

For other components, for example, SAPinst, SAProuter, or SAP Web Dispatcher, see <https://help.sap.com/viewer/ports>.

## 13.4.5.1.5.3 Communication Destinations

The following sections provide an overview of the communication destinations that are relevant for the user in the SAP E-Recruiting roles.

### 13.4.5.1.5.3.1 Communication Destinations (Recruiter, Administrator, and Data Entry Clerk)

The following table provides an overview of the communication destinations that SAP E-Recruiting uses.

You use the following communication destinations depending on which application you use to manage your HR master data:

- If you use the SAP GUI transactions to maintain HR master data (for example, transactions PA\*), communication with SAP E-Recruiting runs via RFC connections.
- If you use the *HR Administrative Services* application, communication with SAP E-Recruiting runs via SAP PI (Process Integration).



Destination	Delivered	Type	Users, Authorizations	Description
SAP E-Recruiting to SAP Human Resources Management	No	RFC	See Customizing	IMG: <a href="#">▶ SAP E-Recruiting</a> <a href="#">▶ Applicant Tracking</a> <a href="#">▶ Activities</a> <a href="#">▶ Set Up Data Transfer for New Employees</a> <a href="#">▶</a>
From SAP Human Resources Management to SAP E-Recruiting	No	RFC	See Customizing	<a href="#">▶ SAP E-Recruiting</a> <a href="#">▶ Technical Settings</a> <a href="#">▶ SAP ERP Central Component (ECC)</a> <a href="#">▶ Integration</a> <a href="#">▶ Software Runs on Different Instances</a> <a href="#">▶ Set Up Data Transfer from SAP ECC</a> <a href="#">▶</a>
From SAP E-Recruiting to TREX	No	RFC	See Customizing	<a href="#">▶ SAP E-Recruiting</a> <a href="#">▶ Technical Settings</a> <a href="#">▶ User Administration</a> <a href="#">▶ Create Special Users</a> <a href="#">▶</a> <a href="#">▶ SAP E-Recruiting</a> <a href="#">▶ Technical Settings</a> <a href="#">▶ Search Engine</a> <a href="#">▶ Set Up Search Engine for E-Recruiting</a> <a href="#">▶</a>
From SAP E-Recruiting to HR Administrative Services	No	XI messages		Transfer external candidate's data when hiring
From HR Administrative Services to SAP E-Recruiting	No	XI messages		Return personnel number of former external candidate to SAP E-Recruiting

### **i** Note

Changes to the HR master data are transferred to SAP E-Recruiting using the master data distribution in the ALE scenario.

## 13.4.5.1.5.3.2 Communication Destinations for Manager Involvement

The following table provides an overview of the communication destinations that SAP E-Recruiting uses for Manager Involvement.

Communication Destinations for Manager Involvement (Manager Self-Service)

Destination	Delivered	Type	Users, Authorizations	Description
From HR system (Manager Self-Service) to SAP E-Recruiting	No	RFC	See Customizing	<a href="#">SAP Customizing Implementation Guide</a> → <a href="#">Integration with Other SAP Components</a> → <a href="#">Business Packages / Functional Packages</a> → <a href="#">Manager Self Service</a> → <a href="#">Recruitment</a> → <a href="#">Create RFC Connection to E-Recruiting System</a> .

In the HR system, the methods of the CL\_IM\_HRRCF\_REQUI\_REQUEST class use the RFC connection to call function modules in the E-Recruiting system.

The IF\_HRASR00 GEN \_SERVICE\_ADVANCED~FLUSH method transfers information from the requisition request form to the corresponding infotypes of SAP E-Recruiting.

The methods call the following function modules in the E-Recruiting system:

- HRRCF\_MDL\_UIS\_ATT\_TYPE\_GET
- ERC\_SE\_REQUI\_CREATE\_RC

The IF\_HRASR00 GEN \_SERVICE~GET\_HELP\_VALUES method fills the value helps for input fields in the requisition request form with values from SAP E-Recruiting.

The method calls the following function modules in the E-Recruiting system:

- HRRCF\_MDL\_UIS\_VH\_COMMON
- HRRCF\_GET\_MANAGERS\_FOR\_SUBST
- HRRCF\_MDL\_VH\_EMPLOYMENT\_FRACT
- HRRCF\_MDL\_VH\_SALARY\_CURRENCY
- HRRCF\_MDL\_VH\_SALARY\_RANGE
- HRRCF\_MDL\_VH\_CONTRACT\_TYPE
- HRRCF\_MDL\_UIS\_SUPPORT\_GRP\_GET

The IF\_HRASR00 GEN \_SERVICE~DO\_OPERATIONS method determines the manager's substitutes in SAP E-Recruiting. In addition, you can use the method to determine a user in SAP E-Recruiting for a personnel number.

The method calls the following function modules in the E-Recruiting system:

- HRRCF\_GET\_MANAGERS\_FOR\_SUBST

- HRRCF\_MDL\_UIS\_USER\_GET
- HRRCF\_MDL\_UIS\_ASSIGNED\_GRP\_GET

### 13.4.5.1.5.3.3 Communication Destinations (Candidates)

The following table provides an overview of the communication destinations that SAP E-Recruiting uses for the candidate scenario with the front-end and backend on separate systems.

Destinations	Delivered	Type	Users, Authorizations	Description
SAP E-Recruiting (front-end) to SAP E-Recruiting (backend)	No	RFC	See Customizing	<p>▶ <a href="#">SAP E-Recruiting</a> ▶  <a href="#">Technical Settings</a> ▶  <a href="#">User Interfaces</a> ▶  <a href="#">Candidate</a> ▶ <a href="#">Frontend</a>  <a href="#">Candidate</a> ▶ <a href="#">Enter RFC Destination of Receiving Backend System</a> ▶</p> <p>You enter the RFC destination as a value of the RECFA_UI2BL parameter.</p>
SAP E-Recruiting (backend) to SAP E-Recruiting (front-end)	No	RFC	See Customizing	<p>▶ <a href="#">SAP E-Recruiting</a> ▶  <a href="#">Technical Settings</a> ▶  <a href="#">User Interfaces</a> ▶  <a href="#">Candidate</a> ▶ <a href="#">Backend</a>  <a href="#">Candidate</a> ▶ <a href="#">Specify System Parameters for Web Dynpro</a> ▶</p> <p>You enter the RFC destination as a value of the RECFA_BL2UI parameter.</p>

Note that the communication destination "SAP E-Recruiting (front-end) to SAP E-Recruiting (backend)" was defined as a "trusted system connection". In this connection, no users can be stored in the credentials. For more information, see consulting note 1017866.

## 13.4.5.16 Internet Communication Framework Security

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For SAP E-Recruiting, the following services are needed for the relevant roles:

- Administrator and Recruiter
  - All services with the prefix *ERC* in the path `/default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`  
You activate the services in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under *Technical Settings* → *User Interfaces* → *Administrator and Recruiter* → *General Settings* → *Determine E-Recruiting Services*.
- Candidates
  - All services with the prefix *hrrcf* in the path `/default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`
  - All services in the path `/default_host/sap/bc/erecruiting/`
  - All services with the prefix *hrrcf\_wd* in the path `/default_host/sap/bc/bsp/sap/`  
You activate the services in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under *Technical Settings* → *User Interfaces* → *Candidate* → *Front-End Candidate* → *Specify E-Recruiting Services (Web Dynpro ABAP)*.
- Manager (within the framework of Manager Involvement)
  - `default_host/sap/bc/erecruiting/dataoverview`
  - `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrrcf_a_dataoverview`
  - `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrrcf_a_requi_monitor`
  - `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrrcf_a_req_assess`
  - `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrrcf_a_tp_assess`
  - `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrrcf_a_qa_mss`
  - `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrrcf_a_substitution_manager`
  - `default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrrcf_a_substitution_admin`  
You activate the services in Customizing for SAP E-Recruiting under *Technical Settings* → *User Interfaces* → *Manager Involvement* → *Specify E-Recruiting Services for MSS*.

If your firewall(s) use(s) URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information, see *Activating and Deactivating ICF Services* in the SAP NetWeaver documentation in SAP Library.

For more information about ICF security, see the RFC/ICF Security Guide

## 13.4.5.17 Data Storage Security

### Data Storage

The SAP E-Recruiting data is saved as follows:

- If you use SAP E-Recruiting integrated with other SAP applications, the data is saved in the SAP Web AS or SAP ECC databases.
- If you use SAP E-Recruiting as a standalone application, the data is saved directly in the SAP E-Recruiting databases. You do not need to use any other databases in addition to these standard databases.

SAP E-Recruiting stores the data in the following locations:

Data	Storage Location
Master data	PD infotype tables
Attachments and user-defined texts	Knowledge Provider (KPro)
Search query logs	Cluster table PCL_ RCF (SI)
Audit Trails	Cluster table PCL_ RCF (SI)
Infotype Log	Cluster table PCI_ RCF (IL)

## Cookies

The application uses a Web browser. The SAP Web AS must issue cookies as well as accepting them.

### 13.4.5.1.8 Enterprise Services Security

The following chapters in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide and documentation are relevant for all enterprise services delivered with SAP E-Recruiting:

- Security Guide Web Services
- Recommended WS Security Scenarios
- SAP Process Integration Security Guide

### 13.4.5.1.9 Other Security-Relevant Information

#### Virus scan when uploading attachments

SAP E-Recruiting allows the user to upload files as attachments at various times in the program. Since attachments can potentially contain viruses, these viruses could enter your system when you upload the attachments. To reduce this risk as much as possible, we recommend you use an external virus scanner and restrict the MIME types of the attachments.

In the [Virus Scan when Uploading Documents](#) Customizing activity, you activate the virus scan profile /PAOC\_ RCF\_ BL/HTTP\_UPLOAD that you use in SAP E-Recruiting to perform a virus check when uploading attachments. This enables you to include external virus scanners to increase the security of your system.

You can use the Business Add-In (BAdI) HRRCF00\_ DOC\_UPLOAD to check files that are uploaded as attachments to the E-Recruiting system. When doing so, you can use the CHECK\_ATTACH\_FILE\_TYPE method to specify which MIME types are permitted for the attachments. You call the BAdI using the [BAdI: Upload Documents](#) Customizing activity.

## Access to attachments via Microsoft Internet Explorer

You use *Microsoft Internet Explorer* and want to display attachments in the browser. To do this, *Microsoft Internet Explorer* checks the content of the attachment to determine the file type and display the attachment correctly (*MIME Type Sniffing*). In the worst case, it is thus possible that damaging files of an undesired file type are displayed in the browser or cause damage in another way. To avoid this potential threat to security, deselect *MIME Type Sniffing* in the security settings of *Microsoft Internet Explorer*.

### 13.4.5.1.10 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

#### Application Log

SAP E-Recruiting uses the logging and tracing mechanisms from SAP NetWeaver. SAP E-Recruiting then writes exceptions in the Application Log. These exceptions can occur due to failed authorization checks, for example, and are therefore relevant for security.

For information about logging and tracing mechanisms of SAP NetWeaver Application Server (ABAP), see *Auditing and Logging* under *Application Logging*, there is more information about the application log.

You can access the part of the application log specific to SAP E-Recruiting by using the transaction *SLG1* (Analyze Application Log) and entering the parameter *Object = HRRCF*.

#### Audit Trail

SAP E-Recruiting creates an audit trail with the candidate profile and search queries. For more information, see *Access Audit Trails*.

### 13.4.5.1.11 Services in Lifecycle Management for Security

The following services are available from SAP Active Global Support to assist you in maintaining security in your SAP systems on an ongoing basis.

#### Security Chapter in the EarlyWatch Alert (EWA) Report

This service regularly monitors the Security chapter in the EarlyWatch Alert report of your system. It tells you:

- Whether SAP Security Notes have been identified as missing on your system.  
In this case, analyze and implement the identified Notes, if possible. If you cannot implement the Notes, the report should be able to help you decide on how to handle the individual cases.
- Whether an accumulation of critical basis authorizations has been identified.

In this case, verify whether the accumulation of critical basis authorizations is okay for your system. If not, correct the situation. If you consider the situation okay, you should still check for any significant changes compared to former EWA reports.

- Whether standard users with default passwords have been identified on your system. In this case, change the corresponding passwords to non-default values.

## Security Optimization Service (SOS)

The Security Optimization Service can be used for a more thorough security analysis of your system, including:

- Critical authorizations in detail
- Security-relevant configuration parameters
- Critical users
- Missing security patches

This service is available as a self-service within the SAP Solution Manager or as a remote or on-site service. We recommend you use it regularly (for example, once a year) and in particular after significant system changes or in preparation for a system audit.

## Security Configuration Validation

The Security Configuration Validation can be used to continuously monitor a system landscape for compliance with predefined settings, for example, from your company-specific SAP Security Policy. This primarily covers configuration parameters, but it also covers critical security properties like the existence of a non-trivial Gateway configuration or making sure standard users do not have default passwords.

## Security in the RunSAP Methodology / Secure Operations Standard

With the E2E Solution Operations Standard Security service, a best practice recommendation is available on how to operate SAP systems and landscapes in a secure manner. It guides you through the most important security operation areas and links to detailed security information from SAP's knowledge base wherever appropriate.

## More Information

For more information about these services, see:

- SAP EarlyWatch Alert: <https://support.sap.com/en/offerings-programs/support-services/earlywatch-alert.html>
- SAP Security Optimization Service / Security Notes Report: <https://support.sap.com/en/offerings-programs/support-services/security-optimization-services-portfolio.html>

- Comprehensive list of SAP Security Notes: <https://support.sap.com/en/my-support/knowledge-base/security-notes-news.html>
- Configuration Validation
- SAP Activate Methodology Roadmaps: <https://support.sap.com/en/offerings-programs/methodologies/implement.html>

## 13.4.5.2 Performance Management

### About This Chapter

This chapter of the Security Guide provides an overview of the security-relevant information for the *Performance Management* (PA-PD-PM) application component.

#### i Note

We use the name of the *Performance Management* to mean the same as the name *Objective Setting and Appraisals*. Both names correspond to the technical application component ID PA-PD-PM.

### Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

The following sections contain the security-relevant information that is specific to “Performance Management”:

- *Important SAP Notes*  
This section provides information on why security is necessary and how the document is used, as well as references to other Security Guides on which this Security Guide is based.
- *Security Aspects for Data, Data Flow, and Processes*  
This section provides an overview of the security aspects of the most frequently used processes in Performance Management.
- *Authorizations*  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept used for Performance Management.
- *Network and Communication Security*  
This section provides an overview of the following aspects:
  - *Communication Channel Security*
  - *Network Security*
- *Internet Communication Framework Security*  
This section provides an overview of the services for the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) used by Performance Management.
- *Data Storage Security*  
This section provides an overview of all critical data used by the scenario, component, and application as well as the security mechanisms used.
- *Other Security-Relevant Information*  
This section contains information on uploading and displaying attachments.
- *Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing*



This section provides an overview of the trace and log files that contain security-relevant information and that enable you to reproduce activities, for example, if there is a security violation.

### 13.4.5.2.1 Technical System Landscape

Overview of the technical system landscape for Performance Management:

- Front-end system: Web Dynpro for ABAP in applications in Manager Self-Service and Employee Self-Service
- Back-end system: Customizing for the *Objective Setting and Appraisals* application component (for example, Customizing for applications using Web Dynpro technology for ABAP).
- Back-end system: Transactions for administrators and HR specialists
- Download of Documents from the Back-End System in Knowledge Provider (KPro)
- Workflow  
Example: Sending notifications to managers or employees
- SAP Interactive Forms by Adobe  
For offline processing of the appraisal document (downloading and uploading of appraisal documents).  
For more information, see the guide for *SAP Interactive Forms by Adobe* under *SAP Interactive Forms by Adobe Security Guide*.
- Printing of Appraisal Documents
  - SAP Smart Forms
  - PDF-based print form

### 13.4.5.2.2 Security Aspects for Data, Data Flow, and Processes

In Performance Management, data for the appraisal process are processed as follows:

- For Managers in the Manager Self-Service applications.  
For more information about the Manager role, see the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide and choose:  
[▶ Human Resources ▶ Self-Services ▶ Manager Self-Service ▶](#)
- For Employees in the Employee Self-Service applications.  
For more information about the Employee role, see the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide and choose  
[▶ Human Resources ▶ Self-Services ▶ Employee Self-Service ▶](#)

#### ❖ Example

Managers as well as employees can work on appraisal documents in the applications (Web Dynpro for ABAP). The system saves the relevant data to the database. The system saves attachments to files (such as appraisals by an additional appraiser) in the Knowledge Provider (KPro).

## 13.4.5.2.3 Authorizations

Performance Management uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP (AS ABAP). Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for authorizations detailed in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide ABAP also apply to Performance Management.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on the assignment of authorization to users based on role. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction: [Role Maintenance](#) (PFCG)) on the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP.

### i Note

For more information about creating roles, see [Role Maintenance](#) under [Identity Management](#).

Authorizations for personnel appraisal implemented in Human Resources have a special significance. The [Performance Management](#) application component uses objects from the following components, among others:

- [Manager Self-Service](#)  
For more information, see [Authorizations](#) in Manager Self-Service.
- [Employee Self-Service](#)  
For more information, see [Authorizations](#) in Employee Self-Service.
- [Organizational Management](#)
- [Personnel Development](#)
- [Training and Event Management](#)
- [SAP Learning Solution](#)  
For more information, see [Authorizations](#) in [SAP Learning Solution](#).

The [Performance Management](#) application component is therefore subject to the general authorization checks in the corresponding application component. Furthermore, the object type Person (P) in Performance Management is of central importance since this object type can be used for appraisers and appraisees (particularly for personnel appraisals). This means that standard checks for people in the SAP system are also valid for Performance Management. Furthermore, Performance Management has additional authorization aspects for controlling authorizations in this application that are realized using specific authorization object and authorization controlling in the Customizing settings for the appraisal template.

For more information about the authorization checks, see [General Authorization Check](#) and [Structural Authorization Check](#) (see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA and choose ► [Human Resources](#) ► [HR Tools](#) ► [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) ►).

### 13.4.5.2.3.1 SAP Standard Roles

The following SAP standard roles are used in Performance Management:

#### PFCG roles for the flexible appraisal process

- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMG\_ADMIN\_SR - Administrator

The authorizations for this role include the following:

- Applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP, such as Configure User Interfaces for Template (HAP\_CONFIGURATION)
- Transactions (for example, administrator functions (PHAP\_ADMIN\_PA), appraisal catalog (PHAP\_CATALOG\_PA), Change Appraisal (PHAP\_CHANGE\_PA), Transport Appraisal Template (PHAP\_TRANSPORT))
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMG\_MANAGER\_SR - Manager  
For example, this role contains the authorizations for applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP:
  - Appraisal Document (HAP\_MAIN\_DOCUMENT)
  - Employee Document Overview (HAP\_START\_PAGE\_POWL\_UI\_MSS)
  - Application based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP: Creation and Cascading of Team Goals (HAP\_A\_PMP\_GOALS)
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMG\_EMPLOYEE\_SR - Employee  
For example, this role for employees contains the authorization for applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP:
  - Appraisal Document (HAP\_MAIN\_DOCUMENT)
  - Employee Document Overview (HAP\_START\_PAGE\_POWL\_UI\_ESS)
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMG\_GOALS\_SR - Specialist for Corporate Goals  
This role for applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP contains authorization for the following: Creation and Cascading of Corporate Goals and Core Values (HAP\_A\_PMP\_GOALS)

#### **PFCG roles for the Predefined Performance Management Process**

- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMP\_ADMIN\_SR - Administrator  
The authorizations for this role include the following:
  - Applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP (such as the creation wizard for appraisal templates (HAP\_A\_TM\_CONF), Edit Performance Management Process (HAP\_A\_PMP\_TIMELINE))
  - Transactions (for example, administrator functions (PHAP\_ADMIN\_PA), appraisal catalog (PHAP\_CATALOG\_PA), Change Appraisal (PHAP\_CHANGE\_PA), Transport Appraisal Template (PHAP\_TRANSPORT))
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMP\_MANAGER\_SR - Manager  
For example, this role for managers contains the authorizations for applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP:
  - Appraisal Document (HAP\_A\_PMP\_MAIN)
  - Employee Document Overview (HAP\_A\_PMP\_OVERVIEW)
  - Application based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP: Creation and Cascading of Team Goals (HAP\_A\_PMP\_OVERVIEW)
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMP\_EMPLOYEE\_SR - Employee  
For example, this role for employees contains the authorization for applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP:
  - Appraisal Document (HAP\_A\_PMP\_MAIN)
  - Employee Document Overview (HAP\_A\_PMP\_EMPLOYEE)
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_PMP\_GOALS\_SR - Specialist for Corporate Goals  
This role for applications based on Web Dynpro technology for ABAP contains authorization for the following: Creation and Cascading of Corporate Goals and Core Values (HAP\_A\_PMP\_GOALS)

## Additional PFCG Roles

### **i** Note

The following roles are also available in the system: In place of these roles, we recommend you use the roles listed above.

- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_ADMINISTRATOR  
(Administrator – Appraisals and objective setting agreements)
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_MANAGER  
(Manager Flexible – Appraisals and objective setting agreements)
- SAP\_HR\_HAP\_EMPLOYEE  
(Employee Flexible – Appraisals and objective setting agreements)

### **⚠** Caution

You can call standard roles with the *role maintenance* transaction (`PFCG`). You must copy these standard roles into a customer-specific namespace for custom implementation to get custom specifications for the roles. When you enter a new name, note that it may not contain an SAP-specific name (SAP, "\_"). This is to ensure that a clear distinction can be made between customer-specific roles and standard SAP roles.

## 13.4.5.2.3.2 Overview of Authorization Objects

In Performance Management, the following authorization objects are essential for enabling users to access the application component for the following roles:

- Transaction authorizations (S\_TCODE, P\_TCODE)
- Access to HR master data (P\_ORGIN/CON, P\_PERNR)
- Access to objects in the Personnel Planning database (PLOG)
- Access to appraisals (P\_HAP\_DOC)

You can control the following for users with named roles using various authorization object fields:

- Activity (display, edit, delete)
- Object set (persons, appraisal templates)
- Content (infotypes)

For more information about these authorizations, see SAP Library under [ERP Central Component](#) > [Human Resources](#) > [Personnel Management](#) > [Personnel Administration](#) > [Technical Processes in Personnel Administration](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources](#).

## 13.4.5.2.3.2.1 Authorization Objects S\_TCODE and P\_TCODE

Authorization object that is used to check whether a user is authorized to start the different HR transactions. The transaction code is checked.

### Use

Regardless of the application, the authorization object **S\_TCODE** is used to check authorizations for starting the transactions defined for an application.

The authorization object **P\_TCODE** is used to check the authorization for starting various HR transactions. The additional check using P\_TCODE provides added security for personal data and is therefore used for numerous transactions in HCM applications (such as PA40, PHAP\_CHANGE\_PA). The authorization object P\_TCODE is not used in all HR transactions. Generally, it is used in HR applications where HR-specific authorization objects are not checked when a transaction is called. For more information about this authorization object, see P\_TCODE (HR transaction code) .

#### Necessary Setting for Performance Management:

Transaction code field: PHAP\_\*\_PA (depending on role, specify exact transaction). For administrators, you must include transactions starting with OOHAP\_\*.

For more information about the authorizations, see SAP Library under ► [ERP Central Component](#) ► [Human Resources Management](#) ► [Personnel Management](#) ► [Personnel Administration](#) ► [Technical Processes in Personnel Administration](#) ► [Authorizations for Human Resources Management](#) ►.

## 13.4.5.2.3.2.2 Authorization object PLOG (Personnel Planning)

An authorization object that is used to check the authorization for specific fields in the Personnel Management components (*Organizational Management, Personnel Development, Training and Event Management, SAP Learning Solution*, and so on).

### Use

#### Necessary Setting for Performance Management:

INFOTYP: 1000, 1001, 1002, 1048, 5020, 5021, 5022, 5023, 5024, 5025, 5026

ISTAT: 4, 3

OTYPE: VA, VB, VC

PLVAR: \*

PPFCODE: Change for Customizing/Administrators, Display for End-Users

SUBTYP: 0001, 5020, A605, A606, A607, B605, B606, B607

#### Note

The object types have the following meaning:

- VA = Appraisal template
- VB = Criteria group
- VC = Criterion

The Customizing settings for the appraisal templates are made in the aforementioned infotypes (transaction PHAP\_CATALOG\_PA). Therefore, end users must have at least read authorization for these infotypes. If the appraisal templates include further object types as a result of using free enhancements (such as [Add Business Event Type](#)) or fixed enhancements (such as [Add Individual Development Plan Item](#)), additional authorizations are required for these object types, for example:

- Q = Qualifications
- O = Organizational unit
- S = Position
- C = Job
- D = Course type
- F = Location
- A = Work center

Since individual development plans can also include further standard object types and customer-specific object types, you must also include these when setting up authorizations according to the particular implementation.

For more information on the authorizations, see the SAP Library under [ERP Central Component > Human Resources Management > Personnel Management > Personnel Administration > Technical Processes in Personnel Administration > Authorizations for Human Resources Management](#).

### 13.4.5.2.3.2.3 Authorization Object P\_HAP\_DOC

An authorization object used to check authorizations for accessing appraisal documents.

## Use

Among other things, the distribution of authorization for appraisal templates and appraisal documents is controlled using this authorization object. For more information about this authorization object, see P\_HAP\_DOC (Appraisal Systems: Appraisal). The P\_HAP\_DOC authorization object contains the following fields, which are tested during an authorization check:

Authorization Field	Description
ACTVT	Activity (display, change, delete)
PLVAR	Plan version (usually active plan version 01)
HAP_CAT_G	Appraisal category group ID (determines the appraisal category groups that a user can access). The appraisal category groups are contained in table T77HAP_C_GRP (process using transaction OOHAP_CAT_GROUP). For personnel appraisals, use category group 00000001 (see also SAP Note number 497773).
HAP_CAT	Appraisal category ID (determines the appraisal categories that a user can access). Appraisal categories are customer-specific and created in transaction PHAP_CATALOG_PA. They are saved in table T77HAP_C. You can display the numbering of the categories using transaction OOHAP_CATEGORY.
HAP_TEMPL	The appraisal template ID. An appraisal template is customer-specific and created in transaction PHAP_CATALOG_PA. It is an object of type VA. In this field, enter the eight-digit object ID from table HRP1000 of object type VA. This dictates the appraisal templates a user can access.
PROFL	Authorization profile. This field is only used if structural authorizations are used. (See Structural Authorizations in Performance Management).

### Necessary Settings for PM:

ACTVT: \*

PLVAR: \*

HAP\_CAT\_G: 00000001 (for personnel appraisals)

HAP\_CAT:\* HAP\_TEMPL:\* (restrict by customer if necessary)

PROFL: \*

### Note

You should not assign the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC on its own since it is only effective when used in combination with other authorization objects. You must assign it together with the authorization objects PLOG and P\_ORGIN(CON). The authorization object PLOG enables users to access appraisal templates and the

criteria they contain (see [Authorization Object PLOG \[page 301\]](#)). The authorization object P\_ORGIN(CON) enables users to access HR data (see Authorization Object P\_ORGIN / P\_ORGINCON). The authorization object P\_PERNR is also required to enable users to access their own HR master data (for example, for ESS scenarios) (see Authorization Object P\_PERNR).

For more information about the authorizations, see SAP Library under [ERP Central Component > Human Resources Management > Personnel Management > Personnel Administration > Technical Processes in Personnel Administration > Authorizations for Human Resources Management](#).

## 13.4.5.2.3.2.4 Authorization Objects P\_ORGIN

An authorization object used to check the authorization for accessing HR master data.

### Use

The checks are run when HR infotypes have to be processed or read. In Performance Management, the persons for whom the user is allowed to process appraisal documents must be authorized via authorization object P\_ORGIN. The authorization check is run here using the following fields:

Authorization Field	Description
INFT	Infotype
SUBTY	Subtype
AUTHC	Authorization level (such as read, write, matchcode)
PERSA	Personnel area (from infotype 0001)
PERSG	Employee group (from infotype 0001)
PERSK	Employee subgroup (from infotype 0001)
VDSK1	Organizational key (from infotype 0001)

#### Necessary Settings for Performance Management:

INFTY: Usually, 0000, 0001, 0002 (depending on the organizational area for which the user is responsible)

SUBTY: \*

AUTHC: Read and matchcode

PERSA: (depending on the organizational area for which the user is responsible)

PERSG: (depending on the organizational area for which the user is responsible)



PERSK: (depending on the organizational area for which the user is responsible)

VDSK1: (depending on the organizational area for which the user is responsible)

#### Note

The authorization object P\_ORGIN provides the user with the necessary authorizations he or she needs to access personnel data. This authorization object is mandatory, that is, you cannot define the use of this authorization object as being optional by activating the structural authorizations in Performance Management (table T77S0, switch HAP00/AUTHO). Rather, the structural authorizations comprise an additional filter for accessing appraisal documents for the permitted set of persons (see [Structural Authorizations in Performance Management \[page 307\]](#)). To assign authorizations for accessing infotypes in the authorization object P\_ORGIN, you do not need to assign specific infotypes in Performance Management. From a technical perspective, it is sufficient in Performance Management if a person is included in the fields PERSA, PERSG, PERSK, VDSK1 in the permitted amount. However, to ensure consistency for the user (for example, in the display of additional personal data in the appraisal document, in the search function for persons with particular infotype values for filling out selection criteria in Performance Management) it is generally beneficial to provide the user with authorizations for the *Actions* (0000), *Organizational Assignment* (0001), and *Personal Data* (0002) infotypes for the persons for whom the user is to process appraisal documents. It should not be necessary that a user is able to process a person's appraisal document but not read this person's organizational assignment. Such a requirement is not logical from the perspective of the process.

For more information on the authorizations, see the SAP Library under [ERP Central Component](#) > [Human Resources Management](#) > [Personnel Management](#) > [Personnel Administration](#) > [Technical Processes in Personnel Administration](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources Management](#).

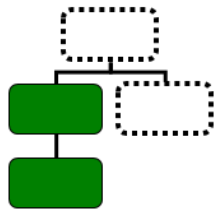
### 13.4.5.2.3.2.5 Authorization Object P\_ORGINCON

An authorization object that is used during the authorization check for HR data. This check takes place when HR infotypes are edited or read.

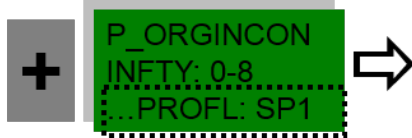
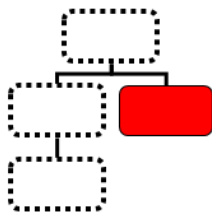
#### Use

You can use this authorization object if structural authorizations are to be checked in context when checking the authorization to access HR master data. This authorization object is used for the authorization check for personnel data. This check takes place when HR infotypes are edited or read. This authorization object consists of the same fields as the authorization object P\_ORGIN, and also includes the field PROFL (structural profile). Running the check against this object enables user-specific contexts (using Organizational Management) to be depicted in HR master data.

### Structural Profile 1



### Structural Profile 2



Total Authorization of User:  
The user has authorization for infotypes 0000 – 0008 for the number of objects from structural profile 1.

The user has authorization for infotypes 0000 – 0006 for the number of objects from structural profile 2.

Example for context-sensitive authorization checks

The checks are made context-sensitive by controlling the various structural sets of persons to different contexts as shown in the example above.

The PROFL field determines the structural profiles the user can access for a particular context. These structural profiles must be assigned to the user in table T77UA.

If you use the Business Add-In (BAI) HRBAS00\_GET\_PROFL, you do not need to maintain table T77UA manually. This BAI enables you to implement an alternative method for determining structural profiles. The example source code in the standard system determines the user's structural profiles by reading the values entered for the authorization object P\_ORGINCON in the user master record.

Structural authorizations in authorization object P\_ORGINCON can also be used in combination with structural authorizations in Performance Management (see structural authorizations in Performance Management).

For more information on the authorizations, see the SAP Library under [ERP Central Component](#) > [Human Resources Management](#) > [Personnel Management](#) > [Personnel Administration](#) > [Technical Processes in Personnel Administration](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources Management](#).

## 13.4.5.2.3.2.6 Authorization Object P\_PERNR

This authorization object is used to control the user's access to his or her own personnel number and the related HR data separately.

## Use

The personnel number is assigned to the user in the *Communication* infotype (0105) (subtype 0001 System User Name). Access to an employee's own master data is used primarily in ESS scenarios in which the user is only to have access to his or her own master data to edit or display this information. To enable access authorizations for the employee's own personnel number to be controlled using the authorization object P\_PERNR, the main switch must be activated in table T77S0 (transaction OOAC, switch AUTSW/PERNR). The authorization check is run for the following fields:

Authorization Field	Description
INFTY	Infotype
SUBTY	Subtype
AUTHC	Authorization level (such as read, write, matchcode)
PSIGN	Interpretation of own personnel number (I, include own personnel number, E, exclude own personnel number)

### Necessary Settings for Performance Management:

INFTY: Dummy—depends on the ESS scenarios used outside of Performance Management.

SUBTY: Dummy—depends on the ESS scenarios used outside of Performance Management.

AUTHC: \*

PSIGN: I (include)

### Note

If you use the authorization object P\_PERNR, the authorization object P\_ORGIN/CON is superfluous. That is, a user who is to be permitted to access his or her own personnel number only (for example, for ESS scenarios), is given all the authorizations required using the authorization object P\_PERNR. Therefore, an additional setting for the authorization object P\_ORGIN/CON is not required. This also applies to Performance Management.

For more information on the authorizations, see the SAP Library under [ERP Central Component > Human Resources Management > Personnel Management > Personnel Administration > Technical Processes in Personnel Administration > Authorizations for Human Resources Management](#).

## 13.4.5.2.3.3 Structural Authorizations in Performance Management

Special structural authorizations exist for Performance Management. These authorizations enable you to control access to appraisal documents for persons from defined areas of Organizational Management.

This extended authorization check (structural, context-sensitive authorizations) is activated using the switch HAP00/AUTHO in table T77S0. This switch is specific to Performance Management authorizations.

## ❖ Example

### Example A: Structurally controlled access

The standard SAP authorization check assumes that, once defined, the authorizations (such as change appraisal documents) for a user always apply even when a manager takes on a substituting role for a different organizational unit. If you activate the extended authorization check, you can dictate that a manager can change appraisal documents for employees in his or her organizational unit while he or she can only display appraisal documents for employees in the organizational unit for which he or she is a substitute.

## ❖ Example

### Example B: Structurally controlled access

A user has authorization to read the mini-master record for all employees at a company (P\_ORGINCON for infotypes 0000, 0001, 0002 for structural profile A, which is valid for the entire company). This user can maintain simultaneously all infotypes for the employees in his or area of responsibility, displayed via a link between his or her position and the organizational unit for which the user is a substitute (P\_ORGINCON for all infotypes for a structural profile B that is valid for the entire area of responsibility). You can use the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC to enable the user to display and change the appraisal documents for employees in his or her area of responsibility (structural profile B) and to specify that the user cannot display or change the appraisal documents for employees with structural profile A.

## ❖ Example

### Example C: Structurally and context-sensitively controlled access

A user has the structural profiles outlined in example B.

- Structural profile A for access across whole company
- Structural profile B for area of responsibility

You can also use the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC to create a context-sensitive reference to the permitted templates. This means the user can see appraisals from a certain appraisal template, such as qualification checklists, for structural profile A, that is, company-wide. By defining a further setting for the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC, you can give the user authorization to access all appraisal templates (such as objective setting agreements, assessments of potential, performance appraisals) that exist in his or her area of responsibility (structural profile B) for the same user.

For more information about structural authorizations, see SAP Library under [ERP Central Component](#) > [Human Resources](#) > [Personnel Management](#) > [Personnel Administration](#) > [Technical Processes in Personnel Administration](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) .

### 13.4.5.2.3.3.1 Activating HAP00/AUTHO and Using PA Infotype Authorizations (P\_ORGIN) without Structural Authorizations

This combination means that structural restrictions are made during authorization checks **only** for Performance Management and the associated access to personnel appraisals. This is opposed to Personnel Administration, where no structural authorization checks are used.

This means that when HAP00/AUTHO is active, a structural profile must be entered in the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC and the user must be entered together with this structural profile in table T77UA.

If, in this authorization object, the value \* remains in the *Authorization Profile* field and the user has not been entered in table T77UA, the system interprets this value as structural profile ALL. That is, the user has the authorizations to access the same employee data as defined in the authorization object P\_ORGIN. If no value, or an invalid value, is entered in the *Authorization Profile* field for the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC, the user cannot access any personnel appraisals (he or she can, however, access the corresponding infotypes in Personnel Administration).

Access using structural authorizations is only possible in Performance Management when a structural profile has been entered in the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC and the user is entered in table T77UA has a valid entry for this structural profile.

If this is the case, the structural authorizations function as follows:

- *Filter Function*

#### ❁ Example

In Personnel Administration, a user has authorization for all employees in employee subgroup *AT Employees*. However, the user is to be able to display and process appraisal documents only for those AT employees who are in his or her area of responsibility. To enable this, the structural profile for the user's area of responsibility is entered in the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC.

#### Explanation

The user can only access the personnel appraisals for persons included in his or her structural profile. You can report on the object that can be accessed using the report RHUSERRELATIONS (up to Release 4.7) or using table T77UA (as of the Enterprise Release, using the *Display Objects* function).

This means that structural authorizations for Performance Management work like a filter for people authorized by P\_ORGIN: Users can see and process a certain number of people in Personnel Administration via authorization object P\_ORGIN. The user can display and maintain only those appraisal documents for persons who are ALSO included in the structural profile of the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC (filter/subset).

- *Context Sensitivity*

#### ❁ Example

For persons in area A, a user is to be able to view and/or edit the appraisal template A, *Objective Setting Agreements*, only. For persons in area B, the user is to be able to view and/or edit the appraisal template B, *Qualification Appraisals*, only. This means that the user is not able to show or process the B appraisals, or *Qualification Appraisals*, for employees from area A.

The role requires two instances of the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC that differ in the following fields:

	<i>Appraisal Template</i> Field	<i>Authorization Profile</i> Field
1st Proficiency	Template A: Objective Setting Agreements	Structural Profile A: Area A
2nd Proficiency	Template B: Qualification Appraisals	Structural Profile B: Area B

#### Explanation

A distinction is made between the user's authorizations so that he or she can access different appraisal templates and perform different activities in appraisal templates for the various areas in Organizational Management (context sensitive).

Using report RHUSERRELATIONS (up to Release 4.7) or in table T77UA (as of Enterprise Release, *Display Objects* function) you can determine the combination of structural profiles possible for the user (that is, for which persons he or she can access a particular appraisal template and perform specific activities for this appraisal template).

### 13.4.5.2.3.3.2 Activating HAP00/AUTHO and Using P\_ORGINCON (with Structural HR Authorizations)

This setting means that structural authorizations are used to control access to HR master data and personnel appraisals in Performance Management.

To use the authorization object P\_ORGINCON, activate the switch AUTSW/INCON in table T77S0.

You must also enter a structural profile in the authorization object P\_ORGINCON and P\_HAP\_DOC.

The user requires a structural profile for all other object types in Organizational Management that do not belong to Performance Management but for which the user nevertheless has authorization using the authorization object PLOG.

In this combination, authorizations between HR master data and appraisals generally work in the same way as described in [Structural Authorizations in Performance Management \[page 307\]](#). In addition, further context-sensitive authorization checks (in combination with structural profiles from Organizational Management) are possible.

If you use both structural, context-sensitive authorization objects P\_ORGINCON and P\_HAP\_DOC, note the following:

- It is not sufficient to give the user a structural profile using authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC. To enable the user to access employee master data, you must also make a setting for the [authorization object P\\_ORGINCON \[page 305\]](#) (see also [Authorization Object P\\_HAP\\_DOC \[page 302\]](#)).
- You can give the user authorization to access a broader range of HR master data compared with appraisal documents.

#### ❖ Example

In the profile for P\_ORGINCON, a user can access the infotypes 0000, 0001, 0002 for all employees at the company who belong to the employee subgroup *AT*. The structural profile *ALL* in the authorization object P\_ORGINCON (structural profile A) provides the user with this authorization. The user also has a further instance of the authorization object P\_ORGINCON that permits him or her to maintain all infotypes for employees in his or her area of responsibility (structural profile B for defining the area of responsibility in Organizational Management).

In the user profile for the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC, the user is given authorization to access appraisal documents for employees in his or her area of responsibility (structural profile B) as opposed to for the entire company, 'ALL' profile (structural profile A). This ensures that the user can access the appraisal documents for employees in his or her area of responsibility but not the appraisal documents for employees who belong to the employee subgroup *AT*, which is valid for the whole company.

- If you use the BAdI HRBAS00\_GET\_PROFL as opposed to maintaining table T77UA manually (see also [Authorization Object P\\_ORGINCON \[page 305\]](#)), note that you must also consider the structural profiles from the authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC.

### 13.4.5.2.3.4 Controlling Authorizations and Access Using Customizing

The following infotypes are displayed in the form of tab pages and control authorization and access:

- Column Access
- Processing
- Roles

#### 13.4.5.2.3.4.1 Tab: Column Access (Infotype 5023)

On this tab page, you make the settings for access to columns within the (part) appraisal process. You specify display and change authorizations for elements in the appraisal template. You make the following settings:

- You specify the column owner of each separate column group.  
You can use an implementation of the BAdI HRHAP00\_COL\_OWNER to implement customer-specific column access.
- You specify who is authorized to perform which activities in each phase of the appraisal process and which columns are to be shown in the appraisal template.

You can only assign authorizations that are dependent on the various phases to either the **column owner** or all **other** participants involved in the appraisal process. You define who has authorization to execute an activity in a particular phase separately for column owners and all other participants. You can exclude the appraiser from the setting so that he or she has access in every phase (see example below).

You can define the following column access authorizations, for example:

- Free column access for all participants during the entire appraisal process  
This setting defines that all participants can display all part appraisals at any time and make changes to the appraisal document.
- Change or display authorization for column owners only.  
This setting defines that only column owners can display a column or make changes in a specific appraisal phase.
- On this tab page you can use input help to define that columns are only to be visible to certain participants in the individual phases. To do this, choose the value *Hide*.

The infotype consists of:

- Checkbox: *Default*  
Use input help to select default entries for access authorizations. Click on the *Default Access* button to transfer the entries to the *Column Access* group box.
- Indicator: *Changes*  
You can accept the transferred defaults without restriction or, if necessary, you can change entries in the individual cells. If you make and save any changes, the *changed* field is marked with an indicator. This makes it easier for you to identify whether these settings are default entries.
- Group box: *Column Access*  
In this group box, you make setting for column access.

### ❁ Example

You depict a part appraisal process with one appraiser (manager), one appraisee (employee), and several part appraisers (colleagues). In the *Part Appraisal* column, the *Part Appraisee* (employee) is the default column owner. In the *Part Appraisal* phase, you assign the column owner change authorization and define that all other participants do not have access during this phase of the part appraisal.

In many cases, you might want the manager to have at least display authorization. You can assign the manager with the necessary authorizations (for example, *Display for Appraiser, Hide for Others*) by using input help. This ensures that the column is not displayed for all other part appraisers and that the appraiser has display authorization for the part appraisal column.

### i Note

- The column access defined for the *Part Appraisal* (PAPP) and *Final Appraisal* (FAPP) columns is possible when one of the following columns is present in the appraisal template:
  - *In Process*
  - *Completed*
  - *Approved*
  - *Rejected*
- The *Objective Setting* (OBJO) column comprises all objective setting columns (OBJ\* and QBH\*). The *Part Appraisal* (PAPP) column comprises the *Part Appraisal Weighting* (PWGT) and *Part Appraisal* (PAPP) columns. This is because the SAP system always processes the relevant columns simultaneously.
- If, for a particular phase, a user has *Change* access to the *Objective Setting* (OBJO) column, he or she can use the *Free Enhancement* function. If this column is not present, the SAP system checks whether the user has *Change* access to the *Final Appraisal* (FAPP) column for this phase. If this is the case, the user can use a *Free Enhancement* for this phase.



- The column access defined for the *Part Appraisal* (PAPP) and *Final Appraisal* (FAPP) columns is possible when one of the following columns is present in the appraisal template:
  - *In Process*
  - *Completed*
  - *Approved*
  - *Rejected*

You can use an implementation of the BAdI HRHAP00\_COL\_ACCESS to define customer-specific column access.

### 13.4.5.2.3.4.2 Tab: Processing (Infotype 5025)

- Setting: *Self Appraisal Not Allowed*  
If this setting is activated, a user (that is the user who is logged on) cannot simultaneously perform the role of appraiser and appraisee.
- Setting: *No Authorization Check for Appraiser*  
If this setting is activated, an authorization check is not performed for the appraiser. This means that even if a user does not have authorization for the appraiser's person, he or she can nevertheless display and edit all appraisal documents that include this appraiser.

#### ❖ Example

An appraiser has access only to the HR master data of employees in the employee subgroup *Salaried Employees*. That is, he or she can display and edit the appraisal documents for these employees. However, these employees can be appraised by an employee from a different employee subgroup (such as *Managing Employees*). In this case, the administrator does not have access to the appraiser's person. To enable the administrator to nevertheless evaluate and edit appraisal documents for employees in the *Employees* subgroup, you use the setting *No Authorization Check for Appraiser* setting. Consequently, the appraiser's data is not checked for authorization and the administrator can also access the appraisal documents of appraisers in different areas.

- Setting: *Processing Archived Appraisal Documents*  
**Archived appraisal documents** refer to completed appraisal documents. This setting determines whether completed appraisal documents can be deleted in transaction PHAP\_CHANGE\_PA. If you want this to be possible, select *Delete* or *Reset and Delete*. However, if you do not want this to be possible, select *Do Not Reset or Delete*.  
To enable the user to delete completed appraisal documents in transaction PHAP\_CHANGE\_PA, he or she must have the relevant authorization in authorization object P\_HAP\_DOC (value *06 -Delete*).  
Regardless of this Customizing setting and the user's authorizations defined for this setting *06 -Delete*, the user can always delete completed appraisal documents in transaction PHAP\_ADMIN\_PA provided that he or she is permitted to use this transaction.

### 13.4.5.2.3.4.3 Tab: Roles (Infotype 5024)

The Roles tab defines which roles in the appraisal templates are to be used for part appraisals.

You can use roles to define the relationship between the part appraiser and appraisee in the appraisal process. You can edit roles explicitly in the SAP system or have a BAdI (HRHAPOO\_SELECTION) determine the roles from the enterprise's organizational structure.

You can use roles to restrict or control part appraisal authorizations at the level of individual elements. You make the relevant settings for individual elements in the Customizing settings for the *Roles* tab. If you do not use the role Colleague for a particular element in the appraisal template, this element cannot be appraised by the appraisee's colleague, for example.

This allows you to differentiate between the manager's part appraisal authorizations and the employee's part appraisal authorizations in relation to part appraisal columns in the same appraisal template.

#### ⚠ Caution

The roles to be used in the appraisal process must be selected at category and appraisal-template level.

#### 🔗 Example

Roles delivered in the standard system:

- Colleague  
The SAP system uses the organizational structure to identify this role. It interprets all employees located on the same hierarchical level of the organizational structure as colleagues.

#### ⚠ Caution

Organizational Management must be implemented.

- Manager  
The SAP system uses the organizational structure to identify this role. It interprets the employee with a managerial function who is located one level higher than the employee in the hierarchical structure as the manager.

#### ⚠ Caution

Organizational Management must be implemented.

- Self  
The SAP system identifies this role using the user and, if required user's personnel number (from the *Communication* infotype (0105)). The SAP system can only read the personnel number via the user.

#### ⚠ Caution

The *Communication* infotype (0105) must be available for people.

## 13.4.5.2.3.4.4 BSP-Specific Authorization Checks

For information about the authorizations for the BSP application, see SAP Note [616900](#).

## 13.4.5.2.3.4.5 BAdI for Authorization Checks

The BAdI HRHAP00\_AUTHORITY is delivered for extended authorization checks and it can be used as a customer-specific implementation.

## 13.4.5.2.4 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is extremely important in protecting your system. Your network needs to support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined network topology can eliminate many security threats based on software flaws (at both the operating system level and application level) or network attacks such as eavesdropping. If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, then there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the back-end system's database or files. Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server LAN (local area network), they cannot exploit well-known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

The network topology for Performance Management is based on the topology used by the SAP NetWeaver platform. Therefore, the security guidelines and recommendations described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to Performance Management. Details that specifically apply to Performance Management are described in the following topics:

- **Communication Channel Security**  
This topic describes the communication paths and protocols used by Performance Management.
- **Network Security**  
This topic describes the recommended network topology for Performance Management. It shows the appropriate network segments for the various client and server components and where to use firewalls for access protection. It also includes a list of the ports needed to operate Performance Management.

For more information, see the following sections of the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide:

- Network and Communication Security
- Security Aspects for Connectivity and Interoperability

### 13.4.5.2.4.1 Communication Channel Security

The table below shows the communication paths used by Performance Management, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
Front-end client with SAP GUI for Windows for the application server	DIAG	All application data	Passwords and personal data

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
Front-end client with a Web browser for the application server	HTTP, HTTPS	All application data	Passwords and personal data
Upload document	HTTP, HTTPS	XML document	Personal data
SAP Business Information Warehouse (SAP BW)	Extractor program	Performance Management data	

You can use Secure Network Communications (SNC) to protect DIAG and RFC connections. The Secure Sockets Layer protocol (SSL protocol) protects HTTP connections.

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

#### Printing

Performance Management provides the options for printing content. For information about security while printing, see the [SNC User's Guide](#).

## 13.4.5.2.4.2 Network Security

#### Ports

Performance Management runs on SAP NetWeaver and uses the ports from the AS ABAP. For more information, see the topic for AS ABAP Ports in the corresponding SAP NetWeaver Security Guides. For other components, for example, SAPinst, SAProuter, or the SAP Web Dispatcher, see <https://help.sap.com/viewer/ports>.

## 13.4.5.2.5 Internet Communication Framework Security

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For the Manager and Employee roles in Performance Management, all services with the prefix **HAP** in the path / default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/ are required.

- HAP\_CONFIGURATION - [Configuration](#)
- HAP\_DOCUMENT\_LINK - [Web Dynpro application hap\\_document\\_link](#)
- HAP\_MAIN\_DOCUMENT - [Appraisal Document](#)
- HAP\_QUALIFICATION\_PROFILE - [Application for Qualification Profile](#)

- HAP\_START\_PAGE\_POWL\_UI\_MSS - [Web Dynpro application HAP\\_START\\_PAGE\\_POWL\\_UI\\_MSS](#)
- HAP\_START\_PAGE\_POWL\_UI\_ESS - [Web Dynpro application HAP\\_START\\_PAGE\\_POWL\\_UI\\_ESS](#)

Use the transaction [Maintain Services](#) (SICF) to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information, see [Activating and Deactivating ICF Services](#) in the SAP NetWeaver documentation in SAP Library.

For more information about ICF security, see [RFC/ICF Security Guide](#).

## 13.4.5.2.6 Data Storage Security

HANA

The Performance Management data is saved to the databases of SAP Web Application Server (Web AS) or S/4HANA Component. You do not need to use any other databases in addition to these standard databases.

Performance Management stores the data in the following locations:

Data	Storage Location
Appraisal Templates	PD infotype tables
Cascaded goals	PD infotype tables
Data from appraisal documents	HRHAP* tables
Attachments	Knowledge Provider (KPro)
Download PDF	File system of client

## 13.4.5.2.7 Other Security-Relevant Information

### Access to attachments via Microsoft Internet Explorer

You use [Microsoft Internet Explorer](#) and want to display attachments in the browser. To do this, [Microsoft Internet Explorer](#) checks the content of the attachment to determine the file type and display the attachment correctly ([MIME Type Sniffing](#)). In the worst case, it is thus possible that damaging files of an undesired file type are displayed in the browser or cause damage in another way. To avoid this potential threat to security, deselect [MIME Type Sniffing](#) in the security settings of [Microsoft Internet Explorer](#).

## 13.4.5.2.8 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Performance Management uses logging and tracing mechanisms from SAP NetWeaver in the appraisal document. These mechanisms are described in detail under [Auditing and Logging](#).

You can specify the following in the appraisal template:

- Do you want data to be logged?
- The specificity of logging of access to appraisal documents
- The specificity of logging of changes to appraisal documents

Changes to appraisal templates are logged using change documents.

## 13.4.5.3 Talent Management and Talent Development

### About This Chapter

This chapter of the Security Guide provides an overview of the security-relevant information for [Talent Management and Talent Development](#) (PA-TM).

### Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

The following sections contain the security-relevant information that is specific to Talent Management and Talent Development:

- [Important SAP Notes](#)  
This section lists the most important SAP Notes with regard to the security of Talent Management.
- [Authorizations](#)  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept used for Talent Management.
- Network and communication security  
This section provides an overview of the following aspects:
  - [Communication Channel Security](#)
  - [Communication Destinations](#)
- [Internet Communication Framework Security](#)  
This section provides an overview of the services for the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) used by Talent Management.
- [Data Storage Security](#)  
This section provides an overview of the critical data used by Talent Management, as well as the security mechanisms used.
- [Security for Third-Party or Additional Applications](#)  
This section contains security information that applies to third-party or additional applications that are implemented together with Talent Management.
- [Other Security-Relevant Information](#)  
This section contains information on uploading and displaying attachments.

## 13.4.5.3.1 Authorizations

### Use

Talent Management uses the following authorization concepts:

- SAP NetWeaver authorization concept that is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles  
For this purpose, the roles mentioned under Standard Roles are available as a template. You can copy the standard roles to the customer namespace and adjust them to suit your requirements. You use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`) to maintain roles.
- HR-specific concept for the structural authorization check  
For this purpose, the authorization profiles mentioned under Standard Roles are available as a template. You can use the authorization profiles as an example for creating your own authorization profiles and then assign these profiles to the relevant users.  
For more information about the authorization profiles, see [Customizing for Talent Management and Talent Development](#) and choose [Basic Settings](#) > [Authorizations in Talent Management](#) > [Define Structural Authorizations](#) >  
For more information about the structural authorization check, see section [Structural Authorization Check](#) (see [SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA](#) and choose [Human Resources](#) > [HR Tools](#) > [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) >).

## Role and Authorization Concept for Talent Management

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles and structural authorization profiles that can be used for Talent Management.

Standard Roles and Structural Authorization Profiles

Role	Description	Structural Authorization Profile
SAP_SR_TMC_TMS_6	Authorizations for talent management specialists and talent management superusers (see <a href="#">Talent Management Specialist</a> under <a href="#">Single Roles in Talent Management</a> )	Talent Management Specialist: TMS_PROFILE  Talent Management Superuser: TMS_ALL
SAP_SR_TMC_MANAGER_6	Authorizations for managers with regard to Talent Management activities (see <a href="#">Manager in Talent Management</a> under <a href="#">Single Roles in Talent Management</a> )	TMS_MAN_PROF

Role	Description	Structural Authorization Profile
SAP_SR_TMC_EMPLOYEE_6	Authorizations for employees with regard to Talent Management activities (see <i>Employee in Talent Management</i> under <i>Single Roles in Talent Management</i> )	None

For the documentation for the standard roles, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA and choose ► [Human Resources](#) ► [Talent Management](#) ► [Talent Management and Talent Development](#) ► [Roles in Talent Management](#) ► [Single Roles in Talent Management](#) ▾.

The table below shows the roles that we recommend you no longer use.

#### Roles No Longer Recommended for Use

Role	Description	Note
SAP_TMC_TALENT_MANA_SPECIALIST	Authorizations for talent management specialists (see <i>Talent Management Specialist</i> under <i>Single Roles in Talent Management</i> )	This role is obsolete and was replaced by the role SAP_SR_TMC_TMS_6.
SAP_TMC_SUPER_TALENT_MANA_SPEC	Authorizations for talent management superusers (see <i>Talent Management Superuser</i> under <i>Obsolete Single Roles in Talent Management</i> )	This role is obsolete and was replaced by the role SAP_SR_TMC_TMS_6.
SAP_TMC_MANAGER	Authorizations for managers with regard to Talent Management activities (see <i>Manager in Talent Management</i> under <i>Single Roles in Talent Management</i> )	We recommend that you use the role SAP_SR_TMC_MANAGER_6 instead of this role.
SAP_TMC_EMPLOYEE	Authorizations for employees with regard to Talent Management activities (see <i>Single Roles in Talent Management</i> )	This role is obsolete and was replaced by the role SAP_SR_TMC_EMPLOYEE_6.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by Talent Management.

#### Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Description	More Information
B_BUPA_RLT	Authorizations for business partner roles	Security Guide for SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP under SAP Business Partner Security



Authorization Object	Description	More Information
CA_POWL	Authorizations for the personal object worklist (POWL)	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">▶ Cross-Application Functions in SAP ERP ▶ Cross-Application Components ▶ Personal Worklist ▶</a> in the section <a href="#">Assign Authorizations (Standard POWL)</a>
S_RFC	Authorization check upon RFC access	SAP NetWeaver Security Guide for Remote Function Call (RFC) and Internet Communication Framework (ICF) under Authorization Object S_RFC
S_WFAR_OBJ	ArchiveLink: Authorizations for accessing documents	SAP NetWeaver Library under <a href="#">▶ SAP NetWeaver by Key Capability ▶ Application Platform by Key Capability ▶ ArchiveLink ▶</a> in the section Authorizations
PLOG	Authorization object that checks the authorization for certain fields of Personnel Planning components (Organizational Management, Personnel Development, Training and Event Management, and so on)	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">PLOG (Personnel Planning)</a>
P_HAP_DOC	Authorization object that controls a user's access to appraisal templates	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">P_HAP_DOC (Appraisal Systems: Appraisal)</a>
P_ORGIN	Authorization object used to check the authorization for accessing HR info-types	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">P_ORGIN (HR: Master Data)</a>
P_TCODE	Authorization object used to check whether a user is authorized to start various HR transactions	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">P_TCODE (HR: Transaction Code)</a>
P_PERNR	Authorization object used if different authorizations are to be assigned for accessing a user's personnel number	SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA under <a href="#">P_PERNR (HR: Master Data - Personnel Number Check)</a>

For the documentation for the authorization objects PLOG, P\_HAP\_DOC, P\_ORGIN, P\_TCODE, and P\_PERNR, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA and choose [▶ Human Resources ▶ HR Tools ▶ Authorizations for Human Resources ▶ Technical Aspects ▶ Authorization Objects ▶](#).

### Critical Combinations

- Talent Review Meetings

- All users that have access to the personal object worklist (POWL) for talent review meetings may create talent review meetings.

### Note

In the standard SAP system, the POWL for talent review meetings is contained in the roles for talent management specialists for SAP Enterprise Portal and SAP Business Client.

- Users have display and change authorization for all talent review meetings to which they are assigned as members of the support team. The POWL for talent review meetings provides users with a list of talent review meetings, which they can display and edit.

### Caution

All members of the support team for a talent review meeting have unrestricted access to all information available within this talent review meeting (for example, to all assigned managers and talents, and their profiles). When this information is accessed, there is no additional authorization check within the talent review meeting.

- Those users that have display or change authorization for the related infotype record of the *Object* infotype (1000) also have display or change authorization for a talent review meeting. The infotype record is identified by the *RM* (*Talent Review Meeting*) object type and the ID of the talent review meeting. Users that have display authorization for this infotype record can call the talent review meeting in display mode. Users with change authorization for this infotype record can call the talent review meeting in change mode.

### Talent Search

- To be able to use the search, a user must be a talent management specialist with an assigned area of responsibility. This means that there must be a relationship 741 (*Is Responsible For/Is in Area of Responsibility Of*) between the user's central person (object type *CP*) and at least one organizational unit (object type *O*).
- In Customizing, for the search fields that you want to use as search criteria, enter the infotype and the object type, if required, to define which authorization object is used for the authorization check. These settings specify whether this field is available to a user for selection in the search template and in the search results.

### Example

The user wants to use the talent group as a search criterion and search for all talents that are assigned to a particular talent group. Therefore, the system checks whether the user has display authorization for relationship 743 (*Has Talent For/Comprises Talent*) between the object types *CP* (*Central Person*) and *TB* (*Talent Group*). To do so, it checks the authorization for the corresponding subtype of the infotype *Relationships* (1001).

For more information, see Customizing for Talent Management and Talent Development and choose **Basic Settings > Search > Define Search Requests and Search Field Names**.

- In the search results, the system displays only the objects for which the user has authorization through the authorization object *PLOG* as well as the corresponding structural authorization. For the object type *CP*, the system also checks whether the user has display authorization for the infotype *Organizational Assignment* (0001).

## i Note

If more than one person (object type **P**) is assigned to a central person (**CP**) (for example, employees in concurrent employment), it is sufficient for the talent search if the user has display authorization for one of these persons.

### Additional Functions

You can deactivate specific authorization checks that are performed in the standard SAP system when assigning employees (object type **CP** (*Central Person*)) to positions, job families, and talent groups. In the standard SAP system, when such relationships are created, the system checks whether the user (in this case, the talent management specialist) has the following authorizations:

- For assigning employees to positions:  
Authorizations for
  - Employee (object type **CP**)
  - Position (object type **S**)
  - Relationship 740 (*Is Successor Of*)
- For assigning employees to job families:  
Authorizations for
  - Employee (object type **CP**)
  - Job family (object type **JF**)
  - Relationship 744 (*Has Potential For*)
- For assigning employees to talent groups:  
Authorizations for
  - Employee (object type **CP**)
  - Talent group (object type **TB**)
  - Relationship 743 (*Has Talent For*)

So that a talent management specialist is also able to create these relationships for employees (object type **CP**) for which he or she does **not** usually have change authorization (because of his or her structural authorization profile), the authorization check can be deactivated for employees for the respective employee assignment. The talent management specialist then only needs the change authorization for the object (of the object type *Position*, *Job Family*, or *Talent Group*) to which he or she wants to assign the employee, and for the relationship.

For more information, see Customizing for Talent Management and Talent Development and choose ► [Basic Settings](#) ► [Authorizations in Talent Management](#) ► [Deactivate Authorization Check When Assigning Employees](#) ►.

## 13.4.5.3.2 Communication Channel Security

The table below shows the communication paths used by Talent Management, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
Front-end client with SAP GUI for Windows for the application server	DIAG	Customizing data	Passwords
Front-end client with a Web browser for the application server	HTTP(S)	Application data	Passwords, personal data
Front-end client with an SAP Business Client for the application server	HTTP(S)	Application data	Passwords, personal data
Connection of PDF-based print forms to the archive	HTTP(S)	Person-related data (such as an employee's photo)	
SAP Business Information Warehouse (SAP BW)	Extractor program	HR master data, organizational data, Talent Management data	

You can use Secure Network Communications (SNC) to protect DIAG and RFC connections. The Secure Sockets Layer protocol (SSL protocol) protects HTTP connections.

#### → Recommendation

We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

#### i Note

If you convert the protocol from HTTP to HTTPS and implement PDF-based print forms, see SAP Note [1461447](#).

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

### 13.4.5.3.3 Communication Destinations

The table below shows an overview of the communication destinations used by Talent Management.

## Communication Destinations

Destination	Delivered	Type	Users, Authorizations	Description
Access to external applications for Talent Management	Yes	RFCs of the function group HRTMC_SERVICES	The following roles require authorization for the authorization object S_RFC to have access to external applications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SAP_TMC_TALENT_MANA_SPECIALIST</li><li>• SAP_TMC_SUPER_TALENT_MANA_SPEC</li><li>• SAP_TMC_MANAGER</li></ul>	The function group HRTMC_SERVICES contains the Remote Function Calls for external applications that can be used for Succession Planning, for example:
Transfer of talent groups and successor assignments from SAP E-Recruiting to Talent Management	Yes	RFCs of the function group HRSCP_MIGRATION	To run the report RPTMC_MIGRATE_SESSIONS or RPTMC_MIGRATE_TALENT_GROUPS, a user requires authorization for the authorization object S_RFC.	The function group HRSCP_MIGRATION contains the Remote Function Calls for transferring talent groups and successor assignments from SAP E-Recruiting to Talent Management.
Transfer of entries from the candidate profile in SAP E-Recruiting to the talent profile in Talent Management	Yes	RFCs of the function group HRSCP_TP_SYNC	To run the report HRSCP_TP_SYNC_GET_EDU_WE_INFO, a user requires authorization for the authorization object S_RFC.	The function group HRSCP_TP_SYNC contains the Remote Function Calls for synchronizing the talent profile in Talent Management with the candidate profile in SAP E-Recruiting
Jump from queries in SAP Business Information Warehouse (SAP BW) to the talent profile	Yes	RFC for transferring the MEM_ID from the BW system to the S/4HANA system	The user requires authorization for the authorization object S_RFC.	

The table below shows the function modules that the reports use to transfer data to Talent Management:

Function Modules for Transferring Data to Talent Management

Function Group	Function Module	Used by Report
HRSCP_MIGRATION	HRSCP_MIG_SCP_GET_ALL	<i>Transfer Successor Assignments to Talent Management</i> (RPTMC_MIGRATE_SUCCESIONS)
HRSCP_MIGRATION	HRSCP_MIG_TG_GET_ALL	<i>Transfer Talent Groups from E-Recruiting to Talent Management</i> (RPTMC_MIGRATE_TALENT_GROUPS)
HRSCP_MIGRATION	HRSCP_MIG_TG_GET_DETAILS	<i>Transfer Talent Groups from E-Recruiting to Talent Management</i> (RPTMC_MIGRATE_TALENT_GROUPS)
HRSCP_MIGRATION	HRSCP_MIG_TG_GET_TALENTS	<i>Transfer Talent Groups from E-Recruiting to Talent Management</i> (RPTMC_MIGRATE_TALENT_GROUPS)
HRSCP_TP_SYNC	HRSCP_TP_SYNC_GET_EDU_WE_INFO	<i>Synchronization of Talent Profile with Candidate Profile</i> (RPTMC_TP_SYNC_EDU_WE_RCF)

### 13.4.5.3.4 Internet Communication Framework Security

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For Talent Management the following services are needed:

- Talent Management Specialist
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_EMPLOYEE\_PROFILE
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_LONG\_PROFILE
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_rm\_maintenance
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_rm\_presentation
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_search
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_side\_by\_side
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_talent\_group
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_TA\_DEV\_PLAN
- Manager
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_EMPLOYEE\_PROFILE
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_LONG\_PROFILE
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_side\_by\_side
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_talent\_group
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_TA\_ASSESSMENT
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_TA\_DASHBOARD

- default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_TA\_DEV\_PLAN
- default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/hrtmc\_teamviewer
- Employee
  - default\_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/HRTMC\_EMPLOYEE\_PROFILE

Use the transaction `SICF` to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly. For more information, see [Activating and Deactivating ICF Services](#).

For more information about Internet Communication Framework security, see [RFC/ICF Security Guide](#).

### 13.4.5.3.5 Data Storage Security

#### Data Storage

The Talent Management data is stored in the SAP NetWeaver Application Server or SAP S/4HANA databases. You do not need to use any other databases in addition to these standard databases.

Talent Management stores the data in the following locations:

Data and Storage Locations

Data	Storage Location
Master data, talent assessments	HR infotype tables
Attachments, comments, calibration grid icon	Knowledge Provider (KPro)
Business partner master data	Business partner database
Employee photo	ArchiveLink

#### Cookies

The application uses a Web browser. SAP NetWeaver Application Server must set and accept cookies.

### 13.4.5.3.6 Security for Additional Applications

You can implement Talent Management together with the product [SAP Talent Visualization by Nakisa](#). [SAP Talent Visualization by Nakisa](#) provides users with a graphical and organization-oriented view of Succession Planning and the job architecture.

#### i Note

Note that you need to purchase your own license for using the product [SAP Talent Visualization by Nakisa](#).

If you implement *SAP Talent Visualization by Nakisa*, the roles for the talent management specialist, the talent management superuser, and the manager need the authorization for the authorization object S\_RFC to be able to access applications that call the HR\_TMC\_SERVICES function group. This function group comprises the Remote Function Calls (RFCs) for external applications such as *SAP Talent Visualization by Nakisa*. This authorization is contained in the standard Talent Management roles. For more information about the standard roles, see section *Authorizations* under *Talent Management and Talent Development*.

For information about the security of *SAP Talent Visualization by Nakisa*, see the documentation for this product.

## 13.4.5.3.7 Other Security-Relevant Information

### Uploading and Displaying Attachments

#### Uploading Attachments

Talent Management uses the virus scan interface of SAP NetWeaver. You can use this interface to include external virus scanners to increase the security of your system.

For Talent Management, the virus scan profile /HCM\_TMC/DOCUMENT\_UPLOAD is available for checking that files or documents uploaded as attachments do not contain any viruses. This virus scan profile is **not** active in the standard SAP system. To activate the virus scan profile, in Customizing for Talent Management and Talent Development, make the settings under ► *Basic Settings* ► *Attachments* ► *Define Virus Scan Profiles* ►. In Customizing for SAP NetWeaver under ► *Application Server* ► *System Administration* ► *Virus Scan Interface* ►, you need to first set up the virus scan interface.

For more information about the virus scan interface, see SAP NetWeaver Library and choose ► *SAP NetWeaver by Key Capability* ► *Security* ► *System Security* ►, and the Virus Scan Interface section.

You can also limit the size of files that are uploaded as attachments. To do so, in Customizing for Talent Management and Talent Development, make the settings under ► *Basic Settings* ► *Attachments* ► *Assign Storage Locations and Maximum File Size* ►.

#### Displaying Attachments Using Microsoft Internet Explorer

If you display attachments in a browser and use Microsoft Internet Explorer for this, Microsoft Internet Explorer checks the content of the attachment to determine the file type and display the attachment correctly based on the type (*MIME Type Sniffing*). In the worst case, it is thus possible that damaging files of an undesired file type are displayed in the browser or cause damage in another way. To avoid this potential threat to security, deselect *MIME Type Sniffing* in the security settings of Microsoft Internet Explorer.



## 13.4.5.4 Enterprise Compensation Management

### About This Chapter

This chapter of the Security Guide provides an overview of the security-relevant information for the *Enterprise Compensation Management* (PA-EC) application component.

### Overview of the Main Sections of This Chapter

The following sections contain the security-relevant information that is specific to “Enterprise Compensation Management”:

- *Important SAP Notes*  
This section lists the most important SAP Notes with regard to the security of Enterprise Compensation Management.
- *Security Aspects for Data, Data Flow, and Processes*  
This section provides an overview of the security aspects of the most frequently used processes in Enterprise Compensation Management.
- *Authorizations*  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept used for Enterprise Compensation Management.
- *Communication Channel Security*  
This section describes the communication paths and logs that Enterprise Compensation Management uses.
- *Internet Communication Framework Security*  
This section provides an overview of the services for the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) used by Enterprise Compensation Management.
- *Data Storage Security*  
This section provides an overview of all critical data used by Enterprise Compensation Management, as well as the security mechanisms used.
- *Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing*  
This section provides an overview of the trace and log files that contain security-relevant information and that enable you to reproduce activities, for example, if there is a security violation.

### 13.4.5.4.1 Security Aspects for Data, Data Flow, and Processes

Enterprise Compensation Management uses applications based on the following technology:

#### Role: Manager

- Web Dynpro for ABAP in the applications in Manager Self-Service
- Interactive forms based on Adobe software (Interactive forms) in the Total Compensation Statement and *Compensation Review Statement* applications.  
For more information, see the guide for *SAP Interactive Forms by Adobe* under *SAP Interactive Forms by Adobe Security Guide*.

For more information about the Manager role, see the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide and choose the following path: ► [Self-Services](#) ► [Manager Self-Service](#) ►.

#### Role: Employee

- Web Dynpro for ABAP in the applications in Employee Self-Service
- Interactive forms based on Adobe software (Interactive forms) in the *Total Compensation Statement* application.  
For more information, see the guide for *SAP Interactive Forms by Adobe* under *SAP Interactive Forms by Adobe Security Guide*.

For more information about the Employee role, see the SAP S/4HANA Security Guide and choose the following path: ► [Self-Services](#) ► [Employee Self-Service](#) ►.

#### Role: Administrator

- SAP Graphical User Interface (SAP GUI) in Customizing for Enterprise Compensation Management and administrative reports.
- Business Server Page (BSP) in the *Top-Down Budgeting* functions

During compensation planning, Enterprise Compensation Management sends e-mails via workflow. For information about workflow and sending e-mails, see Customizing for *Enterprise Compensation Management* and choose ► [Compensation Administration](#) ► [Workflow Settings](#) ►.

For more information about the settings, see Customizing for *Enterprise Compensation Management*.

## 13.4.5.4.2 Authorizations

### Use

Enterprise Compensation Management uses the following authorization concepts:

- SAP NetWeaver authorization concept that is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles  
For this, the roles mentioned under "Standard Roles" are available as a template. You can copy the standard roles to the customer namespace and adjust them to suit your requirements. For role maintenance you use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`).
- HR-specific concept for the general and structural authorization check  
For more information about the authorization checks, see *General Authorization Check* and *Structural Authorization Check* (see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA and choose ► [Human Resources](#) ► [HR Tools](#) ► [Authorizations for Human Resources](#) ►).

## Roles and Authorization Concept for Enterprise Compensation Management

### Standard Roles

Enterprise Compensation Management does not provide its own standard roles. It uses roles from Manager Self-Service and Employee Self-Service.

For more information, see the following:

- [Authorizations](#) in Manager Self-Service.
- [Authorizations](#) in Employee Self-Service.

### Standard Authorization Objects

Enterprise Compensation Management uses the same standard authorization objects as all of Human Resources. For more information about the standard authorization objects in Human Resources, see [Authorizations](#). To do this, choose ► [SAP S/4HANA Security Guide for Human Resources](#) ► [Authorizations](#) ►.

## 13.4.5.4.3 Communication Channel Security

The following table shows the communication paths that Enterprise Compensation Management uses, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Paths	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Particular Protection
Front-end client that uses SAP GUI for Windows as the application server	DIAG	All Customizing data	Passwords
Front-end client that uses a Web browser as the application server	HTTP, HTTPS	All application data	Passwords, personal data
SAP Business Information Warehouse (SAP BW)	Extractor program	HR master data, organizational data, Enterprise Compensation Management data	

**i Note**  
We generally recommend using HTTPS

You can use Secure Network Communications (SNC) to protect DIAG and RFC connections. The Secure Sockets Layer protocol (SSL protocol) protects HTTP connections.

**→ Recommendation**  
We strongly recommend that you use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) where possible.

For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under Transport Layer Security.

### Printing

Enterprise Compensation Management provides a number of options for printing content. For information about security while printing, see the [SNC User's Guide](#).

## 13.4.5.4.4 Internet Communication Framework Security

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For the Manager role in Enterprise Compensation Management, all services with the prefix **HCM\_ECM** in the path `/default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/` are required.

- HCM\_ECM\_PLANNING\_OVERVIEW\_OIF - *Compensation Planning Overview*
- HCM\_ECM\_PLANNING\_UI\_GAF - *Planning User Interface*
- HCM\_ECM\_PROFILE\_OIF - *Compensation Profile*
- HCM\_ECM\_SIDE BYSIDE\_OIF - *Side-by-Side Comparison*
- HCM\_ECM\_TEAMVIEWER\_OIF - *Compensation Profile Team Overview*

The Administrator role, the services with the prefix **HRECM\_BDG** in the path `/default_host/sap/bc/bsp` are only required if you use top-down budgeting for compensation planning.

- HRECM\_BDG\_CHKRL - *Check and Release Budget*
- HRECM\_BDG\_MAINT - *Budget Maintenance*
- HRECM\_BDG\_RA\_VL - *Reassign Budget Value*
- HRECM\_BDG\_SRV - *Budgeting Services*
- HRECM\_BSG\_SRV02 - *Budget Structure Services*
- HRECM\_BDG\_START - *Overview*

Use the transaction *Maintain Services* (SICF) to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information, see *Activating and Deactivating ICF Services* in the SAP NetWeaver documentation in SAP Library.

For more information about ICF security, see RFC/ICF Security Guide.

## 13.4.5.4.5 Data Storage Security

All data for Enterprise Compensation Management is stored in the database of the SAP system. The data is stored in the *Personnel Administration* (PA) and *Budget Management*(PA-PM) application components as well as in the database tables that govern the processes of Enterprise Compensation Management.

The applications in Enterprise Compensation Management store sensitive, personal data for compensation planning. The data saved when managing the processes of Enterprise Compensation Management can be deleted after the compensation review using the report *Delete Compensation Planning History Data* (RHECM\_DELETE\_HISTORY\_DATA).

For information about data storage security, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide at <https://help.sap.com/nw> > Release/Language > SAP NetWeaver Library > Administrator's Guide > SAP NetWeaver Security Guide > Security Guides for the Operating System and Database Platforms > .

## 13.4.5.4.6 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Enterprise Compensation Management uses logging and tracing mechanisms from SAP NetWeaver. These mechanisms are described in detail under [Auditing and Logging](#).

Changes to data in Enterprise Compensation Management that are made within the applications of Enterprise Compensation Management are logged by the SAP system. The data can be checked with the following reports:

- [Display Compensation Planning Changes](#) (RHECM\_DISPLAY\_CHANGES)
- [Display Compensation Planning Progress](#) (RHECM\_DISPLAY\_PROGRESS)

## 13.4.6 Time and Attendance Management

### 13.4.6.1 Personnel Time Management (PT)

#### Introduction

##### i Note

This guide does not replace the administration or operation guides that are available for productive operations.

#### Target Audience

- Technology consultants
- System administrators

This document is not included as part of the installation guides, configuration guides, technical operation manuals, or upgrade guides. Such guides are only relevant for a certain phase of the software lifecycle, whereas the security guides provide information that is relevant for all lifecycle phases.

#### Why Is Security Necessary?

With the increasing use of distributed systems and the Internet for managing business data, the demands on security are also on the rise. When using a distributed system, you need to be sure that your data and processes support your business needs without allowing unauthorized access to critical information. User errors, negligence, or attempted manipulation of your system should not result in loss of information or

processing time. These demands on security apply likewise to the SAP Personnel Time Management. To assist you in securing the SAP Personnel Time Management, we provide this security guide.

## About this Document

This security guide provides an overview of the security-relevant information that applies to the SAP Personnel Time Management.

### Overview of the Main Sections

The security guide comprises the following main sections:

- **Before You Start**  
This section contains information about why security is necessary, how to use this document, and references to other security guides that build the foundation for this security guide.
- **Technical System Landscape**  
This section provides an overview of the technical components and communication paths that are used by the SAP Personnel Time Management.
- **Security Aspects of Data, Data Flow, and Processes**  
This section provides an overview of security aspects involved throughout the most widely used processes within the SAP Personnel Time Management.
- **Authorizations**  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept that applies to the SAP Personnel Time Management.
- **Session Security Protection**  
This section provides information about activating secure session management, which prevents JavaScript or plug-ins from accessing the SAP logon ticket or security session cookie(s).
- **Network and Communication Security**  
This section provides an overview of the communication paths used by the SAP Personnel Time Management and the security mechanisms that apply. It also includes our recommendations for the network topology to restrict access at the network level.
- **Internet Communication Framework Security**  
This section provides an overview of the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) services that are used by the SAP Personnel Time Management.
- **Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing**  
This section provides an overview of the trace and log files that contain security-relevant information, for example, so you can reproduce activities if a security breach does occur.

## 13.4.6.1.1 Important SAP Notes

The SAP Personnel Time Management is built using the HR backend system, CRM backend system and SAP NetWeaver components. Therefore, the corresponding security guides also apply to the SAP Personnel Time Management.

## Important SAP Notes

The most important SAP Notes that apply to the security of the SAP Personnel Time Management are shown in the table below.

Title	SAP Note
Authorization objects of shift planning	<a href="#">496993</a>
Transaction authorization PA61 for shift planning	<a href="#">500844</a>
Setting up the HR-PDC interface	<a href="#">647145</a>

For a list of additional security-relevant SAP News and SAP Notes, see <https://support.sap.com/securitynotes>.

## Additional Information

For more information about specific topics, see the Quick Links as shown in the table below.

Content	Quick Link
Security	<a href="https://www.sap.com/community/topic/security.html">https://www.sap.com/community/topic/security.html</a>
Related SAP Notes	<a href="https://support.sap.com/notes">https://support.sap.com/notes</a> <a href="https://support.sap.com/securitynotes">https://support.sap.com/securitynotes</a>
Released platforms	<a href="https://support.sap.com/pam">https://support.sap.com/pam</a>
SAP Solution Manager	<a href="https://support.sap.com/solutionmanager">https://support.sap.com/solutionmanager</a>
SAP NetWeaver	<a href="https://www.sap.com/community/topic/netweaver.html">https://www.sap.com/community/topic/netweaver.html</a>

### 13.4.6.1.2 User Management

#### Use

User management in SAP Personnel Time Management uses the mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP, for example, tools, user types, and password policies. For an overview of how these mechanisms apply for SAP Personnel Time Management, see the sections below. In addition, we provide a list of the standard users required for operating the SAP Personnel Time Management.

## User Administration Tools

The table below shows the tools to use for user management and user administration with SAP Personnel Time Management.

### User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Prerequisites
User and role maintenance with SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP (Transactions SU01, PFCG)	For more information, see <i>User and Role Administration of AS ABAP</i> .	

## User Types

It is necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively must change their passwords on a regular basis, but not users who run background processing jobs.

The specific user types that are required for the SAP Personnel Time Management include:

Technical users

- To upload time events from the external time recording system you use the RPTCC106 report ([HR-PDC: Download Upload Request for Time Events](#)). You normally schedule the report as a background processing job. For this you require a technical user. The authorizations of the technical user should be based on the authorizations for the PT80 transaction ([Subsystem Connection](#)). Time events are uploaded from the subsystem by an IDOC, which stores the time events in the CC1TEV interface table. For the upload, you need a technical user with authorizations for communication with an SAP system using Application Link Enabling (ALE) and the relevant table authorizations. The technical user does not require authorizations specific to the SAP HR solution. You need a technical user with authorizations for the PT45 transaction ([HR-PDC: Post Person Time Events](#)) for the background processing job that transfers the time events from the interface table to the relevant Time Management tables.
- You need two types of technical users for BAPIs that store data in one of the following interface tables:
  - PTEXDIR
  - PTEX2000
  - PTEX2003
  - PTEX2010

To fill the interface tables, you need a user with authorizations for ALE communication with an SAP system and the relevant table authorizations. For the subsequent background processing job to transfer data from the interface tables to the infotype database tables, you need a technical user with the same authorizations that are required for the CAT6 transaction ([Transfer Time Data to Time Management](#)).

- For technical users that have read access to the infotypes for the BAPIs, you can use the same authorizations as contained in the SAP\_HR\_PT\_TIMEADMINISTRATOR role.



## 13.4.6.1.3 Authorizations

### Use

The SAP Personnel Time Management component uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to SAP Personnel Time Management.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the ABAP.

For more information about how to create roles, see *Role Administration* under *Role and Authorization Concept for SAP Personnel Time Management*.

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by the SAP Personnel Time Management.

Role	Description
SAP_HR_PT_SHIFT-PLANNER	Shift Planner
SAP_HR_PT_TIME-ADMINISTRATOR	Time Administrator
SAP_HR_PT_TIME-LABOR-ANALYST	Time and Labor Analyst
SAP_HR_PT_TIME-MGMT-SPECIALIST	Time Management Specialist
SAP_HR_PT_TIME-SUPERVISOR	Time Supervisor
SAP_ESSUSER_ERP05	Employee Self-Service
SAP_HR_PT_US_PS_TIME-ADM	Time Recording Administrator  This role is used only in the Public Sector in the country version for the USA

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by SAP Personnel Time Management.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_PERNR	AUTHC	E, R	Used to assign different authorizations to users for accessing their own personnel number. P_PERNR is relevant for Self-Service Scenarios (Role SAP_EMPLOYEE)

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_PERNR	INFTY	0000, 0001, 0002, 0007, 0416, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013	Infotypes required
P_ORGIN	AUTHC	E, R	Used during the authorization check for HR infotypes.
P_ORGIN	INFTY	0000, 0001, 0002, 0007, 0416, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013	Infotypes required
P_PCLX	AUTHC	W, R	Relevant for both Time Evaluation and Time Recording.
P_PCLX	RELID	B1, B2, L1, G1, PC	Clusters required

## 13.4.6.1.4 Data Storage Security

### Archiving Objects and Reports

The following tools and reports are available for archiving data:

- Archiving Object: `PA_TIME` (Time Evaluation Results from Cluster B2)
- Data Writing Report: `RPAR5W00`
- Data Deletion Report: `RPAR5D00`

Archiving is done using transactions `PU22` and `SARA` respectively.

### Data Deletion Reports

The following tools and reports are available for deleting data:

`RPTXTPT`: Using the `DELETE` option deletes the data already transferred (stored in PA-tables) from the following interface tables:

- `PTEX2000`
- `PTEX2010`
- `PTEX2003GEN`
- `PTEX2003SPEC`

`RPWI4100`: Reorganizes interface table `LSHR` (Integration to Logistics).

## Using Logical Paths and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Personnel Time Management saves data in files in the local file system. Therefore, it is important to assign explicit access to the corresponding files in the file system without access to other directories or files (also called directory traversal). This is achieved by entering logical paths and file names in the system that are assigned to the physical paths and file names. This assignment is validated at runtime. If access to a directory is requested that does not correspond to a stored assignment, an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths that are used by Personnel Time Management, and the reports for which these file names and paths are valid. The logical file names and logical file paths were created using transaction `FILE` to facilitate the validation of physical file names.

Logical File Names and Path Names Used in Personnel Time Management

Logical File Name	Reports That Use These Logical File Names	Logical File Path
HR_XX_DIR_RPTEDO00	RPTEDO00	HR_XX_DIR_RPTEDO00
HR_XX_DIR_RPTEUP00	RPTEUP00	HR_XX_DIR_RPTEUP00
HR_XX_DIR_RPTEUP10	RPTEUP10	HR_XX_DIR_RPTEUP10
HR_XX_DIR_RPTEZL00	RPTEZL00	HR_XX_DIR_RPTEZL00
HR_XX_DIR_RPTX2010	RPTX2010	HR_XX_DIR_RPTX2010
HR_XX_DIR_RPWI0000	RPWI0000	HR_XX_DIR_RPWI0000

### 13.4.6.2 Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS)

#### 13.4.6.2.1 User Administration and Authentication

The Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) uses the user management and authentication mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver platform, in particular the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP also apply to the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS). In addition to these guidelines, we include information about user administration and authentication that specifically applies to the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) in the following topics:

- **User Management**  
This topic lists the tools to use for user management, the types of users required, and the standard users that are delivered with the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).
- **Integration into Single Sign-On Environments**  
This topic describes how the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) supports Single Sign-On mechanisms.

## 13.4.6.2.1.1 User Management

User management for the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) uses the mechanisms provided with the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP, for example, tools, user types, and password policies. For an overview of how these mechanisms apply for the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS), see the sections below.

### User Administration Tools

The table below shows the tools to use for user management and user administration with the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

User Management Tools

Tool	Detailed Description	Prerequisites
User and Role Maintenance (transaction PFCG)	You can use the Role Maintenance transaction PFCG to generate profiles for the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) users.  For more information, see <a href="#">User and Role Administration of AS ABAP</a> .	
Technical Settings for User Management in Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS)	For more information on user profiles and the roles, see Customizing for <a href="#">Time Sheet</a> under <a href="#">Settings for All User Interfaces &gt; Authorizations</a> .	

### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users under which background processing jobs run.

The user types that are required for the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) include:

- Individual users:
  - Dialog users are used to maintain, release, and approve working times. They are used for SAPGUI and WD ABAP Frontends
- Technical users:
  - System User: Background processing and communication within a system (such as RFC users for ALE, Workflow). They are used for transferring data to target components, to check data remotely, and to process workflow items.
  - Communication users are used for scenarios in which CATS BAPIs are called from external systems.

For more information on these user types, see [User Types](#) under [User Authentication](#) in the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP Security Guide.

## Standard Users

We do not deliver standard users within Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

### 13.4.6.2.1.2 Integration into Single Sign-On Environments

The most widely-used supported mechanisms are listed below. For a complete list, see the link provided below.

- **Secure Network Communications (SNC)**  
SNC is available for user authentication and provides for a single sign-on (SSO) environment when using the SAP GUI for Windows or Remote Function Calls.
- **SAP logon tickets**  
Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) supports the use of logon tickets for SSO when using a Web browser as the frontend client. In this case, users can be issued a logon ticket after they have authenticated themselves with the initial SAP system. The ticket can then be submitted to other systems (SAP or external systems) as an authentication token. The user does not need to enter a user ID or password for authentication but can access the system directly after the system has checked the logon ticket.
- **Client certificates**  
As an alternative to user authentication using a user ID and passwords, users using a Web browser as a frontend client can also provide X.509 client certificates to use for authentication. In this case, user authentication is performed on the Web server using the Secure Sockets Layer Protocol (SSL Protocol) and no passwords have to be transferred. User authorizations are valid in accordance with the authorization concept in the SAP system.
- **Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) 2.0**  
SAML 2.0 provides a standards-based mechanism for SSO. The primary reason to use SAML 2.0 is to enable SSO across domains.

The Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) supports the Single Sign-On (SSO) mechanisms provided by SAP NetWeaver. Therefore, the security recommendations and guidelines for user administration and authentication as described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

For more information about the available authentication mechanisms, see user Authentication and Single Sign-On in the SAP NetWeaver Library.

### 13.4.6.2.2 Authorizations

#### Use

The Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP and AS Java. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP and SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide Java also apply to the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP and the User Management Engine's user administration console on the AS Java.

### **i Note**

For more information about how to create roles, see section *Role Administration* under the SAP Library for *SAP S/4 HANA Identity Management*.

The following section shows the typical scenarios, the relevant roles and the authorization objects that Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) uses. These are:

Enter Working Times in Time Sheet

Approve Working Times

Transfer Working Times to Target Components

### **Role and Authorization Concept for Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS)**

Enter Working Times

#### **Standard Roles**

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

<b>Role</b>	<b>Description</b>
SAP_HR_PT_TIME-ADMINISTRATOR	Time Administrator: The Time Administrator role is performed by employees in the individual departments of a company, such as secretaries and foremen. Their duties include entering employees' documents in the system and reacting to messages from time evaluation.
SAP_EMPLOYEE_WDA_1 (This includes single role SAP_EMPLOYEE_XX_ESS_WDA_1 containing authorizations for CATS)	Employee Self-Service (WD ABAP): You need this role if you want to enable all your company's employees to record their working times.

#### **Standard Authorization Objects**

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

<b>Authorization Object</b>	<b>Field</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
P_PERNR	AUTHC	E, R	Used to assign users different authorizations for accessing their own personnel number. P_PERNR is relevant for Self Service Scenarios (Role SAP_EMPLOYEE)

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_PERNR	INFTY	0000, 0001, 0002, 0007, 0315, 0316, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2010	Needed infotypes
P_ORGIN	AUTHC	E, R	Used during the authorization check for HR infotypes. P_ORGIN is relevant for Administrator Scenarios (Role AP_HR_PT_TIME-ADMINISTRATOR, SAP_ISR_RETAIL_STORE)
P_ORGIN	INFTY	0000, 0001, 0002, 0007, 0315, 0316, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2010	Needed infotypes
P_PCLX	AUTHC	R	Relevant for both Self Service and Administrator Scenarios, used when attendance/absence types are recorded and to display target hours.
P_PCLX	RELID	B2, PC	Needed clusters

## Approve Working Times

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

Role	Description
SAP_HR_PT_TIME-SUPERVISOR	<p>The <i>Time Supervisor</i> role is performed by executive employees in the individual departments of a company, such as those with personnel responsibility, department heads, project managers, or foremen.</p> <p>The Time Supervisor plans and approves leave and alterations to working times. He or she orders overtime as required, and regularly monitors the amount of overtime worked in the department. He or she checks and approves employees' activity reports, and monitors absence times.</p>

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_ORGIN	AUTHC	D, R	<a href="http://help.sap.com/erp2005_ehp_02/helpdata/en/35/26b181afab52b9e10000009b38f974/content.htm">http://help.sap.com/erp2005_ehp_02/helpdata/en/35/26b181afab52b9e10000009b38f974/content.htm</a> Authorizationobject that is used during the authorization check for HR infotypes.
P_ORGIN	INFTY	0328, 2001, 2002	Needed infotypes

## Transfer Working Times to Target Components

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

Role	Description
SAP_HR_PT_TIME-MGMT-SPECIALIST	The time management specialist is responsible for the smooth operation of the time management system. He or she is familiar with the technical side of the SAP System. The time management activities for this role include controlling the transfer of data to other SAP applications, such as the transfer of data from the <i>SAP Cross-Application Time Sheet</i> .

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_ORGIN	No proposal	No proposal	
P_PERNR	No proposal	No proposal	
PCLX	No proposal	No proposal	



### 13.4.6.2.3 Session Security Protection

To prevent access in javascript or plug-ins to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookie(s), we recommend activating secure session management.

We also highly recommend using SSL to protect the network communications where these security-relevant cookies are transferred.

#### Session Security Protection on the AS ABAP

To prevent access in javascript or plug-ins to the SAP logon ticket and security session cookie(s) (SAP\_SESSIONID\_<sid>\_<client>), activate secure session management. With an existing security session, users can then start applications that require a user logon without logging on again. When a security session is ended, the system also ends all applications that are linked to this security session.

Use the transaction SICF\_SESSIONS to specify the following parameter values shown in the table below in your AS ABAP system:

Session Security Protection Profile Parameters

Profile Parameter	Recommended Value	Comment
icf/set_HTTPOnly_flag_on_cookies	0	Client-Dependent
login/ticket_only_by_https	1	Not Client-Dependent

For more information and detailed instructions, see [Activating HTTP Security Session Management on AS ABAP](#) in the AS ABAP security documentation.

### 13.4.6.2.4 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is extremely important in protecting your system. Your network needs to support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined network topology can eliminate many security threats based on software flaws (at both the operating system and application level), or network attacks such as eavesdropping. If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the backend system's database or files. Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server LAN (local area network), they cannot exploit well-known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

The network topology for the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) is based on the topology used by the SAP NetWeaver platform. Therefore, the security guidelines and recommendations described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply to the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS). Details that specifically apply to the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) are described in the following topics:

- **Communication Channel Security**  
This topic describes the communication paths and protocols used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

- **Network Security**  
This topic describes the recommended network topology for the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS). It shows the appropriate network segments for the various client and server components, and where to use firewalls for access protection. It also includes a list of the ports needed to operate the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).
- **Communication Destinations**  
This topic describes the information needed for the various communication paths, for example, which users are used for which communications.

For more information, see the following sections in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide:

- Network and Communication Security
- Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies

### 13.4.6.2.4.1 Communication Channel Security

The table below shows the communication channels used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS), the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
Front-end client that uses SAP GUI for Windows for the application server	DIAG	All customizing data, application data entered by Non-WD applications	Passwords
Front-end client that uses a Web browser for the application server	RFC, HTTP(S) We recommend you use HTTPS.	Application data entered by WD applications and Web Services	Passwords

DIAG and RFC connections can be protected using Secure Network Communications (SNC). HTTP connections are protected using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.

#### **i Note**

We strongly recommend using secure protocols (SSL, SNC) whenever possible.

For more information, see Transport Layer Security in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.4.6.2.4.2 Network Security

You can operate Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) in different ways. You can run the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) and the HR system and or cProject system integrated on one system, or on different instances.

## Firewall Settings

For more information, see Using Firewall Systems for Access Control in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

For more information, see Using Multiple Network Zones in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## Ports

The Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) runs on SAP NetWeaver and uses the ports from the AS ABAP.

For more information, see the topic for AS ABAP Ports in the corresponding SAP NetWeaver Security Guides.

For other components, for example, SAPinst, SAProuter, or the SAP Web Dispatcher, see <https://help.sap.com/viewer/ports>.

### 13.4.6.2.4.3 Communication Destinations

#### Use

The table below shows an overview of the communication destinations used by the Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS).

Destination	Delivered	Type	User, Authorizations	Description
Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) to Human Resources Management	No	RFC	Anonymus dialog user specified in connections between both systems	Customizing: <i>Time Sheet → Settings for All User Interfaces → Data Transfer for Distributed Systems (ALE)</i>
Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) to cProjects	No	RFC	Anonymus dialog user specified in connections between both systems	Customizing: <i>Time Sheet → Settings for All User Interfaces → Data Transfer for Distributed Systems (ALE)</i>

Destination	Delivered	Type	User, Authorizations	Description
WD Java Frontend to Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS)	Yes	RFC/JCo	See Customizing	<i>Customizing: Integration with Other SAP Components → Business Packages / Functional Packages → Manager Self Service (mySAP ERP).</i>
External consumer/ external Web UI to Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS)	No	HTTP(S) and SOAP messages	Specific dialog user	Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) acts as service provider.

### 13.4.6.2.5 Data Storage Security

The Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) data is saved in databases of the SAP system as follows:

Data	Location
Application Data	CATSDB
Attachments and user-defined texts	SAPScript storage
Templates	CATS_TEMP
Transfer data for HR	PTEX2000, PTEX2010, PTEXDIR
Transfer data for CO	CATSCO
Transfer data for PS	CATSPS
Transfer data for PM	CATSPM
Transfer data for MM-SRV	CATSMM
Transfer data for cPro	DPR_CONF_LI

### 13.4.6.2.6 Enterprise Services Security

The following chapters in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide and documentation are relevant for all enterprise services delivered with Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS):

- [Web Services Security](#)

- [Recommended WS Security Scenarios](#)
- [SAP NetWeaver Process Integration Security Guide](#)

### 13.4.6.2.7 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Cross-Application Time Sheet (CA-TS) relies on the logging and tracing mechanisms from SAP NetWeaver:

- Auditing and Logging
- Tracing and Logging

### 13.4.6.2.8 Services for Security Lifecycle Management

The following services are available from Active Global Support to assist you in maintaining security in your SAP systems on an ongoing basis.

#### Security Chapter in the EarlyWatch Alert (EWA) Report

This service regularly monitors the Security chapter in the EarlyWatch Alert report of your system. It tells you:

- Whether SAP Security Notes have been identified as missing on your system.  
In this case, analyze and implement the identified notes, if possible. If you cannot implement the notes, the report should be able to help you decide on how to handle the individual cases.
- Whether an accumulation of critical basis authorizations has been identified.  
In this case, verify whether the accumulation of critical basis authorizations is okay for your system. If not, correct the situation. If you consider the situation okay, you should still check for any significant changes compared to former EWA reports.
- Whether standard users with default passwords have been identified on your system.  
In this case, change the corresponding passwords to non-default values.

#### Security Optimization Service (SOS)

The Security Optimization Service can be used for a more thorough security analysis of your system, including:

- Critical authorizations in detail
- Security relevant configuration parameters
- Critical users
- Missing security patches

This service is available as a self service within the SAP Solution Manager or as a remote or on-site service. We recommend you use it regularly (for example, once a year) and in particular after significant system changes or in preparation of a system audit.

## Security Configuration Validation

The Security Configuration Validation can be used to continuously monitor a system landscape for compliance to predefined settings, for example, from your company-specific SAP Security Policy. This primarily covers configuration parameters, but it also covers critical security properties like the existence of a non-trivial Gateway configuration or making sure standard users do not have default passwords.

## Security in the RunSAP Methodology / Secure Operations Standard

With the E2E Solution Operations Standard Security service, a best practice recommendation is available on how to operate SAP systems and landscapes in secure manner. It guides you through the most important security operation areas and links to detailed security information from SAP's knowledge base wherever appropriate.

## More Information

For more details on these services see

- EarlyWatch Alert: <https://support.sap.com/en/offerings-programs/support-services/earlywatch-alert.html>
- Security Optimization Service / Security Notes Report: <https://support.sap.com/en/offerings-programs/support-services/security-optimization-services-portfolio.html>
- Comprehensive list of Security Notes: <https://support.sap.com/en/my-support/knowledge-base/security-notes-news.html>
- Configuration Validation
- SAP Activate Methodology Roadmaps: <https://support.sap.com/en/offerings-programs/methodologies/implement.html>

## 13.5 Manufacturing

## 13.5.1 Production Planning

### 13.5.1.1 Data Storage Security

#### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The data storage security of SAP NetWeaver and components installed on the base is described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide. All business data in SAP PP/DS is stored in the system database. If SAP LiveCache is used, some business data is also stored there. This business data is protected by the authorization concept of SAP NetWeaver and SAP PP/DS. In some special cases, business-relevant data is stored in another location, such as a file system. The special case is listed below:

#### Logical File Names Used

The following logical file name has been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- SAP SCM Optimizer

#### Logical Path Names Used

The logical file names listed above all use the following logical file paths:

- <drive>:\usr\SAP\<>SID>\<Gxx>\log (for Windows)
- \usr\sap\<>SID>\<Gxx>\log (for Linux)

<SID>: Gateway ID on the SAP SCM Optimizer server

<Gxx>: Gateway number

#### Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain

the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information, see about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.5.2 Manufacturing Execution for Discrete Industries

### 13.5.2.1 Authorizations for Just-in-Time-Processing

Just-in-Time Processing (JIT) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

#### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used.

Authorization Object	Description
C_AUTO_JIT	ISAUTO_JIT: Sequenced JIT Calls (seqJC)
C_JIT_CALL	PP-FLW JIT Calls
C_JIT_OUT	IS-A-JIT: JIT Outbound Calls

### 13.5.2.2 Authorizations for Production Backflush

Production Backflush uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.



The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

### **i Note**

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

## **Standard Authorization Objects**

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used.

<b>Authorization Object</b>	<b>Description</b>
C_BCKFLUSH	Automotive: Production backflush
C_APO_PPC	APO Authorization Object: Production Backflush

## **13.5.2.3 Deletion of Personal Data**

### **13.5.2.3.1 Deletion of Personal Data (Just-in-Time-Processing)**

#### **Use**

Just-in-Time-Processing (IS-A-JIT) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Just-in-Time-Processing (IS-A-JIT)	<b>Archiving Object</b>
	JIT_SJCAL
	JITO_CALL
	<b>ILM Object</b>
	JIT_SJCALL
	JITO_CALL
	<b>Report</b>
	DELETE_JIT_VENDOR_CUSTOMER

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Just-in-Time-Processing (IS-A-JIT)	WUC	Checks tables JITCU

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

### 13.5.2.3.2 Deletion of Personal Data (Production Backflush)

#### Use

Production Backflush might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Production Backflush (IS-A-PPC)	<b>Archiving Object</b> PP_CONF

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

## 13.5.2.3.3 Deletion of Personal Data (Production Order)

### Use

Production orders might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Production Order (ERP_PP_SFC)	<p>When a production order is created with reference to a sales order, the customer details are copied over from the sales order.</p> <p>In addition, the supplier data is taken from the purchasing data of the material.</p> <p>For externally processed operations, the supplier data can also be maintained in the operation.</p>	<b>Archiving Object</b> PP_ORDER  <b>ILM Object</b> PP_ORDER

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Production Order (ERP_PP_SFC)	End of Purpose (EoP) check	

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer master/supplier master in Customizing for ► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Blocking and Unblocking of Data](#) ►.

## 13.5.3 Manufacturing Execution for Process Industries

### 13.5.3.1 Deletion of Personal Data (Process Orders)

#### Use

Process orders might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Process Order (ERP_PP_SFC)	<p>When a process order is created with reference to a sales order, the customer details are copied over from the sales order.</p> <p>In addition, the supplier data is taken from the purchasing data of the material.</p> <p>For externally processed operations, the supplier data can also be maintained in the operation.</p>	<p><b>Archiving Object</b></p> <p>PR_ORDER</p> <p><b>ILM Object</b></p> <p>PR_ORDER</p>

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Process Order (ERP_PP_PI)	End of Purpose (EoP) check	

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer master/supplier master in Customizing for [Cross-Application Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking of Data](#).

## 13.5.4 Quality Management

### 13.5.4.1 Communication Channel Security

The table below shows the communication channels used, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
Communication with Supplier Network Collaboration	SOAP	Quality notification data	
Communication with the Quality Inspection Engine (QIE) of the Extended Warehouse Management (EWM)	SOAP, RFC	Inspection lot data	
Communication exchange of quality certificates with external partner	IDoc	Quality certificates	
Quality master data replication	IDoc	Master inspection characteristics Master inspection methods Codes Inspection plan Inspection setup data in material master	
Communication with external subsystem for inspection	RFC, SOAP	Inspection lot data Inspection results	
Communication with external subsystem for inspection planning	SOAP	Inspection plan, Master inspection characteristic	
Communication with external subsystem for quality notifications	SOAP	Quality notification data	
Communication with external subsystem for statistical process control (SPC)	RFC	Inspection lot data Inspection results	
Communication with SAP Manufacturing Execution (ME)	RFC, IDoc	Inspection lot data Inspection results	

DIAG and RFC connections can be protected using Secure Network Communications (SNC). HTTP connections are protected using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol. SOAP connections are protected with Web services security.

## i Note

We strongly recommend using secure protocols (SSL, SNC) whenever possible.

For more information, see Transport Layer Security and Web Services Security in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.5.4.2 Deletion of Personal Data

The Quality Management application might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note 1825544.

The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. The Quality Management application uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

SAP delivers an end of purpose check for the Quality Management application.

#### End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases.

- Phase one: The relevant data is actively used.
- Phase two: The relevant data is actively available in the system.
- Phase three: The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.  
For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked. Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- Display: The system does not display blocked data.
- Change: It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data.
- Create: It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- Copy/Follow-Up: It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- Search: It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three-phase based end of purpose check, see the Process Flow.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Inspection Lot	<p>The EOP check considers partners (customers or suppliers):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• that are stored directly in the inspection lot (table QALS)</li> <li>• that are available in the worklist of the transfer table for subsystems (QIWL)</li> <li>• that are assigned to a multiple specification (QAOBJMS)</li> </ul> <p>Each inspection lot is checked if the customer or supplier is still relevant. If a customer or supplier is used in several objects, he is relevant as long as only one object is not completed. An object is completed if</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an inspection lot is canceled</li> <li>• an inspection lot has status <i>All inspections completed</i>, an usage decision was made and stock postings are completed if the inspection lot is stock-relevant.</li> </ul> <p>The following data is relevant for calculating the retention rules and residence rules (taking the latest date):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Last change date</li> </ul> <p>You can start report QM_CVP_EOP_SORT_ARC_CONTROL to select all data that has already been archived (background job due to performance).</p>	Archiving object QM_CONTROL



Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Sample Records	<p>Partners are assigned to the drawing of material samples.</p> <p>Material samples are only considered if there are not part of an order, an inspection lot or a notification since these material samples are considered as separate business operations and are checked during the EoP check for the corresponding object (e.g. notification). Only 'independent' material samples are checked.</p> <p>The assigned partners are no longer relevant, if the material sample is marked for deletion or marked as no longer existent. Then the latest change date is taken as basis for the calculation of the retention and residence rules.</p> <p>You can start report QM_CVP_EOP_SORT_ARC_SAMPLE to select all data that has already been archived (background job due to performance).</p>	Archiving object QM_SAMPLE
Quality Notification	<p>Suppliers and customers are relevant.</p> <p>The end of business is reached when the quality notification has status <i>Completed</i>.</p> <p>You can start report RQARCQMS to select all data that has already been archived.</p>	Archiving object QM_QMEL

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Quality Certificate	<p>Only suppliers are relevant. Suppliers are entered directly in the certificate.</p> <p>A certificate is completed if it has one of the following statuses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Certificate filed and inspected</i></li> <li>• <i>Certificate receipt canceled</i></li> </ul> <p>If you want to send or receive the quality data of a certificate using EDI, and the inspection characteristics to be sent have different descriptions in the supplier and the customer system you can set up a partner-specific identification and assignment of the respective characteristics (characteristic mapping). The communication partners are defined by Partner Type and Partner Number.</p> <p>For the deletion of the partner-specific settings and characteristic mappings you have to run deletion report RDEL_PARTNER_CHAR.</p>	Archiving object QM_CERT
Failure Mode and Effects Analysis	<p>Only business partners on header level are checked. Business partners entered for actions are not checked.</p> <p>It is checked that the FMEA has status <i>Completed</i>, <i>To Be Archived</i>, or <i>Archived</i>.</p> <p>You can start report PLM_FMEA_EOP_AUD_ARC_EXTRACT to select all data that has already been archived.</p>	Archiving object QM_FMEA
Audit Plans/Audits	<p>It is checked that the Audit has status <i>Completed</i>, <i>To Be Archived</i>, or <i>Archived</i>.</p> <p>Only audits are taken into account in the check, but not audit plans or question lists.</p> <p>You can start report PLM_AUDIT_EOP_AUD_ARC_EXTRACT to select all data that has already been archived.</p>	Archiving object PLM_AUD

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Quality Info Records in Procurement	The system checks the residence times that were entered under <a href="#">Quality Management &gt; Environment &gt; Central Functions &gt; Organize Archiving</a> .	Archiving object QM_QINF
Quality Info Records in Sales	The system checks the residence times that were entered under <a href="#">Quality Management &gt; Environment &gt; Central Functions &gt; Organize Archiving</a> .	Archiving object QM_QVDM

#### Relevant Application Areas and Available EoP Functionality

Application	Implemented Solution	Further Information
Quality Management	EoP check	This includes the business in areas of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Quality Planning (QM-PT)</li> <li>Quality Inspection (QM-IM)</li> <li>Quality Notification (QM-QN)</li> <li>Audit Management (CA-AUD)</li> </ul>

#### Process

1. Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
3. You do the following:
  1. Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: CA\_BUPA).
  2. Run transaction BUPA\_PRE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner
  3. Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and supplier master (ILM objects: FI\_ACCPAYB, FI\_ACCRECV; for ILM objects in QM see archiving objects above)
  4. Run transaction CVP\_PRE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the customer master and supplier master.
4. Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction BUP\_REQ\_UNBLK.
5. If you have the needed authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction BUPA\_PRE\_EOP and CVP\_UNBLOCK\_MD.
6. You delete data by using the transaction ILM\_DESTRUCTION for the ILM objects of Quality Management.

## 13.5.5 Maintenance Operations

### 13.5.5.1 Authorizations in Plant Maintenance

#### Standard Roles

SAP delivers business role templates which follow the naming convention SAP\_BR\_\*. The delivered business role templates are designed to cover typical activities of business users with a certain job profile.

#### ❖ Example

The delivered business role template `SAP_BR_MAINTENANCE_TECHNICIAN` is designed for maintenance technicians. The role contains business catalogs which cover all the functions that a maintenance technician requires to carry out their work effectively and safely.

Another example business role template `SAP_BR_MAINTENANCE_PLANNER` is designed for maintenance planners. The role contains business catalogs which cover a broad range of functions necessary for planning and executing maintenance activities.

Each business catalog contains one or more applications and is designed to support segregation of duty.

#### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see [Role Administration \[page 12\]](#).

## 13.6 R&D / Engineering

### 13.6.1 Product Safety and Stewardship

## 13.6.1.1 Product Compliance for Discrete Industries

### 13.6.1.1.1 User Administration and Authentication

*Product Compliance for Discrete Industries* uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG).

For more generic information see [User Administration and Authentication \[page 9\]](#) in the *Introduction* section

#### 13.6.1.1.1.1 User Management

The table below shows the standard users that are necessary for operating *Product Compliance for Discrete Industries*. For more generic information, see [User Management \[page 9\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

User ID	Type	Password	Description
Business processing user	Dialog user	To be entered	Business user of <i>Product Compliance</i>
E-mail inbound processing user	Communication user	Not needed	User to process the incoming e-mails of <i>Product Compliance</i>
Workflow engine batch user	Background user	Not needed	User for the background processing of workflows in <i>Product Compliance</i>

You need to create users after the installation. Users are not automatically created during installation. In consequence, there is no requirement to change user IDs and passwords after the installation.

#### i Note

Several business processes within *Product Compliance for Discrete Industries* use SAP Business Workflow and e-mail inbound and outbound processing. It is not recommended that you grant the corresponding system users (such as WF\_BATCH for Workflow System or SAPCONNECT for e-mail inbound processing) all authorizations of the system (SAP\_ALL).

#### 13.6.1.1.2 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is important for protecting your system. Therefore, your network must support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined

network topology can eliminate many security threats based on software flaws (at both the operating system level and application level) or network attacks such as eavesdropping. If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, then there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the backend system's database or files. Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server LAN (local area network), they cannot exploit known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

The network topology for *Product Safety and Stewardship* is based on the topology used by the SAP NetWeaver platform. Therefore, the security guidelines and recommendations described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide also apply here. Details that specifically apply to *Product Safety and Stewardship* are described in the following sections:

- [Communication Channel Security \[page 373\]](#)  
This topic describes the communication paths and protocols.
- [Network Security \[page 374\]](#)  
This topic describes the recommended network topology. It shows the appropriate network segments for the various client and server components and where to use firewalls for access protection. It also includes a list of the ports required.
- [Communication Destinations \[page 374\]](#)  
This topic describes the information needed for the various communication paths, for example, which users are used for which communications.

For more information, see the following sections in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide*:

- Network and Communication Security
- Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies

### 13.6.1.1.2.1 Communication Destinations

The table below shows an overview of the communication destinations used by *Product Compliance for Discrete Industries*. For more generic information, see in corresponding chapter in the *Introduction* section.

Destination	Delivered	Type	Description
<PM system>	No	RFC	Connection to plant maintenance system
<BuPa system>	No	RFC	Connection to business partner system
<AC system>	No	RFC	Connection to accounting system
<EHS system>	No	RFC	Connection to <i>SAP Product Safety and Stewardship</i> as part of <i>SAP ERP</i> system

#### i Note

The user in the remote AC system needs to have all authorizations as proposed by the respective EHS user roles.

For *SAP EHS Management* as part of *SAP ERP*, Product Compliance for Discrete Industries does not provide any authorizations.

For detailed information about communication destinations, see Customizing for *Environment, Health, and Safety* under ► *Foundation for EHS* ► *Integration* ► *Specify Destinations for Integration* ►.

### 13.6.1.1.3 ICF Security in Product Safety and Stewardship

To use an app in Product Safety and Stewardship, you have to activate the internet communication framework (ICF) service that is needed for this app.

For general information, see [ICF Security \[page 20\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

### Product Compliance for Discrete Industries

To use *Product Compliance for Discrete Industries* apps, proceed as follows:

- In your back-end system, open transaction SICF. Under `/default_host/sap/bc/webdynpro/sap/`, activate the following Web Dynpro services:
  - that start with EHFND
  - that start with EHPRC
  - POWL
  - IBO\_WDA\_INBOX
  - WDR\_CHIP\_PAGE

### 13.6.1.1.4 Data Storage Security

#### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access

In *Product Compliance for Discrete Industries*, several applications save data in files in the file system. The International Material Data System (IMDS) uses the file system to store downloaded files temporarily, before they are imported. Additionally, it is possible for users to upload files to the application server manually prior to further processing. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime, and, if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used by *Product Compliance for Discrete Industries* and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

## Logical File Names Used

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- EHPRC\_IMPORT\_DIR
- EHPRC\_ERROR\_DIR
- EHPRC\_ARCHIVE\_DIR

For more information, see the Customizing activity *Set Up Directory Structure for IMDS*.

## Logical Path Names Used

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path EHPRC\_HOME\_PATH.

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.6.1.1.5 Data Protection and Privacy

Data protection is associated with numerous legal requirements and privacy concerns. In addition to compliance with general data privacy acts, it is necessary to consider compliance with industry-specific legislation in different countries. This section describes the specific features and functions that *Product Safety and Stewardship for Discrete Industries* provides to support compliance with the relevant legal requirements and data privacy.

This section and any other sections in this Security Guide do not give any advice on whether these features and functions are the best method to support company, industry, regional or country-specific requirements. Furthermore, this guide does not give any advice or recommendations with regard to additional features that would be required in a particular environment; decisions related to data protection must be made on a case-by-case basis and under consideration of the given system landscape and the applicable legal requirements.



## i Note

In the majority of cases, compliance with data privacy laws is not a product feature. SAP software supports data privacy by providing security features and specific data-protection-relevant functions such as functions for the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data. SAP does not provide legal advice in any form. The definitions and other terms used in this guide are not taken from any given legal source.

### 13.6.1.1.5.1 Deletion of Personal Data

*Product Safety and Stewardship for Discrete Industries* might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use *SAP Information Lifecycle Management (SAP ILM)* to control the blocking and deletion of personal data in *Product Safety and Stewardship for Discrete Industries*.

#### More Information

- For general information about the blocking and deletion of data for customers, vendors and business partners, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [Product Assistance](#) > [Cross Components](#) > [Data Protection](#).
- For more information about the deletion of customer and vendor master data, see the Security Guide for SAP ERP on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/erp> under [SAP ERP Central Component Security Guide](#) > [Data Protection](#) > [Deletion of Personal Data](#).
- For more information about simplified blocking and deletion of customer and vendor master data, see Customizing under [Logistics - General](#) > [Business Partner](#) > [Deletion of Customer and Vendor Master Data](#).
- For more information about simplified blocking and deletion of central business partner master data, see Customizing for Cross-Application Components under [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking](#) > [Business Partner](#).

#### 13.6.1.1.5.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data for Product Compliance for Discrete Industries

*SAP Information Lifecycle Management (SAP ILM)* supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data.

*Product Compliance for Discrete Industries* uses *SAP ILM* to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

The following table shows the application objects and the appropriate deletion functionality that is provided in *Product Compliance for the Discrete Industries*.

Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Worklists for compliance assessment	Archiving object EHPRC_WLCA
Worklists for regulatory changes	Archiving object EHPRC_WLRC
Intenational Material Data Sheets (IMDS)	Archiving object EHPRC_MDS
Compliance data records	Archiving object EHPRC_COD
Campaigns	Archiving object EHPRC_CMP
E-mail assignments	Archiving object EHPRC_PSA
Assessments and BOM transfers	Archiving object EHPRC_PBB

### *Deletion Report and Job Dependencies*

Product Compliance provides the deletion report *R\_EHPRC\_DPP\_CLEANUP* which verifies if any CDOs that are marked as end of business are used in any composition or supplier listing. If this is the case, it changes the lifecycle status to *Active* which prevents the CDO from being archived.

The report needs to be run as a periodic job. Schedule report *R\_EHPRC\_DPP\_CLEANUP* with option *CDOs check Out of Business*, every time before you run the preprocessing and the write program.


For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *R&D / Engineering* ► *Product Safety and Stewardship* ► *Product Compliance (EHS-MGM-PRC)* ► *Data Protection in Product Compliance* ►.

## 13.6.1.1.5.1.2 Logging Changes

Personal data is subject to frequent changes. Therefore, for revision purposes or as a result of legal regulations, it may be necessary to track the changes that have been made to this data. When these changes are logged, you should be able to check which employee made which changes, the date and time, the previous value, and the current value.

It is also possible to analyze errors in this way.

## See Also

- For more information on change documents see the documentation at <http://help.sap.com/netweaver>. Choose the the relevant SAP NetWeaver version and open the following documentation:
  - Under *Application Help*, go to ► *SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View* ► *Application Server ABAP* ► *Other Services* ► *Services for Application Developers* ► *Change Documents* ►.
  - Under *Security*, open the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* and go to ► *Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management* ► *Auditing and Logging* ►.
- See [2125662](#)  for more information about superfluous data change logging defined for database tables.

### 13.6.1.1.6 Virus Scanning

The interactive forms of *Product Compliance for Discrete Industries* can contain JavaScript. Therefore, JavaScript must be enabled in Adobe Acrobat Reader. In addition, e-mails with PDF attachments that contain JavaScript must not be filtered out in the e-mail inbound and outbound process.

For more generic information see [Virus Scanning \[page 23\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

### 13.6.1.2 Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries

This section contains information that is valid for:

- Basic Data and Tools
- Product Safety
- Global Label Management
- Dangerous Goods Management

#### 13.6.1.2.1 Technical System Landscape

##### Product Safety

*Expert* is a registering Remote Function Call (RFC) server that reads and writes specification data through RFC from the SAP system.

*Windows Wordprocessor Integration (WWI)* is a registering RFC server that generates and prints reports.

Report shipping can be determined centrally in the product safety system, or product safety document data can be distributed by ALE/IDOC to logistics systems. These logistics systems use their own *WWI* generation servers (*WWI* servers) to print documents.

## Dangerous Goods Management

If you use separate logistics systems, dangerous goods data can be transferred to logistics systems by ALE/IDOC.

## Global Label Management

The technical system landscape for Global Label Management consists of the following elements:

- *WWI* is a registering RFC server. It can contain its own database that is used as a document cache and data cache.
- Option 1: Label printing is possible with a printer that is connected to a local PC. *WWI* servers are hosted on a central *WWI* server farm. Printing is executed by the SAP spool system or a printer that is connected to a local PC.
- Option 2: Label printing is executed through print requests. *WWI* servers are decentralized. Therefore, the data of the print requests is sent directly to the printer, or the print requests are printed through the SAP spool system.
- Option 3: Label printing is possible via an extraordinary, distributed approach for product safety. In this case, plants host their own SAP systems. Document data is maintained centrally and distributed by ALE. Printing is determined directly or through the SAP spool system.

### 13.6.1.2.2 User Administration and Authentication

*Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries* uses the administration and authentication mechanisms provided with the *SAPNet Weaver* platform.

For more generic information see [User Administration and Authentication \[page 9\]](#) in the *Introduction* section.

### 13.6.1.2.3 Network and Communication Security

Your network infrastructure is important for protecting your system. Therefore, your network must support the communication necessary for your business needs without allowing unauthorized access. A well-defined network topology can eliminate many security threats based on software flaws (at both the operating system level and application level) or network attacks such as eavesdropping. If users cannot log on to your application or database servers at the operating system or database layer, then there is no way for intruders to compromise the machines and gain access to the backend system's database or files. Additionally, if users are not able to connect to the server LAN (local area network), they cannot exploit known bugs and security holes in network services on the server machines.

The network topology for *Product Safety and Stewardship* is based on the topology used by the *SAP NetWeaver* platform. Therefore, the security guidelines and recommendations described in the *SAP NetWeaver Security*

Guide also apply here. Details that specifically apply to *Product Safety and Stewardship* are described in the following sections:

- [Communication Channel Security \[page 373\]](#)  
This topic describes the communication paths and protocols.
- [Network Security \[page 374\]](#)  
This topic describes the recommended network topology. It shows the appropriate network segments for the various client and server components and where to use firewalls for access protection. It also includes a list of the ports required.
- [Communication Destinations \[page 374\]](#)  
This topic describes the information needed for the various communication paths, for example, which users are used for which communications.

For more information, see the following sections in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide*:

- Network and Communication Security
- Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies

### 13.6.1.2.3.1 Communication Channel Security

The following table lists the communication paths used by *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries*, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
SAP PS&S for Process Industries Application Server to SAP BP Application Server	RFC	Business Partner	-
SAP PS&S for Process Industries Application Server to SAP PM Application Server	RFC	Plant Maintenance	-
SAP Logistics Application Server to SAP PS&S for Process Industries Application Server	RFC	Logistics data for Report Shipping Logistics data for Substance Volume Tracking	-
SAP PS&S for Process Industries Application Server to SAP Logistics Application Server	ALE /IDOC	Application data Dangerous Goods data and Reports can be transferred to logistics systems	-
SAP Application Server to Expert Server	RFC	Application data	Substance data may contain corporate secrets such as recipes.

SAP Application Server to WWI generation server (WWI server)	RFC	Application data, documents	Usually MSDS or label data is transferred. Depending on the process, incident reports that contain personal data or corporate secrets may also be transferred.
SAP PS&S for Process Industries Application Server to SAP Logistics Application Server	RFC	Application data: For Global Label Management, material data is transferred from logistics system to the Product Safety system	-
Only for Global Label Management systems with many WWI servers:  WWI server to SQL database server	TCP/IP DB-specific protocol	Label data	Usually no sensitive data, depending on the usage of the label.

#### **i Note**

Protect RFC connections with *Secure Network Communications* (SNC).

Use secure protocols (SSL, SNC) whenever possible.

## 13.6.1.2.3.2 Network Security

### Ports

WWI generation servers (WWI servers) and Expert servers use Remote Function Call (RFC).

For more information, see <https://help.sap.com/viewer/ports>.

## 13.6.1.2.3.3 Communication Destinations

The table below lists the communication destinations that are used by *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries*.

For a description of the purpose of the RFC destinations, see the Customizing activities mentioned for *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries*.

Destination	Delivered	Type	User, Authorizations	Description
-------------	-----------	------	----------------------	-------------

[▶ Basic Data and Tools > Basic Settings > Specify Environment Parameters >](#)  
 Environment parameter DEST\_BU  
 No RFC RFC destination for *Business Partner*

---

[▶ Basic Data and Tools > Basic Settings > Specify Environment Parameters >](#)  
 Environment parameter DEST\_HR  
 No RFC RFC destination for *HR*

---

[▶ Basic Data and Tools > Basic Settings > Specify Environment Parameters >](#)  
 Environment parameter DEST\_PM  
 No RFC RFC destination for *Plant Maintenance*

---

[▶ Basic Data and Tools > Basic Settings > Specify Environment Parameters >](#)  
 Environment parameter DEST\_SRE\_DS  
 No RFC RFC destination of *Report Shipping*

---

[▶ Basic Data and Tools > Basic Settings > Specify Environment Parameters >](#)  
 Environment parameter SVT\_EHS\_RFCDEST  
 No RFC RFC destination for *Substance Volume Tracking*

---

<p>▸ <i>Basic Data and Tools</i> ▸ <i>Basic Settings</i> ▸ <i>Specify Environment Parameters</i> ▸</p>	No	RFC	Calling user	Synchronous generation of reports
<p>Environment parameter WWI_GENSERVER_SYN_DEST</p>				
<p>▸ <i>Basic Data and Tools</i> ▸ <i>Report Definition</i> ▸ <i>Window Wordprocessor Integration (WWI)</i> ▸ <i>Configuration of Generation PCs</i> ▸ <i>Configuration of Generation Servers</i> ▸ <i>Manual Configuration of Generation Servers</i> ▸ <i>Specify Generation Servers</i> ▸</p>	No	RFC	Configured Background Job user See Customizing activity <i>Start WWI Dispatcher in Background</i>	Background generation of reports
<p>Maintain the destination</p>				
<p>▸ <i>Global Label Management</i> ▸ <i>Prerequisites for Global Label Management</i> ▸ <i>Define WWI Settings</i> ▸ <i>Configure WWI Server for Print Request Generation</i> ▸</p>	No	RFC	Calling User	Print and preview tables in <i>Global Label Management</i>



<a href="#">▶ Global Label Management ▶ Prerequisites for Global Label Management ▶ Define WWI Settings ▶ Configure WWI Server for Print Request Generation ▶</a>	No	RFC	Calling User or Configured background job user	Process print requests in <a href="#">Global Label Management</a>  See Customizing activity <a href="#">Background Jobs for Processing Print Requests</a>
<a href="#">▶ Basic Data and Tools ▶ Basic Settings ▶ Manage User Exits ▶</a>	No	RFC	Calling User	Determine secondary data for specifications with Expert
<a href="#">▶ Basic Data and Tools ▶ Basic Settings ▶ Specify Environment Parameters ▶</a>	No	RFC	Calling User	Mass change of specification data with Easy Expert

### Note

The WWI servers and the Expert servers are registering RFC servers.

For more information about setting up RFC destinations, see the Customizing for [Product Safety and Stewardship](#) under [▶ Basic Data and Tools ▶ Tools ▶ Expert ▶ Set Up RFC Destination. ▶](#)

## 13.6.1.2.4 Application-Specific Virus Scan Profile (ABAP)

SAP provides an interface for virus scanners to prevent manipulated or malicious files from damaging the system. To manage the interface and to find out which file types are checked or blocked, use the virus scan profiles. Some applications rely on default profiles, while others rely on application-specific profiles.

To use a virus scanner with the SAP system, you must activate and set up the virus scan interface. During this process, you also set up the default behavior. Here, SAP also provides the following default profiles:

Application	Profile	Allowed MIME Types	Blocked MIME Types
Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries	/CBUI/WWI_REPORT_GEN	*	-
Global Label Management	/CBGLMP_API/ WWI_GET_CONTENT	*	-

When the application-specific virus scan profile is activated, this profile has the following impact:

- Documents generated by the *WWI* generation server (*WWI* server) are scanned for viruses
- Documents imported into *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries* are scanned for viruses

## 13.6.1.2.5 Data Storage Security

For importing or exporting data between two SAP systems or an SAP system and an external system, *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries* uses transfer files.

After generating a transfer file either by exporting data or uploading a transfer file from a PC file system, the transfer file is stored on the application server. If the export is started again or a new file is uploaded from a PC file system, the transfer file that is stored on the application server will be overwritten.

### i Note

The transfer file of imported specification data is stored in file substance.dat on the application server. The transfer file path is configured in logical path `EHS_IMP_SUBSTANCES_PATH_2`.

## Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access

When importing or exporting data, *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries* saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used when importing or exporting data, and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

## Logical File Names Used in Export and Import

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

Logical File Names	Programs Using these Logical File Names
<code>EHS_EXP_PHRASES_2</code>	Export of Phrase Libraries
<code>EHS_EXP_PROPERTY_TREE_2</code>	Export of Property Tree
<code>EHS_EXP_SOURCES_2</code>	Export of Sources

EHS_EXP_SUBSTANCES_2	Export of Specification Master Data
EHS_EXP_TEMPLATE_2	Export of Report Templates
EHS_IMP_PHRASES_2	Import of Phrase Libraries
EHS_IMP_PROPERTY_TREE_2	Import of Property Tree
EHS_IMP_SOURCES_2	Import of Sources
EHS_IMP_SUBSTANCES_2	Import of Specification Master Data
EHS_IMP_TEMPLATE_2	Import of Report Templates
EHS_IMP_REPORT_2	Import of Reports
EHS_FTAPPL_2	Upload File; Download File

## Logical Path Names Used During Export and Import

These logical file names use the following logical file path:

Logical File Names	Logical Path Names
EHS_EXP_PHRASES_2	EHS_EXP_PHRASES_PATH_2
EHS_EXP_PROPERTY_TREE_2	EHS_EXP_PROPERTY_TREE_PATH_2
EHS_EXP_SOURCES_2	EHS_EXP_SOURCES_PATH_2
EHS_EXP_SUBSTANCES_2	EHS_EXP_SUBSTANCES_PATH_2
EHS_EXP_TEMPLATE_2	EHS_EXP_TEMPLATE_PATH_2
EHS_FTAPPL_2	EHS_FTAPPL_PATH_2
EHS_IMP_PHRASES_2	EHS_IMP_PHRASES_PATH_2
EHS_IMP_PROPERTY_TREE_2	EHS_IMP_PROPERTY_TREE_PATH_2
EHS_IMP_REPORT_2	EHS_IMP_REPORT_PATH_2
EHS_IMP_SOURCES_2	EHS_IMP_SOURCES_PATH_2
EHS_IMP_SUBSTANCES_2	EHS_IMP_SUBSTANCES_PATH_2
EHS_IMP_TEMPLATE_2	EHS_IMP_TEMPLATE_PATH_2

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log (transaction `SM19`).

Relevant audit log numbers:

- DUA – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B created
- DUB – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B started
- DUC – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B stopped
- DUD – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B stopped
- DUE – EHS-SADM: Configuration of service &A on client &B was changed
- DUF – EHS-SADM: File &A from client &B transferred
- DUG – EHS-SADM: File &A transferred to client &B

### 13.6.1.2.5.1 Data Storage on WWI Servers and Expert Servers

Windows Wordprocessor Integration (WWI) and Expert read data from the SAP system using Remote Function Call (RFC), process data, and store the results in the database of the SAP system. That is, the WWI generation server (WWI server) and the Expert server save configuration data and cached data locally.

#### i Note

Make sure that only as few users as possible can access the Windows servers that run the WWI server and the Expert server.

To apply access permissions in Windows, execute the following steps for the following folders.

For more information on access control and on security auditing, see the Windows Help.

To configure access control for a local file or folder, proceed as follows:

1. Start the *Windows Explorer*.
2. In the context menu of the file or the folder that you want to audit, choose *Properties*, and go to the *Security* tab page.
3. Choose *Edit*.
4. Add or remove the user names and set the permissions for each user.

#### i Note

To improve data storage security, you can apply Windows file system encryption to the folders that hold sensitive data.

## Expert Cache

If you use the specification data cache of Expert, it stores copies of the specification data locally in the Expert server file system. The root folder of the cache is determined in the registry at `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\TechniData\EHS-AddOns\CacheRoot`.

To protect data, make sure that you set appropriate access permissions on the configured root folder of the cache. Grant read or write access only to `LocalSystem`, to administrators and to selected users.

## Expert Rules

Apply access permissions to the Expert rules directory. Expert rules are programs that are executed by Expert altering specification data. Make sure that the rules are not altered by unauthorized users.

The rules are usually stored in the Rules folder of the Expert installation, but each rule can be configured separately in the Windows Registry. For more information on the paths to the rules files, see `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\TechniData\EHS-AddOns\Instances`.

Set appropriate access permissions on the Expert rules folder. Grant access only to `LocalSystem`, to administrators and to selected users.

## WWI Root Directory

WWI temporarily stores data in the Windows file system to process data in the WWI root directory.

If an error occurs, the temporary files might remain in the root directories. We recommend cleaning up the folder regularly.

The path that indicates the WWI root directory depends on the process. For more information about the path, check the Customizing settings for *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries*.

- For synchronous generation, check the environment parameter `WWI_GENSERVER_SYN_ANCHOR` under [Basic Data and Tools > Basic Settings > Specify Environment Parameters](#)
- For background generation, check the WWI root under [Basic Data and Tools > Report Definition > Windows Wordprocessor Integration \(WWI\) > Configuration of Generation PCs > Configuration of Generation Servers > Manual Configuration of Generation Servers > Specify Generation Servers](#)
- For Global Label Management, check the temporary directory for synchronous WWI server under [Global Label Management > Set Basic Data and Tools for Global Label Management > Make Settings for Basic Data](#)
- For print request processing in Global Label Management, check `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\WWIDOCUMENT\AnchorRoot` in the Windows registry.

Grant access on the WWI root folders only to `LocalSystem`, to administrators and to selected users.

## WWI Print Request Cache for Global Label Management

WWI caches templates and generated labels in the Windows file system.

The path that indicates the Windows file system is configured in the WWI.INI file under `[DMS]`. Set the appropriate access permissions on the WWI root directories. Grant read or write access only to the WWI user, to the `LocalSystem`, to administrators and to selected users.

The database file or database connection is configured under `dbConnection` in the WWI.INI file: Set appropriate access permissions on the database file or in the configured database management system. Grant access only to the WWI user, to `LocalSystem`, to administrators and to selected users.

### 13.6.1.2.6 Data Protection and Privacy

Data protection is associated with numerous legal requirements and privacy concerns. In addition to compliance with general data privacy acts, it is necessary to consider compliance with industry-specific legislation in different countries. This section describes the specific features and functions that *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries* provides to support compliance with the relevant legal requirements and data privacy.

This section and any other sections in this Security Guide do not give any advice on whether these features and functions are the best method to support company, industry, regional or country-specific requirements. Furthermore, this guide does not give any advice or recommendations with regard to additional features that would be required in a particular environment; decisions related to data protection must be made on a case-by-case basis and under consideration of the given system landscape and the applicable legal requirements.

#### Note

In the majority of cases, compliance with data privacy laws is not a product feature. SAP software supports data privacy by providing security features and specific data-protection-relevant functions such as functions for the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data. SAP does not provide legal advice in any form. The definitions and other terms used in this guide are not taken from any given legal source.

#### 13.6.1.2.6.1 Deletion of Personal Data

*Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries* might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use *SAP Information Lifecycle Management (SAP ILM)* to control the blocking and deletion of personal data in *Product Safety and Stewardship for Process Industries*.

## More Information

- For general information about the blocking and deletion of data for customers, vendors and business partners, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►.
- For more information about the deletion of customer and vendor master data, see the Security Guide for SAP ERP on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/erp> under ► [SAP ERP Central Component Security Guide](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Deletion of Personal Data](#) ►.
- For more information about simplified blocking and deletion of customer and vendor master data, see Customizing under ► [Logistics - General](#) ► [Business Partner](#) ► [Deletion of Customer and Vendor Master Data](#) ►.
- For more information about simplified blocking and deletion of central business partner master data, see Customizing for Cross-Application Components under ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Blocking and Unblocking](#) ► [Business Partner](#) ►.
- For more information about simplified blocking and deletion of customer and vendor master data in other applications, see Customizing of the application under ► [Data Protection](#) ►.
- For more information about settings for authorization management, see Customizing of the application under ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Authorization Management](#) ►.

### 13.6.1.2.6.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data for Substance Volume Tracking

*SAP Information Lifecycle Management (SAP ILM)* supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data.

*Substance Volume Tracking* uses *SAP ILM* to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

#### Process Flow: Data Destruction

1. Before deleting data in *Substance Volume Tracking*, define the retention periods in *SAP Information Lifecycle Management* in transaction *ILM Policies* (IRMPOL) for the following ILM objects:
  - EHS\_SVT\_SOLDQ\_DESTRUCTION
  - EHS\_SVT\_OR\_DESTRUCTION
2. To destroy data, proceed as described in the documentation of the data destruction objects in *Substance Volume Tracking*.  
See section *Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality* for the relevant data destruction objects in *Substance Volume Tracking*.

For more information, see SAP Note [2320353](#) (Simplified data deletion based on SAP ILM in substance volume tracking).

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

The following table shows the application objects and the appropriate deletion functionality that is provided in *Substance Volume Tracking*.

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Assignment of External Business Partners or External Only Representatives to Regulatory Lists	Data destruction object to check the assignment of external business partners or external only representatives to regulatory lists. Destroys those assignments that are no longer relevant once the retention period expires.
Property <i>Sold Quantities</i>	Data destruction object to destroy data of the property <i>Sold Quantities</i> that is assigned to business partner numbers and that is no longer relevant once the retention period expires.

For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Enterprise Business Applications](#) ► [R&D / Engineering](#) ► [Product Safety and Stewardship](#) ► [Product Safety \(EHS-SAF\)](#) ► [Data Destruction in Product Safety](#) ►.

## Integration: EoP Check for Customer Master and Vendor Master

In addition to deleting data of substance volume tracking processes, *Substance Volume Tracking* provides an end of purpose (EoP) check to support the blocking and deletion of personal data of customer master (customer master data) and vendor master (vendor master data) that have been entered in *Substance Volume Tracking*.

The EoP check for *Substance Volume Tracking* is integrated in the following ILM objects of *SAP ERP*:

- FI\_ACCRECV (customer master data)
- FI\_ACCPAYB (vendor master data)

### EoP Check for Customer Master and Vendor Master

The end of purpose (EoP) check that has been implemented in *Substance Volume Tracking* determines whether a certain **customer master** or a certain **vendor master** is used in **one** of the following tables:

- CCRCT\_OR (*EHS: Inc./Acc. Log - Data for Person Affected (Event)*)
- CCRCT\_CU (*EHS: Customer List - Header Data*)
- CCRCT\_SO (*EHS: Confirmed Sold Quantities*)
- CCRCT\_SOPL (*EHS: Planned Sold Quantities*)

Furthermore, the EoP check determines whether this business partner is still relevant for the business activities in *Substance Volume Tracking*.

If a customer master or a vendor master is assigned to a material as an external only representative or as an external customer, the system checks whether the business purpose has ended or is still in process. The EoP



check then reports the status message *No Business*, *Ongoing Business*, or *Business Complete* to the customer master or the vendor master.

### Process Flow: EoP Check for ERP Customer Master and ERP Vendor Master

You can determine the EoP check for ERP Customer Master and ERP Vendor Master that are used in *Substance Volume Tracking* as follows:

- Run transaction *ILM Policies* (IRMPOL) and enter the required residence policies for the customer master data and the vendor master data (ILM objects FI\_ACCPAYB and FI\_ACCRECV).
- Run transaction *Block Customer & Vendor Master Data* (CVP\_PRE\_EOP) to enable the end of purpose check function for the ERP customer master and the ERP vendor master (ERP\_CUST and ERP\_VEND).

For more information about the deletion of customer and vendor master data, see the Security Guide for SAP ERP on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/erp> under ► *SAP ERP Central Component Security Guide* ► *Data Protection* ► *Deletion of Personal Data* ►.

## 13.6.1.2.6.1.2 Deletion of Personal Data for Report Shipping

*SAP Information Lifecycle Management* (SAP ILM) supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data.

*Report Shipping* uses *SAP ILM* to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

### Process Flow: Data Blocking and Data Destruction

1. Before blocking and deleting data in *Report Shipping*, define the residence times and retention periods in *SAP Information Lifecycle Management* in transaction *ILM Policies* (IRMPOL) for the EHS\_PS\_REPHIS\_DESTRUCTION ILM object.
2. To block data that match the residence times, run the program RC1\_REPHIS\_BLOCK to block report shipping orders of status *Historical*, *Archived*, or *Rejected*.  
For more information, see the documentation of this program in the *ABAP: Program Execution* (transaction SA38).
3. To destroy data, proceed as described in the documentation of the data destruction object in *Report Shipping*.  
See section *Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality* for the relevant data destruction objects in *Report Shipping*.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

The following table shows the application object and the appropriate deletion functionality that is provided for *Report Shipping*.

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Report Shipping	Data destruction object to destroy report shipping orders with the status <i>Historical</i> , <i>Archived</i> , or <i>Rejected</i> that are no longer relevant once the retention period expires.

For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Enterprise Business Applications](#) ► [R&D / Engineering](#) ► [Product Safety and Stewardship](#) ► [Product Safety \(EHS-SAF\)](#) ► [Data Destruction in Product Safety](#) ►.

## Integration: EoP Check for Customer Master and Vendor Master

In addition to blocking and deleting data of report shipping processes, *Report Shipping* provides an end of purpose (EoP) check to support the blocking and deletion of personal data of customer master (customer master data) and vendor master (vendor master data) that have been entered in *Report Shipping*.

The EoP check for *Report Shipping* is integrated in the following ILM objects of *SAP ERP*:

- FI\_ACCRECV (customer master data)
- FI\_ACCPAYB (vendor master data)

### EoP Check for Customer Master and Vendor Master

The end of purpose (EoP) check that has been implemented in *Report Shipping* determines whether a certain **customer master** or **vendor master** is used in table CVDDH (*EHS: Report shipping orders*) and is therefore still relevant for business activities in *Report Shipping*.

If a customer master or a vendor master is used as a recipient in a report shipping order, the system checks whether the business purpose has ended or is still in process. The EoP check then reports the status message *No Business*, *Ongoing Business*, or *Business Complete* to the **customer master** or the **vendor master**.

### Process Flow: EoP Check for ERP Customer Master and ERP Vendor Master

You can determine the EoP check for ERP Customer Master and ERP Vendor Master that are used in *Report Shipping* as follows:

- Run transaction *ILM Policies* (IRMPOL) and enter the required residence policies for the customer master data and the vendor master data (ILM objects FI\_ACCPAYB and FI\_ACCRECV).
- Run transaction *Block Customer & Vendor Master Data* (CVP\_PRE\_EOP) to enable the end of purpose check function for the ERP customer master and the ERP vendor master (ERP\_CUST and ERP\_VEND).

For more information about the deletion of customer and vendor master data, see the Security Guide for SAP ERP on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/erp> under ► [SAP ERP Central Component Security Guide](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Deletion of Personal Data](#) ►.

## 13.6.1.2.6.1.3 Deletion of Personal Data for Report Management

*SAP Information Lifecycle Management (SAP ILM)* supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data.

*Report Management* uses *SAP ILM* to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following.

### Process Flow: Data Blocking and Data Destruction

1. Before blocking and deleting data in *Report Management*, define the residence times and retention periods in *SAP Information Lifecycle Management* in transaction *ILM Policies* (IRMPOL) for the EHS\_PS\_REPMAN\_DESTRUCTION ILM object.
2. To block data that match the residence times in *Report Management*, run program RC1\_REPHIS\_BLOCK to block the report shipping orders of a certain status.  
For more information, see the documentation of this program in the *ABAP: Program Execution* (transaction SA38).
3. To destroy data, proceed as described in the documentation of the data destruction object in *Report Management*.  
See section *Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality* for the relevant data destruction objects in *Report Management*.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

The following table shows the application object and the appropriate deletion functionality that is provided for *Report Management*.

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Report Management	Data destruction object to destroy inbound-reports with the status <i>Historical</i> or <i>Archived</i> that are no longer relevant once the retention period expires.

For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *R&D / Engineering* ► *Product Safety and Stewardship* ► *Product Safety (EHS-SAF)* ► *Data Destruction in Product Safety* .

## 13.6.1.2.6.1.4 Deletion of Personal Data for Global Label Management

*SAP Information Lifecycle Management (SAP ILM)* supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data.

*Global Label Management* uses *SAP ILM* to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following.

The data destruction for *Global Label Management* is integrated in the `FI_ACCRECV` (*customer master data*) ILM object of *SAP ERP*.

You use BAdI method `IF_EX_FI_ACCRECV_WRITE~DELETE` of BAdI implementation `EHS_LABELING_DPP` to delete customer-specific labels in table `CCGLT_CLBL` (*EHS: Customer-Specific Labels*) that are related to the customer master and the vendor master to be deleted.

Additionally, you have to set up program *Reorganize Print Requests and Change Documents* (`RCBGL_PRINTREQUEST_REORG`) to delete the relevant entries in tables `CCGLT_PRTREQ_HDR` (*EHS: Print Request Header Table*) and `CCGLT_PRTREQ_PAR` (*EHS: Print Request Parameters*).

### More Information

SAP Note [2327810](#) (Simplified data deletion based on SAP ILM in Global Label Management)

For more information about the deletion of customer and vendor master data, see the Security Guide for SAP ERP on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/erp> under ► *SAP ERP Central Component Security Guide* ► *Data Protection* ► *Deletion of Personal Data* ►.

## 13.6.1.2.6.2 Logging Changes

Personal data is subject to frequent changes. Therefore, for revision purposes or as a result of legal regulations, it may be necessary to track the changes that have been made to this data. When these changes are logged, you should be able to check which employee made which changes, the date and time, the previous value, and the current value.

It is also possible to analyze errors in this way.

### See Also

- For more information on change documents see the documentation at <http://help.sap.com/netweaver>. Choose the the relevant SAP NetWeaver version and open the following documentation:
  - Under *Application Help*, go to ► *SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View* ► *Application Server ABAP* ► *Other Services* ► *Services for Application Developers* ► *Change Documents* ►.

- Under *Security*, open the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* and go to ► *Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management* ► *Auditing and Logging* ►.
- See [2125662](#) 📄 for more information about superfluous data change logging defined for database tables.

## 13.6.1.2.6.2.1 Change Logging in Substance Volume Tracking

### Setting Up Change Logs for Substance Volume Tracking

*Substance Volume Tracking* processes personal data of only representatives for external and internal business partners. If any changes are made regarding these internal and external business partners, the system logs the following information on personal data:

- The user who has changed data
- Date and time of the change
- Change type
- Transaction of the data change
- Data origin
- Internal and external only representatives whose data have been changed
- Internal and external business partners whose data have been changed

You can set up the change logging for external and internal business partners in transaction *Maintain Profile Parameters* (RZ10) as follows:

1. Enter the name of the start profile or the system profile to be edited and select *Extended Maintenance* under *Edit Profile*.
2. Change the profile by entering the following::
  - *Parameter Name*: `rec/client`
  - *Parameter Value*: Enter the client of the system in which you want to log data.
3. Save and activate the profile.
4. Restart the application server.

The system now logs all changes of internal and external business partners, and internal and external only representatives that are made in table `CCRCT_OR` (*Material Business Partner Only Representative Assignment*) of *Substance Volume Tracking*.

All changes are logged in table `DBTABLOG`.

### Displaying Change Logs in Substance Volume Tracking

You can call up the change logs in transaction *Table History* (SCU3).

For more information see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *R&D* /

[Engineering](#) > [Product Safety and Stewardship](#) > [Product Safety \(EHS-SAF\)](#) > [Data Protection in Product Safety](#)  
> [Logging Changes in Substance Volume Tracking](#) >

## More Information

- For more information on logging changes in *Substance Volume Tracking*, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) > [Enterprise Business Applications](#) > [R&D / Engineering](#) > [Product Safety and Stewardship](#) > [Product Safety \(EHS-SAF\)](#) > [Data Protection in Product Safety](#) >
- See [2125662](#) 📄 for more information about superfluous data change logging defined for database tables.

### 13.6.1.2.7 Dispensable Functions with Impacts on Security

You can compile and display system information for Windows Wordprocessor Integration (WWI) as follows:

- You can display system information in the *WWI Monitor* (transaction CG5Z): In the menu, choose ► [Utilities](#) > [Test Server](#) >
- In WWI.INI, under [Global], enter as *DisableWwiServerInfo* the value 1. This prevents external access to the WWI system information (through the *WWI Server Monitor*, for example). The default value is 0.

### 13.6.1.2.8 Security for Additional Applications

#### Windows Authorization for Windows Wordprocessor Integration

Windows Wordprocessor Integration (WWI) requires a Windows user account that is used to run the WWI generation server services. This is because many printer settings and settings for Microsoft Word are user-specific.

As an abbreviation, the user account is called *WWI user*.

- Create a new Windows user. This user is used to execute the WWI generation server (WWI server). The user can be a local user or a domain user. We recommend creating a local user, for example, `WWI-USER`. Assign this user to the *Main users* group or the *Users* group. Use a password that does not expire.
- In Microsoft Windows Vista, in Microsoft Windows Server 2008 and higher releases, assign the WWI user to the administrators group.
- If the user is a domain user, ensure that the profile of the user is `local`.
- Check the security settings for the user that is used to execute the WWI server:
  - The user must have the *Log on as a service* authorization. In Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2003 and higher releases, also set this authorization for users of the administrators group. You can find this authorization in the Control Panel under ► [Administrative Tools](#) > [Local Security Policy](#) >

Navigate to ► [Local Policies](#) ► [User Rights Assignment](#) ►. Here, you assign the user privileges to the guideline [Log on as a service](#).

- Check the DCOM start authorization and access authorization for Microsoft Word using the DCOMCNFG . EXE configuration program. For more information, see the SAP Note [580607](#).
- Ensure that the user has write (change) authorization for the WWI root directory. We recommend using a local directory. The WWI work directory is configured in the [Specify Generation Servers](#) Customizing activity.
- Make sure that the Microsoft Windows TEMP directory exists. The TEMP directory is configured in Microsoft Windows under ► [Control Panel](#) ► [System](#) ► [Advanced](#) ► [Environment Variables](#) ►. There, check the user variables and system variables TMP and TEMP.
- Ensure that the user has write (change) authorization for the Microsoft Windows TEMP directory.

For further information, see SAP Note [580586](#).

## Windows Authorization for Expert

The Expert server service is run as a local system account.

## Windows Authorization for Administration Management Server

The Administration Management Server service is run as a local system account.

### 13.6.1.2.9 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Windows Wordprocessor Integration (WWI) and Expert log all processing information in the Windows Application Event Log. A separate Security Log for WWI and Expert does not exist. For security relevant information from Windows, check the Windows Security Event Log.

For more information on maintaining a secure environment in Windows servers, check the [Microsoft Windows Security Guide](#) and the [Microsoft Security Compliance Manager](#).

## Tracking Configuration Changes

To track configuration changes of WWI and Expert Server Administration that are executed by [WWI and Expert Server Administration](#) (transaction CGSADM), enable the security audit log in the [Security Audit](#) (transaction SM19).

Relevant audit log numbers:

- DUA – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B created

- DUB – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B started
- DUC – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B stopped
- DUD – EHS-SADM: Service &A on client &B stopped
- DUE – EHS-SADM: Configuration of service &A on client &B was changed
- DUF – EHS-SADM: File &A from client &B transferred
- DUG – EHS-SADM: File &A transferred to client &B

For more information on configuration changes, change documents are used. Creating change documents in *WWI and Expert Server Administration* is enabled by default. To switch off the creation of change documents, set the environment parameter `CGSADM_NO_CHANGE_DOCS` in the *Specify Environment Parameters* Customizing activity to **X**.

To display change documents, start the program `RSSCD110` (Display change documents (cross-client)) and choose object class `ESSADM`.

## Tracking Configuration with Windows Features

To track WWI and Expert configuration changes, enable auditing in the Windows file system. For more information on Access Control and Security Auditing, see the Windows Help.

Before setting up auditing for files and folders, enable object access auditing by defining auditing policy settings for the object access event category.

To define or modify auditing policy settings for an event category for your local computer, proceed as follows:

1. Choose ► *Control Panel* ► *Administrative Tools* ► *Local Security Policy*. ►
2. In the console tree, go to ► *Local Policies* ► *Audit Policy*. ►
3. In the results pane, choose *Audit object access* to enable the auditing policy settings.

To configure auditing settings for a local file or folder, proceed as follows:

1. Open *Windows Explorer*.
2. In the context menu of the file or folder that you want to audit, choose *Properties* and go to the *Security* tab page.
3. Choose *Edit*, and then choose *Advanced*.
4. In the *Advanced Security Settings* go to the *Auditing* tab page.

To configure auditing settings for a registry key:

1. Open *Registry Editor*.
2. Go to the registry key.
3. In the context menu of the registry key that you want to audit, choose *Permissions*.
4. On the *Security* tab page, choose *Advanced*.
5. In the *Advanced Security Settings*, choose the *Auditing* tab page.



## Windows Wordprocessor Integration (WWI)

For WWI, the following files and folders must be covered by change auditing:

- WWI.INI
- SAPRFC.INI
- GRAPHICS
- Registry key: HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT\WWIDOCUMENT

## Expert

For Expert, the following files and folders must be covered by change auditing:

- SAPRFC.INI
- RULES
- Registry key: HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\TechniData\EHS-AddOns\Instances

For 32bit systems, omit Wow6432Node

- Registry key: HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\TechniData\EHS-AddOns\System

For 32bit systems, omit Wow6432Node

## 13.6.2 Enterprise Portfolio and Project Management

### 13.6.2.1 Project System

#### 13.6.2.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data

##### Use

The `Project System` might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Project System (PS)	The archiving objects are used for archiving and deleting operative objects and standard networks in the Project System	Archiving Objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PS_PROJECT</li> <li>PS_PLAN</li> </ul>

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Project System (PS)	EoP	An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. This check is determined based on the date on which the network activity is set to the closed status. For more information, refer to sections <b>Process Flow</b> and <b>Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion</b> .

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Project System (PS)	WUC	<p>A where-used check is a simple check to ensure data integrity in case of potential blocking. The WUC in application Project System checks whether any dependent data exists for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A certain customer in RSADD, VRSRADD_CN, COFP, COER, QMSM, QMUR, QMEL, IHPA.</li> <li>• A certain vendor in RSADD, VRSRADD_CN, AFVC, VSAFVC_CN, RESB, VS_RESB_CN, COFP, QMSM, QMUR, QMEL, IHPA.</li> <li>• A certain contact person in QMSM, QMUR, IHPA.</li> <li>• A certain cBP in ADO1DLI, PSACL_TAB.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>If dependent data exists, that is, if the data is still required for business activities, the system does not block the corresponding customer, vendor, or cBP. If you still want to block data, the dependent data must be deleted by using the existing archiving and deletion tools or by using any other customer-specific solution.</p> </div>

## Process Flow

1. Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
3. You do the following:
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: CA\_BUPA).
  - Run transaction BUPA\_PRE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and vendor master (ILM objects: FI\_ACCPAYB, FI\_ACCRECV, FI\_ACCKNVK).
  - Run transaction CVP\_PRE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the customer master and vendor master.

4. Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUF_REQ_UNBLK`.
5. If you have the needed authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction `BUFA_PRE_EOP` and `CVP_UNBLOCK_MD`.
6. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of PS.

For information about how to configure blocking and deletion for PS, see [Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion](#).

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of `business partner master data` in Customizing for `Cross-Application Components` under `Data Protection`.

- Define the settings for authorization management under [Data Protection > Authorization Management](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for [Cross-Application Components](#) under [Data Protection > Blocking and Unblocking of Data > Business Partner](#).
- You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer and vendor master data in Customizing for:
  - [Logistics - General > Business Partner > Deletion of Customer and Supplier Master Data](#)

## 13.6.2.2 Commercial Project Management

### 13.6.2.2.1 Authorizations

The following section provides an overview of the authorizations that apply to Commercial Project Management.

Based on your business needs, you can choose one of the following component combinations as a deployment option:

Deployment Option	Project Workspace	Project Cost and Revenue Planning	Project Issue and Change Management	SAP BusinessObjects Analysis for Microsoft Office
Option 1	x	x	x	x
Option 2	x	x		x
Option 3	x		x	x
Option 4	x			x

The following standard roles can be used as templates to build your own roles, based on the option you have deployed.

Standard Roles

## Commercial Project Management

Role	Description
SAP_BPR_CPD_USER_1	Provides <i>Display</i> authorizations for Commercial Project Management.

## Project Workspace

Role	Description
SAP_SR_CPD_PWS_USER_1	Provides <i>Display</i> authorizations for Commercial Project Management.
SAP_SR_CPD_PM_1	Allows the creation, change, and display of commercial projects and financial plans and provides authorizations to users working as project managers.
SAP_SR_CPD_PICM_PM_1	Provides <i>Create</i> , <i>Change</i> , and <i>Display</i> authorizations for objects in Project Issue and Change Management.
SAP_BR_PRJTEAMMEMBER_COMMPRJ	Allows team members to use the following Fiori app: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Commercial Projects: Activities</li></ul>
SAP_BR_PROJECTMGR_COMMPRJ	Allows project managers to use the following Fiori apps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Commercial Projects: Activities</li><li>Commercial Projects: Multiproject Overview</li><li>Commercial Projects: Single-Project Overview</li><li>Commercial Projects: Billing and Receivables Overview</li><li>Commercial Projects: Procurement Overview</li></ul>

## Project Cost and Revenue Planning

Role	Description
SAP_SR_CPD_PFP_USER_1	Provides <i>Display</i> authorizations for objects relevant to Project Cost and Revenue Planning.
SAP_SR_CPD_PM_1	Allows the creation, change, and display of commercial projects and financial plans. The role provides authorizations to users working as project managers.
SAP_SR_CPD_PICM_PM_1	Provides <i>Create</i> , <i>Change</i> , and <i>Display</i> authorizations for objects in Project Issue and Change Management.

## Project Issue and Change Management

Role	Description
SAP_SR_CPD_PICM_USER_1	Provides <i>Display</i> authorizations for objects in Project Issue and Change Management.
SAP_SR_CPD_PICM_PM_1	Provides <i>Create</i> , <i>Change</i> , and <i>Display</i> authorizations for objects in Project Issue and Change Management.

## 13.6.2.2.2 Data Storage Security

In Commercial Project Management, the header data of the financial plan is stored in the database tables of Project Cost and Revenue Planning.

- Data is saved in the database tables of Project Cost and Revenue Planning when the user explicitly chooses the Save pushbutton on the financial planning screen.
- The planning data is stored in the BW InfoCube and can be transferred to the S4CORE database tables by the user.
- Data is saved in the BW InfoCube when the user explicitly chooses the *Save Data* pushbutton in the Analysis Office workbook.
- Data is saved in S4CORE database tables when the user explicitly chooses the *Transfer Data* pushbutton on the financial planning screen.

## 13.6.2.2.3 Data Archiving

### 13.6.2.2.3.1 Archiving Commercial Projects

You can use *Archiving Object for Commercial Projects* (/CPD/PWS\_M) to archive commercial projects that are no longer needed. Archiving allows you to reduce the load on your database.

Structure

#### Tables

Tables for Commercial Projects

Table	Description
/CPD/S_MP_HDR_K	Commercial Project Header
/CPD/D_MP_HDR_S	Commercial Project Header Short Text
/CPD/D_MP_ITEM	Commercial Project Structure Elements
/CPD/D_MP_MEMBER	Project Member
/CPD/D_MP_REP_AT	Reporting Attribute Node
/CPD/D_MP_RESP	Responsibility Node
/CPD/D_MP_STATUS	Status Header
/CPD/D_MP_ST_ARV	Table for Status Area Version
/CPD/D_MP_ST_HRA	Status Header Area
/CPD/D_MP_ST_VHR	Status Versions

Table	Description
/CPD/D_MP_TEAM	Team
/CPD/D_MP_TEAM_M	Team Member Subnode
/CPD/D_MP_TEAM_R	Team Role Subnodes

## Programs

The following programs are available for /CPD/PWS\_M:

- **Preprocessing:** /CPD/PWS\_ARCH\_MP\_PRE  
This program makes the following checks for commercial projects:  
If both these conditions are satisfied, the program sets the archiving status of the commercial project to Archiving in Process (O2).
- **Write:** /CPD/PWS\_ARCH\_MP\_WRITE  
This program checks if an object has the status Archiving in Process (O2). If the status is O2, the program archives the object to the archive file.
- **Delete:** /CPD/PWS\_ARCH\_MP\_DELETE  
This program verifies archived files against the data in the database, and deletes all objects in the database that have been successfully archived.

### Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)

Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) allows you to define rules for storing archived business data, set legal holds on stored data, and destroy the data in adherence to legal requirements.

The ILM object CPD\_PWS\_M is available for commercial projects and this ILM object allows you to model retention rules based on the following fields:

- **Condition Fields**
  - Archiving Status
  - Commercial Project Type
  - Organization
- **Time Reference Fields**
  - End Date

You can use the transaction IRMPOL to define policies and rules for ILM.

### Prerequisites

The prerequisites for *Retention Management* are:

- You have activated the business function ILM
- You have assigned the following objects to an audit area:
  - CPD\_PWS\_M

### More Information

To change the residence time, you can make settings in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [► Processes and Tools for Enterprise Applications](#) > [Reusable Objects and Functions for BOPF Environment](#) > [Archiving Adapter](#) > [Maintain BO-Specific Residence Periods](#) >.

## 13.6.2.2.3.2 Archiving Financial Plans

You can use *Archiving Object for Financial Plans* (/CPD/PFP\_P) to archive financial plans that are no longer needed. Archiving allows you to reduce the load on your database.

Structure

### Tables

Tables for Financial Plans

Table	Description
/CPD/D_PFP_PH	Plan Header
/CPD/D_PFP_PV	Plan Version
/CPD/D_PFP_PS	Plan Structure
/CPD/D_PFP_PER	Plan Exchange Rate
/CPD/D_PFP_PHTXT	Plan Header Text
/BOBF/D_ATF_RT	Attachment Root
/BOBF/D_ATF_DO	Attachment Document
/BOBF/D_TXCROOT	Text Collection Root
/BOBF/D_TXCTXT	Text Collection Text
/BOBF/D_TXCCON	Text Collection Text Content

### Programs

The following programs are available for /CPD/PFP\_P:

- Preprocessing: /CPD/PFP\_ARCH\_PH\_PRE  
This program checks whether a financial plan is ready for archiving. A financial plan is ready for archiving when:
  - Related financial plan versions have a status that indicates completion.
  - All related change requests and change request alternatives are ready for archiving, with the status as Archiving in Process (O2). This is only applicable if you are also using *Project Issue and Change Management*.
  - The financial plan has a status that indicates completion.

If the object is ready, this program sets the status as Archiving in Process (O2) in the database.

#### i Note

After the preprocessing program has run, the objects marked for archiving are no longer made available on the UI. The program also deletes corresponding data from the real-time InfoCube (/CPD/PFP\_R01) and transfers the data into the InfoCube for archiving (/CPD/PFP\_C01).

- Write: /CPD/PFP\_ARCH\_PH\_WRITE



This program checks if an object has the status Archiving in Process (O2). If the status is O2, the program archives the object to the archive file.

- Delete: /CPD/PFP\_ARCH\_PH\_DELETE

This program verifies archived files against the data in the database; and deletes all objects in the database that have been successfully archived.

#### Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)

Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) allows you to define rules for storing archived business data, set legal holds on stored data, and destroy the data in adherence to legal requirements.

The ILM object CPD\_PFP\_P is available for financial plans and this ILM object allows you to model retention rules based on the following fields:

- Condition Fields
  - Plan Scenario ID
  - Plan Type ID
  - Archiving Status
- Time Reference Fields
  - End Date

You can use the transaction IRMPOL to define policies and rules for ILM.

#### Prerequisites

The prerequisites for *Retention Management* are:

- You have activated the business function ILM
- You have assigned the following objects to an audit area:
  - CPD\_PFP\_P

#### More Information

To change the residence time, you can make settings in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [► Processes and Tools for Enterprise Applications](#) ► [Reusable Objects and Functions for BOPF Environment](#) ► [Archiving Adapter](#) ► [Maintain BO-Specific Residence Periods](#) ►.

## 13.6.2.2.3.3 Archiving Issues and Change Requests

You can use *Archiving Object for Issues and Change Requests* (/PICM/BO\_I) to archive issues and change requests that are no longer needed. Archiving allows you to reduce the load on your database.

#### Structure

#### Tables

Tables for Issues and Change Requests

Table	Description
/BOBF/D_ATF_DO	Document node of attachment folder
/BOBF/D_ATF_RT	Root nodes of attachment folder

Table	Description
/BOBF/D_TXCCON	Text content
/BOBF/D_TXCROOT	Root node of text collection
/BOBF/D_TXCTXT	Text
/IAM/D_I_ATT	Attachment
/IAM/D_I_DATE	Date
/IAM/D_I_DESC	Description node
/IAM/D_I_DESC_TX	Language-dependent description text node
/IAM/D_I_OBJ_REF	Issue reference node
/IAM/D_I_OREF_DT	Language-dependent, reference, description text node
/IAM/D_I_PARTY	Party node
/IAM/D_I_QTY	Quantity
/IAM/D_I_ROOT	Root node

## Programs

The following programs are available for /PICM/BO\_I:

- **Preprocessing:** /PICM/ARCH\_ISSUE\_CR\_ROOT\_PRE  
This program checks if an object is ready for archiving by verifying the following conditions:
  - The adherence to the specified residence time
  - The availability of activities for the object
If the object is ready, this program sets the status as Archiving in Process (02) in the database. After the preprocessing program has run, the objects marked for archiving are no longer made available on the UI.
- **Write:** /PICM/ARCH\_ISSUE\_CR\_ROOT\_WRITE  
This program checks if an object has the status Archiving in Process (02). If the status is 02, the program archives the object to the archive file.
- **Delete:** /PICM/ARCH\_ISSUE\_CR\_ROOT\_DEL  
This program verifies archived files against the data in the database; and deletes all objects in the database that have been successfully archived..

### More Information

To change the residence time, you can make settings in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [► Processes and Tools for Enterprise Applications](#) ► [Reusable Objects and Functions for BOPF Environment](#) ► [Archiving Adapter](#) ► [Maintain BO-Specific Residence Periods](#) ►.

## 13.6.2.2.3.4 Archiving Activities

You can use *Archiving Object for Activities* (/PICM/BO\_A) to archive activities that are no longer needed. Archiving allows you to reduce the load on your database.

Structure

### Tables

Tables for Activities

Table	Description
/BOBF/D_ATF_DO	Document node of attachment folder
/BOBF/D_ATF_RT	Root nodes of attachment folder
/BOBF/D_TXCCON	Text content
/BOBF/D_TXCROOT	Root node of text collection
/BOBF/D_TXCTXT	Text
/IAM/D_ACT_ATT	Attachment
/IAM/D_ACT_DATE	Date
/IAM/D_ACT_DESC	Description node
/IAM/D_ACT_DTXT	Language-dependent description text node
/IAM/D_ACT_FOA	Follow-up action
/IAM/D_ACT_FOA_P	Follow-up action parameter
/IAM/D_ACT_OBJ_RF	Object reference
/IAM/D_ACT_OREF_DT	Language-dependent description texts
/IAM/D_ACT_PARTY	Party
/IAM/D_ACT_QTY	Activity quantity

### Programs

The following programs are available for /PICM/BO\_A:

- **Preprocessing:** /PICM/ARCH\_ACTIVITY\_ROOT\_PPROC  
This program checks if an object is ready for archiving by verifying the adherence to the specified residence time. If the object is ready, this program sets the status as Archiving in Process (02) in the database. After the preprocessing program has run, the objects marked for archiving are no longer made available on the UI.
- **Write:** /PICM/ARCH\_ACTIVITY\_ROOT\_WRITE  
This program checks if an object has the status Archiving in Process (02). If the status is 02, the program archives the object to the archive file.

- **Delete:** /PICM/ARCH\_ACTIVITY\_ROOT\_DEL

This program verifies archived files against the data in the database; and deletes all objects in the database that have been successfully archived.

More Information

To change the residence time, you can make settings in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [► Processes and Tools for Enterprise Applications ► Reusable Objects and Functions for BOPF Environment ► Archiving Adapter ► Maintain BO-Specific Residence Periods ►](#).

## 13.6.2.2.3.5 Archiving Checklists Headers and Items

You can use the archiving objects *Checklist Headers* (/CPD/MC\_H) and *Checklist Items* (/CPD/MC\_I) to archive checklist headers and items that are no longer needed. Archiving allows you to reduce the load on your database.

Structure

### Tables

Tables for Checklist Headers

Table	Description
/BOBF/D_ATF_DO	Document node of attachment folder
/BOBF/D_ATF_RT	Root nodes of attachment folder
/BOBF/D_TXCCON	Text content
/BOBF/D_TXCROOT	Root node of text collection
/BOBF/D_TXCTXT	Text
/IAM/D_I_ATT	Attachment
/IAM/D_I_DATE	Date
/IAM/D_I_DESC	Description node
/IAM/D_I_DESC_TX	Language-dependent description text node
/IAM/D_I_OBJ_REF	Issue reference node
/IAM/D_I_OREF_DT	Language-dependent, reference, description text node
/IAM/D_I_PARTY	Party node
/IAM/D_I_QTY	Quantity
/IAM/D_I_ROOT	Root node

## Tables for Checklist Items

Table	Description
/BOBF/D_ATF_DO	Document node of attachment folder
/BOBF/D_ATF_RT	Root nodes of attachment folder
/BOBF/D_TXCCON	Text content
/BOBF/D_TXCROOT	Root node of text collection
/BOBF/D_TXCTXT	Text
/IAM/D_ACT_ATT	Attachment
/IAM/D_ACT_DATE	Date
/IAM/D_ACT_DESC	Description node
/IAM/D_ACT_DTXT	Language-dependent description text node
/IAM/D_ACT_FOA	Follow-up action
/IAM/D_ACT_FOA_P	Follow-up action parameter
/IAM/D_ACT_OBJ_RF	Object reference
/IAM/D_ACT_OREF_DT	Language-dependent description texts
/IAM/D_ACT_PARTY	Party
/IAM/D_ACT_QTY	Activity quantity

## Programs

The following programs are available for /CPD/MC\_H:

- **Preprocessing:** /CPD/ARCH\_MC\_HEADER\_PRE  
This program checks if an object is ready for archiving by verifying the following conditions:
  - The adherence to the specified residence time
  - The availability of activities for the object
 If the object is ready, this program sets the status as Archiving in Process (02) in the database. After the preprocessing program has run, the objects marked for archiving are no longer made available on the UI.
- **Write:** /CPD/ARCH\_MC\_HEADER\_WRITE  
This program checks if an object has the status Archiving in Process (02). If the status is 02, the program archives the object to the archive file.
- **Delete:** /CPD/ARCH\_MC\_HEADER\_DELETE  
This program verifies archived files against the data in the database; and deletes all objects in the database that have been successfully archived..

The following programs are available for /CPD/MC\_I:

- **Preprocessing:** /CPD/ARCH\_MC\_ITEM\_PRE

This program checks if an object is ready for archiving by verifying the adherence to the specified residence time. If the object is ready, this program sets the status as Archiving in Process (O2) in the database. After the preprocessing program has run, the objects marked for archiving are no longer made available on the UI.

- Write: /CPD/ARCH\_MC\_ITEM\_WRITE  
This program checks if an object has the status Archiving in Process (O2). If the status is O2, the program archives the object to the archive file.
- Delete: /CPD/ARCH\_MC\_IEM\_DELETE  
This program verifies archived files against the data in the database; and deletes all objects in the database that have been successfully archived.

### Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)

Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) allows you to define rules for storing archived business data, set legal holds on stored data, and destroy the data in adherence to legal requirements.

The ILM objects CPD\_MC\_H and CPD\_MC\_I are available for checklist headers and items respectively, and these ILM objects allow you to model retention rules based on the following fields:

- Condition Field
  - APPLICATION
- Time Reference Fields
  - Last Changed On

#### i Note

The date of the last change of the checklist headers and items is considered in the time reference field.

#### i Note

When you create retention rules for a checklist item, ensure that the retention time specified does not exceed the retention time specified for the parent (checklist header).

You can use the transaction IRMPOL to define policies and rules for ILM.

#### Prerequisites

The prerequisites for *Retention Management* are:

- You have activated the business function ILM
- You have assigned the following objects to an audit area:
  - CPD\_MC\_H
  - CPD\_MC\_I

#### More Information

To change the residence time, you can make settings in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [► Processes and Tools for Enterprise Applications ► Reusable Objects and Functions for BOPF Environment ► Archiving Adapter ► Maintain BO-Specific Residence Periods ►](#).

## 13.6.2.2.4 Deletion of Personal Data

The Commercial Project Management applications might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data.

Project Workspace

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Function

Application	Detailed Description	Deletion Function
Project Workspace	Project Workspace stores personal information of business partners for the Team function.	The ILM-enabled deletion program for commercial projects: /CPD/PWS_ARCH_MP_DELETE

### Relevant Function Modules

Application	Function Module	Description
<a href="#">▶ Project Workspace ▶ Risk Management ▶</a>	/CPD/BUPA_EOP_CHECK	You can use this API to check the retention period of business partners.
<a href="#">▶ Project Workspace ▶ Risk Management ▶</a>	/CPD/RM_BUPA_EVENT_ARCH1	You can use this API to archive business partners.
<a href="#">▶ Project Workspace ▶ Risk Management ▶</a>	/CPD/RM_BUPA_EVENT_DELETE1	You can use this API to delete business partners.
<a href="#">Project Workspace</a>	/CPD/PWS_WS_BUPA_EOP_CHECK	You can use this function module for the end of purpose check.

### Relevant Programs

Application	Program	Description
Project Workspace	/CPD/R_DPP_CONTACT_PERSON_S4H	<p>This program is relevant for contact persons who have been added using the <i>Create Contact</i> feature in the <i>Define Commercial Project Types</i> view in Customizing for <a href="#">▶ Commercial Project Management ▶ Master Data ▶ Commercial Project ▶ Make Settings for Commercial Projects ▶</a>.</p> <p>When a contact person leaves a company, to comply with data privacy and protection rules, you can use this program to identify all the projects that this person is assigned to; and then</p>

Application	Program	Description
		proceed to delete the contact from all projects in one go.

#### Project Cost and Revenue Planning

The Project Cost and Revenue Planning application (CA-CPD-FP) does not use SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data since the data required for transactional purposes is stored in a BW InfoCube.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Function

Application	Detailed Description	Deletion Function
Project Cost and Revenue Planning	Project Cost and Revenue Planning stores personal information of business partners only when resources are planned together with SAP Multiresource Scheduling (MRS). This information is then stored in a BW InfoCube, for real-time planning.	The deletion program /CPD/PFP_EMP_DATA_CONSISTENCY checks the HR master and delete information from the InfoCube, for employee records that are not found in the HR master.

#### Project Issue and Change Management

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Function

Application	Detailed Description	Deletion Function
Project Issue and Change Management	Project Issue and Change Management stores personal information of business partners for the Partner function.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The ILM-enabled deletion program for issues and change requests: /PICM/ARCH_ISSUE_CR_ROOT_DEL</li> <li>The ILM-enabled deletion program for activities: /PICM/ARCH_ACTIVITY_ROOT_DEL</li> <li>Function module to check (before deletion) if business partner is used in the application: /PICM/BUPA_EVENT_DELE1</li> </ul>

### Relevant Function Modules

Application	Function Module	Description
Project Issue and Change Management	/PICM/BUPA_EOP_CHECK	You can use this function module for the end of purpose check.

## 13.6.2.2.5 Protection of Data Stored in BW InfoCube

Project Cost and Revenue Planning uses embedded BW technology and the BW InfoCube stores personal data of customers and employees.



The customer InfoObject (/CPD/CUSTOMER) is an attribute of the commercial project InfoObject (/CPD/MPID); and the commercial project is an attribute of the financial plan InfoObject (/CPD/FPOID). The master data of the customer InfoObject is updated from the transactional screens of Commercial Project Management. To address the exclusion of customers' personal data, which has been marked for End of Purpose (EoP), the HANA calculation view CV\_CUSTOMER (package: sap.cpm4h.pfp) performs a join of the commercial project header and the customer master data table (KNA1) to ensure that masking is done using the CVP\_XBLCK flag.

The master data of employees is used in the SAP BW InfoObject (/CPD/FPERID), from SAP HCM for SAP S/4HANA, using the HANA calculation view CV\_EMPLOYEE. The business partner End of Purpose (EoP) is fetched from the CDS view I\_EMPLOYEE to address the exclusion of employees' personal data that has been marked for End of Purpose. The system uses the BW InfoObject /CPD/EMP\_ACTV to handle inactive employees so that they are not available with the financial planning application of Commercial Project Management.

You can use the report /CPD/PFP\_PERSONAL\_PROJECT\_LIST to display to logged-in users the business objects (commercial projects and financial plans) where their individual personal data is used. The report allows employees to check usage of their own personal data across commercial projects.

For more information of the archiving concept and the objects that cover the erasure requirements of personal data, see the relevant chapters in Data Archiving.

#### **i Note**

You must configure the archiving concept and objects according to regional laws.

For more information, see Customizing for Commercial Project Management:

- [▶ Master Data ▶ Define End of Purpose for Personal Data ▶](#)
- [▶ Project Cost and Revenue Planning ▶ Information on Personal Data Protection ▶](#)
- [▶ Project Issue and Change Management ▶ Define End of Purpose for Personal Data ▶](#)

## **13.6.2.2.6 Logging of Changes**

Commercial Project Management provides change logging to audit changes to key fields in the projects:

In Project Workspace, the system logs changes to certain information in master projects. Each log contains information such as the fields that were changed, the old and new values of the field, the user who changed the information, the type of change, and the time and date when the change was made.

You can now view change logs for the following:

- Master project header
- Contact person
- Risk
- Checklist activity

You can also control change logging using the Business Add-In BAdI: Control of Change Log Output. For more information, see Customizing for SAP Commercial Project Management --> Project Workspace --> Business Add-Ins.

Project Cost and Revenue Planning allows you to view the changes made in a financial plan. You can choose the Document History pushbutton, on the Financial Plan screen, to view this change log.

You can also control change logging using the Business Add-In BAdI: Control of Change Log Output. For more information, see Customizing for SAP Commercial Project Management --> Project Cost and Revenue Planning --> Business Add-Ins.

Project Issue and Change Management allows you to view the changes made in an issue or change request. You can choose the Document History pushbutton, on the Issue or Change Request screens, to view this change log.

You can also control change logging using the Business Add-In BAdI: Control of Change Log Output. For more information, see Customizing for SAP Commercial Project Management --> Project Issue and Change Management --> Business Add-Ins.

### 13.6.2.2.7 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

The Project Cost and Revenue Planning application of Commercial Project Management uses the tracing functions of SAP BusinessObjects Analysis for Microsoft Office (AO) to trace actions performed in the planning workbook (AO). You can also activate a trace file for Project Cost and Revenue Planning using the [Activate Tracing](#) button on the [Financial Planning](#) ribbon. Details of the items are recorded in the trace file (CACPDFP\_TRACE\_LOG.log). Note that the file does not record user-specific personal information such as user name or IP address.

For information about tracing related to Analysis Office, see [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_BUSINESSOBJECTS\\_ANALYSIS\\_OFFICE](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_BUSINESSOBJECTS_ANALYSIS_OFFICE) ► [Installation, Configuration, Security and Administration](#) ► [Administrator Guide](#) ►.

### 13.6.2.2.8 Other Security-Relevant Information

Before you use the digitally-signed SAP BusinessObjects Analysis for Microsoft Office (AO) workbooks delivered by Commercial Project Management, you must follow these steps:

#### ⚠ Caution

These settings are valid if you want to use the workbooks in a secure way by only enabling digitally-signed macros. However, if you use custom workbooks or make any changes and save it back to the standard, you must enable all macros.

1. Launch Microsoft Excel
  1. Go to ► [File](#) ► [Options](#) ► [Trust Center Settings](#) ► [Macro Settings](#) ►
  2. Choose [Disable all macros except digitally signed macros](#)
  3. Mark the [Trust access to the VBA project object model](#) checkbox
2. Launch the digitally-signed workbook and implement the following steps to add the certificate as a trusted publisher:
  1. A security warning is show in ► [File](#) ► [Info](#) ► [Enable Control](#) ►

2. Select *Advanced Options*
3. In the next dialog box, select *Trust all documents from this publisher*

#### **i** Note

Adding the certificate is a one-time activity

3. Follow these steps to change the default system in the workbook:
  1. Go to ► *File* ► *Commercial Project* ► *Settings* ►
  2. In the dialog box, choose *Platform*
  3. Choose *Replace System*
  4. Choose your relevant system in the *Replace by System* column
  5. Save the workbook (with the correct standard workbook name) in the relevant system

## 13.6.2.3 SAP Portfolio and Project Management

### 13.6.2.3.1 Authorizations

#### Authorizations

In Project Management and Portfolio Management, authorizations are controlled in the following ways:

- ABAP authorization objects and roles  
This is the standard method for controlling access to transactions and programs in an SAP ABAP system. Authorizations are combined in an authorization profile that is associated with a role. User administrators can then assign the corresponding roles via the user master record, so that the user can access the appropriate transactions for his or her tasks.
- Access control lists  
These allow you to add another level of security by controlling authorization at object level. For example, you can control who has authorization to change a particular project definition. You can define the menu options in the navigation area using portal content adjustments or PFCG role Customizing.
- Roles for SAP Fiori apps  
To use SAP Fiori Apps, users must be assigned to roles. These roles define which apps are displayed to the user.

In **Project Management only**, you can use the following additional authorization mechanisms:

- System administrators can grant access to objects by choosing ► *Portfolio and Project Administration* ► *Project Authorization Administration* ► in the application. This is an exception to the normal process and is only used if the administrator of the object is not available due to illness, for example. The system sends the “new” and “old” administrators an e-mail to inform them of the new authorization holder. For more information, see the *Granting Administration Authorization for an Object* section of the Configuration Guide for SAP Portfolio and Project Management.
- System administrators can assign PFCG roles in Customizing for SAP Portfolio and Project Management under ► *Common Functions* ► *Define Superuser Authorizations* ►. This ensures that the maintained PFCG roles with the selected authorization will be automatically assigned to the corresponding project definition.

### Authorizations regarding BAPIs, reports, and (RFC-enabled) function modules:

In SAP Portfolio and Project Management, multiple BAPIs, reports and (RFC-enabled) function modules are available to create, read, change, edit, update, and delete the data of SAP Portfolio and Project Management. Additionally, via (RFC-enabled) function modules and reports data is read from the SAP S/4HANA system. Therefore, using these BAPIs, reports, and function modules access to and manipulation of Portfolio and Project Management data as well as read access to SAP S/4HANA data is possible. Thus, the authorization for using these BAPIs, reports, and function modules (via transactions, for example), should be restricted to users who are intended to have these authorizations and the corresponding access to data.

### Authorizations regarding search results

You can use the BAdI `BADI_DPR_SEARCH` to modify search results. You can filter the result set implementing this BAdI depending on the specified search helps which exist for each Portfolio and Project Management object. Thus, you can, for example, hide all results for which the user does not have read authorization from the result list. In the standard, these results are displayed in the result list, but the user cannot open or display these objects.

## Use

SAP Portfolio and Project Management uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the Security Guide for SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA also apply to SAP Portfolio and Project Management.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PFCG`) on the AS ABAP.

You can maintain the following role authorizations in Project Management and Portfolio Management using the SAP Profile Generator.

The following `PFCG` roles of SAP Portfolio and Project Management include authorizations to start the Web Dynpro ABAP applications (authorization check `S_START`) for Project Management and Portfolio Management:

- `SAP_CPR_USER`
- `SAP_XRPM_USER`

For details see the particular roles in transaction `PFCG` and choose [▶ Authorizations ▶ Display Authorization Data ▶ Cross-application Authorization Objects ▶ Start Authorization Check for TADIR Objects ▶](#).

SAP recommends to adapt custom-specific roles accordingly.

## Project Management Roles

The following single roles are delivered with Project Management:

Role	Authorization
SAP_CPR_PROJECT_ADMINISTRATOR	Create projects (project definitions).
SAP_CPR_TEMPLATE_ADMINISTRATOR	Create, change, read, and delete all templates in Project Management.
SAP_CPR_USER	Use Project Management, but no authorization to perform any activities in a particular project. To do this users need project-specific authorizations, which can be distributed either directly via ACLs or through their assignment to a role.  This role must be included in every Project Management composite role.
SAP_CPR_BCV_USER	Project-Management-specific authorization for using BCV content in resource management.
SAP_BPR_PPM	SAP Portfolio and Project Management PFCG role for NW BC

The following composite roles are delivered with Project Management:

Role	Authorization
SAP_CPR_DECISION_MAKER	Decision maker in Project Management. Contains the role SAP_CPR_USER.
SAP_CPR_INTERESTED	Interested party in Project Management. Contains the role SAP_CPR_USER.
SAP_CPR_MEMBER	Team member in Project Management. Contains the role SAP_CPR_USER.
SAP_CPR_PROJECT_LEAD	Project manager in Project Management. Contains the role SAP_CPR_PROJECT_ADMINISTRATOR and SAP_CPR_USER
SAP_CPR_BCV_USER_COMP	Composite role containing the general role for using BCV (SAP_BCV_USER) and the Project Management specific role (SAP_CPR_BCV_USER).
SAP_CPR_TEMPLATE_RESPONSIBLE	Project Management template responsible. Contains the roles SAP_CPR_TEMPLATE_ADMINISTRATOR and SAP_CPR_USER
SAP_CPR_RESOURCE_MANAGER	Resource manager in Project Management. Contains the role SAP_CPR_USER.

You can use these SAP standard roles or create your own. For more information, see the [Activating Single Roles for Project Management](#) section and the [Creating Roles for the Project-Specific Authorization Checks](#) section of the Configuration Guide for SAP Portfolio and Project Management.

## Portfolio Management Roles

For Portfolio Management, the following roles are available:

Roles	Authorization
SAP_XRPM_ADMINISTRATOR	Super user authorization in Portfolio Management. Used to create new portfolios. This role also provides the assigned user full access to all Portfolio Management business objects in the system.
SAP_XRPM_USER	General user in Portfolio Management. All users should be assigned this role. Has general authorizations to use Portfolio Management, but no specific object access. This access must be assigned to the user via ACLs.
SAP_RPM_BCV_USER	Portfolio Management specific authorization for BCV content in Portfolio Management
SAP_RPM_BCV_USER_COMP	Composite role containing the general role for using BCV (SAP_BCV_USER) and the Portfolio Management specific role (SAP_RPM_BCV_USER).
SAP_BPR_PPM	PFCG role for NWBC in SAP Portfolio and Project Management

You can use these SAP standard roles or create your own. For more information about roles in Portfolio Management, see the [Activating Single Roles for Portfolio Management \(PFCG\)](#) section and the [Creating Roles for the Portfolio-Specific Authorization Checks](#) section of the Configuration Guide for SAP Portfolio and Project Management.

## SAP Fiori Roles

SAP Fiori roles (SAP\_BR\_\*) need to be assigned on the front-end server on which the UIS4HOP1 software component is installed. You can find the roles in the implementation information for each application.

For more information and further implementation tasks on the front-end server, see the UI Technology Guide for SAP S/4HANA.

## 13.6.2.3.2 Communication Channel Security

SAP Portfolio and Project Management Communication Channel Security

Communication Channel	Communication Technology	Data Transferred	Comment/Security Recommendation
SAP Portfolio and Project Management front-end (browser) to the SAP NW Application Server (SAP NetWeaver AS)	HTTP(S)	Files, metadata, and user data (passwords, user names)	
Project Management front-end (browser) to content or cache servers	HTTP(S)	Files	
SAP NetWeaver AS to content or cache servers	HTTP(S)	Metadata, files	
SAP NetWeaver AS to other application servers (for example, HR, CO)	RFC	Metadata, files	<p>SAP Portfolio and Project Management communicates with 3rd party or SAP S/4HANA systems to obtain or create information on object links between SAP Portfolio and Project Management and objects located in the 3rd party/SAP system. The communication to 3rd party systems has to be implemented at the customer site. The 3rd party/SAP system never calls back.</p> <p>For more information, see the <a href="#">Setting Up Object Links</a> section of the Configuration Guide for SAP Portfolio and Project Management.</p>
SAP Portfolio and Project Management to Project System (PS) component on a separate system	RFC	Files, metadata	
SAP Portfolio and Project Management to SAP HCM on a separate system	SAP ALE RFC	Files, metadata	

## i Note

In SAP Portfolio and Project Management, there is no fixed port for communication and the firewall settings described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide. For more information, see <http://help.sap.com/s4hana>

▶ [SAP S/4HANA](#) ▶ [SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA](#) ▶ [Security Guide](#) ▶ [Security Guides for SAP NetWeaver Functional Units](#) ▶ [Security Guides for the Application Server](#) ▶ [Security Guides for the AS ABAP](#) ▶ [SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide](#) ▶ [Protecting Your Productive System \(Change and Transport System\)](#) ▶

DIAG and RFC connections can be protected using Secure Network Communications (SNC). HTTP connections are protected using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.

## → Recommendation

We strongly recommend using secure protocols (SSL, SNC) whenever possible.

For more information, see <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> ▶ [SAP S/4HANA](#) ▶ [SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA](#) ▶ [Security Guide](#) ▶ [Network and Communication Security](#) ▶ [Transport Layer Security](#) ▶

## 13.6.2.3.3 Network Security

SAP supports the installation of SAP Portfolio and Project Management within the intranet (for internal collaboration only).

### Installation Scenarios

Scenarios A and B can be used for SAP Portfolio and Project Management:

- Scenario A: **No content server**
- Scenario B: **One hidden content server**

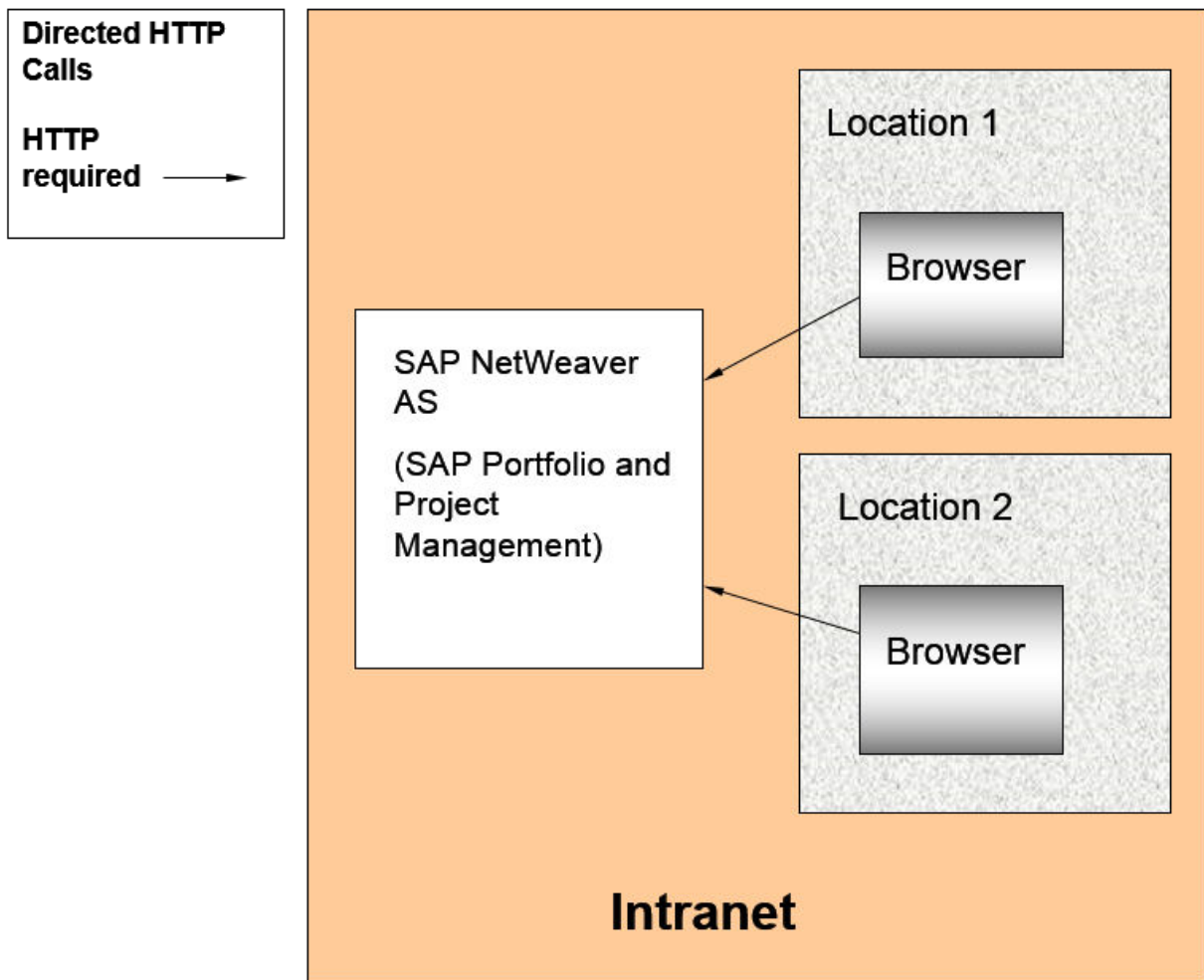
Installation scenario B, with one hidden content server, is the installation scenario with the highest level of security.

### Scenario A: No Content Server

In scenario A, the complete installation consists only of SAP Portfolio and Project Management server (SAP NetWeaver AS).

The server is located in the intranet.



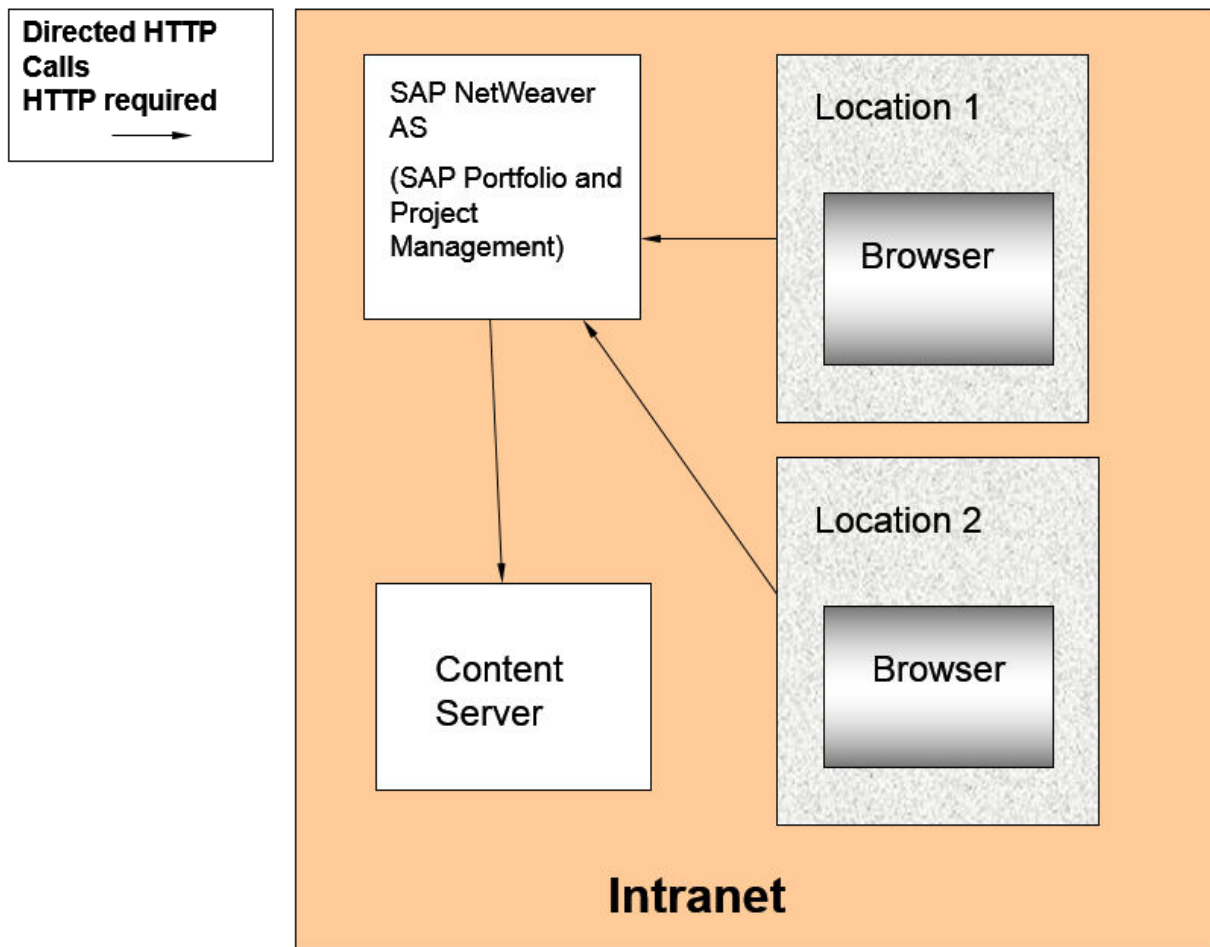


Scenario A: No Content Server

### Scenario B: One Hidden Content Server

In the second type of installation, one content server is added to the network environment.

For SAP Portfolio and Project Management, the SAP NetWeaver AS and the content server are both located in the intranet.



Scenario B: One Hidden Content Server

### 13.6.2.3.4 Communication Destinations

For the default SAP Portfolio and Project Management scenarios, no RFC destination pointing to external systems is required. However, if you are using the Project Management application programming interfaces (APIs) via the SOAP wrapper, the APIs consist of RFC function modules.

SAP Portfolio and Project Management

- FI/CO integration / Accounting Integration
- Adobe Document Services (ADS)
- Object links to e.g. SAP R/3, SAP ERP
- HR integration

In the following areas, Portfolio Management RFCs are called from an external application:

- Project integration

The Project Management APIs are required for:

- Portfolio Management Integration
- If a user needs to use the APIs they must have the basic RFC authorization for the relevant API function modules. The SOAP wrapper adheres to the authorization rules that apply if the RFC module is called directly. The function group name for Project Management is `CPR_API`.

To view the application-specific and basis authorization objects used in SAP Portfolio and Project Management, see [Authorizations \[page 411\]](#).

For more information about authorization objects and roles, see <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> ► [SAP S/4HANA](#) ► [SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA](#) ► [Security Guide](#) ► [User Administration and Authentication](#) ► [User Management](#) ► [Identity Management](#) ► [User and Role Administration of Application Server ABAP](#) ► [AS ABAP Authorization Concept](#) ►.

### 13.6.2.3.5 Internet Communication Framework Security

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For more information about the services that are needed for SAP Portfolio and Project Management, see the [Activating Services](#) section of the Configuration Guide for SAP Portfolio and Project Management.

Use the transaction `SICF` to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information, see <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> ► [SAP S/4HANA](#) ► [SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA](#) ► [Function-Oriented View](#) ► [Application Server](#) ► [Application Server Infrastructure](#) ► [Functions and Tools of SAP NetWeaver Application Server](#) ► [Connectivity Components of SAP](#) ► [Communication Technology](#) ► [Communication Between ABAP and Non-ABAP Technologies](#) ► [Internet Communication Framework](#) ► [Development](#) ► [Server-Side Development](#) ► [Creating and Configuring ICF Services](#) ► [Activating and Deactivating ICF Services.](#) ►

For more information about ICF security, see <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> ► [SAP S/4HANA](#) ► [SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA](#) ► [Security Guide](#) ► [Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies](#) ► [RFC/ICF Security Guide.](#) ►

### 13.6.2.3.6 Data Storage Security

#### Data Storage

##### i Note

In the default setting for SAP Portfolio and Project Management, data is protected using the ACL concept already described in [Authorizations \[page 411\]](#). A Web browser is required for both scenarios. However, no cookies are used to store data on the front end.

## Data Protection





In SAP Portfolio and Project Management, data is mainly stored on the SAP NetWeaver Application Server (SAP NetWeaver AS) database. An exception to this is when files are checked out for editing. In this case, files are stored locally on the user's hard drive and it is their responsibility to protect the files according to company security policy.

Depending on which installation scenario you have chosen for SAP Portfolio and Project Management, files might also be stored on content servers. For information about security measures to be taken in this case, see the [Network Security](#) chapter of this document.

For more information about data protection, see the [Data Protection](#) chapter of this document.

### 13.6.2.3.7 Deletion of Personal Data

#### Use

*SAP Portfolio and Project Management* might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/s4hana>  [Product Assistance](#)  [Cross Components](#)  [Data Protection](#) .

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Portfolio Management	For more information, see the Product Assistance documentation for SAP Portfolio and Project Management under <a href="#">Archiving Portfolio and Project Management Data</a> .	Archiving Objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RPM_PORT (Portfolios)</li><li>• RPM_BUCKET (Buckets)</li><li>• RPM_ITEM (Items)</li><li>• RPM_COLL (Collections)</li><li>• RPM_INIT (Initiatives)</li><li>• RPM_REVW (Reviews)</li></ul>
Project Management		Archiving Objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• CDOCS_CONT (Documents)</li><li>• CPROJECTS (Projects)</li></ul>

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Portfolio and Project Management	<p>Once a business partner is destructed using the central Business Partner application, all references of this particular business partner to objects in Portfolio Management and Project Management must be removed.</p> <p>Run the corresponding deletion program on a regular basis.</p>	Deletion program PPM_DPP_DELETE

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Portfolio and Project Management	EoP	<p>Checks whether business partner data is still needed for Portfolio and Project Management processes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a business partner is still needed: next check date = initial</li> <li>• If a business partner is no longer needed and the end of residence date is in the future (&gt; today): next check date = end of residence</li> <li>• If a business partner is no longer needed and the end of residence is reached (&lt;= today): next check date = initial; start of retention date is calculated</li> </ul> <p>Use Business Add-In PPM_BUPA_EOP_CHECK to implement a customer-specific logic.</p>

## Process Flow

1. Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
3. You do the following:
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: CA\_BUPA).

- Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.
- 4. Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.
- 5. If you have the needed authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` and `CVP_UNBLOCK_MD`.
- 6. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of Portfolio and Project Management.

For information about how to configure blocking and deletion for SAP Portfolio and Project Management, see [Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion](#).

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under [Data Protection](#).

- Define the settings for authorization management under [Data Protection](#) > [Authorization Management](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking](#) > [Business Partner](#).

### 13.6.2.3.8 Security for Additional Applications

You can only (import or) export data to Microsoft Project if you have the required authorizations, see [Access Control Lists – Import and Export](#). The protection of this downloaded data is not part of the Project Management security model. When the user saves the project to his or her hard drive, the system does not perform an authorization check if somebody else opens the project again in Microsoft Project.

### 13.6.2.3.9 Other Security-Relevant Information

#### Import from Microsoft Excel

You can import projects from a Microsoft Excel file to Project Management. This enables you to transfer mass data in a quick and easy manner.

If you want to restrict the import function, you have to make sure that only allowed users receive authorization for transaction `DPR_DX_PROJECT` and report `DPR_DX_PROJECT`.

Moreover, you can import financial and/or capacity data from a Microsoft Excel file to financial and capacity planning in Portfolio Management. To use this function, you require an ERP system, an appropriate client, user, and password. This import is only allowed if the required authorization has been granted.

## 13.6.2.3.10 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

### Floorplan Manager Message Logging to the Application Log

The Web Dynpro ABAP UI of SAP Portfolio and Project Management uses the Floor Plan Manager (FPM). The FPM Message Manager has a connection to the ABAP application log and offers the option to write error messages occurring in the FPM Message Manager also to the application log in the backend. To activate this feature, go to transaction `SABB` and activate the check point group `FPM_RUNTIME_MESSAGES` for your user or for all users in the server.

For more information about FPM, see <http://www.sdn.sap.com/irj/sdn/nw-ui> under **Custom UI Development** > **Web Dynpro ABAP** > **Floorplan Manager (FPM)** > **Developer's Guide**.

For more information about security in the ABAP area, see

- <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> > **SAP S/4HANA** > **SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA** > **Security Guide** > **Security Guides for SAP NetWeaver Functional Units** > **Security Guides for the AS ABAP** > **SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide**
- <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> > **SAP S/4HANA** > **SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA** > **Security Guide** > **Security Guides for SAP NetWeaver Functional Units** > **Security Guides for the Application Server** > **Security Guides for the AS ABAP** > **SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide** > **Web Dynpro ABAP Security Guide**

### Reports Logging to the Application Log

SAP Portfolio and Project Management logs application errors for background reports to transaction `SLG1`. Background reports are executed in the areas of financial integration, migration, import from Microsoft Excel, versioning, and replace user and resource. You can display these application logs via the objects `RPM_DOCUMENT`, `RPM_DX`, `RPM_INTEGRATION`, `RPM_MIGRATION`, `RPM_PLANNING`, `RPM_UC`, `RPM_VERSIONING`, `DPR_DX`, `DPR_REPLACE_USER_BP`.

### Logon Attempts

For more information about logon attempts, see <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> > **SAP S/4HANA** > **SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA** > **Security Guide** > **Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management** > **Auditing and Logging** > **The Security Audit Log**.

## Change Document

You can use change document to track changes of objects of Project Management and Portfolio Management. If the function is active, the system also records changes to dependent objects. You can activate the change document function for the following objects:

- **Project Management**
  - Checklist templates
  - Project templates
  - Projects

You can activate this function in Customizing for *Project Management* under **Basic Settings** > **Activate Change Documents**.

If the function is active for one of these main objects, changes to dependent objects are also recorded. For example, if you select the indicator for the object category project, the system records all changes to the project as well as to the following objects:

- Project definitions
- Phases
- Tasks
- Mirrored tasks
- Checklists
- Checklist items
- Documents
- Object links
- Entity links
- Business partner favorites
- Business partner links
- Roles
- Approvals
- Qualifications
- Collaborations
- Templates

The system only records changes to database table `DPR_DOCUMENT`. This table contains unusable document attributes only.

The important attributes of the documents and files (such as name, location, and size) as well as the file content are saved to the KPro storage system without the support of a change document function.

Project Management supports versioning for files instead of the change document function. To track the changes, the user must always create a new document version. However, if he or she always overwrites the existing version, it is not possible to track the changes.

Project Management supports evaluations for the following objects:

- Project definitions
- Phases
- Tasks
- Mirrored tasks
- Checklists
- Checklist items
- Object links



- Entity links
- Business partner links
- Roles
- **Portfolio Management**
  - Portfolio
  - Bucket
  - Initiative
  - Item
  - Decision point
  - Review
  - Collection
  - What-if scenario
  - Relational associations of business objects
  - Financial and capacity category for bucket and item

In the standard system, this function is not activated.

You can activate this function in Customizing for *Portfolio Management* under ► *Global Customizing* ► *Process and Service Settings* ► *Activate Change Document* ►.

The system does not record changes to the following objects:

- **Project Management**
  - Documents
- **Portfolio Management**
  - Long texts
  - Comments/notes
  - Documents
  - Financial and capacity planning values

For more information, see <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> ► *SAP S/4HANA* ► *SAP NetWeaver for SAP S/4HANA* ► *Security Guide* ►

- ► *Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management* ► *Auditing and Logging* ►
- ► *Security Guides for SAP NetWeaver Functional Units* ► *Security Guides for the Application Server* ► *Security Guides for the AS Java* ► *SAP NetWeaver Application Server Java Security Guide* ► *Tracing and Logging.* ►

## 13.6.3 Integrated Product Development for Discrete Industries

### 13.6.3.1 Classification Reuse UI Component

## 13.6.3.1.1 Data Protection

Data protection is associated with numerous legal requirements and privacy concerns. In addition to compliance with general data privacy acts, it is necessary to consider compliance with industry-specific legislation in different countries. This section describes the specific features and functions that SAP provides to support compliance with the relevant legal requirements and data privacy.

This section and any other sections in this Security Guide do not give any advice on whether these features and functions are the best method to support company, industry, regional or country-specific requirements. Furthermore, this guide does not give any advice or recommendations with regard to additional features that would be required in a particular environment; decisions related to data protection must be made on a case-by-case basis and under consideration of the given system landscape and the applicable legal requirements.

### i Note

In the majority of cases, compliance with data privacy laws is not a product feature.

SAP software supports data privacy by providing security features and specific data-protection-relevant functions such as functions for the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data.

SAP does not provide legal advice in any form. The definitions and other terms used in this guide are not taken from any given legal source.

### Glossary

Term	Definition
Personal Data	Information about an identified or identifiable natural person.
Business purpose	A legal, contractual, or in other form justified reason for the processing of personal data. The assumption is that any purpose has an end that is usually already defined when the purpose starts.
Blocking	A method of restricting access to data for which the primary business purpose has ended.
Deletion	Deletion of personal data so that the data is no longer usable.
Retention period	The time period during which data must be available.
End of purpose (EoP)	A method of identifying the point in time for a data set when the processing of personal data is no longer required for the primary business purpose. After the EoP has been reached, the data is blocked and can only be accessed by users with special authorization

Some basic requirements that support data protection are often referred to as technical and organizational measures (TOM). The following topics are related to data protection and require appropriate TOMs:

- **Access control:** Authentication features as described in section User Administration and Authentication.
- **Authorizations:** Authorization concept as described in section Authorizations.
- **Read access logging:** as described in section Read Access Logging.
- **Communication Security:** as described in section Network and Communication Security.
- **Availability control** as described in:
  - Section Data Storage Security
  - SAP NetWeaver Database Administration documentation
  - SAP Business Continuity documentation in the SAP NetWeaver Application Help under ► [Function-Oriented View](#) ► [Solution Life Cycle Management](#) ► [SAP Business Continuity](#) ►.
- **Separation by purpose:** Is subject to the organizational model implemented and must be applied as part of the authorization concept

### i Note

The extent to which data protection is ensured depends on secure system operation. Network security, security note implementation, adequate logging of system changes, and appropriate usage of the system are the basic technical requirements for compliance with data privacy legislation and other legislation.

## Configuration of Data Protection Functions

Certain central functions that support data protection compliance are grouped in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under Data Protection.

Additional industry-specific, scenario-specific or application-specific configuration might be required. For information about the application-specific configuration, see the application-specific Customizing in SPRO.

## 13.6.3.1.1.1 Data Privacy

The Classification Reuse UI Component must not process any sensitive personal data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note [1825544](#).

## Data Archiving and Deletion

Classification and characteristic data is dependent on the business object of the embedding application. You can only archive or delete classification and characteristic data with the business object of the embedding application, once the business object reaches its end of purpose. The embedding application is responsible for applying data protection and privacy rules.

## Characteristics Containing Sensitive Personal Data

Characteristics are not intended for storing any sensitive personal data.

## 13.6.3.2 Advanced Variant Configuration

### 13.6.3.2.1 Data Protection

Data protection is associated with numerous legal requirements and privacy concerns. In addition to compliance with general data privacy acts, it is necessary to consider compliance with industry-specific legislation in different countries. This section describes the specific features and functions that SAP provides to support compliance with the relevant legal requirements and data privacy.

This section and any other sections in this Security Guide do not give any advice on whether these features and functions are the best method to support company, industry, regional or country-specific requirements. Furthermore, this guide does not give any advice or recommendations with regard to additional features that would be required in a particular environment; decisions related to data protection must be made on a case-by-case basis and under consideration of the given system landscape and the applicable legal requirements.

#### i Note

In the majority of cases, compliance with data privacy laws is not a product feature.

SAP software supports data privacy by providing security features and specific data-protection-relevant functions such as functions for the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data.

SAP does not provide legal advice in any form. The definitions and other terms used in this guide are not taken from any given legal source.

#### Glossary

Term	Definition
Personal Data	Information about an identified or identifiable natural person.
Business purpose	A legal, contractual, or in other form justified reason for the processing of personal data. The assumption is that any purpose has an end that is usually already defined when the purpose starts.
Blocking	A method of restricting access to data for which the primary business purpose has ended.
Deletion	Deletion of personal data so that the data is no longer usable.
Retention period	The time period during which data must be available.

Term	Definition
End of purpose (EoP)	A method of identifying the point in time for a data set when the processing of personal data is no longer required for the primary business purpose. After the EoP has been reached, the data is blocked and can only be accessed by users with special authorization

Some basic requirements that support data protection are often referred to as technical and organizational measures (TOM). The following topics are related to data protection and require appropriate TOMs:

- **Access control:** Authentication features as described in section User Administration and Authentication.
- **Authorizations:** Authorization concept as described in section Authorizations.
- **Read access logging:** as described in section Read Access Logging.
- **Communication Security:** as described in section Network and Communication Security.
- **Availability control** as described in:
  - Section Data Storage Security
  - SAP NetWeaver Database Administration documentation
  - SAP Business Continuity documentation in the SAP NetWeaver Application Help under ► [Function-Oriented View](#) ► [Solution Life Cycle Management](#) ► [SAP Business Continuity](#) ►.
- **Separation by purpose:** Is subject to the organizational model implemented and must be applied as part of the authorization concept

### i Note


The extent to which data protection is ensured depends on secure system operation. Network security, security note implementation, adequate logging of system changes, and appropriate usage of the system are the basic technical requirements for compliance with data privacy legislation and other legislation.

### Configuration of Data Protection Functions

Certain central functions that support data protection compliance are grouped in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under Data Protection.

Additional industry-specific, scenario-specific or application-specific configuration might be required. For information about the application-specific configuration, see the application-specific Customizing in SPRO.

## 13.6.3.2.1.1 Data Privacy

The Advanced Variant Configuration UI must not process any sensitive personal data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note [1825544](#) .

### Data Archiving and Deletion

Characteristic data is dependent on the business object of the embedding application. You can only archive or delete characteristic data with the business object of the embedding application, once the business object

reaches its end of purpose. The embedding application is responsible for applying data protection and privacy rules.

## Characteristics Containing Sensitive Personal Data


Characteristics are not intended for storing any sensitive personal data.

### 13.6.3.3 Logging Changes

Personal data is subject to frequent changes. Therefore, for revision purposes or as a result of legal regulations, it may be necessary to track the changes that have been made to this data. When these changes are logged, you should be able to check which employee made which changes, the date and time, the previous value, and the current value.

It is also possible to analyze errors in this way.

#### See Also

- For more information on change documents see the documentation at <http://help.sap.com/netweaver>. Choose the the relevant SAP NetWeaver version and open the following documentation:
  - Under *Application Help*, go to ► *SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View* ► *Application Server ABAP* ► *Other Services* ► *Services for Application Developers* ► *Change Documents* ►.
  - Under *Security*, open the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* and go to ► *Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management* ► *Auditing and Logging* ►.
- See [2125662](#)  for more information about superfluous data change logging defined for database tables.

### 13.6.3.3.1 Change Documents in Classification

#### Setting Up Change Documents for Classification

You can set up change documents for classification data by setting the *Change Docs* indicator for a class type in Customizing under ► *Cross-Application Components* ► *Classification System* ► *Classes* ► *Maintain Object Types and Class Types* ►.

You can only set change documents if multiple objects are allowed to be classified in classes of the selected class type. When you first create a class type, you can set this parameter in Customizing manually. Once a

class type has classified objects, you can only set this indicator by running report program RCCLUKA2, and you can only delete this indicator by running report program RMCLINOB.

## More Information

- For more information on classification change documents, see [65124](#).
- See [2125662](#) for more information about superfluous data change logging defined for database tables.

## 13.6.3.4 Bill of Material

### Standard Roles

Role	Description
SAP_BR_BOM_ENGINEER	You need this role to use the <i>Maintain Bill Of Material</i> and <i>Material where used list in BOMs</i> apps.

### Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Objects	Description
C_STUE_WRK	Authorization for CS BOM Plant (Plant Assignments)
C_STUE_BER	Authorization for CS BOM Authorizations

## 13.6.4 Product Lifecycle Management

### 13.6.4.1 Maintenance, Repair, and Overhaul

## 13.6.4.1.1 Authorizations (Specification 2000)

Specification 2000 (IS-ADEC-SPC) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used:

Authorization Object	Description
C_ADSPCIP	Spec2000: Authorization object

## 13.6.4.1.2 Deletion of Personal Data (Specification 2000)

### Use

Specification 2000 (IS-ADEC-SPC) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►.



## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Specification 2000 (IS-ADEC-SPC)	<b>Archiving Object</b> ADS2KIP_AR  <b>ILM Object</b> ADS2KIP_AR  <b>Report</b> AD SCIP_ILM_DEL_01

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Specification 2000 (IS-ADEC-SPC)	EoP	Checks tables EDP21, EDP13

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

### 13.6.4.1.3 Deletion of Personal Data (Spare Parts Stock Calculation)

#### Use

Spare Parts Stock Calculation (IS-ADEC-SPSC) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Spare Parts Stock Calculation (IS-ADEC-SPSC)	<b>Report</b> AD_SPSC_ILM_DEL_01

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for [Cross-Application Components→Data Protection](#).

#### 13.6.4.1.4 Authorizations (Manufacturer Part Number)

Manufacturer Part Number (MPN) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

##### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used:

Authorization Object	Description
M_PIC_RIC	Authorization for MPN Restricted Interchangeability
ADPIC_RIC	Authorization object for MPN Restricted Interchangeability
M_PIC_EXCH	Authorization for material exchange

## 13.6.4.1.5 Deletion of Personal Data (MPN)

### Use

Manufacturer Part Number (IS-ADEC-MPN) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Manufacturer Part Number (IS-ADEC-MPN)	EoP	Checks table MARA-MFRPN

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

## 13.6.4.1.6 Deletion of Personal Data (Sharing of Spare Parts and Customer Stock)

*Sharing of Spare Parts and Customer Stock* (IS-AD-SSP) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Customer Stock (IS-AD-SSP)	<b>Destruction Object</b> MM_STO_SOBES_DEST  <b>ILM Object</b> MM_STO_SOBES  <b>Report</b> MM_STO_SOBES_DES

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Customer Stock (IS-AD-SSP)	EoP check	Checks tables MSCD_MD, MCSS_MD, MSCD_MD, MSCS_MD

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

### 13.6.4.1.7 Deletion of Personal Data (Subcontracting for MRO Processes)

*Subcontracting for MRO Processes* ((IS-AD-SUC) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Subcontracting for MRO Processes (IS-AD-SUC) - Special Stocks	<p><b>Destruction Object</b></p> <p>MM_STO_SOBES_DEST</p> <p><b>ILM Object</b></p> <p>MM_STO_SOBES</p> <p><b>Report</b></p> <p>MM_STO_SOBES_DES</p>

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Subcontracting for MRO Processes (IS-AD-SUC) - Special Stock	EoP check	Checks tables MSFS_MD, MSFD_MD, MSIS_MD, MSID_MD, MSRS_MD, MSRD_MD

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

## 13.6.4.2 Attachment Service

### Roles and Authorizations

For information on roles and authorizations for Attachment Service, goto [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE), and see under **Product Assistance** > **Enterprise Business Applications** > **R&D / Engineering** > **Product Lifecycle Management (PLM)** > **Attachment Service** > **Technical Information for Consuming Application** > **Roles and Authorizations** .

## 13.6.4.2.1 Deletion of Personal Data

### End of Purpose Check

Consuming applications must adapt the BAdI `BADI_CV_ODATA_ATTACHMENTS_AUTH` to block the display or change of attachments once a business object has reached its end of purpose. The corresponding method in the BAdI is `CHECK_AUTHORIZATION`.

Moreover, to block access to the attachments with the Document Info Record (DIR) in Document Management, you must implement the BAdI `DOCUMENT_FILES01`, and its method `BEFORE_START_APPL`.

## 13.6.4.2.2 Read Access Logging

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log, and under what conditions.

To create the configurations for RAL, perform the steps as mentioned in the topic [Data Protection and Privacy > Read Access Logging](#) in the current documentation guide. Also refer to the *Read Access Logging (RAL) and OData* information under the *More Information* section in the same topic.

Use the details mentioned in the following table when creating the RAL configurations:

Channel	OData Service / Application	Search Criteria	Fields to be Logged	Fields for Conditions	Business Context
SAP Gateway	CL_ODATA_CV_ATTACHMENT_API	Service ID - API_CV_ATTACHMENT_SRV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Under <a href="#">Channel Fields</a>, log field <a href="#">Request URL</a></li> <li>Under <a href="#">Channel Fields</a> &gt; <a href="#">Entity Types</a> &gt; <a href="#">AttachmentContent</a> log fields <a href="#">ARCHIVEDOCUMENTID</a>, <a href="#">ARCHIVELINKREPOSITORY</a>, <a href="#">FILENAME</a>, and <a href="#">LOGICALDOCUMENT</a></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Condition name - <a href="#">CONDITION_ATTACHMENTCONTENTSET</a></li> <li>Expression name - <a href="#">EXPRESSION_ATTACHMENTCONTENTSET</a> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fields - Under <a href="#">Channel Fields</a> &gt; <a href="#">Fields for Conditions</a> &gt; <a href="#">Requested Entity Set</a>, drag and drop field <a href="#">AttachmentContentSet</a></li> <li>Sign - Inclusive</li> <li>Option - Equals</li> <li>Low/High Value - X</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Access to attachments from applications using attachment services.

Channel	OData Service / Application	Search Criteria	Fields to be Logged	Fields for Conditions	Business Context
SAP Gateway	API_CV_ATTACHMENT_SRV	Service ID - CV_ATTACHMENT_SRV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Under <a href="#">Channel Fields</a>, log field <a href="#">Request URL</a></li> <li>Under <a href="#">Channel Fields</a> <a href="#">Entity Types</a> <a href="#">OriginalContent</a>, log fields <a href="#">APPLICATION_ID</a>, <a href="#">FILENAME</a>, and <a href="#">FILE_ID</a></li> <li>Under <a href="#">Channel Fields</a> <a href="#">Entity Types</a> <a href="#">OriginalContentArchiveLink</a>, log fields <a href="#">ARCHIVEDOCUMENTID</a> and <a href="#">ARCHIVEREPOSITORYID</a></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Condition name - CONDITION_ORIGINALCONTENTSET</li> <li>Expression name - EXPRESSION_ORIGINALCONTENTSET <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fields - Under <a href="#">Channel Fields</a> <a href="#">Fields for Conditions</a> <a href="#">Requested Entity Set</a>, drag and drop field <a href="#">OriginalContentSet</a></li> <li>Sign - Inclusive</li> <li>Option - Equals</li> <li>Low/High Value - X</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Access to attachments from applications using attachment service API.



Channel	OData Service / Application	Search Criteria	Fields to be Logged	Fields for Conditions	Business Context
KPro	Any access to attachment or files stored via KPro	PHIO Class - DMS_PCD1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Access Type</li> <li>PHIO Class</li> <li>PHIO ID</li> </ul>	Select the <i>Without Condition</i> checkbox in the log group attributes.	The KPro configuration logs any user accessing a DMS attachment.

**i Note**

For *Log Domain*, select **SAP/CUSTOMER**.

### 13.6.4.2.3 User Consent

The attachment service does not enforce user consent. The consuming application is responsible for enforcing user consent if required.

### 13.6.4.3 Document Management

For information about security for Document Management, see SAP Note [2627073](#).

## 13.6.5 Product Development for Discrete Industries

## 13.7 Sales

### Standard Authorization Objects

The following table explains where you can find the standard authorization objects available for line of business *Sales* and related functionality (transaction SU21):

Class	Description
SD	<i>Sales and Distribution</i>
LE_T	<i>Logistics Execution - Transportation</i>
LE_V	<i>Logistics Execution - Shipping</i>
WG	For Global Trade Management (GTM): <i>Retailing</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Trading Contract: Authorization for Organizational Data</i> (W_WBHK_ORG)</li><li>• <i>Trading Contract: Authorization for Trading Contract Type</i> (W_WBHK_TCT)</li></ul>

### 13.7.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Sales

#### Use

Applications in the line of business *Sales* might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Sales documents	Archiving object SD_VBAK
Billing documents	Archiving object SD_VBRK

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Self-billing	Archiving object SBWAP_TRN
Empties management: Archiving of monthly empties stock	Archiving object BEV1_EMBD
Empties management: Archiving of empties update	Archiving object BEV1_EMFD
Agreements	Archiving object SD_AGREEM
Condition records	Archiving object SD_COND
Customer master data	Archiving object FI_ACCRECV
Deliveries	Archiving object RV_LIKP
Shipment documents	Archiving object SD_VTTK
Shipment cost documents	Archiving object SD_VFKK
Advanced Returns Management data	Archiving object MSR_TRC
Trading contracts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Archiving object WB2</li> <li>• Report WB2_UPDATE_EOP_FROM_ARCHIVE (transaction SE38)</li> </ul>
Sales plans	Data destruction object SD_SALESPLAN_DESTRUCTION
Campaigns	Data destruction object SD_CAMPAIGN_DESTRUCTION
Destroying material listing and exclusions	Data destruction object SD_MAT_LIST_EXCL_DESTRUCTION
Destroying material determinations	Data destruction object SD_MAT_DETERM_DESTRUCTION
Destroying free goods determinations	Data destruction object SD_FREE_GOODS_DESTRUCTION
Destroying product proposals	Report SD_PRODUCT_PROPOSAL_DES (transaction SE38)

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP Functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Sales &amp; Distribution</i> (ERP_SD)</li> </ul>	EoP check	<p>This EoP check includes business in the areas of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sales</li> <li>• Billing</li> <li>• Delivery</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Empties Management in SD</i> (ERP_SD_BIL_EM)</li> </ul>	EoP check	<p>This EoP check includes business in the areas of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supplier Empties data from invoice receipt</li> <li>• Customer Empties account for customers</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Global Trade Management Position Management</i> (LO_GT_PM)</li> <li>• <i>Global Trade Management Trading Contract</i> (LO_GT_TC)</li> <li>• <i>Global Trade Management Trading Expenses</i> (LO_GT_TE)</li> <li>• <i>Global Trade Management TEW</i> (LO_GT_TEW)</li> </ul>	EoP check	<p>This EoP check includes business in <i>Global Trade Management</i> (LO-GT).</p>

## More Information

- For information about deleting personal data related to the *Order-to-Cash Performance* app, see [Deletion of Personal Data in Process Observer \[page 537\]](#).
- For more information about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Enterprise Business Applications](#) ► [Sales](#) ► [Order and Contract Management](#) ► [Data Management in Sales](#) ►.

## 13.7.2 Global Trade Management

## 13.7.2.1 Network and Communication Channel Security

The information below shows the communication channels used, the protocol used for the connection, and the type of data transferred.

### Connection to a SAP FSCM System

For Global Trade Management, you have the option to use an external SAP FSCM system to create forward exchange transactions. If you install SAP FSCM on a separate system, you require an RFC connection. If you install SAP FSCM together with Global Trade Management on one system, no RFC connection is necessary.

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
SAP S/4HANA system - SAP FSCM system (Financial Supply Chain Management)	RFC	Application data	n/a

RFC connections can be protected using [Secure Network Communications \(SNC\)](#). For more information about setting up the RFC connection, and the prerequisites (authorizations), see Customizing for SAP S/4HANA under [Logistics General > Global Trade Management > Currency Hedging > Maintain RFC Destination of CFM System](#).

### Connection to an External Global Trade Services System

You can connect Global Trade Management to an external Global Trade Services (GTS) system in order to check whether the contract data for Global Trade Management adheres to the prevailing legal requirements (import/export controls, global trade data).

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
SAP S/4HANA system – GTS system	RFC	Application data	n/a

All users in the SAP S/4HANA system can call the functions on the GTS server using an RFC entry. In this RFC entry, you specify a user that is used uniquely for communication with GTS. Assign this communication user to the following roles for SAP Compliance Management.

## Roles for Compliance Management

Role	Description
/SAPSSL/LEG_ARCH GTS	Archiving
/SAPSSL/LEG_LCE_APP GTS	Legal Control Export: Specialist
/SAPSSL/LEG_LCI_APP GTS	Legal Control Import: Specialist
/SAPSSL/LEG_SPL_APP GTS	Sanctioned Party List: Specialist
/SAPSSL/LEG_SYS_COMM GTS	(Technical) System Communication

DIAG and RFC connections can be protected using Secure Network Communications (SNC). HTTP connections are protected using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol. SOAP connections are protected with Web services security.

### **i** Note

We strongly recommend using secure protocols (SSL, SNC) whenever possible.

For more information, see Transport Layer Security and Web Services Security in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.8 Service

### 13.8.1 Warranty Management

#### 13.8.1.1 Authorizations

Warranty (LO-WTY) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used.

Authorization Object	Description
C_WTY_ACT	Warranty: Actions Authorization Object
C_WTY_OBJ	Warranty: Process Object Authorization Object
C_WTY_STAT	Warranty: Status Authorization Object

### 13.8.1.2 Deletion of Personal Data

#### Use

Warranty (LO-WTY) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Warranty (LO-WTY)	<b>Archiving Object</b> WTY_CLAIM <b>ILM Object</b> WTY_CLAIM

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Warranty (LO-WTY)	EoP check	Checks tables: PNWTYH, PNWTYV

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

## 13.9 Sourcing and Procurement

### 13.9.1 Authorizations

#### Front-End Roles

To use the Fiori Launchpad in SAP S/4HANA, you have to apply the SAP S/4HANA role concept based on business catalogs that are assigned to business roles. For the front-end, the following standard business roles are available for Sourcing and Procurement. You can use these roles as templates for your own roles. For more information, see the *SAP S/4HANA UI Technology Guide* at the SAP Help Portal under [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Documentation* >.

Business Roles

Role	Description
SAP_BR_AP_ACCOUNTANT_PROCUREMENT	Accounts Payable Accountant - Procurement
SAP_BR_BUYER	Strategic Buyer
SAP_BR_EMPLOYEE PROCUREMENT	Employee - Procurement
SSAP_BR_PURCHASER	Purchaser
SAP_BR_PURCHASING_MANAGER	Purchasing Manager



## Back-End Roles

In the back-end, you have to create roles in transaction PFCG and assign business catalogs to the roles. For more information, see the *SAP S/4HANA UI Technology Guide* at the SAP Help Portal under [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Documentation* ►.

If you have converted your system from SAP ERP to SAP S/4HANA, you may still be accessing transactions via the SAP Easy Access menu. To support this case, the standard role templates for back-end roles are still available and are listed below:

Back-End Roles (Relevant for System Converted from SAP ERP)

Role	Description
SAP_MM_PUR_ADDITIONAL_FUNC	Non-Assigned Purchasing Functions
SAP_MM_PUR_ARCHIVE	Archive Purchasing Documents
SAP_MM_PUR_ARCHIVE_LISTS	Analyses Using the Purchasing Archive
SAP_MM_PUR_CONDITIONS	Conditions in Purchasing - Overview
SAP_MM_PUR_CONDITIONS_DISCOUNT	Discounts in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_CONDITIONS_PRICES	Prices in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_CONFIRMATION	Confirmations
SAP_MM_PUR_CONTRACT_LISTS	Lists for Outline Agreements
SAP_MM_PUR_CONTRACT_MESSAGE	Output Outline Agreements
SAP_MM_PUR_CONTRACT_MESSAGE_MT	General Message Maintenance for Outline Agreements
SAP_MM_PUR_CONTRACT_RELEASE	Release Outline Agreements
SAP_MM_PUR_CONTRACTING	Process Contracts
SAP_MM_PUR_DISPLAY_OBJECTS	General Display Functions in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_GENERAL	General Functions in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_INFORECORD	Maintain Purchasing Info Record
SAP_MM_PUR_INFORECORD_LISTS	Lists of Purchasing Info Records
SAP_MM_PUR_LIS_GENERAL	General Analyses for LIS
SAP_MM_PUR_LIS_SERVICE	LIS Analyses for Services
SAP_MM_PUR_LIS_STOCK_MATERIAL	LIS Analyses for Stock Material
SAP_MM_PUR_LIS_VE	LIS Analyses for Vendor Evaluation

<b>Role</b>	<b>Description</b>
SAP_MM_PUR_LISTS_GENERAL	General Analyses in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_MASS_CHANGE	Mass Maintenance in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_MESSAGE	Output Purchasing Documents
SAP_MM_PUR_MESSAGE_MAINTENANCE	General Message Maintenance in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_MPN_AMPL	Approved Manufacturer Parts
SAP_MM_PUR_MPN_AMPL_ARCHIVE	Archive Approved Manufacturer Parts List
SAP_MM_PUR_NEGOTIATION_LISTS	Lists for Purchasing Negotiations
SAP_MM_PUR_PO_RELEASE	Release Purchase Orders
SAP_MM_PUR_PR_LISTS	Lists of Purchase Requisitions
SAP_MM_PUR_PR_RELEASE	Release Purchase Requisitions
SAP_MM_PUR_PURCHASEORDER	Process Purchase Orders
SAP_MM_PUR_PURCHASEORDER_LISTS	Lists of Purchase Orders
SAP_MM_PUR_PURCHASEREQUISITION	Process Purchase Requisitions
SAP_MM_PUR_QUOTA_ARRANGEMENT	Maintain Quota Arrangement
SAP_MM_PUR_QUOTA_MAINTENANCE	Revise Quota Arrangement
SAP_MM_PUR_QUOTATION	Maintain Quotation
SAP_MM_PUR_RFQ	Process Request for Quotation
SAP_MM_PUR_RFQ_LISTS	Lists of Requests for Quotations
SAP_MM_PUR_SCHEDULE	Maintain Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedules and Releases
SAP_MM_PUR_SCHEDULE_MAINTENANC	Administer Scheduling Agreements
SAP_MM_PUR_SCHEDULEAGREEMENT	Process Scheduling Agreements
SAP_MM_PUR_SERVICE	Service Entry Sheet
SAP_MM_PUR_SERVICE_CONDITIONS	Service Conditions for Service
SAP_MM_PUR_SERVICE_LISTS	Lists of Service Entry Sheets
SAP_MM_PUR_SERVICE_TRANSFER	Data Transfer for Services

Role	Description
SAP_MM_PUR_SOURCE_LIST	Maintain Source List
SAP_MM_PUR_SRV_CONDITIONS_GEN	Service Conditions for Services (General)
SAP_MM_PUR_SRV_MODEL_SPEC	Maintain Model Service Specifications
SAP_MM_PUR_SRV_STANDARD_SPEC	Maintain Standard Service Specifications
SAP_MM_PUR_SRV_VENDOR_COND	Service Conditions for Vendor
SAP_MM_PUR_SRV_VENDOR_PLANT_CO	Service Conditions for Vendor and Plant
SAP_MM_PUR_SUPPLIER_LOGISTICS	Logistics information for the vendor on the Internet
SAP_MM_PUR_TAXES	Taxes in Purchasing
SAP_MM_PUR_VE	Maintain Vendor Evaluation
SAP_MM_PUR_VE_LISTS	Lists of Vendor Evaluations
SAP_MM_PUR_VE_MAINTENANCE	Vendor Evaluation in the Background
SAP_MM_PUR_VENDOR_PRICE	Change Prices for Vendor
SAP_MM_PUR_SOURCE_LIST	Maintain Source List
SAP_AUDITOR_BA_MM_PUR	This transaction role allows evaluations to be collected, structured, and configured for the audit area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business Audit - Process View</li> <li>• Purchasing: From Purchase Order to Outgoing Payment</li> <li>• Purchasing</li> </ul>
SAP_AUDITOR_BA_MM_PUR_A	This role provides read access for the audit area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business Audit - Process View</li> <li>• Purchasing: From Purchase Order to Outgoing Payment</li> <li>• Purchasing</li> </ul>
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_BATCH1	Enter Invoices for Verification in the Background
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_BATCH2	Manual Processing of Invoices Verified in the Background
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_GRIR_MAINTAIN	GR/IR Clearing Account Maintenance
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_GRIR_MAINTAIN	GR/IR Clearing Account Maintenance
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_ONLINE	Online Invoice Verification
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_PARK	Park Invoices

Role	Description
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_RELEASE	Invoice Release
SAP_MM_IV_SUPPLIER_FINANCE	Settlement Information for Vendor (External Supplier) on the Internet
SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_AUTO	Automatic Settlements
SAP_AUDITOR_BA_MM_IV	This transaction role allows evaluations to be collected, structured, and configured for the audit area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business Audit - Individual Account Closing</li> <li>• Profit and Loss Statement</li> <li>• Material Expense</li> </ul>
SAP_AUDITOR_BA_MM_IV_A	This authorization role provides read access for the audit area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business Audit - Individual Account Closing</li> <li>• Profit and Loss Statement</li> <li>• Material Expense</li> </ul>

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that you can use in SAP S/4HANA when you create back-end roles. These objects were also used in the above listed standard back-end roles.

Authorization Object	Description
M_AMPL_ALL	Approved Manufacturer Parts List
M_AMPL_WRK	Approved Manufacturer Parts List - Plant
M_ANFR_BSA	Document Type in RFQ
M_ANFR_EKG	Purchasing Group in RFQ
M_ANFR_EKO	Purchasing Organization in RFQ
M_ANFR_WRK	Plant in RFQ
M_ANFR_LGO	Storage Locations in RFQ
M_ANGB_BSA	Document Type in Quotation
M_ANGB_EKG	Purchasing Group in Quotation

Authorization Object	Description
M_ANGB_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Quotation
M_ANGB_WRK	Plant in Quotation
M_ANGB_LGO	Storage Locations in Quotation
M_BANF_BSA	Document Type in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_EKG	Purchasing Group in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_FRG	Release Code in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_WRK	Plant in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_LGO	Storage Location in Purchase Requisition
M_BEST_BSA	Document Type in Order
M_BEST_EKG	Purchasing Group in Purchase Order
M_BEST_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Purchase Order
M_BEST_WRK	Plant in Purchase Order
M_BEST_LGO	Storage Location in Purchase Order
M_EINF_EKG	Purchasing Group in Purchasing Info Record
M_EINF_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Purchasing Info Record
M_EINF_WRK	Plant in Purchasing Info Record
M_EINK_FRG	Release Code and Group (Purchasing)
M_LFM1_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Vendor Master Record
M_LIBE_EKO	Vendor Evaluation
M_LPET_BSA	Document Type in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_EKG	Purchasing Group in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_EKO	Purchasing Org. in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_WRK	Plant in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_LGO	Storage Location in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule

Authorization Object	Description
M_ORDR_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Source List
M_ORDR_WRK	Plant in Source List
M_QUOT_EKO	Purchasing Organization (Quotas)
M_QUOT_WRK	Plant (Quotas)
M_RAHM_BSA	Document Type in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_EKG	Purchasing Group in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_WRK	Plant in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_LGO	Storage Location in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_STA	Status in Contract
M_SRV_LS	Authorization for Maintenance of Service Master
M_SRV_LV	Authorization for Maintenance of Model Serv. Specifications
M_SRV_ST	Authorization for Maintenance of Standard Service Catalog
M_SES_EKG	Purchasing Group in Service Entry Sheet
M_SES_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Service Entry Sheet
M_SES_WRK	Plant in Service Entry Sheet
S_ME_SYNC	Mobile Engine: Synchronization of Offline Applications
V_KONH_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Master Condition
M_TEMPLATE	Create/Change/Delete Public Templates
M_POIVVEND	Read Invoices of a Vendor
CMM_MEV_WL	CMM: Worklist
CMM_MEV_AD	CMM: Accrual Document
M_RECH_BUK	Invoices: Company Code
M_RECH_CPY	Copy Invoice: Company Code
M_RECH_WRK	Invoices: Plant
M_RECH_AKZ	Invoices: Accept Invoice Verification Differences Manually

Authorization Object	Description
M_RECH_EKG	Invoice Release: Purchasing Group
M_RECH_SPG	Invoices: Blocking Reasons
M_RECH_UPL	Invoice: Upload
F_BKPF_BUK	Accounting Document

## 13.9.2 Data Storage Security

### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Materials Management saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used by Materials Management and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

#### Logical File Names Used

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- MM\_PURCHASING\_INFORECORDS\_NEW
  - Programs using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - RM06IBIS
    - RM06IBIE
- MM\_PURCHASING\_REQUISITIONS\_NEW
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - RM06BBIS
    - RM06BBIE
- SAP\_SOURCING\_CUSTOMIZING\_DOWNLOAD\_FILE
  - Programs using this logical file name:
    - BBP\_ES\_CUST\_DOWNLOAD

#### Logical Path Names Used

The logical file names MM\_PURCHASING\_INFORECORDS\_NEW and MM\_PURCHASING\_REQUISITIONS\_NEW use the logical file path MM\_PUR\_ROOT. The logical file name

SAP\_SOURCING\_CUSTOMIZING\_DOWNLOAD\_FILE uses the logical file path SAP\_SOURCING\_CUSTOMIZING\_DOWNLOAD.

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-specific). To add the aliases for the view V\_FILEALIA, use transaction SM31.

For more information, see about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## Using Data Storage Security

Check whether the conditions are classified as sensitive data. You can protect conditions with the following authorization objects:

Authorization Object	Description
V_KONH_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Master Condition
V_KONH_VKS	Condition: Authorization for Condition Types

Prices are also potential sensitive data. You can protect the display authority for prices with the value 09 of the authorization field `ACTVT` (Activity) of the purchasing document-specific authorization objects listed below:

Authorization Object	Description
M_ANFR_BSA	Document Type in RFQ
M_ANFR_EKG	Purchasing Group in RFQ
M_ANFR_EKO	Purchasing Organization in RFQ
M_ANGB_BSA	Document Type in Quotation
M_ANGB_EKG	Purchasing Group in Quotation
M_ANGB_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Quotation
M_BEST_BSA	Document Type in Order
M_BEST_EKG	Purchasing Group in Purchase Order



Authorization Object	Description
M_BEST_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Purchase Order
M_BEST_WRK	Plant in Purchase Order
M_BEST_LGO	Storage Location in Purchase Order
M_LPET_BSA	Document Type in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_EKG	Purchasing Group in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_EKO	Purchasing Org. in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_RAHM_BSA	Document Type in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_EKG	Purchasing Group in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_WRK	Plant in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_LGO	Storage Location in Outline Agreement

## 13.9.3 Other Security-Relevant Information

### Open Catalog Interface

#### Use

The Open Catalog Interface (OCI) incorporates external product catalogs into SAP S/4HANA applications using Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP). This way, the data required to create purchasing document items in SAP S/4HANA can be transferred directly from the external catalog to the SAP S/4HANA application.

#### Reason and Prerequisites

SAP S/4HANA and the catalog communicate via HTTP/HTTPS URL parameters. It is possible for an end user to identify these parameters and also change them using specialized tools. Security depends heavily on the fact whether the catalogue system resides before or behind the firewall.

#### Solution

SAP recommends the following to the customers who wish to integrate SAP S/4HANA and catalogs using Open catalog Interface (OCI):

- Double check the values transferred from the catalogue into the SAP S/4HANA application manually. Check whether the values are the same one as the one in the catalogue.
- In addition to that, authority checks are happening on SAP S/4HANA side: the application checks whether the user is allowed to change the data on SAP S/4HANA side which is transferred from the catalogue.

Example: if a price is transferred from the catalogue into the purchasing document, the system checks whether the user has the authority to change the price in the purchasing document in general.

- To prevent end users from sniffing the catalog login data (User names, password), avoid specifying the login information in the OCI Catalog configuration in Customizing. Instead, configure the catalog to accept individual user authentication information from the end user. This can be done in the form of SSO (Single Sign-On) tools, Digital Certificates or Individual Login Information (User name/password). These features are dependent upon whether the Catalog provider supports the above mentioned features to logon.

You define the setting for the OCI in Customizing for *Materials Management* under **► Purchasing ► Environment Data ► Web Services: ID and Description ►**.

## Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

Use

Purchasing uses change documents to track changes made to purchasing documents. This includes changes to security-sensitive data such as prices. The following authorization objects specific to purchasing documents allow the restriction of the visibility of those change documents using the value 08 of the authorization field ACTVT (Activity):

Authorization Object	Description
M_ANFR_BSA	Document Type in RFQ
M_ANFR_EKG	Purchasing Group in RFQ
M_ANFR_EKO	Purchasing Organization in RFQ
M_ANFR_WRK	Plant in RFQ
M_ANFR_LGO	Storage Locations in RFQ
M_ANGB_BSA	Document Type in Quotation
M_ANGB_EKG	Purchasing Group in Quotation
M_ANGB_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Quotation
M_BANF_BSA	Document Type in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_EKG	Purchasing Group in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_FRG	Release Code in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_WRK	Plant in Purchase Requisition
M_BANF_LGO	Storage Location in Purchase Requisition

Authorization Object	Description
M_BEST_BSA	Document Type in Order
M_BEST_EKG	Purchasing Group in Purchase Order
M_BEST_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Purchase Order
M_BEST_WRK	Plant in Purchase Order
M_BEST_LGO	Storage Location in Purchase Order
M_EINF_EKG	Purchasing Group in Purchasing Info Record
M_EINF_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Purchasing Info Record
M_EINF_WRK	Plant in Purchasing Info Record
M_LFM1_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Vendor Master Record
M_LPET_BSA	Document Type in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_EKG	Purchasing Group in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_LPET_EKO	Purchasing Org. in Scheduling Agreement Delivery Schedule
M_ORDR_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Source List
M_ORDR_WRK	Plant in Source List
M_QUOT_EKO	Purchasing Organization (Quotas)
M_QUOT_WRK	Plant (Quotas)
M_RAHM_BSA	Document Type in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_EKG	Purchasing Group in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_EKO	Purchasing Organization in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_WRK	Plant in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_LGO	Storage Location in Outline Agreement
M_RAHM_STA	Status in Contract

## 13.9.4 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

*Purchasing* (MM-PUR), *Invoice Verificaton* (MM-IV), and *Supplier and Category Management* might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data.

Business partner master data can be blocked as soon as business activities that use this data are completed and the residence period for the data has elapsed; after this time, only users with additional authorizations can access this data.

Depending on the type of business documents, authorized users have to use either a Fiori app or an *Advanced* or *Professional* Fiori app to access the document. The following table gives you an overview of what to use for the business documents of Sourcing and Procurement.

Updated Overview of Blocked Documents and Display Options

Type of Business Document	Display Option for Blocked Documents
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Service entry sheet</li><li>• Request for quotation</li><li>• Supplier quotation</li><li>• Quota arrangement</li><li>• Supplier invoice</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Using the Fiori apps</li></ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Purchase requisition</li><li>• Purchase order</li><li>• Scheduling agreement</li><li>• Purchase contract</li><li>• Shopping cart</li><li>• Purchasing info record</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Using the "Advanced" or "Professional" Fiori apps</li></ul>

In apps of **Supplier and Category Management**, all entries related to blocked suppliers are displayed as *Blocked Supplier*, and all supplier-related links are disabled. Evaluation scorecards for the blocked suppliers are not displayed in the scorecards list in the *Display Scorecards* app. The standard Web Dynpro apps can be used to display the blocked data. For more information, see the section [▶ \*Supplier and Category Management\* ▶ \*Deletion of Personal Data\* ▶](#).

When the retention period for data expires, personal data of the business partner can be destroyed completely so that it can no longer be retrieved. Retention periods must be defined in the customer system.

For more information about blocking of data, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) [▶ \*Product Assistance\* ▶ \*Cross Components\* ▶ \*Data Protection\* ▶](#).

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Purchase Requisitions	Archiving Purchase Requisitions (MM-PUR)	Archiving object MM_EBAN
Purchasing Documents	Archiving Purchasing Documents (MM-PUR)	Archiving object MM_EKKO
Purchasing Info Records	Archiving Purchasing Info Records (MM-PUR)	Archiving object MM_EINA
Invoice Documents	Archiving Invoice Documents (MM-IV)	Archiving object MM_REBEL
Non-Ferrous Metals and Returnable Packaging Settlement	Business partner data is stored for non-ferrous rate determination, goods movement, and returnable packaging settlement	<p>You can delete by using the report /NFM/ILM_DEL_01. A where used check is done for the following tables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• /NFM/TPROVMOV</li> <li>• /NFM/TVGW_TMP</li> <li>• /SAPMP/SD_LEIHG</li> </ul>

For documentation about application objects and deletion functionality, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [Product Assistance](#) > [Enterprise Business Applications](#) > [Sourcing and Procurement](#) > [Materials Management \(MM\)](#) > [Data Archiving in Materials Management \(MM\)](#).

### Prerequisite: End of Purpose Check

Before objects can be archived, an end of purpose check must be performed.

## Relevant Application and Available EoP Functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Materials Management (MM)	End of purpose check (EoP)	For more information about the end of purpose check, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Sourcing and Procurement</i> ► <i>Materials Management (MM)</i> ► <i>Data Blocking</i> ► <i>End of Purpose (EoP) Check for Business Partners in MM-PUR, MM-IM, and MM-IV</i> ►.

## Configuration of Simplified Blocking and Deletion

To use *SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)* to simplify the deletion of application-specific personal data, you have to do the following:

- Activate the following business functions:
  - ILM-Based Deletion of Business Partner Data (BUPA\_ILM\_BF)
  - ILM-Based Deletion of Customer and Supplier Master Data (ERP\_CVP\_ILM\_1)
  - Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)
- Perform the necessary customizing settings related to SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) in Customizing for ► *SAP NetWeaver* ► *Application Server* ► *Basis Services* ► *Information Lifecycle Management* ►.
- Perform the necessary customizing settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for ► *Cross-Application Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.
- Run transaction ILMARA and maintain and activate the required audit areas for the ILM objects of the application.
- Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required retention policies for the ILM objects of the application.
- Configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer and supplier master data in Customizing under ► *Logistics - General* ► *Business Partner* ► *Deletion of Customer and Supplier Master Data* ►.

See Also

For general information about the deletion of personal data, see the following chapters in the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA that is available on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> <choose a release> ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ►:

- *SAP Information Lifecycle Management*
- ► *Data Protection* ► *Deletion of Business Partner* ► *Customer and Supplier Master Data* ►
- ► *Data Protection* ► *Configuring Data Protection Features* ► *Activating Business Functions* ►

## 13.9.5 Specific Read Access Log Configurations

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

Invoice Verification (MM-IV) logs data in order to track who has accessed the bank details in supplier invoices. You can find the configurations as described in the [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#) chapter.

In the following configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

Channel	Configuration	Fields Logged
Dynpro	Recording:	IBAN
	MM_IV/DPP_BANK	SWIFT
		BANKN
		BANKA
SAP Gateway	Service ID:	IBAN
	MM_SUPPLIER_INVOICE_MANAGE	SWIFT
		BANKN
		BANKA
RFC	Function modules:	ADDRESSDATA-BANK_ACCT
	BAPI_INCOMINGINVOICE_CHANGE	ADDRESSDATA-BANK_CTRY
	BAPI_INCOMINGINVOICE_CREATE	ADDRESSDATA-BANK_NO
	BAPI_INCOMINGINVOICE_CREATE1	
	BAPI_INCOMINGINVOICE_PARK	
	BAPI_INCOMINGINVOICE_SAVE	
	MRM_XMLBAPI_INCINV_CREATE	
RFC	Function modules:	ADDRESSDATA-BANK_ACCT
	BAPI_INCOMINGINVOICE_GETDETAIL	ADDRESSDATA-BANK_CTRY
	MRM_XMLBAPI_INCINV_GETDETAIL	ADDRESSDATA-BANK_NO
RFC	Function module:	DOC_HEADER_LIST[]-BANKL
	MRM_INVOICE_GETLIST	DOC_HEADER_LIST[]-BANKN
		DOC_HEADER_LIST[]-BANKS

Channel	Configuration	Fields Logged
Web Service	Interface name: SupplierInvoiceERPByIDQueryResponse_In	SupplierInvoice/BillFromParty/Bank-AccountID SupplierInvoice/BillFromParty/Bank-AccountStandardID SupplierInvoice/BillFromParty/BankInternalID SupplierInvoice/BillFromParty/Bank-Name

The following apps of MM-IV are affected:

- [Enter Invoice](#) (MIRO)
- [Park Invoice](#) (MIR7)
- [Display Invoice Document](#) (MIR4)
- [Enter Invoice for Invoice Verification in Background](#) (MIRA)

The following Fiori apps are affected:

- [Manage Supplier Invoices](#)
- [Create Supplier Invoice \(Advanced\)](#)

## 13.9.6 Ariba Network Integration

If you want to use integration scenarios with the Ariba Network, see chapter “Business Network Integration” at the end of this guide.

## 13.9.7 Supplier and Category Management

### 13.9.7.1 Authorizations

Supplier Information and Master Data uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.



## i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

## Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used.

Role	Description
/SRMSMC/CATEGORY_MANAGER	Category Manager
/SRMSMC/DNB_REQUESTOR	Role for Requesting Reports from D&B
/SRMSMC/EVALUATION_APPRAISER	Appraiser
/SRMSMC/ACTIVITY_MANAGER	Activity Manager
/SRMSMC/ACTIVITY_PARTICIPANT	Participant in Activity
/SRMSMC/QUESTIONNAIRE_MANAGER	Questionnaire Manager
/SRMSMC/TRANSLATOR	Translator
/SRMSMC/DISPLAY_ALL	Display Role for All Objects in Supplier and Category Management
/SRMSMC/REPORT_EXEC_ADMIN	Technical Role with Authorization to Start Reports in Supplier and Category Management
/SRMSMC/BG_SUP_EVAL_BUYSIDE	RFC Background Processing in Supplier Evaluation

We recommend that you do not assign the *Appraiser* and the *Category Manager* role to the same person. Under exceptional circumstances, such as Category Managers filling out questionnaires for other colleagues, you can grant both roles to the same person.

## i Note

Please note, that each user has to be assigned to a business partner *Employee(I\_EMPLOYEE)* to have access to Supplier and Category Management apps. You create a business partner role in the transaction *Maintain HR Master Data* and assign it to a user in the transaction *User Maintenance*.

## Authorization Objects Specific to Supplier Information and Master Data

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are specific to Supplier Information and Master Data:

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
/SRMSMC/DB	ACTVT	Reload	<p>Enables users to initiate a download of up-to-date data from D&amp;B. Since downloading data from D&amp;B is subject to charges, you should assign this role only to employees who are aware of this implication.</p> <p>Enables users to interact with an instance of a business object of Supplier Information and Master Data in a specific way. The authorization object is used in the /SRMSMC/DNB_REQUESTOR role.</p>
/SRMSMC/BO	/BOFU/BO	/SRMSMC/BO_QNR (Questionnaire) /SRMSMC/BO_SEP (Supplier Evaluation Profile) /SRMSMC/BO_SES (Supplier Evaluation Scorecard) /SRMSMC/BO_SEV (Supplier Evaluation) /SRMSMC/BO_SRS (Supplier Evaluation Response) /SRMSMC/MO_PUC (Purchasing Category) /SRMSMC/MO_QLIB (Question Library) /SRMSMC/BO_ACT (Activity) /SRMSMC/BO_TSK (Task) /SRMSMC/MO_BUPA	As the type of business object that the user can access, you can specify the values listed.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
/SRMSMC/AM	ACT_TYP	Customizing, activity type	This authorization object is used to define authorization settings for accessing activities in SAP Supplier and Category Management.

## Personalization Object “SLC: PFCG Role Attributes”

The personalization object *SLC: PFCG Role Attributes* (/SRMSMC/PFCG\_ROLE\_ATTRIBUTES) offers the following checkboxes:

- Appraiser Role
- Category Manager Role
- Questionnaire Manager Role
- Activity Manager Role
- Activity Participant Role

Setting one of the above checkboxes in a role has the following effects on users to whom the role has been assigned:

- The users can perform the activities intended for this role. Note that, in addition to the checkbox in the personalization object, performing these activities also depends on the authorization objects assigned to the role.
- Only users for whom the personalization object checkbox is selected are considered during a search, for example for an appraiser or for a purchaser responsible.

Example:

For a user to be found in a search for a purchaser responsible, the *Category Manager Role*, the *Questionnaire Manager Role*, or the *Activity Manager Role* checkbox is required, depending on the process where the search is performed.

## 13.9.7.2 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For Supplier Information and Master Data, the following services are needed:

- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/slc\_qnr\_resps1
- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/slc\_eval\_resps1
- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/slc\_sup\_evals1
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_I\_BP\_SUPPLIER
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_I\_QNR\_OVP
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_I\_SEP\_OVP
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_I\_SES

- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_I\_SEV\_OVP
- /sap/opu/odata/sap/slc\_questionnaire\_response\_srv
- /sap/opu/odata/sap/C\_SUPLREVALRSPEVALUATEST\_CDS
- /sap/opu/odata/sap/C\_SUPLREVALRESPST\_CDS
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/wda\_puc
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/wda\_puc\_t
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_QLB\_OVP\_MAIN
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_QLB\_OVP\_TRNS
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/WDA\_QNR\_OVP\_TRNS
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/wda\_sep\_ovp\_trns
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/wda\_act
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/srsmc/wda\_tsk

Use the transaction SICF to activate these services.

For more information about ICF security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.9.7.3 Data Storage Security

#### Cookies

Supplier Information and Master Data uses a Web Dynpro user interfaces. The SAP Web AS must issue cookies and accept them.

#### Attachments

You restrict the allowed MIME types and the file size of attachments. You do this in Customizing for Materials Management under [► Purchasing ► Supplier and Category Management ►](#) for all business processes you want to use. You can do this in the following Customizing activities:

- [Define MIME Types for Attachments](#)
- [Define Maximum Size for Attachments](#)

The above listed activities are available under each of the business processes nodes in Customizing.

For information about virus scanning for attachments, see [Virus Scanning \[page 23\]](#) and [Application-Specific Virus Scan Profile \(ABAP\) \[page 468\]](#).

### 13.9.7.4 Application-Specific Virus Scan Profile (ABAP)

SAP provides an interface for virus scanners to prevent manipulated or malicious files from damaging the system. To manage the interface and what file types are checked or blocked, there are virus scan profiles. Different applications rely on default profiles or application-specific profiles.

The Web Dynpro user interfaces of Supplier Information and Master Data require that you activate the virus scan profile /SIHTTP/HTTP\_UPLOAD.

You must make the settings for the virus scan profile in Customizing for Materials Management under [► Purchasing ► Supplier and Category Management ► Virus Scan Interface ►](#)

For more information about virus scanning, see [Virus Scanning \[page 23\]](#).

## 13.9.7.5 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

Supplier and Category Management might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> [►](#) [<choose your current on-premise release>](#) [► Product Assistance ► Cross Components ► Data Protection ►](#).

### Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Supplier and Category Management uses the standard archiving and deletion functions that are available for the business partner functionality. Therefore, there is no dedicated end of purpose check (EoP) nor a where-used check (WUC) for Supplier and Category Management.

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Supplier and Category Management	Transaction used for deletion: SARA Archiving object relevant for deletion: CA_BUPA

For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/s4hana> [►](#) [<choose your current on-premise release>](#) [► Product Assistance ► Cross Components ► Data Protection ► Archiving ►](#).

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer and supplier master data in Customizing under [► Logistics General ► Business Partner ► Deletion of Customer and Supplier Master Data ►](#).

## Display of Blocked Suppliers

If suppliers have been blocked, they can no longer be used in any Supplier and Category Management WebDynpro applications. The supplier data is not deleted, but it is no longer visible. Any supplier-related entries are displayed as *Blocked Supplier* and all supplier-related links are disabled. Evaluation scorecards for the blocked suppliers are not displayed in the scorecards list in the *Display Scorecards* app.

This change is relevant for the following apps:

- Manage Activities
- Monitor Tasks
- Manage Templates

Supplier blocking via CDS view functions in the following apps:

- Manage Purchasing Categories
- Display Scorecards
- Quick Create for Procurement-Related Activities
- Open Activities card on the Procurement Overview Page
- Monitor Responses
- Evaluate Suppliers
- Monitor Responses

## 13.9.8 Integration

### 13.9.8.1 SAP S/4HANA Procurement Hub Integration

SAP S/4HANA currently supports integration with the SAP ERP back-end systems.

#### 13.9.8.1.1 Direct Connectivity

The SAP S/4HANA hub system communicates with the connected SAP ERP back-end systems through XML messages using peer-to-peer connectivity options in an asynchronous mode.

## 13.9.8.1.2 Mediated Connectivity

For mediated connectivity, the SAP S/4HANA hub system is connected through SAP NetWeaver PI. The communication with the connected SAP ERP back-end systems is performed through XML messages in asynchronous mode.

## 13.9.8.1.3 Roles and Authorizations in the SAP S/4HANA Hub System

To process messages coming from the SAP ERP back-end systems, a technical user is needed in the SAP S/4HANA hub system.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. To maintain roles for ABAP technology, you use the profile generator (transaction PFCG).

### Note

For more information about creating roles, see Role Maintenance.

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that the technical user needs:

Roles and Authorizations in the SAP S/4HANA Hub System

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
S_RFC	RFC_TYPE	Function Module	Type of RFC object for which access is to be allowed
	RFC_NAME	/IWNGW/ FM_IN_CREATE_NOTIF	Name of RFC object for which access is allowed
		/IWNGW/ FM_IN_DELETE_NOTIF	
	ACTVT	Execute	Activity
S_SERVICE	SRV_NAME	WS PURCHASEREQUISITION REPLICATIO3/ PURCHASE_REQUISITIO N_REPLICATI	Program, transaction, or function module name

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
		WS PURCHASEREQUISITION REPLICATION/ PURCHASE_REQUISITIO N_REPLICATI	
		WS PURCHASEREQUISITION SOURCINGNO1/ PURCHASE_REQUISITIO N_SOURCING	
/AIF/PROC	SRV_TYPE	Hash Value for External Service	Type of check flag and au- thorization for default values
	ACTVT	Import, Export, Resubmit	Activity
	/AIF/NS	/MMHUB	Namespace
	/AIF/IF	PRRECOIN, PRSRCNOTIN	Interface Name
	/AIF/IFVER	*	Interface Version
	/AIF/VNS	*	Variant Namespace
	/AIF/VNAME	*	Name of Interface Variant

### 13.9.8.1.4 Roles and Authorizations in the SAP ERP Back-end System

You can activate Forward Error Handling (FEH) to monitor and process purchase requisitions that fail to copy be copied to the SAP ERP back-end system.

Users that process entries in FEH need specific authorizations assigned to their users , as well as the following authorization objects:

Authorization Object	Description
S_FEH_INTF	<i>Interface-specific authorization for FEH</i>
/SAPPO/FLT	<i>Postprocessing Order Filter</i>



Authorization Object	Description
/SAPPO/ORD	Postprocessing Order (DISPLAY and EDIT)
/SAPPO/WLA	Assignment of Worklist

## 13.10 Supply Chain

### 13.10.1 Efficient Logistics and Order Fulfillment

#### 13.10.1.1 Inventory Management

##### 13.10.1.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data

###### Use

The *Materials Management* application might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

###### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Physical Inventory Documents	Archiving Physical Inventory Documents (MM-IM)	Archiving object MM_INVBEL
Special Stocks	Archiving Special Stock Records (LO-MD-MM)	Archiving object MM_SPSTOCK

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Empties Management	Archiving of Empties Update	Archiving object BEV1_EMFD

### Relevant Application Areas and Available EoP Functionality

Application	Implemented Solution	Further Information
<i>Materials Management (MM)</i>	End of purpose check (EoP)	<p>This includes the business in the areas of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• External Services Management (MM-SRV)</li> <li>• Inventory Management (MM-IM)</li> <li>• Logistics Invoice Verification (MM-IV)</li> <li>• Empties Management (MM-PUR-EM)</li> </ul> <p>For more information about the end of purpose check, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Sourcing and Procurement</i> ► <i>Materials Management (MM)</i> ► <i>Data Blocking</i> ► <i>End of Purpose (EoP) Check for Business Partners in MM-PUR, MM-IM, and MM-IV</i> ►.</p>

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under ► *Data Protection* ► *Authorization Management* ►. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under ► *Data Protection* ► *Blocking and Unblocking* ► *Business Partner* ►.

## 13.10.1.2 Direct Store Delivery

### 13.10.1.2.1 Deletion of Personal Data

#### Use

The *Direct Store Delivery* application might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Visit List	Archiving Visit Lists (LE-DSD)	Archiving object /DSD/VL
Settlement Documents	Archiving Settlement Documents (LE-DSD)	Archiving object /DSD/SL
DEX	Archiving DEX Streams (LE-DSD)	Archiving object /DSD/DEX
Route Settlement	Data destruction in Route Settlements (LE-DSD)	Destruction object /DSD/HH_RAHD_DESTRUCTION
DSD Connector	Data destruction in DSD Connector (LE-DSD)	Destruction object /DSD/ME_TOUR_HD_DESTRUCTION
DSD Loading	Data destruction in DSD Loading (LE-DSD)	Destruction object /DSD/SV_IC_HD_DESTRUCTION
Visit Plan	Data destruction in Visit Plants (LE-DSD)	Destruction object /DSD/VC_VPH_DESTRUCTION
Deal Conditions	Data destruction in Deal Conditions (LE-DSD)	Destruction object /DSD/PR_HEAD_DESTRUCTION

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP Functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
<i>Logistics Execution</i> (LE)	EoP check	This includes the business in the areas of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Direct Store Delivery (Backend) (LE-DSD)</li></ul>

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under ► *Data Protection* ► *Authorization Management* ►. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under ► *Data Protection* ► *Blocking and Unblocking* ► *Business Partner* ►.

### 13.10.1.3 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For Logistics Execution, the following services are needed:

- LECI
- VL31W
- VL32W
- VLPODW1
- VLPODW2

Use the transaction SICF to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information about ICF security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.10.1.4 Deletion of Personal Data (Returnable Packaging Logistics)

### Use

Returnable Packaging Logistics might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Returnable Packaging Logistics (IS-A-RL)	<b>Archiving Object</b>
	VHURL_AC
	VHURL_CP
	VHURL_PO
	VHURL_ST
	VHURL_TR
	<b>Destruction Objects</b>
	VHURL_CP_DESTRUCTION
	VHURL_RR_DESTRUCTION
	<b>ILM Objects</b>
	VHURL_AC
	VHURL_PO
	VHURL_ST
	VHURL_TR
	VHURL_CP_DEST
	VHURL_RR_DEST

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Returnable Packaging Logistics (IS-A-RL)	EoP check	Checks tables: RLACCT, RLPSHPA, RLPSHP

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components*→*Data Protection*→*Blocking and Unblocking of Data*→*Customer Master/Supplier Master Deletion*.

## 13.10.1.5 Deletion of Personal Data in Shipping (LE-SHP)

### Use

Logistics Execution - Shipping might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) |> *Product Assistance* > *Cross Components* > *Data Protection* > .

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Deliveries	Archiving object RV_LIKP
Check-In Data of Means of Transport and Visitors	Data destruction object LE_SHP_LECI_DESTRUCTION

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Sales (SD_ERP)	EoP check	For more information about the end of purpose check, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Supply Chain</i> ► <i>Logistics Execution</i> ► <i>Shipping (LE-SHP)</i> ► <i>Data Administration in Shipping</i> ► <i>Blocking and Deletion of Personal Data in Shipping</i> ► <i>Business Partner End of Purpose (EoP) Check in Shipping (LE-SHP)</i> ►

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer and supplier master data in Customizing under `Logistics - General > Business Partner > Deletion of Customer and Supplier Master Data`.

You execute the rebuild of retention information in Customizing under `Sales and Distribution > Data Transfer, Data Aging, and Archiving > Archiving Data > Rebuilding of Retention Information in SD`.

You can enhance the EoP check in Customizing under `Sales and Distribution > System Modifications > Business Add-In > BAdI: Enhancements for End of Purpose Check`.

### 13.10.1.6 Deletion of Personal Data in Batch Management

#### Use

The *Batch Management* application might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on

the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Batch Master	Archiving Batch Master Records (LO-BM)	Archiving object LO_BATCH
Batch Where-Used	Archiving Batch Where-Used Records (LO-BM-WUL)	Archiving object LO_CHVW

## Relevant Application Objects and Available End of Purpose (EoP) functionality

Application	Implemented Solution	Further Information
Batch Management (LO-BM)	End of purpose check (EoP)	For more information about the end of purpose check, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Technology</i> ► <i>Data Archiving (CA-ARC)</i> ► <i>Logistics General (LO)</i> ► <i>Data Archiving in Batch Management (LO-BM)</i> ► <i>Business Partner End of Purpose (EoP) Check in Batch Management</i> ►.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under ► *Data Protection* ► *Authorization Management* ►. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.



- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [Data Protection](#) [Blocking and Unblocking](#) [Business Partner](#).

## 13.10.2 Extended Production Scheduling and Delivery Planning

### 13.10.2.1 Deletion of Personal Data in advanced Available-to-Promise (aATP)

#### Use

The applications in advanced *Available-to-Promise* (aATP) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [Product Assistance](#) [Cross Components](#) [Data Protection](#).

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Backorder Processing (BOP) in aATP	Destruction of Custom Sort Sequences in aATP BOP	ATP_BOP_CUSTOM_SORT
	Destruction of Segments in aATP BOP	ATP_BOP_SEGMENT
Product Allocation (PAL) in aATP	Data Destruction for Product Allocation in aATP	AATP_PROD_ALLOC_DESTRUCTIO N

#### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [Data Protection](#).

## 13.10.3 Extended Warehouse Management

### 13.10.3.1 Authorizations

Extended Warehouse Management (EWM) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP or AS Java. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP and SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide Java also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PFCG`) on the AS ABAP and the User Management Engine's user administration console on the AS Java.

#### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under [User Administration and Authentication](#).

### Standard Authorization Objects

To gain an overview of the authorization objects for EWM, proceed as follows:

1. Open transaction `AUTH_DISPLAY_OBJECTS` to display active authorization objects.
2. In the overview, expand the following subtree of authorizations related to EWM.
  1. Authorizations Extended Warehouse Management (SCWM)
  2. Dock Appointment Scheduling (SCDS)
  3. Authorizations SCM Basis (SCMB)
  4. Master Data Authorization Objects (SCMD)

If you want to display the technical names of the authorization objects, choose **Edit** **Technical Names On**.

3. If you want to get a detailed description, choose the [Information](#) button next to the authorization object you are interested in.

### Warehouse-Based Authorization

#### Warehouse-Specific Field in Authorization Objects

If you have multiple warehouses modelled in EWM, you may need people working in one warehouse to be able to access data from another warehouse. Many authorization objects in EWM contain a specific authorization field for this purpose, for example:

- `/SCWM/LGNU` ([Warehouse Number/Warehouse Complex](#))  
This is the most commonly used authorization field. It is used, for example, in EWM monitor authorization object `/SCWM/MO`.
- `/SCWM/ORG` ([Location/Organizational Unit](#))

- /SCMB/LGNU (*Warehouse Number/Warehouse Complex*)

## Warehouse in Customizing or Administration

In other cases, such as in administration or Customizing, EWM does not use specific authorization objects. Instead, you can use generic authorization objects to limit the access to tables and views, for example:

- S\_TABU\_NAM (*Table Access by Generic Standard Tools*)
- S\_TABU\_LIN (*Authorization for Organizational Unit*)

### ❁ Example

The Customizing activity *Define Storage Bin Types* has the assigned Customizing object /SCWM/T303. The underlying database table /SCWM/T303 contains field LGNU (warehouse number) with data element /SCWM/LGNU (*Warehouse Number/Warehouse Complex*). You can use generic authorization objects to limit the access to tables and views, as follows:

- Use authorization object S\_TABU\_NAM to limit access to Customizing object /SCWM/T303.
- Use authorization object S\_TABU\_LIN to limit access based on organizational criteria.  
You can also use authorization field ORG\_CRIT (*Organization Criterion for Key-Specific Authorization*) and use value /SCWM/LGNU (*Warehouse Number/Warehouse Complex*) to be able to enter a warehouse in ORG\_FIELD1.

For more information, see the documentation of authorization objects S\_TABU\_NAM and S\_TABU\_LIN in transaction SU21.

## BRFplus

BRFplus is sometimes used in EWM, for example, in Labor Management. However, BRFplus does not recognize organizational units such as the warehouse. Therefore, if BRFplus entities should be separated based on warehouse, you must consider this during the implementation phase so that you can use alternative BRFplus mechanisms.

For information about the authorization concept of BRFplus, see SAP Library for SAP NetWeaver at <https://help.sap.com/netweaver>. In SAP Library, search for Business Rule Framework plus (BRFplus) and then choose **► Concepts ► Authorizations ►**.

## Critical Combinations

### Appointment Planner for Carrier

#### i Note

These authorizations are relevant only if you are using SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling.

SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling offers a collaboration scenario where appointment planners for carriers can log on to the SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling system, and view and maintain appointments for their carrier. Since this potentially means that employees of a different company access SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling from outside the company network, you must put a special focus on authorizations. This kind of user should have very limited authorizations. As well as this, they should be able to access data of their own

carrier only, and not be able to access other carriers' data. They should not be able to see internal data, like overall capacities of loading points. Therefore, you must be very careful and restrictive when assigning roles and authorizations to this kind of user.

SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling delivers a special authorization field for this.

### i Note

We recommend that you define, in the roles, the loading points for which a user may view or create appointments. You can do this in the *Loading Point* authorization field (/SCWM/DSLIP) in the authorization objects Loading Appointment (/SCWM/DSAP) and Slot (/SCWM/DSSL).

In addition, the authorization field *User Process Scope for Dock Appointment Scheduling* (/SCWM/DSPS) is very important. It is available on the Loading Appointment and Slot authorization objects. For appointment planners for carriers, set this field to *Scope for an Appointment Planner for Carrier*. This ensures that this user can create and view appointments only for the carrier that is assigned to him or her. Otherwise such a user could create appointments for any carrier.

## Warehouse Management Monitor: General

In the warehouse management monitor (/SCWM/MON), you can monitor and access a wide area of application content and also trigger actions. Due to the high amount of different data that can be accessed, this may be critical and you may want to restrict the access to the monitor and to the data and actions which can be used. Therefore, the warehouse management monitor provides a concept to restrict which persons can access which monitor nodes and which actions can be triggered. The corresponding authorization object is /SCWM/MO.

## Warehouse Management Monitor: Authorization to Display Batch Execution Data

In the warehouse management monitor (/SCWM/MON), you can execute selections using batch jobs. You can view the results in the warehouse management monitor. During the selection, the system performs the normal authorization checks and selects and stores only data for which the user has authorization in the data containers for the warehouse management monitor. But if these data containers are then displayed by other users, the system does not perform these authorization checks. Therefore, you should only grant the authorization to display batch execution data for monitor nodes or users where these checks are not critical.

The authorization object used for the authorization to display batch execution data in the warehouse management monitor is /SCWM/DATC. For more information about this authorization object and the warehouse management monitor, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA at <https://help.sap.com/s4hana>. In SAP Library, choose ► SAP S/4HANA ► Enterprise Business Applications ► Supply Chain ► Extended Warehouse Management ► Monitoring ► Warehouse Management Monitor ►.

## Maintaining Authorizations for Integration with SAP Components

### Maintaining Authorizations for Integration of EWM Within Supply Chain

#### i Note

This is not relevant for standalone SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling.

For the integration of EWM within Supply Chain, that is, with Logistics Execution (LE) and Logistics – General (LO), use the authorization roles for the remote function call (RFC) destination users. For more information

about these roles, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA at <https://help.sap.com/s4hana>. In SAP Library, choose ► *SAP S/4HANA* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Supply Chain* ► *Extended Warehouse Management* ► *Roles for Extended Warehouse Management (EWM)*.

For the integration from Supply Chain to EWM, for example, the role `/SCWM/ERP_EWM_INTEGRATION` exists. For the integration from EWM to Supply Chain, the corresponding RFC users also require the proper authorizations. For more information, see SAP Note [2081387](https://support.sap.com/2081387).

In some cases, for example, for migration functions like transaction `/SCWM/MIG_PRODUCT`, the RFC enabled function module `RFC_READ_TABLE` is called on the Supply Chain side from EWM. For such scenarios, the corresponding RFC user requires this authorization. To avoid misuse, you should restrict the tables to be accessed to a minimum. You can therefore use the authorization objects `S_TABU_NAM` or `S_TABU_DIS`.

If you grant the usage of RFC function `RFC_READ_TABLE` to an RFC user, it is very important that you restrict the tables that can be accessed to a minimum to avoid misuse.

## Maintaining Authorizations for Data Transfer to SAP Business Warehouse

### i Note

This is not relevant for standalone SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling.

You can exclude DataSources from the extraction to SAP Business Warehouse (SAP BW).

Data that is stored in the extraction structure of this DataSource cannot be transferred to SAP BW.

1. In Customizing for *Extended Warehouse Management*, choose ► *Integration with Other SAP Components* ► *Data Transfer to Business Warehouse* ► *General Settings* ► *Limit Authorizations for Extraction*.
2. Choose *New Entries* and choose a DataSource that you want to exclude from the extraction.
3. Choose the SAP BW system for which you want no more data for this DataSource to be extracted.
4. In the *Ex. Extr.* field, enter whether or not you want to exclude the DataSource from the extraction.
5. Save your entries and specify a transport request.

## Maintaining Authorizations for Data Transfer Between Shipping and Receiving (EWM) and SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling

### i Note

This is not relevant for standalone SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling.

SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling and Shipping and Receiving (S&R) are two independent components. But it is also possible to integrate the components, for example, so that the system communicates appointment status changes in SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling to S&R and appointment status changes in S&R to SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling. For more information, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA at <https://help.sap.com/s4hana>. In SAP Library, choose ► *SAP S/4HANA* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Supply Chain* ► *Extended Warehouse Management* ► *SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling* ► *Integration with SAP EWM*.

For integration between SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling and S&R, the system uses queued RFC (qRFC) technology.

## Using Standard Roles for SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling to EWM Integration

For the integration from SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling to S&R, the technical role `/SCWM/DAS_TO_EWM_INTEGRATION` is available. It contains the necessary authorizations to update the relevant S&R objects. The role does not contain any menu entries or transactions, as it is only a technical role for RFC communication. You must assign this role to the SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling user or RFC user, depending on if you use RFC communication, with which the integration is done.

## Maintaining RFC Authorizations for Internal Communication in EWM

For RFC communication, users usually require the authorizations for authorization object `S_RFC`. As RFCs are potential security risks, you should be very restrictive in granting them. In certain cases, EWM also uses RFCs for internal purposes, for example for parallel processing or for asynchronous communication. For these purposes, no RFC authorizations have to be granted as these calls are within the SAP S/4HANA system.

EWM also uses specific RFC-enabled function modules, which are used to extract content from qRFCs. For example, these function modules are used to extract the warehouse number or delivery number from qRFCs.

These function modules do not perform data changes in EWM and also do not return data to a caller. They are required for delivery processing and for displaying of message queue entries in the warehouse management monitor.

The function modules are in the following special function groups:

- `/SCWM/CORE_MQ_REPLAY` (*Message Queue Moni: Replay Functions*)
- `/SCWM/CORE_RF_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules for RF*)
- `/SCWM/DELIVERY_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules for Deliveries*)
- `/SCWM/ERP_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules - ERP Interface*)
- `/SCWM/SR_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules - S&R*)
- `/SCWM/VAS_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules for VAS*)
- `/SCWM/WC_SERVICE_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules for Workcenter*)
- `/SCWM/WAVE_MGMT_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules for Wave*)

If you use the message queue monitor node in the warehouse management monitor, you must add these function groups to authorization `S_RFC`. Use the activity Execute (16) and the Function Group (FUGR) type of RFC object.

For delivery and warehouse task processing, for example, confirming and creation of warehouse tasks, you must add the function group `/SCWM/DELIVERY_MQ_REPLAY` (*Replay Function Modules for Deliveries*) to authorization `S_RFC`.

These authorizations are already in the standard roles in EWM, so they are only relevant if you create your own roles.

## 13.10.3.2 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For this area the following services are needed:

- `/sap/bc/gui/sap/its/scwm/rfui`  
This service can be used, for example, to allow warehouse workers to use transaction `/SCWM/RFUI` from mobile applications. The service can be accessed from the SAP console or by using ITS mobile. For more

information, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA at <https://help.sap.com/s4hana>. In SAP Library choose **► SAP S/4HANA ► Enterprise Business Applications ► Supply Chain ► Extended Warehouse Management ► Radio Frequency Framework ► Work Processing Using Radio Frequency ► Resource Management Using Radio Frequency**.

- `/sap/bc/webdynpro/scwm/`  
In this path various Web Dynpro user interfaces (UIs) for Extended Warehouse Management as well as for SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling are contained.
- `/sap/bc/srt/xip/scwm`  
Contains services which are used for SAP Process Integration communication.
- `/sap/bc/srt/rfc/scwm`  
Contains services which are used for remote function call (RFC) communication. For example, `RFID_AII_EWM` which is used to exchange radio frequency identification information with SAP Auto-ID Infrastructure (SAP AII).

Use the transaction SICF to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information about ICF security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.10.3.3 Data Storage Security

#### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Extended Warehouse Management (EWM) saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used by EWM and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

#### Logical File Names Used

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- `EWM_PI_DOWNLOAD`
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - Transaction `/SCWM/PI_DOWNLOAD`
    - Program `/SCWM/R_PI_STOCK_DWNLD`
  - Parameters used in this context:
    - `<PARAM1>` = Warehouse number (CHAR 4)
    - `<PARAM2>` = Counter (NUM2)

- Logical file path used: EWM\_GLOBAL\_PATH

### i Note

The logical filename is fixed and cannot be changed. The logical file contains a physical filename. The logical file path contains a physical path. The validation and alias definition do not apply for this logical filename.

- EWM\_PI\_UPLOAD
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/PI\_UPLOAD
    - Program /SCWM/R\_PI\_FILEUPLD
  - Parameters used in this context:
    - <PARAM1> = Warehouse number (CHAR 4)
    - <PARAM2> = Creation Date (DATS8)
    - <PARAM2> = Counter (NUM2)
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_GLOBAL\_PATH

### i Note

The logical filename is fixed and cannot be changed. The logical file contains a physical filename. The logical file path contains a physical path. The validation and alias definition do not apply for this logical filename.

- EWM\_STOCK\_UPLOAD
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/ISU
    - Program /SCWM/R\_INITIALSTOCKUPLOAD
  - Parameters used in this context: <PARAM1> = Warehouse number (CHAR 4)
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_STOCK\_UPLOAD\_PATH
- EWM\_STOBIN\_UPLOAD
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/SBUP
    - Program /SCWM/TLAGP\_UPLOAD
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_STOBIN\_UPLOAD\_PATH
- EWM\_STOBIN\_SORT\_UPLOAD
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/SRTUP
    - Program /SCWM/TLAGPS\_UPLOAD
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_STOBIN\_SORT\_UPLOAD\_PATH
- EWM\_MS\_RESULT
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/MS\_RESULT
    - Program /SCWM/R\_MS\_RESULT\_READ
  - Parameters used in this context: <PARAM1> = Warehouse number (CHAR 4)
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_GLOBAL\_PATH



### i Note

The logical filename is fixed and cannot be changed. The logical file contains a physical filename. The logical file path contains a physical path. The validation and alias definition do not apply for this logical filename.

- EWM\_ELS\_FRML
- EWM\_ELS\_ST
- EWM\_ELS\_STE
- EWM\_ELS\_SEQ
- EWM\_ELS\_ASS
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/ELS\_UPLOAD
    - Program /SCWM/ELS\_UPLOAD
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_GLOBAL\_PATH

### i Note

The logical filename is fixed and cannot be changed. The logical file contains a physical filename. The logical file path contains a physical path. The validation and alias definition do not apply for this logical filename.

- EWM\_MS\_RESULT
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/PI\_SAMP\_UPDATE
    - Program /SCWM/PI\_SAMP\_UPDATE\_RESULT
  - Parameters used in this context: <PARAM1> = Warehouse number (CHAR 4)
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_GLOBAL\_PATH

### i Note

The logical filename is fixed and cannot be changed. The logical file contains a physical filename. The logical file path contains a physical path. The validation and alias definition do not apply for this logical filename.

- EWM\_PRODUCT\_UPLOAD
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/MIG\_PRODUCT
    - Program /SCWM/R\_MIG\_PRODUCT
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_PRODUCT\_UPLOAD\_PATH
- EWM\_PACKSPEC\_UPLOAD
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/MIG\_PRODUCT
    - Transaction /SCWM/IPU
    - Program /SCWM/R\_MIG\_PRODUCT
    - Program /SCWM/R\_PS\_DATA\_LOAD
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_PACKSPEC\_UPLOAD\_PATH
- EWM\_PI\_COMPL\_UPLOAD

- Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
  - Transaction /SCWM/MIG\_PI\_COMPL
  - Program /SCWM/R\_MIG\_PI\_COMPL
- Logical file path used: EWM\_PI\_COMPL\_UPLOAD\_PATH
- EWM\_TDC\_EDGE and EWM\_TDC\_RSRC
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/TDC\_UPLOAD
    - Program /SCWM/TDC\_UPLOAD
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_GLOBAL\_PATH
- EWM\_TATT\_UPLOAD (*Logical File for Upload of Time and Attendance Events*)
  - Transactions or programs using this logical file name:
    - Transaction /SCWM/TATT\_UPLOAD
    - Program /SCWM/R\_LM\_TATT\_UPLOAD
  - Parameters used in this context: <PARAM1> = Warehouse number (CHAR 4)
  - Logical file path used: EWM\_GLOBAL\_PATH

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.10.3.4 Deletion of Personal Data

#### Use

Extended Warehouse Management (EWM) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under **Product Assistance** **Cross Components** **Data Protection**.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
EWM Warehouse Request Processing (for example, inbound deliveries, outbound delivery orders, and production material requests)	<p>Business partner data is stored in the warehouse request. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Partner data in the warehouse request header/item</li> <li>• Ship-to data and ship-from data</li> <li>• Owner and entitled-to-dispose data on item level</li> </ul>	<p>You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving objects are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DLV_INB (Internal Warehouse Request (Inbound Delivery))</li> <li>• DLV_OUT (Internal Warehouse Request (Outbound Delivery))</li> <li>• DLV_PROD (Production Material Request)</li> </ul>
EWM Labor Management	<p>The processor is recorded in several EWM documents in Labor Management, for example, in warehouse orders and executed workload.</p> <p>Time and attendance data such as clock-in and clock-out times of processors can be stored.</p>	<p>You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving objects are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WME_WO (Warehouse Order)</li> <li>• WME_EWL (Executed Workload)</li> <li>• WME_EPD (Performance Document)</li> <li>• WME_ILT (Indirect Labor Task)</li> </ul> <p>You can delete time and attendance data using the destruction report / SCWM/TATT_DES. This report uses the data destruction object EWM_TATT and defined retention periods for time and attendance records.</p>
EWM Shipping and Receiving	<p>In Shipping and Receiving, business partner data may be stored as carrier data in transportation units.</p>	<p>You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving objects are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WME_TU (TU Activity)</li> <li>• WME_VEH (Vehicle Activity)</li> </ul>
EWM Warehouse Order Processing	<p>In warehouse order processing, business partner data may be stored as owner data or entitled-to-dispose data.</p>	<p>You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving object is WME_TO (Warehouse Order).</p>
EWM Value-Added Services	<p>If you use value-added services (VAS), business partner data may be stored as owner data or entitled-to-dispose data in VAS orders.</p>	<p>You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving object is WME_VAS (Value-Added Service Order).</p>

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
EWM Wave Management	In wave management, business partner data may be stored as owner data or entitled-to-dispose data.	You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving object is <code>WME_WAVE</code> (Wave).
EWM Proof of Delivery	If you use proof of delivery (transaction <code>/SCWM/POD_IMP</code> ), business partner data may be stored as carrier data, entitled-to-dispose data, or processor data in the proof of delivery object.	You can delete by using transaction <code>/SCWM/POD_IMP</code> .
EWM Stock Data	In EWM, stock data may store business partner data as, for example, owner data or entitled-to-dispose data.	You cannot delete directly. You must clear the corresponding stock so that the stock does not exist anymore by using the <i>Delete Obsolete Table Entries</i> ( <code>/LIME/BACKGROUND_DELETE_EXEC</code> ) report.
SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling	In SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling, business partner data may be stored as carrier data in loading appointments.	You can delete loading appointments by using the destruction report <code>/SCWM/DSAPP_DES</code> . This report uses the data destruction object <code>EWM_DSAPP</code> and defined retention periods for the loading appointments.
Transportation Management in EWM	Business partner data is contained in shipment objects and freight document objects.	You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving objects are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>TM_SHP</code> (Shipment)</li> <li>• <code>TM_FRD</code> (Freight Document)</li> </ul>
EWM Warehouse Billing	In Warehouse Billing, snapshots may contain a business partner.	You can delete billing measurements (BOPF object <code>/SCWM/BM</code> ) using archiving object <code>EWM_WBM</code> (Warehouse Billing Measurement).  You can delete billing measure requests (BOPF object <code>/SCWM/WB_BMR</code> ) using deletion report <i>Deletion of WBMR and WBMS</i> ( <code>/SCWM/WB_WBMR_DELETION</code> ).
Account Assignment Data	Account assignment data can contain a business partner (party entitled to dispose).	You can delete account assignment data using transaction <code>/SCWM/ACC_IMP_ERP</code> .

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Express Shipping Interface (ESI)	ESI manifests can contain address, location, or other contact data of a partner.	You can delete the objects by using the archiving services. The archiving objects are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EWM_ESI_MF (ESI Manifest)</li> <li>• EWM_ESI_PA (ESI Parcel)</li> </ul>
Global Batch Traceability (GBT) Interfacing	For communication to GBT, the tracking events which get temporarily stored in EWM can contain a business partner.	You can delete the GBT tracking events using report /SCWM/GBT_R_EVENT_DELETION.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC Functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
EWM Warehouse Request Processing (for example, inbound deliveries, outbound delivery orders, and production material requests)	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for the following documents: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outbound delivery order</li> <li>• Outbound delivery</li> <li>• Inbound delivery notification</li> <li>• Inbound delivery</li> <li>• Production material request</li> </ul>
EWM Labor Management	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for the following documents: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Executed workload</li> <li>• Employee performance document</li> <li>• Warehouse order</li> <li>• Indirect labor task</li> <li>• Time and attendance</li> </ul> <p>For indirect labor tasks, the data is stored using order document management (ODM).</p> <p>The ODM data type is ILT. The corresponding header component is ILT with structure /SCWM/S_ILT_ODM.</p>

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
EWM Shipping and Receiving	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for the following documents: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transportation unit</li> <li>• Vehicle</li> <li>• Transportation unit activity</li> <li>• Vehicle activity</li> </ul>
EWM Value-Added Services	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	The data is stored using ODM. The ODM data type is VASO. The corresponding item component is VASI with structure /SCWM/S_VAS_ODM_ITM.
EWM Proof of Delivery	A WUC is implemented for the business partner object.	A WUC is done for the /SCWM/POD database table.
EWM Stock Data	A WUC is implemented for the business partner object.	A WUC is done for the following database tables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• /SCWM/STOCK_IW01</li> <li>• /SCWM/STOCK_IW02</li> <li>• /SCWM/STOCK_IW03</li> <li>• /SCWM/STOCK_IW04</li> </ul>
SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner (carrier) object.	An EoP check is done for loading appointments.
Transportation Management in EWM	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for the following documents: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Freight order</li> <li>• Shipment</li> </ul> <p>The data is stored using ODM, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For shipments the ODM data type is TMSH. The corresponding header component is TSHD with structure /SCMB/TMDL_ODM_SHP_HDR_STR.</li> <li>• For freight documents the ODM data type is TMFR. The corresponding header component is TMFH with structure /SCMB/TMDL_ODM_FRD_HDR_STR.</li> </ul>
Transportation Management in EWM Warehouse Billing	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for warehouse billing measurement documents.

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Wave Management	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for waves.
Physical Inventory	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for physical inventory documents.
Warehouse Orders and Warehouse Tasks	An EoP check is implemented for the business partner object.	An EoP check is done for warehouse orders and warehouse tasks.
Account Assignment Data	A WUC is implemented for the business partner object.	A WUC is implemented for the Account Assignment Data which can be replicated using transaction /SCWM/ ACC_IMP_ERP.
Global Batch Traceability (GBT) Interfacing	A WUC is implemented for the business partner object.	A WUC is implemented for the tracking events.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [▶ Data Protection ▶](#).

### 13.10.3.5 Enterprise Services Security

For general information, see the chapters on Web Services Security in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide and in the SAP Process Integration Security Guide.

## 13.10.3.6 Other Security-Relevant Information

### Security Aspects of Data Flow and Processes

The following table describes some typical processes and communication channels, along with appropriate security measures:

Process	Security Measure
Mobile devices can be connected using HTTP/ITS mobile (it is also possible to use the SAP console). This is done based on the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) service for RFUI.	For more information, see <a href="#">Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF) [page 486]</a> .
For certain scenarios, such as connecting automated physical processes (for example, conveyor systems) using SAP Plant Connectivity, remote function calls (RFCs) are used. Depending on the scenario, Idocs may also be used (for example, when warehouse control units are used).	For more information, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.
Extended Warehouse Management (EWM) offers the possibility of uploading and downloading data. In many of these transactions it is possible to either choose a local file system (PC) or files on the application server.	Ensure that only a few people can access these transactions and that access to the application server file system is restricted. You should design logical paths and filenames to restrict the access. For more information, see <a href="#">Data Storage Security [page 487]</a> .
EWM offers a collaborative scenario for SAP Dock Appointment Scheduling. This enables appointment planners for carriers to access the system using SAP Gateway or Web Dynpro ABAP technology, for example, from outside the company network.	In this scenario, users outside of the company or firewall may access the system. For such scenarios, special attention must be paid to assigning authorizations to these users, and to the system setup and how the access from outside the company is granted.
EWM offers a scenario for Warehouse Billing where there is an integration with the SAP Transportation Management (SAP TM) system.	In this scenario, EWM can extract billing-relevant information from SAP TM and send order and settlement information back to SAP TM. The communication is performed using enterprise services or Web services.
EWM Fiori apps, for example, for deliveries or returns processing.	In this scenario, SAP Fiori accesses EWM using SAP Gateway. For more information, see SAP Library for SAP Fiori.

### Security for Additional Applications

#### Geocoding

EWM can, in some cases, make use of third party geocoding applications, for example, PTV eServer. The software could be used, for example, to calculate geographical information for the locations or distances for



transportation lanes. To connect to the third party software, this software may require an RFC destination on the EWM side. For more information on geocoding, see SAP Library for SAP S/4HANA at <https://help.sap.com/s4hana>. In SAP Library, choose ► *SAP S/4HANA* ► *Enterprise Business Applications* ► *Supply Chain* ► *SCM Basis* ► *SCM Basis Master Data* ► *Location* . For any security issues regarding the third party application, for example, PTV eServer software, see the third party documentation.

### **SAP Plant Connectivity for Scale Integration**

EWM can, in some cases, integrate an external scale. The software could be used, for example, to calculate the weight of a handling unit. A sample implementation exists for this in the *Determination of HU Weight Using Scale* (/SCWM/EX\_WRKC\_UI\_GET\_WEIGHT) Business Add-In. In this example, the system uses SAP Plant Connectivity to integrate an external scale. This software may require an RFC destination on the EWM side to connect to SAP Plant Connectivity.

For information about SAP Plant Connectivity, see SAP Help Portal at <https://help.sap.com/pco>.

## **13.10.3.7 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing**

### **Change Documents**

Personal data is subject to frequent changes. Therefore, for revision purposes or as a result of legal regulations, it may be necessary to track the changes made to this data. When these changes are logged, you should be able to check which user made which change, the date and time, the previous value, and the current value. It is also possible to analyze errors in this way.


#### **Change Documents for Delivery Objects**


When change documents are activated and used, each field in the delivery documents is linked to change documents. In the following Customizing activities, you can set – per document type – whether a change document is to be written for each delivery document.

- Activate change documents for inbound deliveries in Customizing for *Extended Warehouse Management* under ► *Goods Receipt Process* ► *Inbound Delivery* ► *Define Document Types for Inbound Delivery Process* .
- Activate change documents for outbound deliveries in Customizing for *Extended Warehouse Management* under ► *Goods Issue Process* ► *Outbound Delivery* ► *Define Document Types for Outbound Delivery Process* .
- Activate change documents for posting changes in Customizing for *Extended Warehouse Management* under ► *Internal Warehouse Processes* ► *Delivery Processing* ► *Posting Changes* ► *Define Document Types for Posting Change Process* .
- Activate change documents for stock transfers in Customizing for *Extended Warehouse Management* under ► *Internal Warehouse Processes* ► *Delivery Processing* ► *Stock Transfers* ► *Define Document Types for the Stock Transfer Process* .

You can view change documents for delivery objects in the transactions *Maintain Inbound Delivery*, *Maintain Outbound Delivery Order*, *Maintain Posting Change*, and *Maintain Internal Stock Transfer*. You can also run reports that retrieve archived documents in the same transactions, using the *Open Advanced Search* pushbutton.


## Change Documents for Labor Management Objects

You can activate change documents for the following Labor Management objects in Customizing for *Extended Warehouse Management* under **► Labor Management ► Activate Change Documents** 

- Processor  
The activation of change documents is at client level. You can display the change documents in either of the following ways:
  - In transaction `RSSCD100`, in the *Object Class* field enter `/SCMB/PRR`, and in the *Object ID* field enter the processor.
  - In transaction *Maintain Business Partner*, transaction code `BP`, via the menu option **► Extras ► Change History** .
- Processor (for Shift Sequence Assignment)  
The activation of change documents is at client level. You can display the change documents in transaction `RSSCD100`. In the *Object Class* field, enter `/SAPAPO/CD_RES`. In the *Object ID* field, enter the `<client><processor>` without a space in between, for example, `003DOE`.
- Time and Attendance  
The activation of change documents is at warehouse level. You can display the change documents in transaction `RSSCD100`. In the *Object Class* field, enter `/SCWM/TATT`. In the *Object ID* field, enter the `<warehouse number>_<processor>_<date in format YYYYMMDD>_<time in format HHMMSS>` with date and time in the time zone of the warehouse, for example, `EW01_DOE_20180404_092911`.
- Performance Document  
The activation of change documents is at client level. You can display the change documents in either of the following ways:
  - In transaction `RSSCD100`, in the *Object Class* field enter `/SCWM/EPD`. In the *Object ID* field, enter the document number of the performance document without leading zeroes.
  - In transaction *Employee Performance Overview*, transaction code `/SCWM/EPERF`.

## 13.10.4 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

Location master data may contain personal data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use *SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)* to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product Assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) **► Product Assistance ► Enterprise Business Applications ► Manufacturing ► Production Planning and Detailed Scheduling ► Master Data ► Location ► Data Protection** 

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
SCM Location	Without ILM	You can run the report <code>/SAPAPO/DELETE_LOCATIONS</code> from the SAP Easy Access menu, under <a href="#">▶ SAP Menu ▶ Logistics ▶ SCM Extended Warehouse Management ▶ SCM Basis ▶ Master Data ▶ Location ▶</a> ; select the location, then choose <a href="#">▶ Extras ▶ Delete Location ▶</a>
ILM-enabled SCM Location	Refer to What's New for ILM-related Information for SCM Location (SCMB_LOC)	Destruction object <code>/SCMB/LOC</code> ILM object <code>SCMB_LOC</code>

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
SCM Location	End of Purpose (EoP) check	

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of location master data in Customizing for *SCM Extended Warehouse Management* under [▶ SCM Basis ▶ Master Data ▶ Location ▶ Location Master Data Deletion ▶](#).

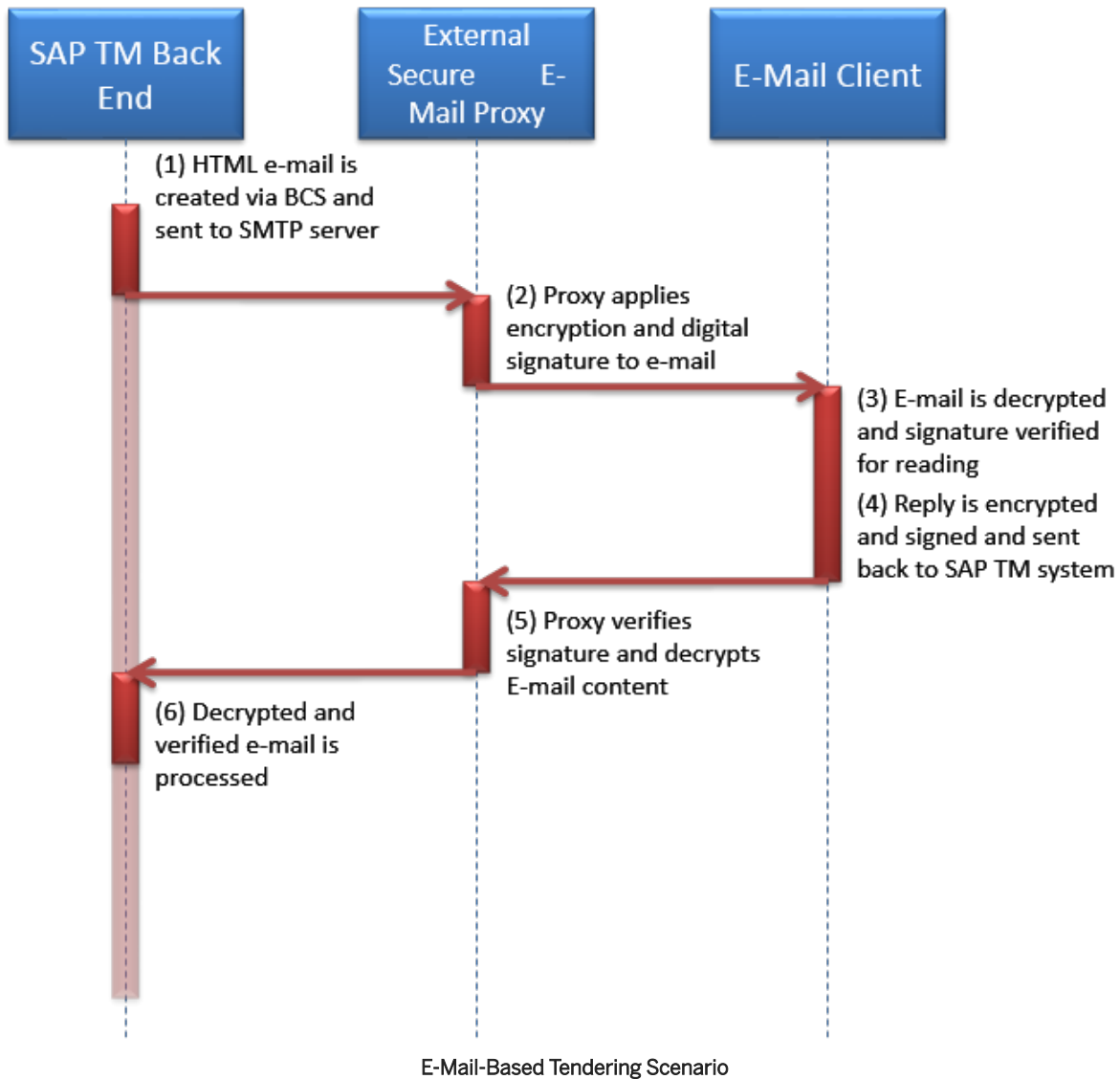
## **13.10.5 Transportation Management**

This section of the Operations Guide for SAP S/4HANA, on-premise edition contains information on operations tasks specific to Transportation Management.

### **13.10.5.1 Security Aspects of Data, Data Flow and Processes**

#### **E-mail-Based Tendering Scenario**

The figure below shows an overview of the e-mail based tendering scenario for Transportation Management (TM).



Steps for E-Mail Based Tendering Scenario

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	HTML e-mail is created via BCS and sent to SMTP server	In Customizing for TM, the use of encryption and digital signatures needs to be enabled. In Customizing for <i>Transportation Management</i> , choose <b>Freight Order Management</b> > <i>Tendering</i> > <i>Define General Settings for Tendering</i> > <i>03 – E-mail and SMS Content</i> > <i>E-Mail Security Settings</i> >

Step	Description	Security Measure
2	Proxy applies encryption and digital signature to e-mail	External secure e-mail proxy needs to be maintained and activated for the TM system. For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">149926</a> . Keys must be exchanged between the sender and recipient prior to sending the e-mail. We highly recommend that you set up the policy for the e-mail proxy in such a way that e-mails can be sent only if encryption and digital signatures are enabled. If this is not possible, for example, due to missing keys, e-mails must not be sent in an insecure way.
3	E-mail is decrypted and signature verified for reading	The e-mail client of the recipient must support encryption and digital signatures, and keys must have been exchanged beforehand by the sender and the recipient.
4	Reply is encrypted and signed and sent back to TM system	Refer to step 3
5	Proxy verifies signature and decrypts e-mail content	Refer to step 2
6	Decrypted and verified e-mail is processed	Not applicable

### → Recommendation

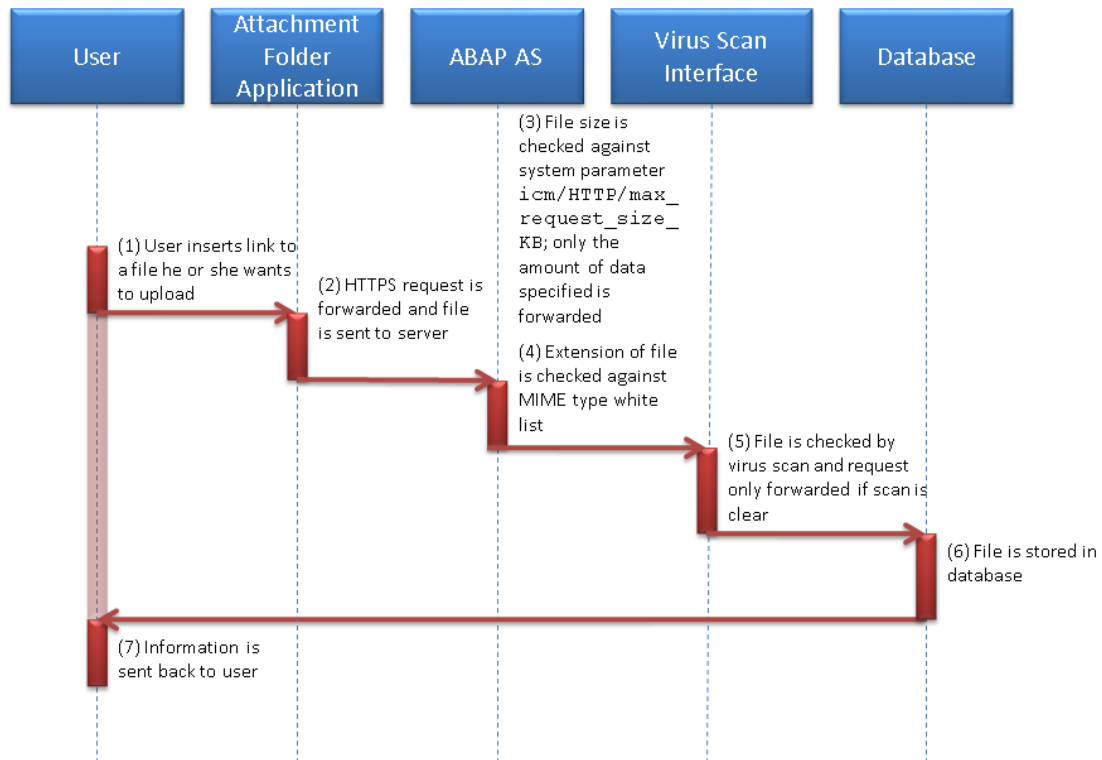
To access the TM system externally, we recommend that you define a system alias in the web dispatcher. The web dispatcher redirects the request to the correct hostname and port so that an external user can use a hyperlink, which contains the alias, to access the system.

You create a tendering notification e-mail in the TM system. The system sends this e-mail to the carrier with a hyperlink to the carrier's worklist in the TM system or in the TM collaboration portal. The hyperlink contains the system alias instead of the physical hostname and port. To use the alias, ensure that you have implemented SAP Note [1748036](#) or [1747651](#), and SAP Note [1783590](#). Subsequently, you need to specify the following settings in the TM system:

1. Create an alias in transaction *SM59*.
2. In the *Target Host* field, enter the system alias as specified in the web dispatcher.
3. Enter the alias in the *03 E-Mail and SMS Content* screen in Customizing for *Transportation Management* under **Freight Order Management > Tendering > Define General Settings for Tendering**.

## File Upload Scenario

The figure below shows an overview of the file upload scenario for TM.



File Upload Scenario

The table below shows the security aspects to be considered for the process step and what mechanism applies.

Steps for File Upload Scenario

Step	Description	Security Measure
1	User inserts link to a file he or she wants to upload	User needs to be aware of the file he or she wants to upload
2	HTTPS request is forwarded and file is sent to server	Not applicable

Step	Description	Security Measure
3	File size is checked against system parameter <code>icm/HTTP/max_request_size_KB</code> ; only the amount of data specified is forwarded	Maximum file size needs to be restricted to secure the server; for more information, see the Security Guide for SAP NetWeaver 7.5. In the Security Guide, choose <a href="#">▶ Security Guides for SAP NetWeaver Functional Units</a> <a href="#">▶ Security Guides for the Application Server</a> <a href="#">▶ Security Guides for the AS ABAP</a> <a href="#">▶ Web Dynpro ABAP Security Guide</a> <a href="#">▶ Security Notes for FileUpload UI Elements</a> .
4	MIME type of file is checked against white list	The extension of the uploaded file (but not its content) is checked against MIME type white list; as a prerequisite for using the white list, SAP Note <a href="#">1514253</a> must be implemented.
5	File is checked by virus scan and request only forwarded if scan is clear	Virus scan needs to be active in your system. For more information, see SAP Library for SAP NetWeaver 7.5 at <a href="http://help.sap.com/nw">http://help.sap.com/nw</a> . In SAP Library, choose <a href="#">▶ SAP NetWeaver</a> <a href="#">▶ SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View</a> <a href="#">▶ Security</a> <a href="#">▶ Security Developer Documentation</a> <a href="#">▶ Secure Programming</a> <a href="#">▶ Secure Programming – Java</a> <a href="#">▶ Secure Programming</a> <a href="#">▶ SAP Virus Scan Interface</a> . We strongly recommend that you create a virus scan profile with linkage type <i>All steps successful</i> .
6	File is stored in database	Not applicable
7	Information is sent back to user	Not applicable

### Caution

Only file extensions are compared to the entries in the white list, not the content of the files.

The file upload function can be disabled to prevent users from uploading files to your system. To disable the file upload function, you must implement SAP Note [1514253](#). We recommend that you disable the upload function if it is not required by your business scenarios.



Always ensure that your virus scan is set up and working correctly before enabling file uploads. If your virus scan is not up and running, do not use the file upload.

For information about uploading TACT rates to TM, see SAP Library for TM at <http://help.sap.com/tm>. In SAP Library for TM, choose ► *Master Data* ► *Charge Management and Service Product Catalogs* ► *Setup of Service Product Catalogs and Charge Management MD* ► *TACT Rates* ► *TACT Rate Upload* .

## 13.10.5.2 Authorizations

Transportation Management (TM) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide*, *Java Security Guide*, and *ABAP and Java Security Guides* also apply to TM.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`) on the AS ABAP and the User Management Engine's user administration console for the AS Java.

## Role and Authorization Concept for SAP Transportation Management 9.4

Standard roles and authorization objects are delivered with TM. For more information about the standard roles and authorization objects and how to use them, see the following section.

### Standard Roles

TM contains standard roles that you must copy to create your own roles. For each of the standard roles, a set of predefined authorization proposals is delivered. Since it is not possible to predefine all authorization values (these will strongly depend on your specific business and scenarios), you will have to add any missing data to the proposed authorization values. In some cases, you may have to change the proposed values to your own values.

#### ⚠ Caution

We strongly recommend that you always check the delivered authorization proposals carefully.

The list below shows the standard roles that can be used to copy in TM.

- /SCMTMS/BOOKING\_AGENT
- /SCMTMS/CAPACITY\_MANAGER
- /SCMTMS/CARRIER\_SETTLEMENT\_SP
- /SCMTMS/CUSTOMER\_SERVICE\_AGENT
- /SCMTMS/CUSTOMER\_SETTLEMENT\_SP

- /SCMTMS/DISPATCHER
- /SCMTMS/DISPLAY
- /SCMTMS/FREIGHT\_CONTRACT\_SPEC
- /SCMTMS/PLANNER
- /SCMTMS/SERVICE\_PROVIDER
- /SCMTMS/TRANSPORTATION\_MGR\_V2
- /SCMTMS/PROCESS\_ADMINISTRATOR
- /SCMTMS/CAPACITY\_MANAGER
- /SCMTMS/COLL\_PORTAL
- /TMUI/COLL\_PORTAL
- /TMUI/COLL\_PORTAL\_DEMO

### → Recommendation

The role /SCMTMS/DISPLAY is designed for an auditor who is able to view all content in a system. For example, master data and transactional data, such as business documents. The role is not allowed to change any data. The role can be assigned to users who conduct security or financial audits.

For more information, see SAP Library for SAP Transportation Management 9.4 on SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/transportationmanagement94>. In SAP Library, choose ► *Basic Functions* ► *Roles* ▾.

## Standard Authorization Objects

For TM, there are two kinds of authorization objects:

- Static checks of the technical business objects along with their nodes and actions, or of organizational data objects
- Instance-based authorization objects, with which you can check authorization for the specified business documents or other objects, depending on business-relevant data such as organization information

For instance-based authorization checks, there are two basic concepts. First, you can define authorization values based on identifiers for all profiles or other objects that cannot be classified any further by specific types, but only depending on their identifier. Second, you can define authorization values based on category, type, and further characteristics such as organizational data that can classify business documents beyond their identifier.

Besides the standard activities that can be defined for each authorization object for authorization field ACTVT, you can also define whole groups of activities for several authorization actions as an activity area. This means that you can define a distinct activity area, thereby allowing or preventing a whole set of actions related to this area. For example, you do not have to define all actions relating to subcontracting activities separately for a role, but only to define the activity area for subcontracting.

For information about authorizations in TM, see SAP Library for TM on SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/transportationmanagement94>. In SAP Library, choose ► *Basic Functions* ► *Authorizations* ▾.

If you want to display the authorization objects in TM, on the *SAP Easy Access* screen, choose ► *Tools* ► *ABAP Workbench* ► *Development* ► *Other Tools* ► *Authorization Objects* ► *Objects* ▾ and open object class SCTS.

## i Note

You can also create your own authorization objects and implement the corresponding checks in BADIs *Authorization Check* and *Data Retrieval Before Authorization Check*.

For more information, see Customizing for *Transportation Management* under ► *Business Add-Ins (BADIs) for Transportation Management* ► *Basic Functions* ► *Authorizations* ►.

In TM, you have a special permission object `T_TM_ALL`. System users who run batch jobs can use this permission object. To use this permission object, you must have all application specific permissions. Note that if you maintain this object in a certain role, all other TM permission objects will not be checked for this role anymore.

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects from other components that are used by TM. The list does not include basis authorization objects used for central functions or administration.

### Standard Non-TM Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
<b>SAP SCM Basis 7.0</b>			
/SCMB/PESL	ACTVT, USER	(06) Delete (34) Write  In the USER field, you can enter the user for which you want to execute the activities in the ACTVT field.	Define Planning Service Manager (PSM) Selection. The authorization object enables the specified user to save and delete his or her selections.
/SCTM/SCU	/SCMB/SCU ACTVT		Use of supply chain units in routes.
C_MD_SCU	/SCMB/SCU, ACTVT		
<b>Business Context Viewer</b>			
BCV_USAGE	ACTVT	(70) Administer (US)	Business Context Viewer usage
BCV_PERS	ACTVT BCV_CTXKEY BCV_QRYVID		Personalize BCV User Interface for Query View
<b>Business Rules Framework</b>			
FDT_OBJECT	FDT_ACT FDT_APPL FDT_OBJTYP		You use this authorization object to control usage of objects of the specified type in BRFplus.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
FDT_WORKB	FDT_WB_ACT		This authorization object controls whether a user is authorized to use the BRFplus workbench and its tools.
<b>APO</b>			
C_APO_DEF	ACTVT, APO_PLNR, APO_DEFT, APO_DEFN	(01) Create or generate (02) Change (03) Display (06) Delete	APO Authorization Object: Master Data, Resource Definitions
C_APO_LOC	ACTVT, APO_LOC	(01) Create or generate (02) Change (03) Display (06) Delete (16) Execute (32) Save	APO Authorization Object: Master Data, Locations
C_APO_PROD	ACTVT, APO_LOC, APO_PROD	(01) Create or generate (02) Change (03) Display (06) Delete (16) Execute	APO Authorization Object: Master Data, Products
C_APO_RES	ACTVT, APO_PLNR, APO_LOC, APO_RES	(01) Create or generate (02) Change (03) Display (06) Delete (16) Execute	APO Authorization Object: Master Data, Resources
<b>EH&amp;S</b>			
C_EHSP_TPP	ACTVT, LANGUAGE, ESECATPIN, ESEPHRGRP, PPSTAT	(02) Change (03) Display	This authorization is checked in the transactions for phrase management for entry into the hit list.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
C_SHEP_TPG	ACTVT, ESECATPIN, ESEPHRGRP	(01) Create or generate (02) Change (03) Display (59) Distribute	This authorization object is checked in the phrase management transactions when entering and leaving the hit list. The activities "change" and "display" are also checked here.
M_MATE_DGM	ACTVT	(01) Create or generate (02) Change (03) Display (06) Delete (61) Export (82) Supplement	Using the authorization object M_MATE_DGM, you can prevent dangerous goods master data from being displayed or edited.
<b>Formula &amp; Derivation Tool</b>			
FDT_OBJECT	FDT_APPL, FDT_OBJTYP, FDT_ACT	(1) Create (2) Change (3) Display (4) Delete (5) Activate	You use this authorization object to control the authorization to display, create, change, or delete objects in the Formula & Derivation Tool (including functions, expressions, expression types, filters, and applications).
<b>Human Resources</b>			
PLOG	PLVAR, OTYPE, INFOTYP, SUBTYP, ISTAT, PPCODE	Not applicable	The present object is used by the authorization check for PD data.
<b>SAP SCM Optimizer</b>			
S_RFC	ACTVT, RFC_NAME, RFC_TYPE	(16) Execute	Required authorization to start the SAP SCM Optimizer and use most of the administrator transactions.
<b>SAP Event Management</b>			
X_EM_EH	ACTVT, /SAPTRX/PN, / SAPTRX/PV	(03) Display (10) Post	Event handler authorization

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
X_EM_EH_CH	ACTVT, /SAPTRX/SO	(01) Create or generate (02) Change (05) Lock (06) Delete (63) Activate (95) Unlock	Event handler changes
X_EM_EVM	ACTVT, /SAPTRX/CS, / SAPTRX/CD	(32) Save the sender code set and sender code ID	Event messages

---

#### Cross-Application Authorization Objects

---

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
CA_POWL	POWL_APPID, POWL_QUERY, POWL_CAT, POWL_LSEL, POWL_TABLE, POWL_RA_AL	<p>POWL_QUERY:</p> <p>(01) Users are allowed to create, change, and delete their own queries for all POWL object types assigned to them (compare with Customizing tables POWL_TYPE_USR and POWL_TYPE_ROL).</p> <p>(02) Users are only allowed to create their own queries on the basis of admin queries assigned to them in Customizing tables POWL_QUERY_USR and POWL_QUERY_ROL respectively. (Note: this is also subject to the user – POWL object type assignments.)</p> <p>(03) (and other values): Users are only allowed to change admin queries assigned to them with respect to the select options restrictions of those admin queries (thus creating a separate “derivation” for each admin query transparently)</p> <p>POWL_CAT:</p> <p>(01) Users are allowed to create, change, and delete their own categories and assign queries to them.</p> <p>(02) Users are only allowed to assign queries to the existing categories and change the order of queries.</p> <p>(03) (and other values): Users are not allowed to reassign queries or change the query order. Note: if field POWL_QUERY is set to 01 or 03, setting POWL_CAT to 03</p>	Specifies the authorities for Personal Object Worklist (POWL) iViews

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
		is not advisable. Therefore, the value is implicitly set to 02 in this case.	
S_SERVICE	SRV_NAME, SRV_TYPE		This authorization object is automatically checked when external services are started. This is required for Gateway Services used by the TM Collaboration Portal
S_RFCACL	RFC_SYSID, RFC_CLIENT,RFC_USER, RFC_EQUSER, RFC_TCODE, RFC_INFO,ACTVT	(16) Execute	Authorization check for RFC users, especially for trusted systems. This is required for Gateway Services used by the TM Collaboration Portal.
S_WFAR_OBJ	ACTVT OAARCHIV OADOKUMENT OAOBJEKTE	(01) Create or generate	This authorization object is used to control access to archived documents.
S_ARCHIVE	ACTVT APPLIC ARCH_OBJ		This authorization object is used in SAP archiving programs to protect the access to archive files
B_BUPA_RLT	ACTVT RLTYP		With this authorization object you define which BP roles can be edited.
B_BUPR_BZT	ACTVT RELTYT		With this authorization object you establish which relationship categories can be processed.
S_DATASET	ACTVT FILENAME PROGRAM		You use this object to assign authorizations for accessing operating system files.
S_WF_WI	TASK_CLASS WFACTVT WI_TYPE		Authorization object for working with work items in SAP Business Workflow
S_SCD0	ACTVT		



## → Recommendation

To segregate duties using roles and authorization values in TM, we recommend that you restrict the authorizations of the different roles to the business-related minimum.

With the authorization concept provided by TM, you can restrict authorization based on business document categories, such as *Freight Order* or *Freight Booking*, or on business document types, which you can create for the supplied business document categories. Furthermore, all critical business-related activities can be restricted for the different roles. These activities include creating business documents, displaying business documents or master data, triggering charge calculations, subcontracting freight documents, requesting customs declarations, and others activities or activity areas for the authorization objects of object class `SCTS`. Duties can, therefore, be segregated according to your business and scenarios.

Note that we do not recommend providing one role with full authorization for a business document or process, so that one role cannot be used, for example, to create and maintain a business document, add charge data to it, send it to a business partner, and create the invoice for that document. Such activities should be spread over different roles.

In addition, one user must not be assigned to different roles that would provide full authorization for a business document or process as described above.

## i Note

If your scenario contains an approval workflow process, you need to create or maintain user `WF-BATCH` accordingly.

For general information about creating and maintaining the `WF-BATCH` user, see SAP Note [1251255](#).

As described in SAP Note [1251255](#), you need to also assign a role used for TM to user `WF-BATCH`. Depending on your specific scenario, this could be a role created according to role template `/SCMTMS/TRANSPORTATION_MGR_V2`, but this can also differ according to your business scenario.

## 13.10.5.3 Internet Communication Framework Security

You should only activate those services that are required for the applications running in your system. For Transportation Management, the following services are required:

- `/sap/option`
- `/sap/option/-gui`
- `/sap/option/-stateful`
- `/sap/option/-stateless`
- `/sap/option/-transactional`
- `/sap/public`
- `/sap/public/bc`
- `/sap/public/bc/abap`
- `/sap/public/bc/icf`

- /sap/public/bc/icf/logoff
- /sap/public/bc/icons
- /sap/public/bc/icons\_rtl
- /sap/public/bc/its
- /sap/public/bc/its/designs
- /sap/public/bc/its/mimes
- /sap/public/bc/pictograms
- /sap/public/bc/ur
- /sap/public/bc/webdynpro
- /sap/public/bc/webdynpro/adobeChallenge
- /sap/public/bc/webdynpro/mimes
- /sap/public/bc/webdynpro/Polling
- /sap/public/bc/webdynpro/ssr
- /sap/public/bc/webicons/
- /sap/public/bc/workflow
- /sap/public/bsp
- /sap/public/bsp/sap
- /sap/public/bsp/sap/htmlb
- /sap/public/bsp/sap/public
- /sap/public/bsp/sap/
- /sap/public/bsp/sap/alertinbox
- /sap/bc/color\_icon
- /sap/bc/fpads
- /sap/bc/gui
- /sap/bc/gui/sap
- /sap/bc/gui/sap/its
- /sap/bc/gui/sap/its/webgui
- /sap/bc/icf
- /sap/bc/nwbc
- /sap/bc/soap
- /sap/bc/srt
- /sap/bc/srt/xip
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/cfirsuite\_conf
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/exportdeclarationsuite
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/gettranspdocuri
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/icpy\_trq\_canceln\_rq
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/icpy\_trq\_rq
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/icpy\_trq\_simrc
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/inbdlvconf\_v1
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/invoicenotification\_in
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/outbdlvbulkconf
- /sap/bc/srt/xip/scmtms/tor\_invprepcnf

- /sap/bc/webdynpro
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/sap
- /sap/bc/webdynpro/scmtms
- /sap/bc/workflow
- /SAPconnect
- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/tm\_scenbls1

You must activate the following services if you intend to use the Gantt chart in the transportation cockpit:

- /sap/public/bc/ui5\_ui5
- /sap/bc/bsp/gntlb
- /sap/bc/scmtms

You must activate the following services if you intend to use the map in the transportation cockpit:

- /sap/bc/bsp/scmtms/common
- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/scmtms/common
- /sap/bc/bsp/scmtms/geomap
- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/scmtms/geomap

You must activate the following services if you intend to use the 3D load plan in the transportation cockpit:

- /sap/bc/bsp/scmtms/common
- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/scmtms/common
- /sap/bc/bsp/scmtms/Iso3d
- /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/scmtms/Iso3d

Use transaction SICF to activate these services.

## i Note

### Services

- /sap/opu/odata/SCMTMS/TENDERING/ (Business process: Tendering)
- /sap/opu/odata/SCMTMS/EVENT\_NOT/ (Business Process: Event Notification)
- /sap/opu/odata/SCMTMS/INVOICE\_SUBMISSION/ (Business Process: Invoice Submission)
- /sap/opu/odata/SCMTMS/FRT\_PROCUREMENT/ (Business Process: Strategic Freight Procurement)
- /sap/opu/odata/SCMTMS/INVOICING/ (Business Process: Self-Billing)
- /sap/opu/odata/SCMTMS/FO\_CONFIRMATION/ (Business process: Freight Orders for Confirmation)

If your firewall(s) or Web dispatcher(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002), enter *Activating and Deactivating ICF Services* into the search bar, press , and open the search result with that title.

For more information about ICF security, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002), enter *RCF/ICF Security Guide* into the search bar, press , and open the search result with that title.

## 13.10.5.4 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

Transportation Management (TM) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note [1825544](#).

For more information see also the specific notes for TM:

- [2149395](#) – Deletion and Blocking of cBP in TM
- [2149396](#) – Simplified Data Deletion based on SAP ILM in TM

The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. TM uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

SAP delivers an end of purpose check for business partners and locations in TM using a two-step approach:

1. The system fills a new data base table with the Start of Retention Time (SoRT) information per business partner or location business object and application rule variant as soon as a 'completed' document is saved.
2. The system uses the EoP check to decide whether a business partner or location can be blocked. During the EoP check, the system determines the SoRT information relevant for that business partner or location from the database table containing the SoRT information. The SoRT information is required to determine the relevant ILM policies and to calculate the correct end-of-purpose time depending on the defined ILM policies.

For more information see <http://help.sap.com/transportationmanagement94> ► [Transportation Management](#) ► [Application Help](#) ► [Transportation Management](#) ► [Basic Functions](#) ► [Blocking and Deletion of Personal Data in TM](#) ► [End-of-Purpose Framework](#) ►

SAP delivers a where-used check (WUC) for business partners and locations in TM including master data objects such as transportation charge rates, transportation charge scales, locations, and resources.

TM registers an EoP check in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of business partners and locations and in addition provides a WUC for business partners and locations. For information about the Customizing of blocking and deletion for TM, see below, Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

### Features

#### End of Purpose (EoP) Check

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases.

- Phase one: The relevant data is actively used.
- Phase two: The relevant data is actively available in the system.
- Phase three: The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.

For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked.

Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- Display: The system does not display personal data of a blocked business partner or location.
- Change: It is not possible to change a completed business document that contains a blocked business partner or location.
- Create: It is not possible to create a business document using a blocked business partner or location. As soon as a blocked business partner or location is entered, the system raises a suitable error message.
- Copy/Follow-Up: It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- Search: The system does not display blocked data in the result list of search helps. The same is true for technical queries based on the business object for business partner `/SCMTMS/BUPA` and the business object for locations `(/SCMTMS/LOCATION)`.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization (`SAP_CA_BP_DP_ADMIN`). However, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP functionality

Application	Implemented solution (EoP or WUC)	Further information
TM	End of Purpose Check (EoP) EoP Function Module: <code>/SCMTMS/DPP_EOP_CHECK</code>	The End of Purpose check (EoP) for business partners includes the following business objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/BUS_SHARE</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/CUSTFREIGHTINVREQ</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/FREIGHTAGREEMENT</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/SUPPFREIGHTINVREQ</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/TOR</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/TRQ</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/TAL</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/WAYBILLNO</code></li> </ul> The End of Purpose check (EoP) for locations includes the following business objects <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/CUSTFREIGHTINVREQ</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/SUPPFREIGHTINVREQ</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/TOR</code></li> <li>• <code>/SCMTMS/TRQ</code></li> </ul>



Application	Implemented solution (EoP or WUC)	Further information
TM	Where-Used-Check (WUC)	<p>In addition to the business objects handled in the EoP Check, the Where-Used Check (WUC) for business partners includes also master data objects such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transportation Charge Calculation Sheets</li> <li>• Transportation Charge Rates</li> <li>• Transportation Charge Scales</li> <li>• Locations</li> <li>• Resources</li> </ul>

### Process Flow

1. Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
  - Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: `CA_BUPA`) or location . (ILM object `SCMB_LOC`).
  - Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required retention policies for the ILM objects of TM.
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
3. To determine which business partners or locations have reached end of purpose and can be blocked, you do the following, if you have the necessary authorization:
  - Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to execute the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.
  - Run transaction `/SCMB/LOC_PRE_EOP` to execute the end of purpose check function for the location.
4. To unblock blocked business partner or location data, you do the following, if you have the necessary authorization:
  - Request unblocking of blocked business partner data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.
  - You can unblock the requested data by running the transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP`.
  - For unblocking location data you can run the transaction `/SCMB/LOC_UNBLOCK_MD`.
5. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of TM.

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under `Data Protection`.

- Define the settings for authorization management under [Data Protection](#) > [Authorization Management](#) . For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for.
  - Business Partner
    - [Cross-Application Components](#) under [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking](#) > [Business Partner](#) 
  - Location

[Transportation Management](#) ► [Master Data](#) ► [Transportation Network](#) ► [Location](#) ► [Location Master Deletion](#) ►

- Define the Customizing settings for TM. For more information see <http://help.sap.com/tm> ►  
► [Transportation Management <version>](#) ► [Application Help](#) ► [Transportation Management \(TM\)](#) ► [Basic Functions](#) ► [Blocking and Deletion of Personal Data in TM](#) ► [Customizing Settings for Data Protection and Privacy](#) ►

## 13.10.5.5 Depersonalization of Data

Transportation Management (TM) may process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries.

When you use the scenario builder from your productive system, the scenario builder may process your personal data. Hence you must use the BAdI `/SCMTMS/SB_ADD_TEMPLATE_DATA` to depersonalize data before using it in the scenario builder.

This BAdI contains the method `CHECK_AND_ADJUST_DATA`. This method processes the data that you have selected to use in the scenario builder.

For more information on example implementation of how you can access the data in the BAdI, see `/SCMTMS/SB_ADD_TEMPL_DATA_SMPL`.

## 13.10.5.6 Security-Relevant Logging and Tracing

SAP systems have a variety of logs for system administration, monitoring, problem solving, and auditing purposes. Audits and logs are important for monitoring the security of your system and to track events, in case of problems.

### i Note

Auditing and logging for Netweaver component is described in detail in the *NetWeaver Security Guide*. For more information, see <http://help.sap.com/nw75>. Choose ► [Security Guide](#) ► [Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management](#) ► [Auditing and Logging](#) ►.

## Security Audit Log Triggered by Virus Scan Interface (VSI)

Class `CL_VSI` automatically creates entries in the Security Audit Log for infections and scan errors found, together with the following information:

- Profile
- Profile step allowing the detection of the scanner-group
- Kind of virus found, with internal virus ID of the scan engine, if available

- User name and timestamp

The messages logged are located in message class `VSCAN` using system log messages BU8 and BU9 (created in transaction `SE92`). The severities are set to *High* and *Medium* respectively. The severity of the audit class is set to *Miscellaneous*.

For more information, see Customizing for SAP Supply Chain Management under ► [SAP Web Application Server](#) ► [System Administration](#) ► [Virus Scan Interface](#) ►.

## Audit Information System (AIS)

Information about auditing and logging for the Audit Information System (AIS) is described in detail in the *SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Security Guide*.

For more information, see *The Audit Info System (AIS)* at <http://help.sap.com/nw75>. Choose ► [Security Guide](#) ► [Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management](#) ► [Auditing and Logging](#) ► [The Audit Info System \(AIS\)](#) ►.

For more information about security logs for the SAP Gateway, see Logging in SAP Gateway section of the SAP Gateway Developer Guide for SAP Gateway SPO6.

## Transportation Management (TM)

### Tracing and Logging of Business Objects

In TM, you can log messages raised by business objects in the application log.

In the standard system, logging is deactivated. To activate logging, in Customizing for *Transportation Management*, choose ► [Basic Functions](#) ► [User Interface](#) ► [Define Message Settings](#) ► (note that this has negative impact on overall system performance; this is why SAP recommends to switch on logging only when required).

To access the application log, on the *SAP Easy Access* or in SAP NetWeaver Business Client screen, choose ► [Application Administration](#) ► [Application Log: Display Logs](#) ►. Alternatively, call transaction `SLG1`.

For more information, see *Application Logging* under *Logging of Specific Activities* in the *SAP NetWeaver 7.5 Security Guide* on SAP Help at <http://help.sap.com/nw>.

### Activating Change Documents

In TM, you can activate change documents to log changes to master data, business objects, and so on.



You must activate change documents in Customizing before the system can store them. For information about the objects for which you can activate change documents and where to activate them, see the corresponding section in the TM documentation:

Object	Customizing Path
Location	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Master Data</a> > <a href="#">Transportation Network</a> > <a href="#">Location</a> > <a href="#">Activate Change Documents</a>
Transportation lane	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Master Data</a> > <a href="#">Transportation Network</a> > <a href="#">Transportation Lane</a> > <a href="#">Activate Change Documents</a>
Product	<a href="#">SCM Basis</a> > <a href="#">Master Data</a> > <a href="#">Product</a> > <a href="#">Activate Change Documents</a>
Freight unit	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Planning</a> > <a href="#">Freight Unit</a> > <a href="#">Define Freight Unit Types</a> (Track Changes checkbox)
Freight order	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Freight Order Management</a> > <a href="#">Freight Order</a> > <a href="#">Define Freight Order Types</a> (Track Changes checkbox)
Freight booking	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Freight Order Management</a> > <a href="#">Freight Booking</a> > <a href="#">Define Freight Booking Types</a> (Track Changes checkbox)
Freight agreement	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Master Data</a> > <a href="#">Agreements and Service Products</a> > <a href="#">Define Freight Agreement Types</a> (Track Changes checkbox).
Forwarding agreement	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Master Data</a> > <a href="#">Agreements and Service Products</a> > <a href="#">Define FWA and Service Product Catalog Types</a> (Track Changes checkbox).
Forwarding order	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Forwarding Order Management</a> > <a href="#">Forwarding Order</a> > <a href="#">Define Forwarding Order Types</a> (Track Changes checkbox).
Forwarding quotation	<a href="#">Transportation Management</a> > <a href="#">Forwarding Order Management</a> > <a href="#">Forwarding Quotation</a> > <a href="#">Define Forwarding Quotation Types</a> (Track Changes checkbox).

Object	Customizing Path
Forwarding settlement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Transportation Management ▶ Settlement ▶ Forwarding Settlement ▶ Define Forwarding Settlement Document Types ▶ (Track Changes checkbox).</li> </ul>
Freight settlement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Transportation Management ▶ Settlement ▶ Freight Settlement ▶ Define Freight Settlement Document Types ▶ (Track Changes checkbox).</li> </ul>
Order-based transportation requirement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Transportation Management ▶ Integration ▶ ERP Logistics Integration ▶ Order-Based Transportation Requirement ▶ Define Order-Based Transportation Requirement Types ▶ (Track Changes checkbox).</li> </ul>
Delivery-based transportation requirement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Transportation Management ▶ Integration ▶ ERP Logistics Integration ▶ Delivery-Based Transportation Requirement ▶ Define Delivery-Based Transportation Requirement Types ▶</li> </ul>
Service order	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Transportation Management ▶ Freight Order Management ▶ Service Order ▶ Define Service Order Types ▶ (Track Changes checkbox).</li> </ul>

## SAP SCM Optimizer

For information about the trace and log files for the SAP SCM Optimizer, see the *SAP SCM 7.0 Component Security Guide*.

For more information about the logging and tracing mechanisms from SAP NetWeaver, go to <http://help.sap.com/nw75>. Choose ▶ *Security Guide* ▶ *Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management* ▶ *Auditing and Logging* ▶.

## 13.10.6 Returnable Packaging and Empties Management

## 13.10.6.1 Recycling Administration

### 13.10.6.1.1 Authorizations in Recycling Administration

Recycling Administration uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

#### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by Recycling Administration.

Role	Description
SAP_EP_ISREA_CM	Automatic Role to display ABAP applications for contract handling
SAP_EP_ISREA_DEC	Automatic Role to display ABAP applications for declarations
SAP_EP_ISREA_INFO	Automatic Role to display ABAP applications for the information system
SAP_EP_ISREA_MD	Automatic Role to display ABAP applications for master data management
SAP_ISREA_COMPLIANCE_MANAGER	<i>Compliance Manager for Recycling</i>
SAP_ISREA_HEAD_SUSTAINABILITY	<i>Head of Sustainability and Environment</i>
SAP_ISREA_MASTERDATA_EXPERT	<i>Specialist for Recycling Master Data</i>
SAP_ISREA_PACKAGING_ENGINEER	<i>Packaging Engineer</i>
SAP_ISREA_SPECIALIST	<i>Specialist for Recycling Accounting</i>

Role	Description
com.sap.pct.erp.rea.financial_accountant	SAP Enterprise Portal role <i>Financial Accountant</i>
com.sap.pct.erp.rea.person_responsible_master_data	SAP Enterprise Portal role <i>Person Responsible Master Data</i>
com.sap.pct.erp.rea.superadmin_masterdata	SAP Enterprise Portal role <i>Superadministrator Master Data</i>
com.sap.pct.erp.rea.compliance_manager	SAP Enterprise Portal role <i>Compliance Manager</i>
SAP_SR_REA_COMP_MAN_5	Role in SAP Business Client that corresponds to the SAP Enterprise Portal role Compliance Manager
SAP_SR_REA_FIN_ACCOUNTANT_5	Role in SAP Business Client that corresponds to the SAP Enterprise Portal role <i>Financial Accountant</i>
SAP_SR_REA_PERS_RESP_MD_5	Role in SAP Business Client that corresponds to the SAP Enterprise Portal role <i>Person Responsible Master Data</i>
SAP_SR_REA_SUPER_ADMIN_MD_5	Role in SAP Business Client that corresponds to the SAP Enterprise Portal role <i>Superadministrator Master Data</i>

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by Recycling Administration.

Authorization Object	Name	Description
/J7L/LDE	<i>REA Lean Data Entry</i>	Controls the authorizations for the applications for lean data entry
J_7L_CONF	<i>REA: Authorization for Configuration</i>	Controls the authorizations for the import and export of recycling partner master data
J_7L_VARIA	<i>REA: Authorization for Variants</i>	Controls the access to master data objects in the Recycling Administration component depending on the respective variant
J_7L_CUST	<i>REA: Customizing</i>	Controls the authorizations for Customizing in the Recycling Administration component

Authorization Object	Name	Description
J_7L_INFO	<i>REA: Information System</i>	Controls the authorizations for the applications in the information system of the Recycling Administration component
J_7L_PERIO	<i>REA: Declarations to Recycling Partners</i>	Controls the authorizations for declarations
J_7L_INFNC	<i>REA: Interfaces and Batch Programs</i>	Controls the authorizations for programs for mass processing (background processing)
J_7L_STAMM	<i>REA: Master Data</i>	Controls the authorizations for editing master data in the Recycling Administration component

## 13.10.6.1.2 Data Protection and Privacy

Data protection is associated with numerous legal requirements and privacy concerns. In addition to compliance with general data privacy acts, it is necessary to consider compliance with industry-specific legislation in different countries. This section describes the specific features and functions that *Recycling Administration* provides to support compliance with the relevant legal requirements and data privacy.

### i Note

*Recycling Administration (IS-REA)* is integrated in the central ILM check processes. If you use REA, the central ILM check processes also take the REA specific privacy related data (supplier, customer) into account. Only when REA reports back that this data is no longer used within this component, the system can block the corresponding REA data.

This section and any other sections in this Security Guide do not give any advice on whether these features and functions are the best method to support company, industry, regional or country-specific requirements. Furthermore, this guide does not give any advice or recommendations with regard to additional features that would be required in a particular environment; decisions related to data protection must be made on a case-by-case basis and under consideration of the given system landscape and the applicable legal requirements.

### i Note

In the majority of cases, compliance with data privacy laws is not a product feature. SAP software supports data privacy by providing security features and specific data-protection-relevant functions such as functions for the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data. SAP does not provide legal advice in any form. The definitions and other terms used in this guide are not taken from any given legal source.

## 13.10.6.1.2.1 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

The *Recycling Administration* application might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
REA Declaration	Archiving REA declarations in the Recycling Administration component	Archiving object / J7L/DECL

### Relevant Application Areas and Available EoP Functionality

Application	Implemented Solution	Further Information
<i>Supply Chain</i>	End of purpose check (EoP)	<p>This includes the business in the area of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Recycling Administration (IS-REA)</li></ul> <p>For more information about the end of purpose check, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under ► <i>Product Assistance</i> ► <i>Enterprise Business Applications</i> ► <i>Supply Chain</i> ► <i>Logistics - General (LO)</i> ► <i>Returnable Packaging and Empties Management</i> ► <i>Recycling Administration</i> ► <i>Data Archiving in Recycling Administration</i> ► <i>Business Partner End of Purpose (EoP) Check in Recycling Administration</i> ►.</p>

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Authorization Management](#) ». For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Blocking and Unblocking](#) ► [Business Partner](#) ».

## 13.11 Cross-Line-of-Business

### 13.11.1 Commodity Management

#### 13.11.1.1 Commodity Procurement

##### 13.11.1.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Commodity Procurement

### Use

The `Commodity Procurement` might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ».

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly	See section <i>BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly</i> below
Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly	See section <i>Pricing Condition Records for CPE Formula Assembly</i> below
Records of Versioned Logistics Pricing Data Persistency	See section <i>Versioned Logistics Pricing Data Persistency</i> below
Period-End Valuation	Archiving Object <code>LO_CMM_AD</code> See section <i>Period-End Valuation</i> below

### BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly

In the *Commodity Pricing Engine* (CPE), the *Formula Assembly* (FA) is used for logistics document items like sales order items or purchase order items to create default settings as, for example, the formula ID. These settings depend on properties of the underlying logistics document such as the vendor/customer, organizational and material data.

The *Business Rules Framework plus* (BRFplus) is used to implement rules for entering these settings. To use decision tables in BRFplus (as recommended by SAP), the required BRFplus content is provided (BRFplus application, BRFplus functions which use BRFplus decision tables). The standard content includes, for example, decision tables, which require customer or vendor, material and other input fields, and the formula ID as result field. Decision tables can contain customer or vendor data, which eventually need to be deleted.

In the deletion report `RCPE_BRF01` (*Delete BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly*) you enter a selected customer or vendor. When selecting the test mode, the report checks, whether the entered customer or vendor exists in the system, and whether he is blocked. After this, the report checks all BRFplus decision tables in BRFplus applications used for the *Formula Assembly*, and displays the respective row numbers of the BRFplus decision tables and the column containing the selected customer or vendor. If the *Test Mode* flag is not set, the report deletes all entries found, and creates an application log entry for object `CMM` and subobject `DPP_FA_BRF` (transaction `SLG1`).

The Customizing settings can be found in the *SAP Implementation Guide* under [Sales and Distribution > Basic Functions > Commodity Pricing > Settings for Formula Assembly > Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing Procedure](#) or [Materials Management > Purchasing > Commodity Pricing > Settings for Formula Assembly > Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing Procedure](#).



## Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly

To delete entries for a single customer or vendor, use report `RCPE_CT01`. First, choose the test mode, to see all entries of the selected table, which would be deleted.

If you perform this transaction in productive mode, the selected entries will be deleted, and a log of transaction `SLG1` for object `CMM` and subobject `DDP_FA_AP` is displayed.

Note: Condition tables used for the *CPE Formula Assembly* must be selected and processed individually.

## Versioned Logistics Pricing Data Persistency

Transaction `CMM_DEL_DOC_VERSIONS` allows you to update all records of the versioned logistic pricing data persistency (table `CMM_VLOGP`), which are stored for a certain blocked customer/vendor in a way that the identifier of the respective customer/vendor is masked with a blank space.

The authorization to perform this transaction is checked by the authorization object `S_TCODE`, and explicitly in the underlying report. It is ensured that, even if the report is performed by transaction `SA38`, only authorized experts can execute it. In addition, the authorization object `CMM_VLOGP` is checked by activity `06` (*Delete*). This enables the authorized user to delete records from the versioned logistic pricing data persistency (table `CMM_VLOGP`).

Note: It is checked, whether the entered customer is used as *Sold-to-Party* and/or *Ship-to-Party*. Records are deleted and masked accordingly.

This transaction must be performed to mask or to delete records as soon as a certain customer or vendor is blocked.

### 13.11.1.1.2 Business Partner End Of Purpose (EoP) Check

#### Use

*Commodity Procurement* and *Commodity Sales* provide information about stored personal data in the *Period-End Valuation (PEV)*, in the *Versioned Persistency of Logistics Pricing Data (VLOGP)*, *BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly*, and in *Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly*.

#### Period-End Valuation (PEV)

With transaction `CMM_PEV_WL` a worklist is created for a selected valuation key date and company code. The worklist shows accrual amounts of open logistics documents, which are not finally invoiced/billed yet.

The period-end valuation is registered for the EoP process. Whenever a customer or vendor needs to be blocked due to the EoP check, the period-end valuation is considered.

The PEV prevents blocking a customer or vendor until the respective PEV worklists are archived.

Vice versa, a check against the customer or vendor blocking indicator is performed, when a new PEV worklist is created. If a customer or vendor is blocked, the worklist will not be created.

The EoP check function module used is `CPE_PEV_EOP_CHECK`.

## Versioned Persistency of Logistics Pricing Data

To display information about stored personal data in the versioned persistency of logistics pricing data (`VLOGP`) of *Commodity Procurement* and *Commodity Sales*, run transaction `CMM_DEL_DOC_VERSIONS`.

The authorization to perform this transaction is checked by the authorization object `S_TCODE`, and in the underlying report. It is ensured that, even if the report is launched by transaction `SA38`, only authorized experts can execute it.

In case of blocked customers, vendors, business partners, the authorization object `B_BUP_PCPT` (activity 03) is additionally checked.

Table / Business Object	Archiving Object	Personal Data
<code>CMM_VLOGP</code>	n/a	LIFNR, KUNNR, KUNWE

## BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly

In the *Commodity Pricing Engine* (CPE), the *Formula Assembly* (FA) is used for logistics document items like sales order items or purchase order items to create default settings as, for example, the formula ID. These settings depend on properties of the underlying logistics document such as the vendor/customer, organizational and material data.

The *Business Rules Framework plus* (BRFplus) is used to implement rules for entering these settings. To use decision tables in BRFplus (as recommended by SAP), the required BRFplus content is provided (BRFplus application, BRFplus functions which use BRFplus decision tables). The standard content includes, for example, decision tables, which require customer or vendor, material and other input fields, and the formula ID as result field. Decision tables can contain customer or vendor data, which eventually need to be deleted.

To display information about stored personal data in the BRFplus decision tables for CPE formula assembly and perform report `RCPE_BRF01`, enter a selected customer or vendor. When selecting the test mode the report checks, whether the entered customer or vendor exists in the system, and whether he is blocked. After this, the report checks all BRFplus decision tables in BRFplus applications used for the *Formula Assembly*, and displays the respective row numbers of the BRFplus decision tables and the column containing the selected customer or vendor.

The Customizing settings can be found in the [SAP Implementation Guide](#) under [Sales and Distribution](#) > [Basic Functions](#) > [Commodity Pricing](#) > [Settings for Formula Assembly](#) > [Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing](#)

[Procedure](#) > or > [Materials Management](#) > [Purchasing](#) > [Commodity Pricing](#) > [Settings for Formula Assembly](#)  
> [Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing Procedure](#).

## Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly

To check the tables used for the formula assembly, whether there is a certain customer or vendor used, perform transaction `MCPE_FA_GCM` (for *Commodity Procurement*) or `VCPE_FA_GCM` (for *Commodity Sales*).

Note: Condition tables used for the *CPE Formula Assembly* must be selected and processed individually.

Note: Tables behind these transactions are replaced by BRFplus tables.

### 13.11.1.2 Commodity Sales

#### 13.11.1.2.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Commodity Sales

##### Use

The *Commodity Sales* might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under > [Product Assistance](#) > [Cross Components](#) > [Data Protection](#).

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly	See Section <i>BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly</i> below
Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly	See section <i>Pricing Condition Records for CPE Formula Assembly</i> below
Records of Versioned Logistics Pricing Data Persistency	See section <i>Versioned Logistics Pricing Data Persistency</i> below

## BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly

In the *Commodity Pricing Engine* (CPE), the *Formula Assembly* (FA) is used for logistics document items like sales order items or purchase order items to create default settings as, for example, the formula ID. These settings depend on properties of the underlying logistics document such as the vendor/customer, organizational and material data.

The *Business Rules Framework plus* (BRFplus) is used to implement rules for entering these settings. To use decision tables in BRFplus (as recommended by SAP), the required BRFplus content is provided (BRFplus application, BRFplus functions which use BRFplus decision tables). The standard content includes, for example, decision tables, which require customer or vendor, material and other input fields, and the formula ID as result field. Decision tables can contain customer or vendor data, which eventually need to be deleted.

In the deletion report `RCPE_BRF01` (*Delete BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly*) you enter a selected customer or vendor. When selecting the test mode, the report checks, whether the entered customer or vendor exists in the system, and whether he is blocked. After this, the report checks all BRFplus decision tables in BRFplus applications used for the *Formula Assembly*, and displays the respective row numbers of the BRFplus decision tables and the column containing the selected customer or vendor. If the *Test Mode* flag is not set, the report deletes all entries found, and creates an application log entry for object `CMM` and subobject `DPP_FA_BRF` (transaction `SLG1`).

The Customizing settings can be found in the *SAP Implementation Guide* under [Sales and Distribution > Basic Functions > Commodity Pricing > Settings for Formula Assembly > Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing Procedure](#) or [Materials Management > Purchasing > Commodity Pricing > Settings for Formula Assembly > Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing Procedure](#).

## Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly

To delete entries for a single customer or vendor, use report `RCPE_CT01`. First, choose the test mode, to see all entries of the selected table, which would be deleted.

If you perform this transaction in productive mode, the selected entries will be deleted, and a log of transaction `SLG1` for object `CMM` and subobject `DDP_FA_AP` is displayed.

Note: Condition tables used for the *CPE Formula Assembly* must be selected and processed individually.

## Versioned Logistics Pricing Data Persistency

Transaction `CMM_DEL_DOC_VERSIONS` allows you to update all records of the versioned logistic pricing data persistency (table `CMM_VLOGP`), which are stored for a certain blocked customer/vendor in a way that the identifier of the respective customer/vendor is masked with a blank space.

The authorization to perform this transaction is checked by the authorization object `S_TCODE`, and explicitly in the underlying report. It is ensured that, even if the report is performed by transaction `SA38`, only authorized experts can execute it. In addition, the authorization object `CMM_VLOGP` is checked by activity `06` (*Delete*). This enables the authorized user to delete records from the versioned logistic pricing data persistency (table `CMM_VLOGP`).

Note: It is checked, whether the entered customer is used as *Sold-to-Party* and/or *Ship-to-Party*. Records are deleted and masked accordingly.

This transaction must be performed to mask or to delete records as soon as a certain customer or vendor is blocked.

## 13.11.1.2.2 Business Partner End Of Purpose (EoP) Check

### Use

*Commodity Procurement* and *Commodity Sales* provide information about stored personal data in the *Period-End Valuation (PEV)*, in the *Versioned Persistency of Logistics Pricing Data (VLOGP)*, *BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly*, and in *Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly*.

### Period-End Valuation (PEV)

With transaction `CMM_PEV_WL` a worklist is created for a selected valuation key date and company code. The worklist shows accrual amounts of open logistics documents, which are not finally invoiced/billed yet.

The period-end valuation is registered for the EoP process. Whenever a customer or vendor needs to be blocked due to the EoP check, the period-end valuation is considered.

The PEV prevents blocking a customer or vendor until the respective PEV worklists are archived.

Vice versa, a check against the customer or vendor blocking indicator is performed, when a new PEV worklist is created. If a customer or vendor is blocked, the worklist will not be created.

The EoP check function module used is `CPE_PEV_EOP_CHECK`.

### Versioned Persistency of Logistics Pricing Data

To display information about stored personal data in in the versioned persistency of logistics pricing data (`VLOGP`) of *Commodity Procurement* and *Commodity Sales*, run transaction `CMM_DEL_DOC_VERSIONS`.

The authorization to perform this transaction is checked by the authorization object `S_TCODE`, and in the underlying report. It is ensured that, even if the report is launched by transaction `SA38`, only authorized experts can execute it.

In case of blocked customers, vendors, business partners, the authorization object `B_BUP_PCPT` (activity 03) is additionally checked.

Table / Business Object	Archiving Object	Personal Data
CMM_VLOGP	n/a	LIFNR, KUNNR, KUNWE

## BRFplus Decision Table Entries for CPE Formula Assembly

In the *Commodity Pricing Engine* (CPE), the *Formula Assembly* (FA) is used for logistics document items like sales order items or purchase order items to create default settings as, for example, the formula ID. These settings depend on properties of the underlying logistics document such as the vendor/customer, organizational and material data.

The *Business Rules Framework plus* (BRFplus) is used to implement rules for entering these settings. To use decision tables in BRFplus (as recommended by SAP), the required BRFplus content is provided (BRFplus application, BRFplus functions which use BRFplus decision tables). The standard content includes, for example, decision tables, which require customer or vendor, material and other input fields, and the formula ID as result field. Decision tables can contain customer or vendor data, which eventually need to be deleted.

To display information about stored personal data in the BRFplus decision tables for CPE formula assembly and perform report `RCPE_BRF01`, enter a selected customer or vendor. When selecting the test mode the report checks, whether the entered customer or vendor exists in the system, and whether he is blocked. After this, the report checks all BRFplus decision tables in BRFplus applications used for the *Formula Assembly*, and displays the respective row numbers of the BRFplus decision tables and the column containing the selected customer or vendor.

The Customizing settings can be found in the [SAP Implementation Guide](#) under [Sales and Distribution](#) > [Basic Functions](#) > [Commodity Pricing](#) > [Settings for Formula Assembly](#) > [Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing Procedure](#) or [Materials Management](#) > [Purchasing](#) > [Commodity Pricing](#) > [Settings for Formula Assembly](#) > [Assign BRFplus Application to Pricing Procedure](#).

## Pricing Condition Records in CPE Formula Assembly

To check the tables used for the formula assembly, whether there is a certain customer or vendor used, perform transaction `MCPE_FA_GCM` (for *Commodity Procurement*) or `VCPE_FA_GCM` (for *Commodity Sales*).

Note: Condition tables used for the *CPE Formula Assembly* must be selected and processed individually.

Note: Tables behind these transactions are replaced by BRFplus tables.

## 13.12 Analytics Technology

## 13.12.1 Process Performance Monitoring

### 13.12.1.1 Process Observer

#### 13.12.1.1.1 Roles for Process Observer

Process Observer uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver for Application Server ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

#### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under *User Administration and Authentication*.

### Standard Roles

SAP delivers the following standard roles for Process Observer. You can use these roles as a template for your own roles.

Role	Description
Administration (SAP_POC_ADMINISTRATION)	This single role contains all the functions that you need to set up process monitoring: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Maintain Customizing</li><li>• Implement tracing in the application</li><li>• Schedule jobs</li><li>• Delete log entries and execute mass deletion of log entries</li><li>• Update the master registry</li><li>• Carry out configuration activities</li></ul>
Define Process (SAP_POC_MODEL)	This single role contains all the functions that you need to create a process definition: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Define a process</li><li>• Define BRFplus rules</li><li>• Create a process simulation</li></ul>

Role	Description
View Process (SAP_POC_MONITOR)	This single role contains all the functions that you need to view process details in the Process Monitor SAP GUI screen: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display process details</li> </ul>
Analytics (SAP_POC_ANALYTICS)	This single role contains all the functions that you need to access the process-monitoring-relevant analytics content in the SAP Business Information Warehouse: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display analytics information</li> </ul>
Launchpad for Order to Cash Dashboard (SAP_BW_POC_O2C_ANALYTICS)	This single role contains all the functions required to launch the Dashboard for O2C Scenario.
Side Panel for Process Observer Data (SAP_POC_SIDE_PANEL)	This single role enables the user to see Process Observer data for standard transactions such as display sales order, display enquiry etc in a sidepanel using SAP Business Client.
Administration (SAP_POC_ADMIN)	This composite role contains all the functions that you need to set up process monitoring.
Business Process Expert (SAP_POC_BEX)	This composite role contains all the functions that you need, as a business process expert, to set up process definitions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Define a process</li> <li>• Define BRFplus rules</li> <li>• Create a process simulation</li> <li>• Display process details</li> </ul>

## Standard Authorization Object

The basis for all roles used for data security for Process Observer is the authorization object POC\_AUTH.

### 13.12.1.1.2 Data Protection and Privacy in Process Observer

#### ⚠ Caution

If you configure Process Observer in a way that it stores personal data, you are responsible for ensuring that you are compliant with the data protection laws applicable in the relevant countries.

For more information about configuring Process Observer, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Process Observer (CA-EPT-POC)* ► *Process Monitoring and Analytics* ► *Process Monitoring Setup* ►.



### 13.12.1.1.3 Deletion of Personal Data in Process Observer

Depending on your configuration, Process Observer might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use the following transactions to delete process log data:

- POC\_DELETE\_LOG
- POC\_MASS\_DELETE

For more information about the deletion and mass deletion of process log data, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Process Observer (CA-EPT-POC)* ► *Operations* ► *Reports* ► *Reports Used in Operations for Process Monitoring* ►.

## 13.13 Enterprise Technology

### 13.13.1 Master Data Maintenance

#### 13.13.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data

The business partner, customer and supplier master data might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries.

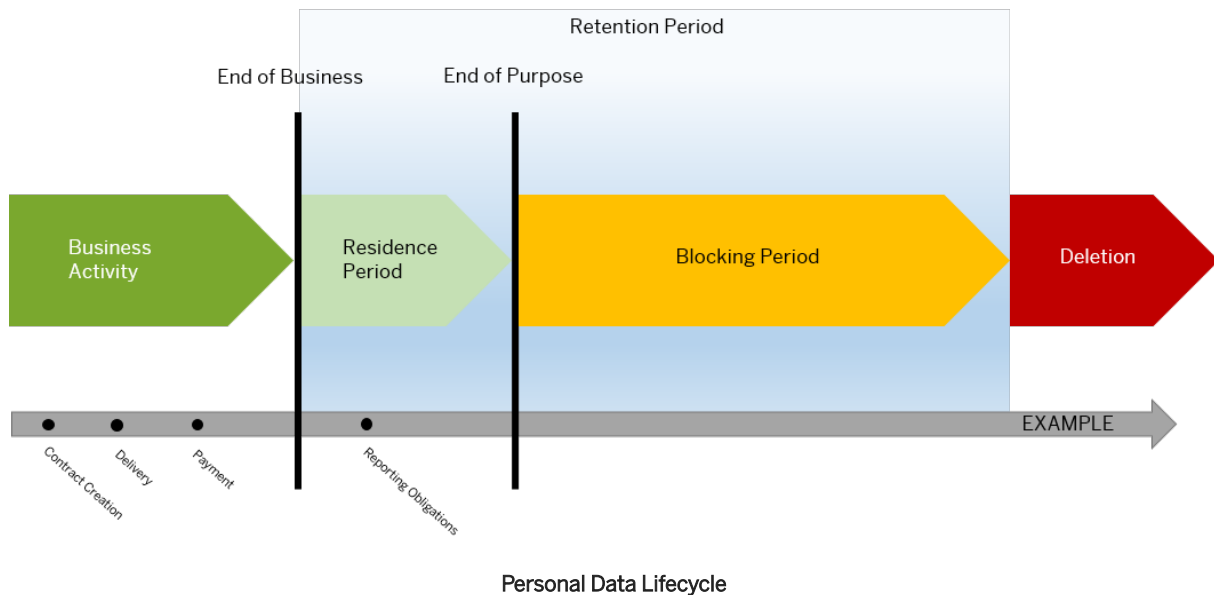
The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. The business partner, customer and supplier master data uses SAP ILM to support the blocking and deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

Personal data collected in business partner, customer and supplier master data can be blocked as soon as business activities for which this data is needed are completed and the residence time for this data has elapsed. After this time, only users who are assigned additional authorizations can access this data. After the retention period for data expires, personal data can be destroyed completely such that it can no longer be retrieved. Residence and retention periods are defined in the customer system. For information about the Customizing of blocking and deletion, see *Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion*.

#### End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose (EoP) check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period is part of the overall lifecycle of personal data which consists of the following phases:

- **Business activity:** The relevant data is used in ongoing business, for example contract creation, delivery or payment.
- **Residence period:** The relevant data remains in the database and can be used in case of subsequent processes related to the original purpose, for example reporting obligations.
- **Blocking period:** The relevant data needs to be retained for legal reasons. During the blocking period, business users of SAP applications are prevented from displaying and using this data; it can only be processed in case of mandatory legal provisions.
- **Deletion:** The data is deleted and no longer exists in the database.



Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- **Display:** The system does not display blocked data.
- **Change:** It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Create:** It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Copy/Follow-Up:** It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Search:** It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable the end of purpose check, see sections [Process Flow](#) and [Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion](#).

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Provided Deletion Functionality
<i>Business Partner Data</i>	<p>Archiving object: CA_BUPA</p> <p>ILM object: CA_BUPA</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business function BUPA_ILM_BF is activated</li> <li>• To use ILM enablement, the EoP check is mandatory before archiving or deletion (transaction BUPA_PRE_EOP).</li> </ul>
<i>Customer Master Data</i>	<p>Archiving object: FI_ACCRECV</p> <p>ILM object: FI_ACCRECV</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business function ERP_CVP_ILM_1 is activated.</li> <li>• To use ILM enablement, the EoP check is mandatory before archiving or deletion (transaction CVP_PRE_EOP).</li> </ul>
<i>Supplier Master Data</i>	<p>Archiving object: FI_ACCPAYB</p> <p>ILM object: FI_ACCPAYB</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business function ERP_CVP_ILM_1 is activated.</li> <li>• To use ILM enablement, the EoP check is mandatory before archiving or deletion (transaction CVP_PRE_EOP).</li> </ul>
<i>Contact Person related to business partner, customer and supplier master data</i>	<p>Destruction object: FI_ACCKNVK</p> <p>ILM object: FI_ACCKNVK</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business function ERP_CVP_ILM_1 is activated.</li> <li>• To use ILM enablement, the EoP check is mandatory before archiving or deletion (transaction CVP_PRE_EOP).</li> </ul>

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP functionality

Application	Implemented Solution	Further Information
<i>Business Partner</i> (BUP)	End of purpose (EoP) check	EoP is determined based on the last change date of the business partner master data (from database table BUT000).
<i>Business Partner Relationship</i> (BUB)	End of purpose (EoP) check	EoP is determined based on the Valid-To field of the relationship.
<i>ERP Customer Master</i> (ERP_CUST)	End of purpose (EoP) check	EoP is determined based on the last change date of the customer master data (from database table KNA1 or change document object DEBI), last change date of assigned credit cards (change document object VCNUM) or last change date of assigned addresses of the customer or contact persons.
<i>ERP Supplier Master</i> (ERP_VEND)	End of purpose (EoP) check	EoP is determined based on the last change date of the supplier master data (from database table LFA1 or change document object KRED) or the last change date of assigned addresses of the supplier or contact persons.
<i>ERP Contact Persons</i> (ERP_CONTACT_PERSON)	End of purpose (EoP) check	EoP is determined based on the last change date of the contact person (from the contact person related change documents of the customer or supplier) or the last change date of assigned addresses of the contact person.

## Process Flow

- Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: CA\_BUPA)
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and supplier master (ILM objects: FI\_ACCPAYB, FI\_ACCRECV, FI\_ACCKNVK).
- You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.

3. To determine which business partners have reached end of purpose and can be blocked, you do the following:
  - Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to execute the end of purpose check for the central business partner and the dependent customer master and supplier master.
  - Run transaction `CVP_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the customer master and supplier master.
4. To unblock a blocked business partner data, you do the following:
  - Request unblocking of the blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.
  - If you have the needed authorization for unblocking business partner data, you can unblock the requested data by running the transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` for the central business partner data and `CVP_UNBLOCK_MD` for the customer master and supplier master.
5. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of business partner data.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner, customer and supplier master data in Customizing (transaction `SPRO`) using the following path:

► [SAP Customizing Implementation Guide](#) ► [Cross-Application Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Blocking and Unblocking of Data](#) ►

For more information, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►.

### 13.13.1.2 Specific Read Access Logging Configurations

#### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

The OData and web services for Business Partner (`LO-MD-BP`) logs data in order to protect and restrict access to sensitive data of business partners.

The customer and supplier master data displays and maintains log data in order to track the disclosure of the supplier minority indicator.

You can find the configurations as described in the [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#) chapter.

## OData for Business Partner

This table describes RAL configuration for API\_BUSINESS\_PARTNER.

Entity Type	Fields Logged	Business Context
A_BuPaIdentification	BPIDENTIFICATIONNUMBER BPIDENTIFICATIONTYPE	Log read access to the data referring to identification fields
A_BusinessPartnerBank	BANKACCOUNT BANKACCOUNTHOLDERNAME BANKACCOUNTNAME BANKACCOUNTREFERENCETEXT BANKCONTROLKEY BANKCOUNTRYKEY BANKIDENTIFICATION BANKNAME BANKNUMBER BUSINESSPARTNER CITYNAME COLLECTIONAUTHIND IBAN IBANVALIDITYSTARTDATE SWIFTCODE VALIDITYENDDATE VALIDITYSTARTDATE	Log read access to the data referring to bank related fields

## Web Services for Business Partner

This table describes RAL configuration for Business Partner Web Services:

- BusinessPartnerSUITEBulkReplicateRequest\_Out
- BusinessPartnerSUITEBulkReplicateRequest\_In

Service Node	Fields Logged	Business Context
BankDetails	@actionCode	Log read access to the data referring to bank fields
Path:	BankAccountExternalID	
Request/BusinessPartnerSUITEBulk-ReplicateRequest/ BusinessPartner-SUITEReplicateRequestMessage[]/ BusinessPartner/BankDetails[]/	BankAccountHolderName	
	BankAccountID	
	BankAccountStandardID	
	BankControlKey	
	CollectionAuthorisationIndicator	
	ID	
	Name	
	SpecificationsDescription	
	SubstituteBusinessPartnerBankDetailsID	
	SubstituteDate	
	BankControlKey@listAgencyID	
	BankControlKey@listAgencySchemeAgencyID	
	BankControlKey@listAgencySchemeID	
	BankControlKey@listID	
	BankControlKey@listVersionID	
	BankDirectoryReference/ BankCountryCode	
	BankDirectoryReference/ BankInternalID	
	BankDirectoryReference/ BankStandardID	
	BankDirectoryReference/ BankInternalID@schemeAgencyID	
	SpecificationsDescription@ languageCode	

Service Node	Fields Logged	Business Context
	ValidityPeriod/EndDate	
	ValidityPeriod/StartDate	
Identification	BusinessPartnerID	Log read access to the data referring to identification fields
Path: Request/BusinessPartnerSUITE-BulkReplicateRequest/ BusinessPartnerSUITEReplicateRequestMessage[]/ BusinessPartner/Identification[]/	PartyIdentifierTypeCode	
	PartyIdentifierTypeCode@listAgencyID	
	PartyIdentifierTypeCode@listAgencySchemeAgencyID	
	PartyIdentifierTypeCode@listAgencySchemeID	
	PartyIdentifierTypeCode@listID	
	PartyIdentifierTypeCode@listVersionID	



Service Node	Fields Logged	Business Context
PaymentCardDetails	@actionCode	Log read access to the data referring to payment card related fields
Path: Request/BusinessPartnerSUITE-BulkReplicateRequest/ BusinessPartnerSUITEReplicateRequestMessage[]/ BusinessPartner/PaymentCardDetails[]/	@blockCompleteTransmissionIndicator DefaultIndicator ID Block[]@actionCode Block[]/BlockingReasonCode Block[]/ BlockingReasonCode@listAgencyID Block[]/ BlockingReasonCode@listAgencySchemeAgencyID Block[]/ BlockingReasonCode@listAgencySchemeID Block[]/ BlockingReasonCode@listID Block[]/ BlockingReasonCode@listVersionID Block[]/ValidityPeriod/EndDate Block[]/ValidityPeriod/StartDate PaymentCard/CategoryCode PaymentCard/Description PaymentCard/ExpirationDate PaymentCard/HolderName PaymentCard/ID PaymentCard/IssueDateTime PaymentCard/IssuerName PaymentCard/NickName PaymentCard/ReferenceID	

Service Node	Fields Logged	Business Context
	PaymentCard/SequenceID	
	PaymentCard/TypeCode	
	PaymentCard/ValidFromDate	
	PaymentCard/ Description@languageCode	
	PaymentCard/ ID@schemeAgencyID	
	PaymentCard/ ID@schemeAgencySchemeAgenc yID	
	PaymentCard/ ID@schemeAgencySchemeID	
	PaymentCard/ID@schemeID	

## Customer and Supplier Master Data

In the following configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
VEND_MINDK	LFB1-MINDK LFB1-LIFNR LFB1-BUKRS	Log access to minority indicator only if all fields are shown together.

## 13.13.2 Legal Content Management

### 13.13.2.1 Authorizations and Roles Used by Legal Content Management

Legal Content Management uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

#### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

### Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used.

Role	Description
SAP_BR_ADMINISTRATOR_LCM	Administrator - Legal Content Management
SAP_BR_EMPLOYEE_LEGAL_CONTENT	Employee - Legal Content Management
SAP_BR_LEGAL_COUNSEL	Legal Counsel

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used.

Authorization Object	Description
LCM_GEN	General Activities
LCM_CTX	Auth. Obj. for LCM Context
LCM_CTXADM	Auth. Obj. for Task in LCM Context Admin. actions

Authorization Object	Description
LCM_LT	Auth. Obj. for LCM Legal Transaction
LCMDOCSTMP	Auth. object for Stamps in LCM Document
LCMSTMPACT	Auth. object for Stamp activities in LCM Document
LCM_LTACT	Auth. Obj. for Task in LCM Legal Transaction Actions
LCM_DOCHDR	Auth. Obj. for Document Header
LCM_DOCLT	Auth. Obj. for Document header for LT attributes

## 13.13.2.2 Blocking of Personal Data

The Legal Content Management applications might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

For Legal Content Management, data protection and privacy (DPP) is implemented for the following data:

- Entity types *Customer* and *Supplier*
- External contact type *Business Partner*

The DPP checks are enabled in DCL files which inherit the authorization of the respective standard DCL files. If the user uses in a legal transaction the value help for a customer, supplier or business partner, the DCL authorization check is executed and the blocked data is filtered out from the list that is shown in the value help. If the user enters a customer, supplier or business partner directly, without using the value help, the Business Object Processing Framework (BOPF) validation methods check the data against the CDS views and the blocked data is not displayed.

The same logic is applied in the API. If an API call creates or updates data for a legal transaction, the BOPF validation is done based on the DPP authorization checks.

The following field indicates if the legal transaction is blocked:

- `IsBusinessPurposeCompleted` - if set to X (true)

## End of Purpose Check

The End of Purpose (EoP) check identifies if all business applications have completed their purpose in use of master data, so that it can be later blocked. Basically, the check is performed to see if a master data (customer,

supplier or business partner) can be blocked. In Legal Content Management (LCM), the EoP check is reached when the legal transaction has reached one of the following status:

- Cancelled
- Terminated
- Expired

The central EoP check report calls the LCM modules to check if any business data is in use. And the LCM module checks the data in legal transaction and returns the respective status back. Whether or not the customer, supplier or business partner is blocked, is determined based on the following scenarios, which can coexist in the same installation:

LCM determines the EoP: The business logic is hosted in LCM and as long as any of the data is still in use, it cannot be removed or blocked.

## Configuration

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer, supplier, and business partner master data in Customizing under [Cross Application Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking of Data](#) > [Business Partner](#). For more information, see the documentation of the respective Customizing activities.

The application name for the EoP check is LCM-LT. You need to configure the blocking for the following objects:

Object	Type	EoP Check Object
Legal Transaction	External contact type / Business partner	LCM_LEGALTR_BUPA_EOP_CHECK
Legal Transaction	Entity type / Customer or supplier	CL_LCM_LEGALTR_CVP_EOP_CHECK

## 13.13.3 Geographical Enablement Framework

### 13.13.3.1 Authorizations

The framework uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP and SAP HANA Platform. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver Application Server, ABAP Security Guide and HANA platform also apply to SAP Geographical Enablement Framework. The SAP authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance in application server ABAP (AS ABAP), use the profile generator transaction **PF03** in the backend system.

## Standard Roles

The table below provides the standard roles that are used by the framework.

Roles	Description
<code>sap.gef.data::gef_user</code>	Delivered in SAP HANA DU for the SAP Geographical Enablement Framework; it provides basic authorization to access the framework schema in SAP HANA (SAP_GEF). You can assign this role to <code>SAP_GEF_USER</code> or other reference users that are created.
<code>sap.gef.data::gef_admin</code>	In addition to all the authorizations provided in the <code>gef_user</code> role, this admin role provides advanced authorizations for administrative tasks.

For AS ABAP, the **PFCG** role template, `SAP_GEF_USR` is delivered. This template provides basic authorizations for the framework. Other authorization roles, if needed for accessing application data, need to be added to create **PFCG** roles for consuming the framework services.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used.

Authorization	Object	Field Value
<code>G_GEF_GEOM</code>	<code>GEF_BO_ID</code>	Business Object ID
	<code>GEF_CONTXT</code>	Geometry Context ID
	<code>ACTVT</code>	Activity

### 13.13.3.2 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate the services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For this area the following services are needed:

- `/default_host/sap/ca/GEF/arcgis/rest/services`  
In this path, the framework can provide services that conform to the specifications of different GIS service providers, if a custom GIS plug-in is developed and customized. For more information, see the Application Implementation section in the Geographical Enablement Framework documentation.
- `/default_host/sap/ca/GEF/rest/config`  
In this path, the framework provides configuration information. This service is independent from any GIS service providers.

- /default\_host/sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/gef\_ui

The UI (Geometry Explorer and Geometry Editor) has been delivered to work with our framework. The UI starts from this path.

Use transaction **SICF** to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) uses URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information about ICF security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

### 13.13.3.3 Data Protection and Privacy

The SAP Geographical Enablement Framework does not collect, store, or process users' personal data. However, applications built on it may. Therefore, SAP recommends activating secure session management. We also recommend that you use SSL to protect the network communications where these security-relevant cookies are transferred.

Read access logging (RAL) monitors and logs read access to sensitive data, if any. It is required for applications to comply with legal regulations or public standards such as data privacy. In most cases, applications rely on the underlying business suite to save sensitive data. Therefore, it is also recommended to refer to the documents of the underlying platforms and activate the RAL based on the needs.

### 13.13.3.4 Enterprise Services Security

A technical limitation (tracked in security message 1670119508) has been identified; not all the user controlled inputs are sufficiently validated or encoded. This may cause security issues like Cross-Site Scripting (XSS).

This issue has been investigated and a solution is being implemented at this time. Contact SAP for the availability of this solution.

## 13.13.4 Master Data Governance

### 13.13.4.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Master Data Governance

#### Use

For personal data processed in the `Master Data Governance` (MDG) application, you can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more

information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal under [▶ Product Assistance](#) [▶ Cross Components](#) [▶ Data Protection](#) [▶](#).

## Relevant Application Object

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
MDG Change Requests	Archiving object USMD_CR

For more information about the application object, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal under [▶ Product Assistance](#) [▶ Cross Components](#) [▶ Master Data Governance](#) [▶ Data Protection in Master Data Governance](#) [▶ Data Archiving in Master Data Governance](#) [▶](#).

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

- You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner, customer, and supplier master data in Customizing under [▶ Cross-Application Components](#) [▶ Data Protection](#) [▶ Deletion of Data](#) [▶ Deletion of Business Partner Data](#) [▶](#).
- For information on defining ILM rules, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal under [▶ Product Assistance](#) [▶ Cross Components](#) [▶ SAP Information Lifecycle Management](#) [▶ Using ILM Retention Management in the Application System](#) [▶ Editing ILM Policies](#) [▶ Editing Retention Rules](#) [▶](#).
- For information on defining End of Purpose checks, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal under [▶ Product Assistance](#) [▶ Cross Components](#) [▶ Data Protection](#) [▶ Simplified Blocking and Deletion](#) [▶ End of Purpose \(EoP\) Check](#) [▶](#).

## End of Purpose

Master Data Governance for Business Partner (MDG-BP), Master Data Governance for Supplier (MDG-S), and Master Data Governance for Customer (MDG-C) are applications that are providing a workflow-based governance process for business partners. Within this process, the applications MDG-BP, MDG-S, and MDG-C do not store business partners permanently. In any case, MDG-BP, MDG-S, and MDG-C do not process business partners with the end of purpose indicator assigned.

For Master Data Governance, consolidation and Master Data Governance, mass processing, we recommend to use only business partner records that are not selected for End of Purpose (EoP).

The MDG, consolidation application and the MDG, mass processing application do not process business partners with the end of purpose indicator assigned.

For MDG, consolidation, we recommend to delete source data after the end of the consolidation process.



## Storage of Personal Data

All Master Data Governance applications store data only temporarily.

## Changes to Personal Data

The system logs changes to personal data using change documents.

## Read Access Logging for MDG

For information on read access logging, see *Read Access Logging* under *Data Protection* of this Security Guide.

## Enhancements

- For Master Data Governance for Custom Objects, we do not recommend to enhance personal data in your own objects. If it is necessary, you need to ensure to archive and delete enhanced data for the End of Purpose (EoP) goal.
- For Master Data Governance, central governance, we recommend to use backend tables of SAP-BP for enhancements and enhance the MDG data model accordingly. .

## 13.14 SAP S/4HANA Industries

### 13.14.1 Agriculture

#### 13.14.1.1 Agricultural Contract Management

## 13.14.1.1.1 Read Access Logging

Read Access Logging (RAL) is used to monitor and log read access to sensitive data. This data may be categorized as sensitive by law, by external company policy, or by internal company policy. These common questions might be of interest for an application that uses Read Access Logging:

- Who accessed the data of a given business entity, for example a bank account?
- Who accessed personal data, for example of a business partner?
- Which employee accessed personal information, for example religion?
- Which accounts or business partners were accessed by which users?

These questions can be answered using information about who accessed particular data within a specified time frame. Technically, this means that all remote API and UI info structures (that access the data) must be enabled for logging.

### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications. The application component scenario logs data in order to describe business processes. You can find the configurations as described in this chapter.

For the following configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields in the following business contexts:

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
/ACCGO/LDC_WC	Driver ID, License, Vehicle ID	If any person accesses the information about these fields using transaction / ACCGO/LDC_WC either in Change Mode or Display Mode

Read Access Logging is currently limited to the following channels, however:

- Remote Function Calls (sRFC, aRFC, tRFC, qRFC, bgRFC)
- Dynpro (dynpro fields, ALV Grid, ABAP List, F4)
- Web Dynpro
- Web services
- Gateway (for oData)

## 13.14.1.1.2 Deletion of Personal Data

Agricultural Contract Management might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note [1825544](#).

To enable even complex scenarios, SAP simplifies existing deletion functionality to cover data objects that are personal data by default. For this purpose, SAP uses SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to help you

set up a compliant information lifecycle management process in an efficient and flexible manner. The functions that support the simplified blocking and deletion of personal data are not delivered as a big bang implementation but in several waves. Scenarios or products that are not specified in the notes [1825608](#) (Simplified Blocking and Deletion of Central Business Partner) and [2007926](#) (Simplified Blocking and Deletion of Customer / Vendor Master Data) are so far not subject of simplified blocking and deletion. Nevertheless, it is also possible to destroy personal data for these scenarios or products. In these cases, you have to use existing archiving or deletion functionality or implement an individual retention management of relevant business data along its entire lifecycle.

The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. Agricultural Contract Management uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections:

- SAP delivers an end of purpose check for Agricultural Contract Management.
- All applications register an end of purpose check (EoP) in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of the customer and vendor master. For information about the Customizing of blocking and deletion for Agricultural Contract Management, see Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

## End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases:

- **Phase one:** The relevant data is actively used.
- **Phase two:** The relevant data is actively available in the system
- **Phase three:** The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.

For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked.

Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- **Display:** The system does not display blocked data.
- **Change:** It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Create:** It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Copy/Follow-Up:** It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data
- **Search:** It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three-phase based end of purpose check, see Process Flow and Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

If you still want to block the data, the dependent data must be deleted by using the existing archiving and deletion tools or by using any other customer-specific solution.

### 13.14.1.1.3 Change Log

Person-related data is subject to frequent changes. Therefore, for revision purposes or because of legal regulations, it may be necessary to be able to track the changes made. If these changes are logged, at any time you can check which employee made which change and when.

Change log has been enabled for the following fields in the Agricultural Contract Management process:

1. Driver ID
2. License Number
3. Vehicle ID
4. Customer
5. Vendor

You can execute program `RSSCD200` to get the change information of these documents.

## 13.14.2 Automotive

### 13.14.2.1 Vehicle processes for Wholesale and Retail

#### 13.14.2.1.1 Authorizations

Vehicle Processes for Wholesale and Retail uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PFCG`) on the AS ABAP.

#### **i**Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

### Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used.

Authorization Object	Description
C_AUTO_VMS	Vehicle Management System (VMS): Controls whether a user is allowed to execute VMS actions
C_AUTO_DPV	Dealer Portal VMS: Controls whether a user is allowed to execute dealer portal functions, for example, create a sales order without a vehicle

## 13.14.2.1.2 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

The Vehicle Management System (VMS) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Vehicle Management System (IS-A-VMS)	<b>Archiving Object</b> VEHICLE  <b>ILM Object</b> VEHICLE

### Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Vehicle Management System (IS-A-VMS)	EoP	Check table VLCVEHICLE

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components→Data Protection*.

### 13.14.3 Banking

#### 13.14.3.1 SAP Business Partner for Financial Services (FS-BP)

The security policy with *SAP Business Partner for Financial Services* (FS-BP) is very similar to the security policy with the central *SAP Business Partner* (SAP BP).

##### 13.14.3.1.1 Authorizations

You create roles in *Customizing* for *SAP Banking* under ► *SAP Business Partner for Financial Services* ► *General Settings* ► *Business Partner* ► *Basic Settings* ► *Authorization Management* ▾.

The authorization objects are the responsibility of the *SAP Business Partner. SAP Financial Customer Information Management* (FS-BP) is only responsible for the following authorization objects:

- **T\_BP\_DEAL** (*Standing Instructions/Transactions*)  
You can use this authorization object to control the company code-dependent authorizations for displaying/creating/changing standing instructions.  
There are standing instructions for:
  - Payment details
  - Derived flows
  - Correspondence
  - Transaction authorizations
- **B\_BUPA\_SLV** (*Selection Variant for Total Commitment*)  
A selection variant includes various settings for the total commitment (such as which business partner roles and relationships can be used for the selection, or whether detailed information can be displayed).

If you activate the SACF scenario **FSBP\_RATINGS** (*FS-BP: Scenario for Ratings and Credit Standing Data*) in the *Workbench for Switchable Authorization Check Scenarios* (transaction **SACF**), the following FS-BP authorization objects are also available:

- **B\_BUPA\_RAT** (*Business Partner: Ratings*)  
You can use this authorization object to check whether a user has the authorization to create, change, display, or delete rating procedures. For each rating procedure, you can differentiate between an authorization for a permitted period or an authorization for any period. The prerequisite for this is that you have made the settings for the periods in Customizing for *SAP Banking* under ► *SAP Business Partner for*

[Financial Services](#) > [Settings for Financial Services](#) > [General Settings](#) > [Ratings/Credit Standing](#) > [Ratings](#) > [Set Rating Procedures and Ratings](#).

- [B\\_BUPA\\_CRS](#) (*Business Partner: Credit Standing Data*)  
You can use this authorization object to check whether a user has the authorization to display and change credit standing data.

## 13.14.3.1.2 Network and Communication Security

In the case of *Total Commitment*, SAP ERP communicates with other SAP systems (such as Account Management (FS-AM)). Communication with non-SAP systems is also possible.

Communication takes place using Remote Function Call (RFC).

### 13.14.3.1.2.1 Communication Destinations

Depending on the scenario, an RFC user is required for communication via Remote Function Call (RFC). This user requires the appropriate authorizations for the target system (such as FS-CML or FS-AM).

### 13.14.3.1.3 Data Storage Security

The authorization object [B\\_CCARD](#) controls access to the credit card information that is stored in the business partner. This control falls under the area of responsibility of the central *SAP Business Partner*.

You can use authorization groups (authorization object [B\\_BUPA\\_GRP](#)) to protect employee data.

If you activate the SACF scenario [FSBP\\_RATINGS](#) (*FS-BP: Scenario for Ratings and Credit Standing Data*) in the *Workbench for Switchable Authorization Check Scenarios* (transaction [SACF](#)), the following FS-BP authorization objects are also available:

- [B\\_BUPA\\_RAT](#) (*Business Partner: Ratings*)
- [B\\_BUPA\\_CRS](#) (*Business Partner: Credit Standing Data*)

## 13.14.3.2 Bank Customer Accounts (BCA)

## 13.14.3.2.1 Authorizations

The following standard roles are available in *Bank Customer Accounts (BCA)*:

Role	Description
SAP_ISB_ACCOUNTS_ADMIN_AG	SAP Banking BCA: Administrator in Account Management
SAP_ISB_ACCOUNTS_ASSISTANT_AG	SAP Banking BCA: Assistant in Account Management
SAP_ISB_ACCOUNTS_STAFF_AG	SAP Banking BCA: Clerical Staff in Account Management

For more information on authorization management and the authorization objects in Bank Customer Accounts, see the product assistance documentation, under [Enterprise Business Applications > Finance > SAP Banking > Bank Customer Accounts \(BCA\) > General Subjects Authorization Administration](#) and its subtopic *Authorization Objects*.

*Bank Customer Accounts (BCA)* also contains the following business transaction events on the subject of authorizations:

Business Transaction Event	Description
SAMPLE_INTERFACE_00011040	AUTH1 account
SAMPLE_INTERFACE_00011700	Authorization checks in the information system
SAMPLE_INTERFACE_00011701	Authorization check in the information system (RFC)
SAMPLE_INTERFACE_00010950	Check management
SAMPLE_INTERFACE_00010210	Payment item dialog
SAMPLE_INTERFACE_00010410	Payment order dialog
SAMPLE_INTERFACE_00010411	Standing order dialog

## 13.14.3.2.2 Network and Communication Security

*Bank Customer Accounts (BCA)* communicates with the following external systems:

- Payment transaction systems
- *Interest income tax*
- *Financial Accounting (FI)*, if *Financial Accounting (FI)* runs on another system

Encrypt communication with external systems in accordance with the SAP standards.

Communication with all external systems is performed via Remote Function Call (RFC).



### 13.14.3.2.3 Deletion of Personal Data in IS-B-BCA

#### Use

The *Bank Customer Accounts (IS-B-BCA)* component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

#### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
BKK	For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">2023415</a> .	BKK_BUPA_EVENT_EOP_CHECK ILM object FIBA_BUPA
BKK	For more information, see Archiving or Destroying Bank Customer Accounts Data, and SAP Note <a href="#">2023417</a> .	ILM objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• BKKPRENOTE</li><li>• FIBA_ACCNT</li><li>• FIBA_BKST</li><li>• FIBA_CFBAL</li><li>• FIBA_EFTEX</li><li>• FIBA_EFTIN</li><li>• FIBA_ENRCH</li><li>• FIBA_EVLIM</li><li>• FIBA_GL</li><li>• FIBA_GLBAL</li><li>• FIBA_HIERA</li><li>• FIBA_HOLD</li><li>• FIBA_INCAL</li><li>• FIBA_ITEM</li><li>• FIBA_ORDER</li><li>• FIBA_PECAL</li><li>• FIBA_PXPO</li><li>• FIBA_STORD</li><li>• FIBA_TERM</li><li>• FIBA_TOTAL</li></ul>

## Available Check

Implemented Solution: End of Purpose Check

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

### 13.14.3.2.4 Specific Read Access Log Configurations

#### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

The scenario *Payment Document Display/Change/Create* (Tx WZR(1/2/3)) in *Settlement Management* (LO-AB) logs data in order to record any access to banking data related to a customer or a vendor. You can find the configurations as described in the [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#) chapter.

In the following configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
LOAB_BANK	KOMWBRD-BANKL	Bank Keys
LOAB_BANK	KOMWBRD-BANKN	Bank account number
LOAB_BANK	KOMWBRD-BANKS	Bank country key
LOAB_BANK	KOMWBRD-BKONT	Bank country key
LOAB_BANK	KOMWBRD-BKREF	Reference specifications for bank details
LOAB_BANK	KOMWBRD-DTAMS	Instruction key for data medium exchange
LOAB_BANK	KOMWBRD-DTAWs	Indicator for Data Medium Exchange

## 13.14.3.3 Loans Management (FS-CML)

### 13.14.3.3.1 Authorizations

Authorization management for mortgage loans is based on the existing authorization concept in [Loans Management\(FS-CML\)](#).

The authorization check is performed according to the principle of inclusion, that is to say, if a user has authorization to activate a business transaction, he or she also has authorization to delete it. The authorization for making a posting includes the authorization for making a cancellation.

If other functions are called from a business transaction, the relevant authorization check is performed in this business transaction before the other function is accessed. This avoids any termination of the functions that are being called.

To set up your authorization management for mortgage loans, you can use the following roles included in the delivery scope:

Role	Description	Scope
Loans Officer	SAP_CML_LOANS_OFFICER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Create, change, display, delete business partner</li><li>• Collateral value calculation, credit standing calculation and decision-making</li><li>• Maintain objects and securities</li><li>• Create contracts, or transfer from application or offer</li><li>• Enter disbursements</li><li>• Process correspondence</li><li>• Release loan (colleague or superior)</li><li>• Process business operations (such as charges, individual posting, pay-off)</li></ul>
Credit Analyst	SAP_CML_CREDIT_ANALYST	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Create, change, display, delete business partner</li><li>• Maintain loan enquiries, applications and offers</li><li>• Calculate credit standing</li><li>• Decision-making</li><li>• Maintain limits</li><li>• Calculate the collateral value</li><li>• Maintain objects and securities</li></ul>

Role	Description	Scope
Rollover Officer	SAP_CML_ROLLOVER_OFFICER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Loan rollover (individual and mass)</li> <li>• Process correspondence</li> <li>• Management of rollover file</li> <li>• Maintain condition tables</li> </ul>
Staff Accountant for Loans	SAP_CML_STAFF_ACCOUNTANT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Post transactions</li> <li>• Clearing</li> <li>• Create payments</li> <li>• Post and monitor incoming payments</li> <li>• Process waivers and write-offs</li> <li>• Cancellation</li> <li>• Accrual/deferral</li> <li>• Valuation</li> <li>• Generating accounting reports</li> </ul>
Manager of Loans Department	SAP_CML_DEPARTM_MANAGER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Release</li> <li>• Maintain condition tables</li> <li>• Change limits</li> <li>• Risk analysis</li> <li>• Monitor file (rollover or process management)</li> <li>• Monitor portfolio and portfolio trend using reports; reports and queries</li> </ul>
Product Administrator	SAP_CML_PRODUCT_ADMIN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Update reference interest rates</li> <li>• Maintain condition tables</li> <li>• Maintain new business tables</li> </ul>
Technical Administrator	SAP_CML_TECHNICAL_ADMIN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Perform mass runs (such as mass print run), set status of plan to completed, post planned records</li> <li>• Currency Conversion</li> <li>• Update reference interest rates and currency rates</li> <li>• Reorganization and data archiving</li> <li>• Define queries, drilldown reporting forms and reports</li> <li>• Maintain performance parameters</li> <li>• Analyze change pointers</li> <li>• Define export interfaces</li> </ul>

You can assign these roles to the users in your company. Do not make any changes to the original roles, as these changes would be overwritten by the standard settings when the system is upgraded.

If you want to make adjustments, copy these roles. To do so, in the SAP Easy Access menu, choose ► [Tools](#) ► [Administration](#) ► [User Administration](#) ► [Role Administration](#) ► [Roles](#) . Here you can group together authorizations for consumer loans into your own defined roles, and assign these to users in your departments, for example. In the first step you maintain the role menu. You can structure this yourself by adding and, if necessary, renaming files, transactions, and reports. In addition to manually grouping together the relevant transactions, you can also transfer these from the SAP menu or another role. You then maintain the authorizations for your role. The system proposes certain authorizations and their characteristics. You can also add more objects. Then you need to generate the authorization profile. Finally, you maintain the users who are to have the authorizations contained in the role. You can also use elements from organizational management, such as position in the organization. The advantage here is that you do not have to maintain the user assignment individually in each role if a person changes jobs. You can also use this function in release.

## 13.14.3.3.2 Network and Communication Security

Loans Management (FS-CML) does not communicate with other systems.

The only exception is the loan origination process. In this process, CRM serves as the entry system, and FS-CML as the back-end system. Communication takes place by means of XI.

## 13.14.3.3.3 Data Storage Security

The security of sensitive data in *Loans Management* (such as loan contracts, consumer loans, collateral values, credit standing calculations, collateral) is guaranteed by the general authorization concept of *Loans Management (FS-CML)*.

It is possible to display business partner data from *Loans Management*. You can use the authorization concept of central *SAP Business Partner* to protect this data.

For more information about authorizations and security of data storage, see <http://help.sap.com> under *SAP Business Partner Security*.

## Using Logical Path and Filenames to Protect Access to the File System

The *Loans Management (FS CML)* application saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, you must provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal).

You can do this by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. The system validates this mapping at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a defined mapping, then the system issues an error message.

The following lists the logical file names and paths used by *Loans Management (FS CML)* and the programs for which these file names and paths apply:

### Logical File Names Used in This Application

The following logical file names have been created to enable the validation of physical file names:

- CML\_PAYMENT\_US
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVD\_AUTODRAFT\_PROCESS
- RFVD\_PAY\_STOP
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_CREDIT\_BUREAU
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVD\_CBR\_PROCESS
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_LOGFILE\_IN
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVOBJ01
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_LOGFILE\_OUT
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVOBJ01
- RFVOBJ01\_CREATE\_STRUCTURE
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_PHYSFILE\_IN
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVOBJ01
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_PHYSFILE\_OUT
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVOBJ01
- RFVOBJ01\_CREATE\_STRUCTURE
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_LOGFILE\_IN
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVSIC01
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_LOGFILE\_OUT
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVSIC01
- RFVSIC01\_CREATE\_STRUCTURE
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_PHYSFILE\_IN
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVSIC01
- Parameters used in this context: None
- CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_PHYSFILE\_OUT
- Program using this logical file name:
- RFVSIC01

- RFVSIC01\_CREATE\_STRUCTURE
- Parameters used in this context: None

#### Logical File Paths Used in This Application

- The logical file names CML\_PAYMENT\_US and CML\_CREDIT\_BUREAU use the logical file path CML\_ROOT.
- The logical file names CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_LOGFILE\_IN, CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_LOGFILE\_OUT, CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_PHYSFILE\_IN, CML\_MIGRATION\_OBJECTS\_PHYSFILE\_OUT, CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_LOGFILE\_IN, CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_LOGFILE\_OUT, CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_PHYSFILE\_IN and CML\_MIGRATION\_COLLATERALS\_PHYSFILE\_OUT use the logical file path CML\_MIGRATION

#### Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

## 13.14.3.3.4 Deletion of Personal Data in FS-CML

### Use

The `Consumer Mortgage Loans` (FS-CML) component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
CMLCONTRCT	Loan Master Data	Archiving object CMLCONTRCT ILM object CMLCONTRCT
CMLMODCALC	Model Calculation	Archiving object CMLMODCALC ILM object CMLMODCALC
CMLCRSTND	Credit Standing Calculation	Destruction object CML_CRSTAND-CALC_DESTRUCTION ILM object CML_CRSTANDCALC_DESTRUCTION

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
CMLINTPAR	Interested Party	Destruction object CML_INTEREST-PARTY_DESTRUCTION ILM object CML_INTERESTPARTY_DESTRUCTION
CMLCOLLATE	Collaterals	Destruction object CMLCOLLATE ILM object CMLCOLLATE
CMLCOLOBJ	Collateral Objects	Destruction object CMLCOLOBJ ILM object CMLCOLOBJ

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP functionality

Application Object	Implemented Solution (End of Purpose Check)	Further Information
CMLCONTRCT	Loan Master Data	FLBP_CONTR_EVENT_EOP_CHECK
CMLMODCALC	Model Calculation	FLBP_MODEL-CALC_EVENT_EOP_CHECK
CMLCRSTND	Credit Standing Calculation	FLBP_CR_STND_EVENT_EOP_CHECK
CMLINTPAR	Interested Party	FLBP_INT_PAR_EVENT_EOP_CHECKKN
CMLCOLLATE	Collaterals	FLBP_COLLTRL_EVENT_EOP_CHECK
CMLCOLOBJ	Collateral Objects	FLBP_COLLOBJ_EVENT_EOP_CHECK

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under Data Protection.



## 13.14.3.3.5 Specific Read Access Log Configurations

### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

During read accesses to the master data and transaction data of master loan contracts, the master loan contract number or the internal master contract ID (GUID) that the user uses for the access is logged.

During read accesses to the loan contracts for a business partner, the business partner number is logged. Furthermore, the IDs of all accounts and master loan contracts that the user could see as a result of this access are logged.

You can find the configurations as described in the [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#) chapter.

In the following configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

Interface Name	Fields Logged	Log Domain	Business Context
BankAccountContractProcessingManageLoanContractIn	VDARL-RANL VDARL-BUKRS	BANKACCTCONTR_ID	Account Contract Number
BankAccountContractProcessingQueryLoanContractIn	VDARL-CONTRACT_IBAN	BANKACCT_STANDARDID	IBAN
LoanDisbursementRequestERPByBasicDataQueryResponse_In	VDAUSZ-BANKL	BANK_ROUTINGID	Bank Key
LoanPendingPaymentWaiverRequestERPByBasicDataQueryResponse_In	VDGPO-BVTYP	BUSINESSPARTNERBANK DETAILS_ID	Business Partner Bank ID
	VDARL-HKTID	BANKACCT_ID	Account Number
	VDARL-SLAENDER	BANK_COUNTRYCODE	Bank Country Code
	VDARL-RDARNEHM	PARTYID	Business Partner ID

### More Information

For more information about the RAL sample Customizing for FS-CML, see SAP Note [2429604](#).

## 13.14.3.4 Collateral Management (CM)

### Purpose

The purpose of this guide is to explain the security-specific features built-in for the SAP *Collateral Management (CM)*.

To understand the security features provided in CM, you must read the SAP *Netweaver Application Server* security guide that describes the basic security aspects and measures for SAP systems.

### 13.14.3.4.1 Authorizations

A multitude of standard roles are shipped with SAP *Collateral Management (CM)* in the SAP ECC 6.0. These roles are of exemplary character. The standard roles must be modified by the Customers based on their requirements.

#### i Note

The Customers must not use the standard roles in their production systems only with some modifications. It is advisable without any modifications. Use the Profile Generator (transaction PFCG) to identify the standard roles and create additional roles.

The following roles are available in CM for banks:

Role	Purpose
SAP_FS_CMS_DISPLAY_ALL	Displaying all the entity objects in <i>CM</i> .
SAP_FS_CMS_MAINTAIN_ALL	Maintaining (Create, change and display only) all entity objects.
SAP_FS_CMS_MAINTAIN_ALL_PRC	Executing all the process related activities in addition to maintenance of objects
SAP_FS_CMS_CUST_ALL	Customizing
SAP_FS_CMS_ADMIN	<i>CM</i> administrator role
SAP_FS_CMS_COL_AUDITOR	Maintaining all the entity objects and the access to run all the reports in <i>CM</i> .
SAP_FS_CMS_CREDIT_MANAGER	Displaying collateral objects and collateral agreements.
SAP_FS_CMS_CREDIT_RISK_MANAGER	Maintaining collateral objects and collateral agreements and displaying receivables.
SAP_FS_CMS_LIQUIDATION_OFFICER	Maintaining liquidation measures.

#### Authorization Objects in CM

Technical name	Name
CMS_PCN_02	Authorization for activities (change request mode)
CMS_PCN_01	Authorization for activities (normal mode)
CMS_OMS1	Authorization for all collateral objects other than real estate (replace CMS_OMS from ECC 6.0 onwards)
CMS_OMS	Authorization for all collateral objects other than real estate (obsolete from ECC 6.0 onwards)
CMS_CAG	Authorization object for collateral agreements
CMS_RE	Authorization object for real estate objects in CM.
CMS_RBL	Authorization object for receivable in CM.

### Characteristic Based Authorizations

In the Collateral Management, all the objects must belong to an administration organizational unit. The authorization objects for collateral objects (real estate and other collateral objects) and collateral agreements are based on a combination of the administration organizational unit and the entity type (assigned using a process control key). For receivables, the authorizations are based on the receivable organizational unit, the receivable status and the product. Authorizations for receivables is valid only for the receivables created in the *CM* or even the local copies of the receivables in external credit systems.

#### i Note

For example, you can use the attribute administration organization unit to differentiate between employee, VIP and normal customers objects. You can also create objects in these organizational units as characteristics, which can then also be used to protect application data.

## 13.14.3.4.2 Network Communication and Security

The table below shows the communication paths used by the SAP *Collateral Management* ( *CM* ), the protocol used for the connections and the type of data transferred.

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
Financial Customer Information System (FS- Business Partner)	RFC	Business partner master data	
SAP Document Management System (DMS)	RFC	Document data	

Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
Loans Management (CML)	RFC	Loan data	
SAP Business Information Warehouse (BIW)	IDoc and RFC	Collateral agreements, collateral objects, charges, collateral agreement – receivable assignment and calculations data	
SAP Bank Analyzer (Basel II)	IDoc and RFC	Collateral agreements, collateral objects, charges, collateral agreement – receivable assignment and calculations data	

The following RFC connections have to be set up for operating the **CM**. You are advised not to create the users belonging to these as dialog users.

- RFC communication with the Tool BW
- RFC communication within the Tool BW
- RFC communication in the context of import methods for the client copy. The relevant authorization objects are:
- S\_TABU\_DIS; S\_RS\_ICUBE; S\_RS\_ADMWB; S\_RS\_ISOURL; S\_BTCH\_ADM; S\_ADMI\_FCD; S\_BTCH\_JOB; S\_RS\_ODSO; S\_RS\_ISET

**CM** provides the following business application programming interfaces (BAPIs) for allowing external systems to connect to it:

- BAPI\_CM\_AST\_GET\_MULTI
- BAPI\_CM\_CAG\_CREATE
- BAPI\_CM\_CAG\_GETDETAIL\_MULTI
- BAPI\_CM\_CAG\_GET\_BY\_RBL
- BAPI\_CM\_GENLNK\_RBL\_ON\_RBL\_01
- BAPI\_CM\_GENLNK\_RBL\_ON\_RBL\_02
- BAPI\_CM\_SEC\_GETDETAIL\_MULTI
- BAPI\_CM\_RE\_GETDETAIL\_MULTI
- BAPI\_CM\_RIG\_GETDETAIL\_MULTI
- BAPI\_CM\_MOV\_GETDETAIL\_MULTI

BAPIs are standard SAP interfaces and are important in the technical integration and in exchange of business data between SAP components and between the SAP and non-SAP components. BAPIs enable you to integrate these components. They are therefore an important part of developing integration scenarios where multiple components are connected to each other, either on a local network or on the internet.

BAPIs allow integration at the business level and not at the technical level. This provides for greater stability of the linkage and independence from the underlying communication technology.

The current requirement for BAPIs in *CM* caters mainly to the migration scenarios. Hence these BAPIs are not protected by special authorizations. Authorization checks for BAPIs can be provided (in the future releases), if there are requirements for them.

*CM* also provides an extensive enhancement concept that offers user exits in the form of Business Add-Ins (BADIs).

## Network Security and Communication Channels

*Collateral Management (CM)* uses the same communication channels that are described in the SAP NetWeaver AS security guide. No further customer-specific communication channels are provided. Hence the aspects and actions described in the SAP NetWeaver AS security guide (such as use of SAPRouter in combination with Firewall, use of Secure Network Communication (SNC), Communication Front-End-Application Server, connection to the database) also apply for *CM*.

### 13.14.3.5 Reserve for Bad Debt (FS-RBD)

#### 13.14.3.5.1 Authorizations

The authorization concept used by *Reserve for Bad Debt (RBD)* is the same as the SAP authorization concept.

The authorization checks in RBD differentiate between the following dimensions:

- Activity  
You use the activity to control what a user is permitted to do.
- Organization  
At the level of the RBD-specific objects *RBD Area* or *Organizational Unit*, you specify which data the user is permitted to display or edit in accordance with the activity.

#### Standard Profiles

Preconfigured standard roles are not shipped with RBD. The following standard profiles are shipped with the SAP system:

Standard Profiles

Role	Description
S_A.SYSTEM	Access authorizations for the basis system only

Role	Description
S_A.ADMIN	Access authorizations for administration of the operational SAP system, but <b>without</b> access authorization for the following areas: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ABAP/4 Development Workbench</li> <li>• Maintenance of super users</li> <li>• Maintenance of standard profiles beginning with "S_A"</li> </ul>
S_A.DEVELOP	Access authorizations for users who work with ABAP/4 Development Workbench
S_A.CUSTOMIZ	Access authorizations for basis settings in the Customizing system
S_A.USER	Access authorizations for end users (without access authorization for SAP work areas)

## Authorization Objects

The following authorization objects are shipped with *Reserve for Bad Debt (RBD)*.

### RBD Authorization Objects

Object	Description	Authorization Field <i>Activity</i>	Authorization Field <i>RBD Area</i>	Authorization Field <i>Organizational Unit</i>
RBD_CUST	RBD: Customizing	16( <i>Execute</i> )	Not relevant	Not relevant
RBD_EDIT	RBD: Dialog & Batch	01( <i>Add or Create</i> ) 02( <i>Change</i> ) 03( <i>Display</i> ) 05( <i>Lock</i> ) 10( <i>Post</i> ) 66( <i>Update</i> ) 85( <i>Reverse</i> ) 86( <i>Transfer Post</i> ) 91( <i>Reactivate</i> ) 95( <i>Unlock</i> ) H1( <i>Deactivate</i> )	According to Customizing (table /IBS/CRB_RBD_P)	According to Customizing (table /IBS/CRB_ORGEIN)

Object	Description	Authorization Field <i>Activity</i>	Authorization Field <i>RBD Area</i>	Authorization Field <i>Organizational Unit</i>
RBD_REPO	RBD: Reporting	Not relevant	According to Customizing (table /IBS/CRB_RBD_P)	According to Customizing (table /IBS/CRB_ORGEIN)
/IBX/EDIT	IPX: Dialog & Batch	02( <i>Change</i> ) 03( <i>Display</i> ) 06( <i>Delete</i> ) 10( <i>Post</i> ) 21( <i>Transfer Valuation</i> ) 23( <i>Maintain</i> ) 41( <i>Delete on Database</i> ) 43( <i>Release</i> ) 46( <i>Aggregate Valuation</i> ) 60( <i>Import</i> ) 69( <i>Delete Valuation</i> ) 71( <i>Analyze</i> ) 78( <i>Assign</i> ) 85( <i>Reverse</i> ) 93( <i>Calculate</i> ) 94( <i>Override</i> ) c8 ( <i>Confirm Change</i> )	According to Customizing (table /IBS/CRB_RBD_P)	Not relevant

### ⚠ Caution

For the *RBD Area* and *Organizational Unit* authorization fields, you can use the wildcard symbol “\*”. If you use the wildcard symbol, access authorization is not checked for the relevant authorization field.

### 🔗 Example

Description in relation to these authorization objects:

- The assignment of authorization object RBD\_CUST with *activity* 16 authorizes the user to use the function *RBD: Duplicate Customizing Account Determination* (/IBS/MRB\_CUST\_KTOFI).
- The assignment of authorization object RBD\_EDIT with *activity* 01 and *RBD area* 0001 enables a user to display the data for an RBD account in RBD area 0001.

- The assignment of authorization object RBD\_EDIT with *activity* 02, *RBD area* 0002, and *organizational unit* London enables a user to change data for an RBD account in RBD area 0002 that is assigned to the organizational unit "London".  
However, if the user is not assigned any other access authorizations, he or she cannot change an RBD account from RBD area 0002 that is assigned to the organizational unit "Tokio".
- The assignment of authorization object RBD\_EDIT with *activities* 02 and 10, and RBD area 0003 enables a user to create and post planned records for an RBD account in RBD area 0003.  
However, a prerequisite for this is that the principle of multiple control for posting planned records (risk provision proposals) has **not** been activated in Customizing for RBD.
- The assignment of authorization object RBD\_REPO with *RBD area* "\*" and *organizational unit* "\*" allows a user to display the RBD data for all RBD areas and all organizational units, using the reports of the RBD information system.

## Use of RBD Authorization Objects

RBD Area Menu, Account Management Folder

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area + Organizational Unit
Create RBD Account / IBS/ RB_KTO_INS	RBD_EDIT (01)	Relevant + Relevant
Change RBD Account / IBS/ RB_KTO_UPD	RBD_EDIT (02, 05, 10, 85, 95, H1)	Relevant + Relevant
Display RBD Account / IBS/ RB_KTO_DIS	RBD_EDIT (03)	Relevant + Relevant
Reactivate RBD account / IBS/ RB_KTO_REACT	RBD_EDIT (91)	Relevant + Relevant
Balance Sheet Transfer RBD / IBS/ RB_RECLAS	RBD_EDIT (not relevant)	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
ECF: Balance Sheet Transfer / IBS/ RB_ECF_RECLAS	RBD_EDIT (86)	Relevant + Not Relevant
ECF: Contract Reallocation / IBS/ RB_REALLOC	RBD_EDIT (86) RBD_REPO (not relevant)	Relevant + Not Relevant Relevant + Not Relevant
ECF: Manual Contract Manage- ment / IBS/RB_MANCON	RBD_EDIT (01, 02, 03)	Relevant + Not Relevant



RBD Area Menu, Information System Folder

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area + Organizational Unit
Worklist - Processor / IBS/ RB_WORKLIST and / IBS/ RB_WORKLIST_SEL	RBD_REPO (not relevant) RBD_EDIT (not relevant)	Relevant + Relevant Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Monitoring - Planned Record Change / IBS/RB_MAN_PLAN_CHG	RBD_REPO (not relevant) RBD_EDIT (not relevant)	Not Relevant + Relevant Not Relevant + Relevant
Decision Template for Past Analy- sis / IBS/RB_PROPRES_HGB	RBD_REPO (not relevant) S_GUI (61)	Not Relevant + Not Relevant Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Decision Template for Future Analy- sis / IBS/RB_PROPRES_IAS	RBD_REPO (not relevant) S_GUI (61)	Not Relevant + Not Relevant Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Decision Template for ECF Proce- dure / IBS/RB_PROPRES_ECF	RBD_REPO (not relevant) S_GUI (61)	Not Relevant + Not Relevant Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Reporting Function / IBS/ RB_REPORTING	RBD_REPO (not relevant)	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Development List / IBS/RB_DEVL	RBD_REPO (not relevant)	Relevant + Relevant
Development List per Source System Contract / IBS/RB_DEVL_SINGLE	RBD_REPO (not relevant)	Relevant + Relevant
Individual Document Table - Source System / IBS/MRB_VS_SALDO	Not relevant	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Posting Log / IBS/RB_LOG_POST	RBD_EDIT (03) S_APPL_LOG (03)	Relevant + Not Relevant
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drilldown Reporting with Referen- ces / IBS/RB_REF</li> <li>• IRP: Filling Report ECF Gate / IBS/ RB_ECF_FILL</li> <li>• IVA: List of Notes for Multiple Source Systems / IBS/RB_HINTM</li> </ul>	RBD_REPO (not relevant)	Relevant + Not Relevant

RBD Area Menu, Flat-Rate Value Adjustment Procedure Folder

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area + Organizational Unit
FVA: Fill RBD Gate for FS-CML / IBS/ RB_FILL_GATE	Not relevant	Not Relevant + Not Relevant

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area + Organizational Unit
FVA: Enrich RBD Gate / IBS/ RB_GATE_MODIFY	RBD_REPO (not relevant)	Relevant + Not Relevant
FVA: Update Run / IBS/RB_PWV_UPD	RBD_EDIT (10)	Relevant + Not Relevant
FVA: Update Run (PPF) / IBS/ RB_PWV_UPD_PPF	RBD_EDIT (10)	Relevant + Not Relevant

RBD Area Menu, Periodic Processing Folder

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area + Organizational Unit
IVA: Update Run - Past Analysis / IBS/ RB_EWB_UPD	RBD_EDIT (10)	Relevant + Relevant
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IVA: Filling Report Future Analysis / IBS/RB_IAS_FILL</li> <li>IVA: Update Run - Future Analysis / IBS/RB_IAS_UPD</li> <li>IVA: Update Run - Future Analysis (PPF) / IBS/RB_IAS_UPD_PPF</li> <li>IVA: Unwinding Run Future Analysis / IBS/RB_IAS_UPD_UNW</li> </ul>	RBD_EDIT (02)	Relevant + Relevant
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IVA: Posting Run - Future Analysis / IBS/RB_IAS_POST</li> <li>IVA: Posting Run - Future Analysis (PPF) / IBS/RB_IAS_POST_PPF</li> <li>IVA: Unwinding Posting Run Future Analysis / IBS/ RB_IAS_POST_UNW</li> </ul>	RBD_EDIT (10)	Relevant + Relevant
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IRP: Filling Report ECF Gate / IBS/ RB_ECF_FILL</li> </ul>	RBD_EDIT (02)	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IRP: Deletion Report ECF Gate / IBS/RB_ECF_CLEAR</li> </ul>	Not relevant	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IRP: Update Run ECF / IBS/ RB_ECF_UPDATE</li> <li>IRP: Update Run ECF (PPF) / IBS/ RB_ECF_UPD_PPF</li> <li>IRP: Unwinding Run ECF / IBS/ RB_ECF_UPD_UNW</li> <li>IRP: Unwinding Run ECF (PPF) / IBS/RB_ECF_UNW_PPF</li> </ul>	RBD_EDIT (02, 10)	Relevant + Not Relevant

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area + Organizational Unit
IRP: Creation Process ECF / IBS/ RB_ECF_A_CREATE	RBD_EDIT (02)	Relevant + Not Relevant

RBD Area Menu, Administration Folder

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area + Organizational Unit
RBD: Assign Administrator / IBS/ RB_ASSIGN_CO	RBD_EDIT (02)	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
RBD: Automatic Account Crea- tion / IBS/RB_ACC_CREATION	RBD_REPO (not relevant)	Relevant + Not Relevant
IVA: Initialization Run for Future Analy- sis / IBS/RB_IAS_UPD_INIT	RBD_EDIT (02)	Relevant + Relevant
IRP: Initial Run ECF / IBS/ RB_ECF_UPD_INIT	RBD_EDIT (02, 10)	Relevant + Not Relevant
IRP: Initialization ECF (PPF) / IBS/ RB_ECF_INIT_PPF	RBD_EDIT (02, 10)	Relevant + Not Relevant
Archive: RBD Account Data (Gen- eral) / IBS/RB_CSARA_ACC	S_ARCHIVE	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Archive: RBD Flow Data ECF / IBS/ RB_CSARA_ECO	S_ARCHIVE	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Archive: RBD Flow Past / IBS/ RB_CSARA_HCO	S_ARCHIVE	Not Relevant + Not Relevant
Remove Obsolete Postings (Past) / IBS/RB_HCO_DEL_POST	RBD_EDIT (02)	Relevant + Relevant
Man. Contr.: Data Cleansing / IBS/ RB_MANCON_DEL	RBD_EDIT (02)	Relevant + Relevant

RBD Area Menu, Impairment Processing Extension - Environment Folder

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area
Upload Files to Application Server / IBX/FILE_UPLOAD	/IBX/EDIT (60)	Not relevant
Import CSV Files / IBX/CSV_IMPORT	/IBX/EDIT (60)	Not relevant
Maintain Import Data / IBX/IMP_CHNG	/IBX/EDIT (43, 60)	Not relevant
Main Dialog / IBX/MAIN	/IBX/EDIT (02, 03, 10, 23, 94)	Not relevant

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area
Restrict Data Selection / IBX/ SELECTION	Not relevant	Not relevant
Adjustment of Initial Comparative Data / IBX/CH_IN_RAT	/ IBX/EDIT (C8)	Not relevant
Maintain Initial PDs / IBX/MPD	/ IBX/EDIT (C8)	Not relevant

RBD Area Menu, Impairment Processing Extension - Processes Folder

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area
Start Migration / IBX/MIGRATION	/ IBX/EDIT (10, 78, 93)	Not relevant
Fill Import Interface Using CSV Files / IBX/IMPORT	/ IBX/EDIT (60)	Not relevant
Import CML Files / IBX/CML_IMPORT	/ IBX/EDIT (60, 93)	Not relevant
Build CF-Based Time Slices / IBX/ CR_SLICE_FRM_CF	/ IBX/EDIT (93)	Not relevant
Refine Imported Data / IBX/ IMP_REFINE	/ IBX/EDIT (60, 93)	Not relevant
Delete Import Data / IBX/IMP_DELETE	/ IBX/EDIT (06)	Not relevant
Start Import Data Check / IBX/ IMP_CHECK	/ IBX/EDIT (60, 78)	Not relevant
Start LPD Recalculation / IBX/ RECALC_LPD	/ IBX/EDIT (93)	Not relevant
Start Impairment Categorization / IBX/ IC_ASSIGN	/ IBX/EDIT (78)	Not relevant
Start Impairment Calculation / IBX/ CALCULATION	/ IBX/EDIT (93)	Not relevant
Delete Open Valuations / IBX/ VALUA_DELETE	/ IBX/EDIT (69)	Not relevant
Compress Open Valuations / IBX/ VALUA_COMPRESS	/ IBX/EDIT (46)	Not relevant
Transfer Simulated Valuations / IBX/ VALUA_TRANSFER	/ IBX/EDIT (21)	Not relevant
Reverse Valuations / IBX/REVERT	/ IBX/EDIT (85)	Not relevant

Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area
Display Logs /IBX/COCKPIT	Not relevant	Not relevant
RBD Area Menu, Impairment Processing Extension - Archiving Folder		
Transaction	Object (Activity)	RBD Area
Delete Records /IBX/ DEL_FLOW_RECORD	/IBX/EDIT (93)	Not relevant
Delete Technical Process Run Informa- tion /IBX/DEL_RUN_INFO	Not relevant	Not relevant
Display Archived Data /IBX/ ARCHIVE_SHOW	Not relevant	Not relevant

## Definition of Customer-Specific Roles

The following information is required for the definition of customer-specific roles:

- SAP logon names of all employees who are to work with RBD
- Relevant transactions that are to be executed in the respective role
- Relevant activities that are to be executed within the relevant transactions
- *RBD areas* and *organizational units* affected

To avoid having to define a separate role for each employee, we recommend that you form groups of employees that are permitted to execute the same functions. You can then assign a defined role to all of the employees in the group.

### 13.14.3.5.2 Network and Communication Security

Depending on the risk provision method used and analysis horizon, the *Reserve for Bad Debt* (FS-RBD) application communicates with the following systems:

- SAP Loans Management for Banking, Suite Edition (FS-CML)
- SAP Deposits Management for Banking, Suite Edition (IS-B-BCA)
- SAP Deposits Management for Banking (FS-AM)
- SAP Collateral Management for Banking, Suite Edition (FS-CMS)
- SAP General Ledger Accounting (FI-GL)

Communication takes place using Remote Function Call (RFC).

## 13.14.3.5.2.1 Communication Destinations

For Remote Function Call (RFC) connections to *SAP Deposits Management for Banking* (FS-AM), technical users are required.

These technical users require read authorization, for example, to read balances and account master data.

## 13.14.3.5.3 Deletion of Personal Data in FS-RBD

### Use

The *Reserve for Bad Debts* (FS-RBD) component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
/IBX/CONTR	Contract Header Data	Archiving object /IBX/CONTR ILM object IBX_CONTR
/IBX/VALUA	IPX Valuation	Archiving object /IBX/VALUA ILM object IBX_VALUA
/IBS/RBECO	RBD Transaction Data ECF	Archiving object /IBS/RBECO ILM object RBCON_ECF
/IBS/RBHCO	RBD Transaction Data Past Horizon	Archiving object /IBS/RBHCO ILM object RBCON_HGB
/IBS/RBKTO	RBD Account Data	Archiving object /IBS/RBKTO ILM object RBKTO_ECF

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP functionality

Application Object	Implemented Solution (End of Purpose Check)	Further Information
/IBX/CONTR	EoP check of contract header data based on contract end date	/IBX/CONTR_BUPA_EOP_CHECK
/IBX/VALUA	EoP check of contract header data based on contract end date	/IBX/CONTR_BUPA_EOP_CHECK
/IBS/RBECO	EoP check of contract header data based on contract end date	/IBS/RB_CONTR_BUPA_EOP_CHECK
/IBS/RBHCO	EoP check of contract header data based on contract end date	/IBS/RB_CONTR_BUPA_EOP_CHECK
/IBS/RBKTO	EoP check of contract header data based on contract end date	/IBS/RB_CONTR_BUPA_EOP_CHECK

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of `business partner master data` in Customizing for `Cross-Application Components` under `Data Protection`.

### 13.14.3.5.4 Specific Read Access Log Configurations

#### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

The RBD Reporting Interface `/IBS/RB_IS_REPORTING RFC` logs fields with sensitive customer data in the specified log domains.

You can configure your individual log domains, which contain individual fields with sensitive customer data, using the Read Access Logging Guide.

You can find the configurations as described in the following chapter. [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#)

In the following example configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

Interface Name	Fields Logged	Log Domain	Business Context
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORTING RFC	/IBS/TRB_KTO-RBDID /IBS/TRB_KTO-RBDNR	RBD_ACCID	RBD account number

Interface Name	Fields Logged	Log Domain	Business Context
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORT- ING_RFC	/IBS/TRB_KTO-REFNR	RBD_ACCREF	RBD account reference
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORT- ING_RFC	/IBS/TRB_KVV-PARTV	RBD_PARTV	Partner Reference Source System
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORT- ING_RFC	/IBS/TRB_KVV-VERTV	RBD_VERTV	Contract Number Source System
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORT- ING_RFC	/IBS/TRB_KVV-FINRV	RBD_FINRV	Finance Project Number Source System
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORT- ING_RFC	/IBS/TRB_ECF_HD- RBDID  /IBS/TRB_ECF_HD- RBDNR	RBD_ACCID	RBD account number
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORT- ING_RFC	/IBS/TRB_KVV-VERTV  /IBS/TRB_ECH_HD- RBDNR	RBD_VERTV	Contract Number Source System
/IBS/RB_IS_REPORT- ING_RFC	/IBS/TRB_ECH_HD- VERTV	RBD_VERTV	Contract Number Source System

## More Information

For more information about the RAL sample Customizing for FS-RBD, see SAP Note [2519373](#).

### 13.14.3.5.5 Trace and Log Files

Trace or log files are created during processing. These can contain security-relevant information – such as master data, balances, and flow data from source system contracts.

## 13.14.4 Higher Education and Research



## 13.14.4.1 Authorizations

The SAP ECC Industry Extension Higher Education & Research component uses the authorization concept provided by SAP NetWeaver. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guides also apply to the SAP ECC Industry Extension Higher Education & Research component. The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) when using ABAP technology and the User Management Engine's user administration console when using Java.

### i Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

## Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by SAP Student Lifecycle Management (SLCM).

Role	Description
Composite Roles	
SAP_CM_ADM_COORDINATOR	Admission coordinator
SAP_CM_ADM_OFFICER	Admission officer
SAP_CM_ASM_COORDINATOR	Assessment coordinator
SAP_CM_ASM_OFFICER	Assessment officer
SAP_CM_STREC_COORDINATOR	Student records coordinator
SAP_CM_STREC_OFFICER	Student records officer
Single Roles	
SAP_CM_ACCOUNT_DATA_UPDATE	Technical user for automatic update of student account data after changes to account-relevant student master data
SAP_CM_ADMIN_ACAD_STRUCTURE	Administrator for the academic structure (internal single role)
SAP_CM_ADMOFF_STUDYDATA	Activities for the admission coordinator
SAP_CM_ADMREGDATA_DISP	Display study data
SAP_CM_ALL	

Role	Description
SAP_CM_ASMCO_ADDACT	Additional activities for the assessment coordinator
SAP_CM_ASMDATA_DISP	Display progression and grades
SAP_CM_ASMOFF_ACT	Activities for the assessment officer
SAP_CM_STMASTERDATA_DISP	Display student master data
SAP_CM_STMASTERDATA_MAINT	Edit student master data
SAP_CM_STRCO_ADDACT	Additional activities for the student records coordinator
SAP_CM_ASMDATA_DISP	Display progression and grades
SAP_CM_ASMOFF_ACT	Activities for the assessment officer
SAP_CM_STMASTERDATA_DISP	Display student master data
SAP_CM_STMASTERDATA_MAINT	Edit student master data
SAP_CM_STRCO_ADDACT	Additional activities for the student records coordinator
SAP_CM_STROFF_ACT	Activities for the student records coordinator
SAP_CM_MODULEBOOK	Module booking (only up to release CM 4.72)
SAP_CM_REGIST	Activities for registration (only up to release CM 4.72)
SAP_CM_STUDENTMASTER	Student master data processing (only up to release CM 4.72)

All of the above roles are automatically generated by the system.

### **i** Note

SAP\_IQ\_CAMPUS and SAP\_CM\_ALL are critical roles because they contain a comprehensive authorization for all Student Lifecycle Management functions. The following roles are obsolete as of the SAP ECC Industry Extension Higher Education & Research 6.0 release:

- SAP\_IQ\_CAMPUS
- SAP\_CM\_MODULEBOOK
- SAP\_CM\_REGIST
- SAP\_CM\_STUDENTMASTER

## Standard PFCG Roles in SAP Student Lifecycle Management

If a user does not want to use the portal role, you can choose the PFCG role option. The SLCM application provides the following PFCG roles:

Name of PFCG Role	Relevance to NWBC	Relevance to Portal Role
SAP_SR_ACADEMIC_ADVISOR_5	NWBC role for advisor	Equivalent to the portal role <code>Academic Advisor</code>
SAP_SR_UNIVERSITY_INSTRUCTOR_5	NWBC role for university instructor	No equivalent portal role available
SAP_SR_STUDENT_5	NWBC role for student	Equivalent portal role <code>Student</code>

Once you configured these roles you can access the applications attached to the role using SAP NetWeaver Business Client. You can use these as entry points to the different applications that can be accessed by the academic advisor, the instructor or the student.

## Standard Authorization Objects

If a user does not want to use the portal role, you can choose the PFCG role option. The SLCM application provides the following PFCG roles:

Authorization Object	Description
P_CM_AUDCT	Student Lifecycle Management: requirement catalogs
P_CM_AUDIT	Audits
P_CM_AUDPR	Requirement profile
P_CM_CORR	Correspondence
P_CM_FCDOC	Student accounting document
P_CM_PROC	Activity
P_CM_UCAS	Authorization Object Student Lifecycle Management UCAS (only for Great Britain)
P_CM_UCASR	Authorization Object Student Lifecycle Management UCAS for Reports (only for Great Britain)
P_CM_NLPAY	NL Payment Details Authorization Object
P_CM_NLVER	NL Verification Authorization Object

## Basic Authorizations in SAP Student Lifecycle Management

There are three important authorization objects within SLCM to simplify authorization assignment: :

- S\_TCODE  
S\_TCODE checks whether a user is allowed to start a given transaction. Every time the user starts a menu command or a transaction code using the command line, the roles assigned to the user are checked to see whether the user has the authority to execute this transaction.
- PLOG  
PLOG checks whether a user is allowed to read, write or insert specific HR Infotypes.
- P\_CM\_PROC  
P\_CM\_PROC checks whether a user has the authority for a specific Student Lifecycle Management process.

## Structural Authorizations in SAP Student Lifecycle Management

Structural authorizations enable you to define the set of objects the user is authorized to process. You determine these objects using evaluation paths. For example, you can define whether the user receives a display authorization or a maintenance authorization for these objects.

- Evaluation Paths  
An evaluation path is an instruction for the system that determines which object types and relationships are to be included in an evaluation of the organizational plan. It describes the chain of relationships that exist between objects in a hierarchical structure. The report takes into account only the objects that lie along the specified evaluation path.
- Organizational Structure  
One or more relationships are then used as paths to evaluate structural information in your organizational plan (relating to the organizational or reporting structures) or matrix organization. The sequence of the relationships included in the evaluation path is decisive in how the results of the evaluation are displayed.

### i Note

As functions of other applications areas, for example, Training and Event Management, Notification Processing or Student Accounting are integrated into SLCM, users also need authorizations for these areas.

### i Note

SLCM contains a number of single roles, which you can combine with the roles of other application areas to create composite roles. You can either assign a composite role or individual roles to users.

## Authorizations in Business Rule Framework plus (BRFplus)

To handle the BRFplus security, the standard authorizations are available in the BRFplus framework.

For more information, see application help for Business Rule Framework plus (BRFplus) in SAP Library for SAP NetWeaver on SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/netweaver> > [SAP NetWeaver 7.0 \(2004s\)](#) > [SAP](#)

## 13.14.4.2 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

The student administration of the `Student Lifecycle Management` application might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note 1825544. The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. The Student Lifecycle Management (SLCM) solution uses SAP ILM to support the blocking and deletion of personal data as described in the following sections. SAP delivers an end of purpose check (EoP) for the students registered in the SLCM application. SAP delivers an end-of-purpose check (EOP) for the blocking of business partner data if the SLCM application has a student linked to a business partner. All applications register either an end of purpose check (EoP) in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of the business partner data or a where-used check (WUC).

You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) > [Product Assistance](#) > [Cross Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) >

### End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. . This check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases:

- Phase one: The relevant data is actively used.
- Phase two: The relevant data is actively available in the system.
- Phase three: The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.

For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked. Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities. Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- Display: The system does not display blocked data.
- Change: It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data.
- Create: It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- Copy/Follow-Up: It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- Search: It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data. For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three-phase based end of purpose check, see the Process Flow and Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

## End of Purpose Check (EoP) in SLCM

The end-of-purpose check for SLCM is a simple check to ensure data integrity in the event of potential blocking. It checks whether there is any dependent data for a business partner that is a student in the SLCM application and returns one of the following statuses:

- If the business partner is not a student the system returns status as '1' (No business with business partner).
- If the business partner exists as a student in the SLCM system, then the system checks for the SORT (Start of retention time), and depending on the date, returns the status '2' (business is ongoing ) or '3' (business is complete).

The system does not block the business partner related to the student if the status is '3', business is ongoing .

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Archiving Object	Description
HRIQ_ACADW	IS-HER-CM: Academic work - Admissions registrations
HRIQ_AD	IS-HER-CM: Admission decision framework
HRIQ_EXTTR	IS-HER-CM: Student external transcripts
HRIQ_FEE	IS-HER-CM: Fee calculation document
HRIQ_MODBK	IS-HER-CM: Module booking
HRIQ_PROC	IS-HER-CM: Activity document
HRIQ_STAT	IS-HER-CM: Statistical reporting
HRIQ_STGRT	IS-HER-CM: Student grants
HRIQ_STMD	Archiving Object for Student master data
HRIQ_STYDT	IS-HER-CM: Study data
HRIQ_ATTDN	Attendance data
GFD_ARCH1	Archiving for Admission Portal (Form Runtime) and MyRequest applications

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
PSCM	Student Lifecycle Management: Public Sector Campus Management	HRIQ_ATTNDNData Destruction in Student Lifecycle Management

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
PSCM	EoP implemented	EoP checks if the business for the student and related business partner is complete or ongoing.

## Process Flow

1. Before archiving data, you must first define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
3. You do the following:
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and enter the required retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: CA\_BUPA).
  - Run transaction BUPA\_PRE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA (ILM objects: HRIQ\_STMD).
  - Run transaction CVP\_PRE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA .
4. Business users can request unblocking of blocked data for customers, vendors and central business partners by using the transaction BUP\_REQ\_UNBLK.
5. 5.If you have the necessary authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction BUPA\_PRE\_EOP and CVP\_UNBLOCK\_MD.
6. 6.You delete data by using the transaction ILM\_DESTRUCTION for the ILM objects of SLCM.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for `Cross-Application Components` under `Data Protection`.

- Define the settings for authorization management under [► Data Protection ► Authorization Management ▾](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under [► Data Protection ► Blocking and Unblocking ► Business Partner ▾](#)

### 13.14.4.3 Data Storage Security

#### Data Storage

The data for the application are saved in the database tables. Only the data for academic structure can come from a file system, the security aspects of which is described in the next section. There is structural authorization and role based authorization to control access to these data. For more information, see Authorizations.

#### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

The `SAP Student Lifecycle Management` applications save data in files in the file system. Therefore, provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following lists show the logical file names and paths used by the `Student Lifecycle Management` application and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

#### Logical File Names Used

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- ISHER\_WEBCATALOGXML
  - Programs using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:
    - °RHIQ\_XML\_ACADSTRUC (XML Files of Academic Structure)



## Logical Path Names Used

The logical file names listed above all use the logical file path ISHER\_WEBCATALOG.

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent) and SF01 (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information, see about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.14.4.4 Read Access Logging (Industry Applications)

### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

Read access to personal data is partially based on legislation, and it is subject to logging functionality. The Read Access Logging (RAL) component can be used to monitor and log read access to data and provide information such as which business users accessed personal data (for example, fields related to bank account data), and when they did so. In RAL, you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications. For more information, see the application-specific chapters of the Security Guide.

You can display the configurations in the system by performing the following steps:

1. In transaction `SRALMANAGER`, on the *Administration* tab page, choose *Configuration*.
2. Choose the desired channel, for example, WebDynpro.
3. Choose Search.  
The system displays the available configurations for the selected channel.
4. Choose Display Configuration for detailed information on the configuration. For specific channels, related recordings can also be displayed.

### Prerequisites

Before you can use the delivered RAL configurations, the following prerequisites are met:

- You are using:
  - SAP NetWeaver 7.1 SPO

- AS ABAP 7.51
- Kernel 7.45 SP21 and above
- SAP\_UI 7.51 (UI5 1.40)
- The RAL configurations have been activated.
- You have enabled RAL in each system client.

## More Information

For general information on Read Access Logging, see the product assistance for SAP NetWeaver on SAP Help Portal at Start of the navigation path ► <http://help.sap.com/netweaverInformation> ► [SAP NetWeaver Library](#) ► [Function-Oriented View](#) ► [System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP Only](#) ►

### 13.14.4.5 Read Access Logging for Admission Portal

#### Use

Read access to personal data is partially based on legislation, and it is subject to logging functionality. The Read Access Logging (RAL) component can be used to monitor and log read access to data and provide information such as which business users accessed personal data (for example, fields related to bank account data), and when they did so.

In RAL, you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

SAP delivers sample configurations for applications. For more information, see the application-specific chapters of the Security Guide

You can display the configurations in the system by performing the following steps:

1. In transaction SRALMANAGER, on the *Administration* tab page, choose *Configuration*.
2. Choose the desired channel, for example, OData service.
3. Choose *Search*.  
The system displays the available configurations for the selected channel.
4. Choose *Display Configuration* for detailed information on the configuration. For specific channels, related recordings can also be displayed.

#### i Note




For a list of the delivered log domains, see the product assistance at SAP Help Portal under [SAP S/4 HANA](#) ► [1709 FPO2](#) ► [Product Documentation](#) ► [Security Guide](#) ► [SAP S/4 HANA Industries](#) ► [Higher Education and Research](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►

## Prerequisites

Before you can use the delivered RAL configurations, the following prerequisites are met:

- You are using:
  - SAP NetWeaver 751 SP0
  - AS ABAP 7.51
  - Kernel 7.45 SP21 and above
  - SAP\_UI 7.51 (UI5 1.40)
- The RAL configurations have been activated.
- You have enabled RAL in each system client.

## More Information

For general information on Read Access Logging, see the product assistance for SAP NetWeaver on SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com/netweaverInformation>  [SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View](#)   
[System Security for SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP Only](#) .

For up-to-date information on the delivered RAL configurations, see SAPNote [2347271](#) .

### 13.14.4.6 Specific Read Access Log Configurations

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and the conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications. In order to use these configurations, save the ZIP attachments from the following SAP Notes:

[2375056](#)  - Read Access Logging content for application Student Life Cycle Management (SLCM)

Extract these ZIP files, and import the RAL configurations using the Import function for configurations using transaction SRALMANAGER. The Student Lifecycle management (SLCM ) Application ,IS-HER-CM , Student master data ( PIQSTM ) logs data in order to save the Students master data and also personal data . You can

find the configurations as described in the Read Access Logging chapter. In the following configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
SLCM_REC_RAL_STMD	Student Number Ethnic Origin / Religion Student Disability / Challenge / Health Student Social Status	The Student Social and Health and Ethnic data is stored as master data in SAP SLCM Application. This data is used in calculation of Grants and Fee depending on the various parameters. The Same transaction is used to store multiple academic data and in few of the tabs these personal data is shown .

### 13.14.4.7 Specific Read Access Log Configurations for Admission Portal

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and the conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications. In order to use these configurations, save the ZIP attachments from the following SAP Notes:

[2601072](#) - Read Access Logging content for application Student Life Cycle Management (SLCM)

Extract these ZIP files, and import the RAL configurations using the Import function for configurations using transaction SRALMANAGER.

The Admission Portal logs data in order to capture the data from the admission application forms (form runtime) and my request applications. You can find the configurations as described in the Read Access Logging chapter.

In the following configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
GFD_CONFIG_SRV	GFD_FormSubmission:CONTENT	To capture the standard fields data which comes in JSON format
GFD_CONFIG_SRV	GFD_FormSubmission:CUSTOM_CONTENT	To capture the custom content fields data which also comes in JSON format

### 13.14.5 Professional Services

## 13.14.6 Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing

The following guide covers the information that you require to operate Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing securely.

### 13.14.6.1 Introduction

#### Introduction

##### i Note

This guide does not replace the administration or operation guides that are available for productive operations.

#### Target Audience

- Technology consultants
- System administrators

This document is not included as part of the Installation Guides, Configuration Guides, Technical Operation Manuals, or Upgrade Guides. Such guides are only relevant for a certain phase of the software life cycle, whereas the Security Guides provide information that is relevant for all life cycle phases.

#### Why Is Security Necessary?

With the increasing use of distributed systems and the Internet for managing business data, the demands on security are also on the rise. When using a distributed system, you need to be sure that your data and processes support your business needs without allowing unauthorized access to critical information. User errors, negligence, or attempted manipulation on your system should not result in loss of information or processing time. These demands on security apply likewise to Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing. To assist you in securing Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing, we provide this Security Guide.

#### About this Document

The Security Guide provides an overview of the security-relevant information that applies to Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing .

#### Overview of the Main Sections

The Security Guide comprises the following main sections:

- **Before You Start**  
This section references to other Security Guides that build the foundation for this Security Guide.
- **Authorizations**  
This section provides an overview of the authorization concept that applies to Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing .

## 13.14.6.2 Before You Start

It is important that you read and understand the information contained in the [Authorizations \[page 598\]](#) section that is specific to Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing. In addition, you should be aware of the information listed in the table below:

Fundamental Security Guides

Scenario, Application or Component Security Guide	Most-Relevant Sections or Specific Restrictions
SAP NetWeaver Application Server	<i>SAP NetWeaver Security Guide - All sections</i>
SAP ECC	<i>SAP ERP Central Component Security Guide - All sections</i>

## 13.14.6.3 User Management and Authentication

*SAP ECC Industry Extension Professional Services* uses the user management and authentication mechanisms provided with the *SAP NetWeaver* platform, particularly the *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP* . Consequently, the security recommendations and guidelines for user management and authentication that are described in the *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide* also apply to *SAP ECC Industry Extension Professional Services* .

### User Types

It is often necessary to specify different security policies for different types of users. For example, your policy may specify that individual users who perform tasks interactively have to change their passwords on a regular basis, but not those users under which background processing jobs run.

User type required for *SAP ECC Industry Extension Professional Services* is Dialog user. Dialog users are Individual users used for SAP GUI for Windows.

## 13.14.6.4 Authorizations

Use

The business function *Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing* uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply to *Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing*.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

## Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used by *Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing*.

Standard Roles

Role	Description
SAP_SAWE_UNIVERSAL	Maintenance of staff assignments and forecasts
SAP_CATS_LEAN_STAFFING	Maintenance of cross-application time sheet (Web Dynpro application)
SAP_BC_EMPLOYEE	Access to HCM data (for employee search, for example)
SAP_BPR_INT_SALES_REP_14	Maintenance of assignment objects of type "SD order"
SAP_PS_STRUCT	Maintenance of assignment objects of type "project"
SAP_BC_ENDUSER	Non-critical basis authorizations for all users

In addition, users must be assigned to:

- the authorization profile K\_ORDER for the maintenance of assignment objects of the type "internal order"
- the authorization profile I\_PM\_ALL for the maintenance of assignment objects of the type "service order".

### Note

As the authorization profiles K\_ORDER and I\_PM\_ALL comprise all available authorizations for internal orders and service orders respectively, we recommend that you narrow the granted authorization range to suit your specific requirements.

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used by *Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing*.

## Standard Authorization Objects

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
P_ORGIN and P_PERNR (Authorization check for HR info-types)	INFTY	0002	The employee search in the Lean Staffing application and in the Lean Staffing reporting lists only employees for whose info type 0002 the user has a read authorization.
	SUBTY	<blank>	
	AUTHC	R	
PRS_LS_CUS (new)	ACTVT	02, 03, 06	The system checks this authorization object when staff assignments to customers are made.
V_PRS_LS_H (new)	VKORG	VBAK-VKORG	The system checks this authorization object when staff assignments to SD orders are made. The user must be authorized for the sales area, distribution channel, division, customer group and cost center of the SD order.
	VTWEG	VBAK-VTWEG	
	SPART	VBAK-SPART	
	KDGRP	KNVV-KDGRP	
	KOSTL	VBAK-KOSTL	
	ACTVT	02, 03, 06	
V_PRS_LS_I (new)	PRCTR	VBAP-PRCTR	The system checks this authorization object when staff assignments to SD orders are made. The user must be authorized for the profit center of the SD sales document item.
	ACTVT	02, 03, 06	
C_PRPS_LS (new)	PS_FKOKR	PRPS-FKOKR	The system checks this authorization object when staff assignments to WBS elements are made. The user must be authorized for the controlling area, cost center and profit center of the WBS element.
	PS_FKSTL	PRPS-FKSTL	
	PRCTR	PRPS-PRCTR	
	ACTVT	02, 03, 06	
K_PRS_LS	PRCTR	AUFK-PRCTR	The system checks this authorization object when staff assignments to internal or service orders are made. The user must be authorized for the profit center of the order.
	ACTVT	02, 03, 06	



Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
PRS_LS_FC	EMP_LEVEL	Level 1, 2 or 3	See description below.
	ACTVT	02, 03, 06	

The authorization for staff assignments is based on the assignment object to which it refers; it is independent of the employee for whom the assignment is made. As shown in the table above, different types of assignment objects (SD order, project and so on) use different fields for this authorization.

The authorization for forecasting is based on the employee whose time is forecast; it is independent of the assignment object for which it is made. There are several levels ( EMP\_LEVEL) of authorization concerning the employee:

- Level 1: The user is authorized to change and display own forecasts (the forecasts for the employee ID contained in the user's master record).
- Level 2: The user is authorized to change and display forecasts for the members of his or her team (note that level 2 does not necessarily imply level 1). The team is determined on the basis of the employee ID contained in the user's master record, as follows:
  - The HCM organizational model is queried (current relationships according to info type 1001, subtype A008; for details, see method CL\_SAWE\_API\_PROVIDER\_FC-> GET\_TEAM\_OF\_EMP). The result of this query is the same for managers and their assistants.
  - You can influence the list of employee IDs returned by this query by adding or removing entries in an implementation of the Business Add-In (BAdI) SAWE\_AUTHORITY\_CHECK, method TEAM\_OF\_EMPLOYEE.
- If neither the HCM organizational model nor the BAdI implementation is used, the team does not contain any employees.
- Level 3: The user is authorized to change and display forecasts for all employees.

The system checks both authorizations (authorization for staff assignments and authorization for forecasting) in the following cases:

- ACTVT = '02' (change): Checked when the Lean Staffing or Forecasting application is executed in the *change mode* (this refers to the UI-based application and to the A2X Enterprise Services).
- ACTVT = '03' (display): Checked when the Lean Staffing or Forecasting application is executed in the *display-only mode*.
- ACTVT = '06' (delete): Checked when the deletion of an assignment object triggers the deletion of its staff assignments and forecasts (without further user interaction).

This is different from the deletion of individual entries in the Lean Staffing and Forecasting applications, because users who are authorized to delete assignment objects (for example, SD order items) may need this authorization, even if they do not have authorization to execute the Lean Staffing or Forecasting application.

The authorizations for reporting are based on the specific user group 'SAWE', which you can maintain using transaction SQ03. Users who are authorized to analyze employee assignments, resource consumption, employee utilization and skill utilization need to be assigned to this user group.

## 13.14.6.5 Data Storage Security

### Use

*Commercial Project Inception and Lean Staffing* stores additional employee-related data besides data stored in the HR Master Data database.

The following additional data can be stored in the respective objects (technical table names in parentheses):

- Employee assignment to projects, customer orders, or internal orders (SAWE\_D\_SA\_HDR and SAWE\_D\_SA\_ITM).
- Employee forecast for the above-mentioned assignments, and also for generic assignments such as training (SAWE\_D\_TIME\_PS and SAWE\_D\_TIME\_PSI).

For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [Product Assistance](#) [Enterprise Business Applications](#) [Industries](#) [SAP for Professional Services](#) [Lean Staffing](#) [Data Archiving in Lean Staffing](#).

## 13.14.6.6 Deletion of Personal Data

### Use

The *Lean Staffing (IS-PRS-LS)* component might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use *SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)* to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) [Product Assistance](#) [Cross Components](#) [Data Protection](#).

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Lean Staffing (IS-PRS-LS)	For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at <a href="http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002">http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002</a> under <a href="#">Product Assistance</a> <a href="#">Enterprise Business Applications</a> <a href="#">Industries</a> <a href="#">SAP for Professional Services</a> <a href="#">Lean Staffing</a> <a href="#">Data Archiving in Lean Staffing</a> .	Archiving object SAWE_SA ILM object SAWE_SA Report SAWE_SA_CLEAN_CANDIDATE_LIST

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Lean Staffing (IS-PRS-LS)	End of Purpose (EoP) check	Class registered for the EoP check: CL_WUC_IS_PRS_LS_EOP_CHECK  For more information, see SAP note <a href="#">2390575</a> .

### Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer and vendor master data in Customizing for *Logistics - General* under **Business Partner** > *Deletion of Customer and Vendor Master Data*.

## 13.14.7 Public Sector Management

### Data Storage

### Using Logical Paths and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

Public Sector Management stores data in files in the file system. For this reason, it is important to be able to grant access to the files in the file system explicitly without granting access to other folders or files (also known as folder traversals). You do this in the system by entering logical paths and file names that are assigned to the physical paths and file names. This assignment is validated during runtime, whereby an error message is issued whenever a user tries to access a folder that does not correspond to a stored assignment.

The following lists provide an overview of the logical file names and paths that are used by Public Sector Management and of the programs for which these file names and paths are valid:

#### Logical File Names Used in Public Sector Management

The logical file name PSM\_EXECUTION\_DATA\_EXPORT has been created to enable the validation of physical file names.

The program RFEXBLK0 uses this logical file name.

#### Logical Path Names Used in Public Sector Management

The above-mentioned logical file name uses the logical file path PSM\_ROOT.

#### Activating the Validation of Logical Paths and File Names

These logical paths and file names are entered in the system for the corresponding programs. For reasons of downward compatibility, validation is deactivated by default during runtime. To activate validation during

runtime, define the physical path using transactions FILE (across all clients) and SF01 (client-specific). To determine which paths are used by your system, you can activate the relevant settings in the Security Audit Log.

## 13.14.7.1 Funds Management

### Standard roles for Funds Management (PSM-FM)

Role	Name
SAP_IS_PS_CENTRAL_FUNCTION	Funds Management Central Function
SAP_IS_PS_PO_CONSUMPTION	Postings: Consume Funds
SAP_IS_PS_MD_STRUCTURE	Master Data Funds Management: Maintain Structure
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_AVC_TOOLS	Availability Control - Tools
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_BUD_TOOLS	Budgeting - Tools
SAP_IS_PS_PO_RECONCILE	Reconciling Data with Feeder Applications
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_BUD_MAINTENANCE	Maintain Budget Data
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_BUD_PLANNING	Plan Budget Data
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_DISPLAY	Display Budget Values (BCS)
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_STATUS_MAINTAIN	Budgeting – Assign Status
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_STRUCT_DEF	Maintain Budget Structure
SAP_IS_PS_BCS_STRUCT_TOOLS	Budget Structure - Tools
SAP_IS_PS_CASH_DESK	Payment at Cash Desk
SAP_IS_PS_CF_CHECK	Check Budget Closing
SAP_IS_PS_CF_OI_EXECUTE	Carry Forward Consumable Budget
SAP_IS_PS_CF_OI_PREPARE	Prepare Carryforward of Consumable Budget
SAP_IS_PS_MD_DISPLAY	Funds Management Master Data: Display Functions
SAP_IS_PS_MD_ZUOB	Funds Management Master Data: Assignment to CO Structures
SAP_IS_PS_PO_COMMITMENTS	Postings: Commit Funds

Role	Name
SAP_IS_PS_PO_CONSUMPTION_DISP	Postings: Consumed Funds Display
SAP_IS_PS_PO_FOR	Postings: Forecast of Revenue
SAP_IS_PS_PO_TRANSFERS	Postings: Transfer Consumable Budget
SAP_FI_GL_REORG_MANAGER	Reorganization Manager
SAP_FI_GL_REORG_OBJLIST_OWNER	Object List Owner

## Authorization objects for Funds Management (PSM-FM)

Authorization Object	Name
F_FICB_FKR	Cash Budget Management/Funds Management FM Area
F_FICB_VER	Cash Budget Management/Funds Management Version
F_FICA_FOG	Funds Management: Authorization Group of Fund
F_FICA_FSG	Funds Management: Authorization Group for Funds Center
F_FICA_SEG	Funds Management: Authorization Group for All Funds Centers
F_FICA_SIG	Funds Management: Authorization Group Internal Funds Centers
F_FICA_FPG	Funds Management: Authorization Group for Commitment Item
F_FICA_TRG	Funds Management: Authorization Groups of FM Acct Assignment
F_FMMD_FAR	Funds Management: Functional Area (Authorization Group)
F_FMMD_MES	Funds Management: Funded Program (Authorization Group)
F_FMMD_BPG	F_FMMD_BPG
F_FMMD_FPG	Funds Management: Funded Program Sets
F_FICA_FNG	Funds Management: Fund Groups
F_FICA_FAG	Funds Management: Function Groups

Authorization Object	Name
F_FICA_CIG	Funds Management: Commitment Item Group
F_FICA_FCG	Funds Management: Funds Center Groups
F_FMCA_SHE	Clarification Worklist (FMSHERLOCK)

See also the documentation for Funds Management on the [SAP Help Portal](#) at [help.sap.com](#) > [S/4 HANA](#) > [Accounting](#) > [Public Sector Management](#) > [Funds Management](#) > [Authorizations](#).

## Authorization objects of the Budget Control System (BCS)

Authorization Object	Name
F_FMBU_ACC	Budgeting: Account Assignment
F_FMBU_STA	Budgeting: Status
F_FMBU_KYF	Budgeting: Key Figure
F_FMBU_DOC	Budgeting: Document Type
F_FMBU_VER	Budgeting: Version and Budget Category

You can use the following BAdI to implement enhancements to the authorization concept:

BAdI	Name
FM_AUTHORITY_CHECK	Enhance Authorization Check in PSM-FM

### 13.14.7.1.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Funds Management

Funds management may process data subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note [1825544](#).

## End of Purpose Check

An EoP check determines whether data are relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three-phase based EoP check, see [Process Flow and Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion](#).

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Funds Management uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data. For more information, see the documentation for [SAP Information Lifecycle Management](#).

Archiving Object	Description
FM_BUDENT	Budget entry documents
FM_BUDHIE	Budget hierarchy documents
FM_BUDSUM	Budget totals
FM_DOC_CO	CO postings
FM_ACTSUM	Commitments and actuals totals
FM_DOC_OI	Commitments and funds transfers
FM_FUNRES	Earmarked funds
FM_DOC_FI	FI postings

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for [Cross-Application Components](#) under [Data Protection](#).

## Run Deletion Programs

We recommend scheduling regular jobs to run the deletion programs using the [Define Background Job](#).

## 13.14.7.2 Grants Management

### Standard roles for Grants Management (PSM-GM)

Function	Name	Function
SAP_FI_GM_GRANT_ANALYST	Grants Management: Grant Analyst	Master data maintenance, execution of reports

Function	Name	Function
SAP_FI_GM_GRANT_MANAGER	Grants Management: Grant Manager	New entry, check, and approval of master data, execution of billing program
SAP_FI_GM_PROGRAM_ANALYST	Grants Management: Program Analyst	Creation of master data, processing of proposals and budget
SAP_FI_GM_PROGRAM_MANAGER	Grants Management: Program Manager	Check and approval of proposals and budget
SAP_FI_GM_PROJECT_MANAGER	Grants Management: Project Manager	Management of grants and budget, execution of reports

### Authorization Objects for Grants Management (PSM-GM)

Authorization Object	Name
F_FIGM_BUD	Grants Management: Authority for Budget
F_FIGM_CLS	Grants Management: Authority for Class
F_FIGM_GNG	GM: Grant Groups
F_FIGM_GNT	Grants Management: Authority for Grant
F_FIGM_PRG	Grants Management: Authority for Programs
F_FIGM_SCG	GM: Sponsored Class Groups
F_FIGM_SPG	GM: Sponsored Program Groups

The master data objects and business processes of Grants Management are protected by standard authorization objects.

*US Federal Government* uses the authorization concepts of the components that it deploys, such as Funds Management and Material Management. See also the documentation for Funds Management on the [SAP Help Portal](https://help.sap.com) at [help.sap.com](https://help.sap.com) > [SAP ERP Central Component](#) > [Accounting](#) > [Public Sector Management](#) > [Funds Management](#) > [Authorizations](#).

You can use the following BAdI to implement enhancements to the authorization concept:

BAdI	Name
GM_AUTHORITY_CHECK	Grants Management: Authorization Check
GM_BILL_AUTHORITY	GM: User Authorization for DP90 in GM
GM_POST_AUTHORITY	Grants Management Coding Block Authority Check



## 13.14.7.3 Network and Communication Security

*Public Sector Management* communicates with:

- *Human Capital Management* (HCM) as part of the scenario *Position Budgeting and Control*
- *Customer Relationship Management* (CRM) as part of the scenario *Grantor Management*

The communication with these internal SAP components takes place per *Remote Function Call* (RFC). See the corresponding sections in the *RFC/ICF Security Guide*.

The US *Federal Government* has both payment and collection outbound interfaces at its disposal for *Treasury Confirmation* and *Intragovernment Payment and Collections* (IPAC). This outbound interface uses payment methods and flat files.

The inbound interface of the *Central Contractor Registration* (CCR) uses **IDocs**.

For registering portal users in the backend system, we recommend that the user is assigned in both the portal and the backend system. In other words, the user ID of a user in the portal and the backend system should match.

## 13.14.7.4 More Security Information

Authorization checks only take place in *Public Sector Management* and *Funds Management* when the authorization group of a master data object is entered. To ensure that an adequate check is carried out, SAP recommends that you define the affected fields as required entry fields in the field status control. You define this setting in Customizing for *Public Sector Management*:

- [▶ Funds Management-Specific Postings ▶ Earmarked Funds and Funds Transfers ▶ Field Control for Earmarked Funds and Funds Transfers ▶ Define Field Status Variant ▶ / Assign Field Status Variant to Company Code / Define Field Status Groups](#)
- [▶ Actual and Commitment Update/Integration ▶ Integration ▶ Maintain Field Status for Assigning FM Account Assignments ▶](#)

For more information, see the documentation on *Funds Management* on *SAP Help Portal* at [▶ help.sap.com ▶ ERP Central Component ▶ Accounting ▶ Public Sector Management ▶](#).

For Grants Management, note the following system settings in Customizing for *Public Sector Management* under [▶ Funds Management Government ▶ Master Data ▶ Grant ▶](#):

- *GM Grant Control:Field Group for Authorizations*
- *Maintain Grant Authorization Types*
- *Maintain Grant Authorization Groups*

### 13.14.7.4.1 Public Sector Collection and Disbursement

The following security chapter of SAP Public Sector Collection and Disbursement (PSCD) also applies security information for SAP Tax and Revenue Management (TRM).

## 13.14.7.4.1.1 Authorizations

SAP Public Sector Collection and Disbursement (SAP PSCD) and SAP Tax and Revenue Management (SAP TRM) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP or AS Java. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP and SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide Java also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP and the User Management Engine's user administration console on the AS Java.

### Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

## Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used.

Role	Description
SAP_FMCA_CA_ALL	Sample role including all transactions for SAP PSCD
SAP_FMCA_CA_ALL_EHP5_TRM_NWBC	Sample role for the SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) for SAP TRM

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used for SAP PSCD.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSDO_BEG	BEGRU	01 Document Generation 02 Document Changes 03 Document Display 85 Reversal of Documents and Resetting of a Clearing	PSCD Document: Authorization Group for Contract Object

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSDO_VGT	PSOBTYP_PS	01 Document Generation 02 Document Changes 03 Document Display 85 Reversal of Documents and Resetting of a Clearing	PSCD Document: Contract Object Type Authorization
F_PSOB_ATT	AUTHTYP_PS	01 Create 02 Change 03 Display * All Activities	PSCD Contract Object: Authorization Types
F_PSOB_BEG	BEGRU	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete 08 Display Change Documents	PSCD Contract Object: Authorization Group
F_PSOB_FDG	FLDGR_PS	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display	PSCD Contract Object: Field Groups
F_PSOB_VGT	PSOBTYP_PS	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete 08 Display Change Documents 64 Generate	PSCD Contract Object: Object Type Authorization
F_FMCA_WOF	ABGRD	10 Post B5 Display History F1 Approve	PSCD Write Off: Approval for Write-Off Reason
F_FMCA_WOM	ACTVT	For more information, see transaction SU21.	PSCD Write-Off: Authorization for Mass Approval

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSFA_SET	F_PSFA_SET	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete	PSCD Facts: Authorization for Fact Sets
F_PSFA_TYP	F_PSFA_TYP	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete	PSCD Facts: Authorization for Fact Set Parts
F_PSFA_CAT	BEGRU	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete	PSCD Facts: Authorization for Fact Type Parts
F_FMCA_IPM	F_FMCA_IPM	F1 Approve	PSCD Installment Plan: Authorization for Mass Approval
F_KKCOL	ACTVT	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete 16 Execute 39 Check AF Prompts	PSCD Co-Liability: Authorization for Co-Liabilities

The following authorization objects are only relevant for customers who use SAP Tax and Revenue Management (TRM) for Public Sector that is based on SAP Public Sector Collection and Disbursement (PSCD).

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSFH_FVW	FMCA_PHASE	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete F1 Approve	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling and Form View

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSFH_REV	FMCA_ABTP	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling and Revenue Type
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		F1 Approve	
F_PSFH_ACT	ACTVT	01 Create	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling
		02 Change	
		03 Read	
F_PSFH_FBT	FBTYP	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling and Form Bundle Type
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		F1 Approve	
F_PSFH_STA	FMCA_FBSTA	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling and Status
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		F1 Approve	
F_PSFH_AMD	AMD_ACTION	16 Execute	TRM Object: Authorization for Amendment Actions in the Tax Officer Work Center
F_FMCA_RLT	COREL_TYPE	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Master Data Relationship Category
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	

## 13.14.7.4.1.2 Data Storage Security

### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

The Industry Solution Migration Workbench (ISMW) saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to

other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

## Logical File Names / Path Names Used

The Migration Workbench uses the logical file name `ISMW_FILE` with the logical file path `ISMW_ROOT` to enable the validation of physical file names.

## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information, see about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.14.7.5 Public Sector Collection and Disbursement

The following security chapter of SAP Public Sector Collection and Disbursement (PSCD) also applies security information for SAP Tax and Revenue Management (TRM).

### 13.14.7.5.1 Authorizations

SAP Public Sector Collection and Disbursement (SAP PSCD) and SAP Tax and Revenue Management (SAP TRM) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP or AS Java. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP and SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide Java also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PFCG`) on the AS ABAP and the User Management Engine's user administration console on the AS Java.

#### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

## Standard Roles

The table below shows the standard roles that are used.

Role	Description
SAP_FMCA_CA_ALL	Sample role including all transactions for SAP PSCD
SAP_FMCA_CA_ALL_EHP5_TRM_NWBC	Sample role for the SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) for SAP TRM

## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used for SAP PSCD.

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSDO_BEG	BEGRU	01 Document Generation 02 Document Changes 03 Document Display 85 Reversal of Documents and Resetting of a Clearing	PSCD Document: Authorization Group for Contract Object
F_PSDO_VGT	PSOBTYP_PS	01 Document Generation 02 Document Changes 03 Document Display 85 Reversal of Documents and Resetting of a Clearing	PSCD Document: Contract Object Type Authorization
F_PSOB_ATT	AUTHYP_PS	01 Create 02 Change 03 Display * All Activities	PSCD Contract Object: Authorization Types
F_PSOB_BEG	BEGRU	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete 08 Display Change Documents	PSCD Contract Object: Authorization Group

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSOB_FDG	FLDGR_PS	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display	PSCD Contract Object: Field Groups
F_PSOB_VGT	PSOBTYP_PS	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete 08 Display Change Documents 64 Generate	PSCD Contract Object: Object Type Authorization
F_FMCA_WOF	ABGRD	10 Post B5 Display History F1 Approve	PSCD Write Off: Approval for Write-Off Reason
F_FMCA_WOM	ACTVT	For more information, see transaction SU21.	PSCD Write-Off: Authorization for Mass Approval
F_PSFA_SET	F_PSFA_SET	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete	PSCD Facts: Authorization for Fact Sets
F_PSFA_TYP	F_PSFA_TYP	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete	PSCD Facts: Authorization for Fact Set Parts
F_PSFA_CAT	BEGRU	01 Create or Generate 02 Change 03 Display 06 Delete	PSCD Facts: Authorization for Fact Type Parts
F_FMCA_IPM	F_FMCA_IPM	F1 Approve	PSCD Installment Plan: Authorization for Mass Approval



Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_KKCOL	ACTVT	01 Create or Generate	PSCD Co-Liability: Authorization for Co-Liabilities
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		16 Execute	
		39 Check	
		AF Prompts	

The following authorization objects are only relevant for customers who use SAP Tax and Revenue Management (TRM) for Public Sector that is based on SAP Public Sector Collection and Disbursement (PSCD).

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSFH_FVW	FMCA_PHASE	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling and Form View
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		F1 Approve	
F_PSFH_REV	FMCA_ABTP	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling and Revenue Type
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		F1 Approve	
F_PSFH_ACT	ACTVT	01 Create	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling
		02 Change	
		03 Read	
F_PSFH_FBT	FBTYP	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Form Handling and Form Bundle Type
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		F1 Approve	

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
F_PSFH_STA	FMCA_FBSTA	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for From Handling and Status
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		F1 Approve	
F_PSFH_AMD	AMD_ACTION	16 Execute	TRM Object: Authorization for Amendment Actions in the Tax Officer Work Center
F_FMCA_RLT	COREL_TYPE	01 Create or Generate	TRM Object: Authorization for Master Data Relationship Category
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	

## 13.14.7.5.2 Data Storage Security

### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

The Industry Solution Migration Workbench (ISMW) saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

#### Logical File Names / Path Names Used

The Migration Workbench uses the logical file name `ISMW_FILE` with the logical file path `ISMW_ROOT` to enable the validation of physical file names.

### Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out

which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information, see about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.14.7.6 Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector (Public Sector)

### 13.14.7.6.1 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate the services that are required by the applications running in your system.

The following services must be activated for Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector:

- ERP\_FMCA\_MC (logon user/current user)
- ERP\_FMCA\_MC\_PUBLIC\_SRV

ERP\_FMCA\_MC\_PUBLIC\_SRV is to be used for the anonymous payment or anonymous form submission scenario and needs to be linked to a predefined "SU01" user.

Use transaction **SICF** to activate these services. If your firewalls use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information about ICF security, see the relevant chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.14.8 Retail

### 13.14.8.1 Network and Communication Security

The following information is relevant for specific SAP S/4HANA Retail solutions. For general information about network and communication security in SAP S/4HANA, see [Network and Communication Security \[page 18\]](#).

## Communication Paths for SAP Forecasting and Replenishment

For information about the security of communication paths for integration with SAP Forecasting and Replenishment, see the Security Guide for SAP Forecasting and Replenishment.

## Other Communication Paths for SAP S/4HANA Retail

The following table shows the communication paths for all remaining system connections for SAP S/4HANA Retail solutions.

Communication Paths for SAP S/4HANA Retail

Application	Communication Path	Protocol Used	Type of Data Transferred	Data Requiring Special Protection
Store physical inventory	SAP S/4HANA – <i>store system</i>	RFC (or other protocol that supports IDocs)	Application data	-
POS interface	SAP S/4HANA – <i>POS system</i>	RFC (or other protocol that supports IDocs)	Application data	Credit card information
Interface to space management systems	SAP S/4HANA – <i>space optimization system</i>	RFC	Application data	-

### 13.14.8.2 Authorizations in Retail

#### Note

For general information about the authorization concept used by SAP S/4HANA, see [User Administration and Authentication \[page 9\]](#).

SAP S/4HANA Retail uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS ABAP or AS Java. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP and SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide Java also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction `PF03`) on the AS ABAP and the User Management Engine's user administration console on the AS Java.

## Standard Roles

For information about the standards roles that are available for

- SAP S/4HANA Retail for merchandise management, see <https://help.sap.com/s4hana> choose your version and go to [Product Assistance > Industries > Retail > Retail for Merchandise Management](#).
- SAP S/4HANA for fashion and vertical business solutions, see <https://help.sap.com/s4hana> choose your version and go to [Product Assistance > Industries > Retail > Fashion and Vertical Business](#).

## Standard Authorization Objects

For information about the standard authorization objects that are used in

- SAP S/4HANA Retail for merchandise management, see <https://help.sap.com/s4hana> choose your version and go to ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Industries](#) ► [Retail](#) ► [Retail for Merchandise Management](#) ► [Marketing and Merchandising](#) ► [Master Data Management](#) ► [Authorization Objects for Merchandise Management](#) ►.
- SAP S/4HANA for fashion and vertical business solutions, see <https://help.sap.com/s4hana> choose your version and go to ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Industries](#) ► [Retail](#) ► [Fashion and Vertical Business](#) ► [Brand Management and Merchandising](#) ► [Brand Management and Merchandising](#) ► [Marketing and Brand Data and Insights](#) ► [Authorization Objects for Fashion and Vertical Business](#) ►.

### 13.14.8.3 Deletion of Personal Data in Retail

SAP S/4HANA Retail solutions might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/product/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE/](https://help.sap.com/viewer/product/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE/). Choose a version and then go to ► [Product Assistance](#) ► [Cross Components](#) ► [Data Protection](#) ►.

### Relevant Application Objects (Data) and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Allocation	Application-specific data used in the following transactions:  WA01  WA02  WA03  WA04  WA08  WA30  WA35	Transaction WA09

Application	Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Alternate Historical Data	<p>Application-specific data used in the following transactions:</p> <p>MDRD1 - MDRD3</p> <p>MAHD1 - MAHD3</p>	<p>Transaction MAHD4 can be used to delete entries in the Alternate Historical Data tables.</p> <p>Transaction MDRD4 can be used to delete delivery relationships.</p>
Article Discontinuation	<p>Application-specific data used in the following transactions:</p> <p>WRF_DIS_SEL</p> <p>WRF_DIS_MON</p>	ILM object MM_MATNR
Assortment	<p>Application-specific data used in the following transactions:</p> <p>WSOA1</p> <p>WSOA2</p> <p>WSOA3</p> <p>WSO1</p> <p>WSO2</p> <p>WSO3</p> <p>WSO4</p> <p>WSO5</p> <p>Tables:</p> <p>WRSZ</p> <p>WLK1</p> <p>WSOH</p>	<p>Transaction WSOA4 can be used to delete assortments.</p> <p>Transactions WSOA2/WSOA6 can be used to delete assortment users (customers).</p>
Assortment List	<p>Application-specific data used in the following transactions:</p> <p>WDBM_HPR</p> <p>WJB5</p> <p>WBBS</p> <p>WBBS_ALV</p>	Assortment List Reorganization: report RWDPOSRS
Automatic Document Adjustment	Transactions MEI1 - MEI5	ILM object MM_EKKO

Application	Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Investment Buying	<p>Application-specific data used in the following transactions:</p> <p>WLB1</p> <p>WLB2</p> <p>WLB6</p>	Report <code>RWFWW_DELETE_CUSTOMERS</code>
Load Building	<p>Application-specific data used in the following transactions:</p> <p>WLB4</p> <p>WLB5</p> <p>WLB7</p> <p>WLBA</p> <p>WLBB</p> <p>WLB13</p>	Report <code>RWVLB_DELETE_LOGTABLES</code>
Merchandise Distribution	<p>Application-specific data used in the following transactions:</p> <p>WF10</p> <p>WF10A</p> <p>WF20</p> <p>WF30</p> <p>WF60</p> <p>WF70</p>	Transaction <code>WA40</code> can be used to delete <code>FRET</code> entries that have status <i>Completed</i> .
Planning Workbench	Transaction <code>WWP1</code>	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by other relevant applications.
POS Interface – Inbound		For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by other relevant applications.
POS Interface – Monitor		Deletion reports <code>RWPUDTST</code> and <code>RWPUDLST</code>
POS Interface – Outbound		For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by other relevant applications.

Application	Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Price Catalog Processing – Inbound	W_PRICAT_MAINTAIN W_SYNC	Reports: W_PRICAT_DELETE ( <i>Delete Inbound Price Catalogs</i> ) W_PRICAT_DELPOS ( <i>Delete PRICAT Items</i> )
Price Planning Workbench		Reports for the deletion of budgets and price plans: RWRP_PPW_BUDG_DELETE RWRP_PPW_PPD_DELETE RWRP_PPW_PPD_DELETE_DIRECT Destruction object: RWRP_PPW_PPD_DESTRUCTION
Promotions	Table WALE Transaction WAK5	ILM objects: W_PROMO_AD W_MARKDOWN
Replenishment	Application-specific data used in the following transactions: WRMO WR60	ILM object MM_MATNR
Sales Price Calculation	Application-specific data used in the following transactions: VKP1-VKP8 VKPB	ILM object W_KALK
Site Master	Transactions WB01-WB03	ILM object WS_ACBSITE



Application	Application Objects	Provided Deletion Functionality
Subsequent Settlement	Application-specific data used in the following transactions: MEB2 MEB3 MEB5 MEB6 MEB8 MEB9 MEBS MEBB MEBV MEB7 MEU3	ILM object SD_AGREEM
Tickets and Additionals	Application-specific data used in the following transactions: WTAM WTR1	ILM object WTADDI
Vendor Managed Inventory	Application-specific data used in the following transactions: WVM1 WVM2 WVM3 WVM4	Report RWVMI_DELETE_EDMMS

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality Provided by Other Applications Used by SAP S/4HANA Retail solutions

- **Sales**  
For information, see [Deletion of Personal Data in Sales \[page 442\]](#).
- **Sourcing and Procurement**  
For information, see [Deletion of Personal Data \[page 460\]](#).
- Customer and supplier master data  
For information, see [Deletion of Personal Data \[page 537\]](#).

## Relevant Application Areas and Available EoP/WUC Functionality

Application	Solution Implemented for Application-Specific Data	Further Information
Allocation	End of purpose (EoP) check	CL_ALLOCATION_CV_EOP_CHECK CVP_IF_APPL_EOP_CHECK~CHECK_PARTNERS
Alternate Historical Data	not applicable	Tables do not contain any customer or supplier data.
Article Discontinuation	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sourcing and Procurement.
Assortment	not applicable	An end of purpose (EoP) check is not provided because customer and supplier numbers used in the tables do not indicate any business relationships.
Assortment List	not applicable	An end of purpose (EoP) check is not provided because supplier numbers used in the tables do not indicate any business relationships.
Automatic Document Adjustment	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sourcing and Procurement.
Investment Buying	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sales.
Load Building	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sales.
Merchandise Distribution	End of purpose (EoP) check	CL_ALLOCATION_CV_EOP_CHECK CVP_IF_APPL_EOP_CHECK~CHECK_PARTNERS
Planning Workbench	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sales.

Application	Solution Implemented for Application-Specific Data	Further Information
POS Interface – Inbound	not applicable	<p>POS interface uses documents that already exist in other SAP applications. These documents can be archived using the relevant archiving objects and deleted using the solutions (and end of purpose (EoP) checks) provided by the other SAP applications.</p> <p>An end of purpose (EoP) check for Customizing is not provided because partner information is stored anonymously in Customizing tables.</p>
POS Interface – Monitor	not applicable	<p>POS interface uses documents that already exist in other SAP applications. These documents can be archived using the relevant archiving objects and deleted using the solutions (and end of purpose (EoP) checks) provided by the other SAP applications.</p>
POS Interface – Outbound	not applicable	<p>POS interface uses documents that already exist in other SAP applications. These documents can be archived using the relevant archiving objects and deleted using the solutions (and end of purpose (EoP) checks) provided by the other SAP applications.</p> <p>An end of purpose (EoP) check for log tables is not provided because partner information is not shown in the application at this time, a deletion report exists, and there is no business need to archive the log status of data preparation.</p>
Price Catalog Processing – Inbound	End of purpose (EoP) check	<p>CL_PRICAT_EOP_CHECK_CV</p> <p>CVP_IF_APPL_EOP_CHECK~CHECK_PARTNERS</p>
Price Planning Workbench	not applicable	<p>An end of purpose (EoP) check is not provided because supplier numbers in pricing documents represent supply source information but do not indicate any business relationship to the supplier.</p>

Application	Solution Implemented for Application-Specific Data	Further Information
Promotions	End of purpose (EoP) check	CL_PROMOTION_CV_EOP_CHECK  CVP_IF_APPL_EOP_CHECK~CHECK_PARTNERS
Replenishment	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sourcing and Procurement.
Sales Price Calculation	not applicable	An end of purpose (EoP) check is not provided because supplier numbers in pricing documents represent supply source information but do not indicate any business relationship to the supplier.
Site Master	Where-used check (WUC)	CL_T001W_WUC
Subsequent Settlement	End of purpose (EoP) check	CVP_SD_EOP_CHECK_MM_REBATE
Tickets and Additional	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sourcing and Procurement.
Vendor Managed Inventory	not applicable	For non-application-specific data, functionality is provided by Sourcing and Procurement.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

- You define the settings or authorization management in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [Data Protection](#) > [Authorization Management](#).  
For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer and supplier master data in Customizing for *Logistics - General* under [Business Partner](#) > [Deletion of Customer and Supplier Master Data](#).

## 13.14.8.4 Deletion of Personal Data in Fashion and Vertical Business

### Use

SAP S/4HANA for fashion and vertical business fashion might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on SAP Help Portal at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/product/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE/](https://help.sap.com/viewer/product/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE/). Choose a version and then go to ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►

For more information about the deletion of personal data that might be used in fashion and vertical business applications refer to [Deletion of Personal Data in Retail \[page 621\]](#).

### Relevant Application Areas and Available Deletion of Personal Data Functionality

Application	Implemented functionality	ILM Object
Stock requirements/Pegging (MD04P)	Not applicable	Not Applicable
	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>An End of Purpose (EoP) check is not provided because customer and supplier information displayed do not indicate any business relationships.</p> </div>	
Season Workbench	EoP check	Not Applicable
Mass Repricing Report	EoP check	SD_VBAK MM_EKKO
Mass ATP Report	EoP check	SD_VBAK MM_EKKO
Season Redetermination Report for Sales Order	EoP check	SD_VBAK

Application	Implemented functionality	ILM Object
Season Redetermination Report for Purchase Order	EoP check	MM_EKKO
Season Redetermination Report for Stock Transport Order	EoP check	MM_EKKO
VAS Redetermination Report for Sales Order	EoP check	SD_VBAK
VAS Redetermination Report for Purchase Order	EoP check	MM_EKKO
VAS Redetermination Report for Stock Transport Order	EoP check	MM_EKKO
Multi Ship to Order (MSO) Explosion Report for Sales Order	EoP check	SD_VBAK
Split and Change of Purchase Orders	EoP check	MM_EKKO
Transportation Chain – Dateline Workbench Report	EoP check	MM_EKKO

## 13.14.8.5 Payment Card Security According to PCI-DSS

### i Note

The Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS) was jointly developed by major credit card companies in order to create a set of common industry security requirements for the protection of cardholder data. Compliance with this standard is relevant for companies processing credit card data. For more information, see the official website of the PCI Security Standards Council at <https://www.pcisecuritystandards.org>.

This section of the security guide supports you in implementing payment card security aspects and outlines steps that need to be considered to be compliant with the PCI-DSS.

Please note that the PCI-DSS covers more than the following steps and considerations. Complying with the PCI-DSS lies completely within the customer's responsibility, and we cannot guarantee the customer's compliance with the PCI-DSS.

For current information about PCI-DSS, see also SAP Note [1609917](#).

PCI-relevant POS (Point-of-Sale) sales can be processed in SAP S/4HANA Retail for merchandise management for financial postings and inventory management. Depending on the configuration of the POS solution, the data transferred to SAP S/4HANA Retail for merchandise management can contain credit card information that needs to be handled according to the PCI Standard. In this case, the card data has to be encrypted during inbound processing. The relevant asynchronous communication methods are the IDocs with the message type `WPUBON` (Upload Sales Documents per Receipt), and message type `WPUTAB` (Upload End-of-Day Closing POS).

For more information about **Archiving**, **RFC Debugging**, **Forward Error Handling (FEH)** and **Card Verification Values (CVV)**, see [Payment Card Security According to PCI-DSS \[page 68\]](#).

## Interfaces (IDoc/Services)

### i Note

Note that IDoc segments cannot store credit card numbers in clear text due to the PCI security standard compliance. Once an IDoc is being processed within the IDoc Framework, all values are temporarily stored, including the clear text credit card number.

For more information about how to process customer-specific IDocs containing credit card information, see the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide* under [▶ Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability Technologies](#) [▶ Security Guide ALE \(ALE Applications\)](#) [▶ Handling Sensitive Data in IDocs](#) [▶](#) in SAP NetWeaver Release 7.50.

## Encryption/Decryption and Storage of the Encrypted Number

**IDoc Encryption/Encryption process:** IDoc data records are sent to the BAdI implementation `IDOC_PCI_ENCR_IM` that is used for the PCI DSS inbound IDoc encryption. The process of encrypting the credit card number starts by identifying the segment with credit card information in the IDoc record structure. The data from the relevant segments `E1WPZ02` and `E1WPB06` is mapped to the internal record structure in order to retrieve the card GUID, the name of the credit card institution number, and the credit card number. After this, the security level of the credit card institution is verified in Customizing:

- If the security level is set to 2, the credit card number is encrypted.
- If the security level is set to 1, the credit card number is masked.

The card GUID and the encryption type are mapped to the structure for decryption and a message is displayed that informs the user whether the encryption was successful. After this, the final check for consistency is performed.

**Decryption process:** The process of decrypting the credit card number starts by identifying the segment in the IDoc record structure that contains the credit card information. The data from the relevant segments `E1WPZ02` and `E1WPB06` is mapped to the internal record structure in order to retrieve the card GUID, the type of encryption, and the credit card number. The encryption type is set to the fixed value 2. The credit card number is decrypted and a message is displayed that informs the user whether the encryption was successful.

- The BAdI implementation name for PCI DSS inbound IDoc decryption is `IDOC_PCI_DECRYPTION_IM`.
- One of the IDoc database encryption/decryption (`IDOC_DATA_MAPPER`, `IDOC_DATA_CRYPTION`) is called before saving to the IDoc database and the other after reading from it.

## Customizing

Maintain the following settings in Customizing:

- The basic settings for payment cards: In Customizing for *SAP Customizing Implementation Guide* under [▶ Cross-Application Components](#) [▶ Payment Cards](#) [▶ Basic Settings](#) [▶ Assign Checking Rule](#) [▶](#).
- The settings for the encryption save mode: Define whether existing GUIDs for credit cards are reused. The default setting is set to reuse the existing GUID. You can adapt the default with a customer-specific BAdI

implementation, using the enhancement spot `ES_WPOS_PCA_SECURITY` and the BAdI definition `WPOS_PCA_SECURITY`.

- The security settings for the credit card institute: In Customizing for *SAP Customizing Implementation Guide* under **► Cross-Application Components ► Payment Cards ► Basic Settings ► Make Security Settings for Payment Cards ►**. For an example for security settings for payment cards, refer to the following entries:
  - Security Level: *Masked Display* and *Encrypted When Saved*
  - Access Log: *Logging of unmasked display*
  - Visible Characters for Masking:
    - At start*: 4
    - At end*: 4
- The settings for masking the credit card number: In the customizing table of the transaction `WECRYPTDISPLAY`, maintain the settings for the *Assignment of Encrypted Segment* field as follows:
  - *Message Type*: `WPUBON`
  - *Segment Type*: `E1WPB06`
  - *Field Name*: `KARTENNR`and
  - *Message Type*: `WPUTAB`
  - *Segment Type*: `E1WPZ02`
  - *Field Name*: `KARTENNR`

## 13.14.9 Utilities

### 13.14.9.1 Data Storage Security

#### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

The `Industry Solution Migration Workbench (ISMW)` saves data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

#### Logical File Names / Path Names Used

The Migration Workbench (ISMW) uses the logical file name `ISMW_FILE` with the logical file path `ISMW_ROOT` to enable the validation of physical file names.



## Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions `FILE` (client-independent) and `SF01` (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

For more information, see about data storage security, see the respective chapter in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide*.

### 13.14.9.2 Enterprise Services Security

For general information, see the chapters on Web Services Security in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide*. For Utilities-specific processes, during which system-to-system communication (A2A communication) takes place within a system landscape and processes that prepare for market communication with other market participants as part of intercompany data exchange, note the following:

#### i Note

If, as part of your company-specific processes, you have communication interfaces with other systems, you must also take their recommended security measures into account.

## A2A Communication Within a System Landscape

During A2A communication, data is exchanged between an SAP system and an external system. This communication is based on enterprise services and can flow via a PI system as a data hub or directly between the respective systems (point-to-point). As identifying parameters, the SAP system uses internal values (such as the profile number) or parameters that are generally understood in the market (such as external point of delivery IDs). For information about the security measures relevant to A2A communication, see the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide*. The authorization objects of the respective transactions provide these processes with additional security.

## Market Communication in Intercompany Data Exchange

As part of intercompany data exchange, messages are sent from an SAP Utilities system to a PI system or a comparable upstream system to prepare for market communication with other market participants. The messages are then converted into a universally valid market format and sent on to other systems. As identifying parameters, the SAP system uses values that are generally understood in the market (such as external point of delivery IDs). Communication can take place using enterprise services or IDocs (ALE communication).

For more information about the necessary security measures, see the [SAP NetWeaver Security Guide](#). The authorization objects of the respective transactions provide these processes with additional security.

### 13.14.9.3 Deletion of Personal Data

SAP Utilities might process data that is subject to the data protection laws that are applicable in specific countries, as described in SAP Note [1825544](#).

The *SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)* component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. SAP Utilities uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data. SAP delivers end of purpose checks for SAP Utilities-specific objects.

#### End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period for data consists of the following phases.

- **Phase one:** The relevant data is actively used.
- **Phase two:** The relevant data is actively available in the system.
- **Phase three:** The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.  
For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked. Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- **Display:** The system does not display blocked data.
- **Change:** It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data
- **Create:** It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Copy/Follow-Up:** It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Search:** It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three phase-based end of purpose check, see [Process Flow and Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion](#).

#### Integration with Other Solutions

The end of purpose checks for SAP Utilities are based on those in the [Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable \(FI-CA\)](#) solution. You use transaction `FPDPR1` in the SAP menu under [Contract Accounts Receivable](#)

[and Payable](#) > [Periodic Processing](#) > [For Data Protection](#) > [Check If Business Partner Can Be Blocked](#) to check the business partners for which the end of purpose has been reached.

SAP Utilities is also integrated with [SAP Sales and Distribution \(SD\)](#) and [SAP Customer Relationship Management \(CRM\)](#). Cross-system and cross-application end of purpose checks exist in both cases.

If, for example, a business partner is used in SAP Utilities (as part of SAP S/4HANA) and in SAP CRM, the end of purpose checks cover both applications so that data for a blocked business partner cannot be accessed in either application.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

SAP Utilities uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data. For more information, see the documentation for Information Lifecycle Management.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP Functionality

The following end of purpose checks exist:

- Check for open contracts without any open items in their contract account
- Check if all invoicing documents have been printed
- Check if all billing documents have been invoiced
- Check if business partner is used in a franchise fee contract
- Check if business partner is used in a loyalty account
- Check if business partner is used as a service provider
- Check if business partner is used as an owner
- Check for open disconnection documents for business partner
- Check if business partner is used in role ISUI (installer)
- Check for open error messages for business partner in CRM replication monitoring

The checks for the SAP Utilities-specific object types are included in the enhancement spot ISU\_DPP\_EOP\_CHECK. For more information, see the documentation for the Business Add-Ins in the system.

The functions for deleting and blocking the addresses of connection objects and device locations are provided by the report RE\_DPP\_EOP\_TECH\_OBJ (see note [2615585](#)).

### Process Flow

1. Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in [SAP Information Lifecycle Management \(ILM\)](#).  
The protection of meter reading documents and EDM values related to blocked business partners requires a specific handling. Activate the new archiving features for meter reading documents and, if SAP EDM is in use, EDM profile values. To suppress any access to archived meter reading results and profile values, maintain the archiving object S\_ARCHIVE with the objects ISU\_EABL and ISU\_PROFV. Further details are provided in SAP notes [2516189](#) and [2542233](#).
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available

3. Proceed as follows:
  - Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: `CA_BUPA`).
  - Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.
  - Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA (ILM objects: `FI_ACCPAYB`, `FI_ACCRECV`, `FI_ACCKNVK`).
  - Run transaction `CVP_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA.
  - Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.
  - If you have the required authorizations, you can unblock data by running transactions `BUPA_PRE_EOP` and `CVP_UNBLOCK_MD`.
  - You delete data using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of SAP Utilities.
  - For blocking or deleting technical addresses (connection objects and device locations), run report `RE_DPP_EOP_TECH_OBJ` (see SAP Note [2615585](#)).
  - If you use [SAP AMI Integration for Utilities](#), schedule the replication report `REAMI_SIMPLEMDSYNC` (transaction `EAMISMDS`) in SAP IS-U on a regular basis.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for [Cross-Application Components](#) under [Data Protection](#).

- Define the settings for authorization management under [Data Protection](#) > [Authorization Management](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking under [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking](#) > [Business Partner](#).
- If you use CDS view-based analytics or SAP Fiori apps for IS-Utilities, the enhancement implementation `ISU_DPP_EOP_BP_UPD_ACT` (BAI implementation `BUPA_PURPOSE_EXPORT`) must be activated in the enhancement spot / BAI `BUPA_PURPOSE_EXPORT`. Further details are provided in note [2551390](#).
- If you use SAP AMI Integration for Utilities, the external MDUS system must be informed about the end of purpose (see note [2538445](#)). This is achieved using the AMI device replication enterprise service. Activate the business function `ISU_AMI_5`. Activate the feature for sending the corresponding section to the device replication service by setting the BAI enhancement implementation `ISU_DPP_EOP_DEVICE_UPD_ACT` to active (using transaction `SE19`). Run the initialization report `REISU_DPP_AMI_DEVICE_USAGE` to determine and store the data usage status for the devices determined. Activate the Customizing settings for simplified master data synchronization, see Customizing path (Transaction `SPRO`):  
[SAP Utilities](#) > [Advanced Metering Infrastructure](#) > [Basic Settings](#) > [Define Simplified Master Data Synchronization](#).
- The Customizing for the reference customer in tables `BCONTCONF` and `TEKND` must not have any real equivalents, that is to say that no real personal data may be used. See SAP note [2630383](#) for details.

## 13.14.9.4 Read Access Logging

The *Read Access Logging* (RAL) component can be used to monitor and log read-access to data and provide information such as which business users accessed personal data, for example, for a business partner, and when they did so.

In RAL, you can configure which read-access information is to be logged and the conditions under which you should do so. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications. To use these configurations, save the ZIP attachments from the SAP Note [2370371](#). Extract these ZIP files and import the RAL configurations using the import function for configurations in transaction SRALMANAGER.

For general information on Read Access Logging, go to [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002), open the product assistance, and navigate to ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ► *Security Safeguards Regarding Data Protection* ► *Read Access Logging (RAL)* ►.

## 13.14.9.5 SAP Waste & Recycling

### 13.14.9.5.1 Internet Communication Framework Security

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For SAP Waste and Recycling the service EHWV\_WASTE is needed. Use the transaction SICF to activate the service.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information about Internet Communication Framework Services, see the SAP NetWeaver 7.5 *Connectivity* guide. You can find this guide by searching for **Activating and Deactivating ICF Services** at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_NETWEAVER\\_750](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_NETWEAVER_750).

### 13.14.9.5.2 Deletion of Personal Data

SAP Waste and Recycling might process data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note [1825544](#).

The SAP *Information Lifecycle Management (ILM)* component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. SAP Waste and Recycling uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

SAP provides a check for the end of the usage and WUC (Where use Check) for SAP Waste and Recycling. The business partner assignments at the waste disposal facility (transaction EWAELO4) are checked (debtor, vendor and cBP for the owner of the waste disposal facility) due to the fact that waste disposal facilities are not part of the ILM implementation. If the assignment of the business partner data to the waste disposal facility is no longer valid, this data has to be removed from the waste disposal facility. After the removal of the business partner data from the waste disposal facility, this data is not further considered at the WUC.

All applications register either an end of purpose check (EoP) in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of the customer, vendor and central business partner.

## End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases:

- Phase one: The relevant data is actively used.
- Phase two: The relevant data is actively available in the system.
- Phase three: The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.  
For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked. Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- Display: The system does not display blocked data.
- Change: It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data.
- Create: It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- Copy/Follow-Up: It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- Search: It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three-phase based end of purpose check, see Process Flow and Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

## Integration with Other Solutions

In the majority of cases, different installed applications run interdependently as shown in following graphic.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

SAP Utilities uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data. For more information, see the documentation for Information Lifecycle Management at <https://help.sap.com>.

Deletion Functionality

Application	Description	Deletion Functionality
Transaction EWAORDER	Standard application for changing waste disposal orders	ILM object ISU_EORDER

Application	Description	Deletion Functionality
Transaction EWAWA01	Standard application for maintaining single position weighing processes	ILM object ISU_WPROC
Transaction EWAWA_MULTI	Standard application for maintaining multi position weighing processes	ILM object ISU_MWPROC
Transaction ELOC	Maintaining service time slices for containers	ILM Object ISU_SERVFQ

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC Functionality

The following end of purpose checks exist:

- Check for customer and vendor assignments for waste disposal facilities
- Check for partner assignment of bulky orders

The checks for the SAP Waste and Recycling object types can be enhanced in the enhancement spot `EEWA_BF_DPP`. For more information, see the documentation for the Business Add-Ins in the system.

## Process Flow

1. Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
2. You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
3. You do the following:
  - Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the central business partner (ILM object: `CA_BUPA`).
  - Run transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the central business partner.
  - Run transaction `IRMPOL` and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and vendor master in SAP ERP (ILM objects: `ISU_ROUTE`, `ISU_SERVFQ`, `ISU_WPROC`).
  - Run transaction `CVP_PRE_EOP` to enable the end of purpose check function for the customer master and vendor master in SAP ERP.
4. Business users can request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.
5. If you have the needed authorizations, you can unblock data by running the transaction `BUPA_PRE_EOP` and `CVP_UNBLOCK_MD`.
6. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of <application, component, scenario>.

For information about how to configure blocking and deletion for <application, component, scenario>, see Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under Data Protection.

- Define the settings for authorization management in under Data Protection □ Authorization Management. For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for Cross-Application Components under ► [Data Protection](#) ► [Blocking and Unblocking](#) ► [Business Partner](#) ►.

## 13.14.9.6 Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector

### 13.14.9.6.1 Authorizations

The Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector solution uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver Application Server for ABAP.

Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the *SAP NetWeaver Application Server ABAP Security Guide* also apply to the Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector solution. The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator transaction on the Application Server ABAP (AS ABAP).

### Reference Role Templates and Authorizations in SAP CRM

You create a reference user (`UMC_REF_USR`) during system installation. The reference user provides the necessary authorizations for each online user. This means the reference user can access data in the back end systems and Gateway.

PFCG role templates (`SAP_CRM_UMC_ODATA` and `SAP_ISU_UMC_ODATA` for SAP CRM and SAP S/4HANA, respectively) are delivered with SAP CRM and SAP S/4HANA, which can be used (together with role templates delivered by Gateway, for example, `/IWBEP/RT_USS_INTUSR`) to create the PFCG role for the reference user.

### Reference Role Templates and Authorizations in SAP S/4HANA

For SAP S/4HANA, the PFCG role template (`SAP_ISU_UMC_ODATA`) is delivered with the SAP S/4HANA system, which can be used together with role templates delivered by Gateway, for example, `/IWBEP/RT_USS_INTUSR` to create the PFCG role for the reference user.



## Service Role Templates and Authorizations in SAP CRM

In addition to the reference user, you create a service user (UMC\_SRV\_USR) during installation. The service user is responsible for creating the application users. Since the service user is used for anonymous logon, the user should be granted minimum authorizations.

PFCG role templates (SAP\_CRM\_UMC\_SRV and SAP\_ISU\_UMC\_SRV for SAP CRM and SAP S/4HANA, respectively) are delivered in SAP CRM and SAP S/4HANA systems, which can be used (together with role templates delivered by Gateway, for example, /IWBEP/RT\_USS\_SRVUSR) to create the PFCG role for the service user.

For more information, see the SAP Help Portal at: <http://help.sap.com/nwgateway> ► [SAP Gateway Security Guide](#) ► [Authorizations in the SAP System](#) ► [Roles in the SAP Gateway Landscape](#) ►.

## Service Roles and Authorizations in SAP S/4HANA

For SAP S/4HANA, the PFCG role template SAP\_ISU\_UMC\_SRV is delivered in SAP S/4HANA system, which can be used together with role templates delivered by Gateway, for example, /IWBEP/RT\_USS\_SRVUSR to create the PFCG role for the service user.

## Creating and Assigning Roles in SAP CRM

To create the required users (UMC\_SRV\_USR, UMC\_REF\_USR), you must perform the following steps in SAP S/4HANA, SAP CRM, and the Gateway systems.

### Note

In role maintenance, choose ► [Utilities](#) ► [Templates](#) ► to display the available templates, copy templates delivered by SAP, change the copies, and create templates for yourself. You will need the authorization *User Master Record Maintenance: User Groups (S\_USER\_GRP)* with value \* in the fields CLASS and ACTVT. SAP template names start with the letter **S**; therefore, templates that you create must not start with **S**.

You require administrator authorizations to create roles and users, and to assign roles to users.

1. Create a role and enter a description.
2. Insert the authorizations using the role templates.  
Depending on the system and the role type, you can combine different role templates; see the following table:

Templates	SAP CRM System	SAP S/4 HANA System	Gateway
UMC_SRV_USR	SAP_CRM_UMC_SRV	SAP_ISU_UMC_SRV	/IWFND/RT_GW_USR
	/IWBEP/RT_USS_SRVUSR	/IWBEP/RT_USS_SRVUSR	/IWBEP/RT_USS_SRVUSR

Templates	SAP CRM System	SAP S/4 HANA System	Gateway
UMC_REF_USR	SAP_CRM_UMC_ODATA /IWBEF/RT_USS_INTUSR	SAP_ISU_UMC_ODATA /IWBEF/RT_USS_INTUSR	/IWBEF/RT_USS_INTUSR

### i Note

Add additional required authorization objects /IWFND/SRV, S\_SECPOL and S\_TCODE

- You must manually add authorization object CRM\_IUPROC to the reference user in the SAP CRM system. The recommendation is to add activity 16 (execute) on all the processes (\*) as shown below:
- Verify and edit the authorizations, if necessary.  
For the UMC\_SRV\_USR, check role access to the following services (authorization object: S\_SERVICE):
  - Activate OData Services in the Gateway system.
  - CRM\_UTILITIES\_UMC\_URM (SAP CRM and Gateway)
  - CRM\_UTILITIES\_UMC\_PUBLIC\_SRV (SAP CRM and Gateway)
  - /IWBEF/USERMANAGEMENT (SAP CRM and Gateway)
For the UMC\_REF\_USR, check role access to the following services (authorization object: S\_SERVICE):
  - Activate OData Services in the Gateway system.
  - CRM\_UTILITIES\_UMC (for SAP CRM system and Gateway)
  - ERP\_UTILITIES\_UMC (for SAP S/4HANA system and Gateway)
  - /IWBEF/USERMANAGEMENT (for SAP CRM system and Gateway)
This is especially true when some function enhancements are carried out.
- Generate the authorizations.  
A profile is automatically generated for the role.
- Assign the role to users (UMC\_SRV\_USR, UMC\_REF\_USR) and run a user master comparison to enter the generated profile into the user master record.

## Creating and Assigning Roles in SAP S/4HANA

To create the required users (UMC\_SRV\_USR, and UMC\_REF\_USR), you must perform the following steps in SAP S/4HANA and the Gateway systems.

### i Note

In role maintenance, choose ► [Utilities](#) ► [Templates](#) ► to display the available templates, copy templates delivered by SAP, change the copies, and create templates for yourself. You will need the authorization *User Master Record Maintenance: User Groups (S\_USER\_GRP)* with value \* in the fields CLASS and ACTVT. SAP template names start with the letter S; therefore, templates that you create must not start with S.

You require administrator authorizations to create roles and users, as well as to assign roles to users.

- Create a role and enter a description.
- Insert the authorizations using the role templates.

Depending on the system and the role type, you can combine different role templates; see the following table:

Templates	SAP S/4HANA System	Gateway System
UMC_SRV_USR	SAP_ISU_UMC_SRV	/IWFND/RT_GW_USR
	/IWBEP/RT_USS_SRVUSR	/IWBEP/RT_USS_SRVUSR
UMC_REF_USR	SAP_ISU_UMC_ODATA	/IWBEP/RT_USS_INTUSR
	/IWBEP/RT_USS_INTUSR	

### Note

Add additional required authorization objects /WFND/SRV, S\_SECPOL and S\_TCODE

- Verify and edit the authorizations, if necessary.  
For the UMC\_SRV\_USR, check role access to the following services (authorization object: S\_SERVICE):
  - ERP\_UTILITIES\_UMC\_URM (SAP S/4HANA and Gateway)
  - /IWBEP/USERMANAGEMENT (SAP S/4HANA and Gateway): This only applies to the standalone SAP S/4HANA scenario
 For the UMC\_REF\_USR, check role access to the following services (authorization object: S\_SERVICE):
  - ERP\_UTILITIES\_UMC (for SAP S/4HANA system and Gateway)
  - /IWBEP/USERMANAGEMENT (for SAP S/4HANA system and Gateway)
 This is especially true when some function enhancements are carried out.
- Generate the authorizations.  
A profile is automatically generated for the role.
- assign the role to users (UMC\_SRV\_USR, UMC\_REF\_USR) and run a user master comparison to enter the generated profile into the user master record.

## Related Information

### Gateway Security Guide

See <http://help.sap.com/nwgateway>

### User and Role Administration for SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP

See <http://help.sap.com/netweaver> under *Identity Management*

### Authorization Templates

See <http://help.sap.com/netweaver>, under **System Administration Tasks > Authorizations > Maintaining Authorizations**

### Setting up Authorizations with Role Maintenance

See <http://help.sap.com/netweaver>, under *System Administration Tasks > Authorizations > Maintaining Authorizations*

## 13.14.9.6.2 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

Security for the Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector solution consists of SAP Gateway OData services and HTML5/SAP UI5-based Web-enabled content managed by the Internet Communication Framework (ICF) (transaction **SICF**).

You must activate the ICF services required for the applications you want to use.

### i Note

You can also activate these services during the technical configuration.

The Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector solution relies on the following services in SAP CRM:

- `UMCUI5`: An HTML5/SAP UI5-based Web-enabled interface to access the OData services
- `CRM_UTILITIES_UMC`: OData services from the SAP CRM system
- `CRM_UTILITIES_UMC_URM`: Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector extension of the SAP Gateway `USERREQUESTMANAGEMENT` OData service
- `CRM_UTILITIES_UMC_PUBLIC_SRV`: Anonymous OData Service for products in SAP CRM
- `ERP_UTILITIES_UMC_URM` (logon user `UMC_SRV_USR`): OData services from the SAP S/4HANA system

In addition, the application also uses service `USERMANAGEMENT` from SAP Gateway.

The Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector S/4HANA stand-alone solution relies on the following services:

- `ERP_ISU_UMC` (logon user/current user): Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector extension of the Gateway `USERREQUESTMANAGEMENT` OData Service
- `ERP_UTILITIES_UMC`: OData services from the SAP S/4HANA system
- `ERP_ISU_UMC_PUBLIC` (logon user `UMC_SRV_USR`)

In addition, the application also uses the service `USERMANAGEMENT` from SAP Gateway.

## Related Information

### RFC/ICF Security Guide

See <http://help.sap.com/netweaver> under **SAP NetWeaver 7.0 Including Enhancement Package 1** **SAP NetWeaver Security Guide** **Security Guides for Connectivity and Interoperability**.

## 13.14.9.6.3 Data Protection and Privacy

Data Protection and Privacy

### Use

Since the Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector solution collects and processes online users' personal data, it is often required to comply with legal regulations or public standards such as data privacy. In that case, the user interface may need to be adjusted. For example, a check box has to be added to get the online user's consent before an account is created.

The Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector application uses session cookies. For more information, see [ICF and Session Security \[page 20\]](#).

#### → Recommendation

You are recommended to activate secure session management and to use SSL to protect the network communications where these security-relevant cookies are transferred.

User request data is stored in SAP Gateway for processing. Depending on business needs and local regulations, you can delete some user requests after certain periods of time.

The Multichannel Foundation for Utilities and Public Sector solution is built upon SAP Gateway. To ensure your data is protected and cannot be accessed by anyone, we recommend that you refer to the [Guide on Data Protection and Privacy](#) provided by SAP NetWeaver at <http://help.sap.com/netweaver> under ► [SAP NetWeaver Gateway 2.0](#) ► [Security Information](#) ► [SAP NetWeaver Gateway Security Guide](#) ►.

## 13.14.9.6.4 Read Access Logging

Read Access Logging

Use

Read Access Logging (RAL) is used to monitor and log read access to sensitive data. It is often required to comply with legal regulations or public standards such as data privacy. The Read Access Logging (RAL) component can be used to monitor and log read access to data and provide information such as which business users accessed personal data (for example, fields related to bank account data), and when they did so.

In RAL, you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

For more information, see [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#).

## 13.14.10 Insurance

### 13.14.10.1 Claims Management

With Claims Management for Insurance, you can manage the entire claims process, from first notification of loss to claims adjustment and financial reporting.

#### 13.14.10.1.1 Data Storage Security



##### Using Logical Path and File Names to Protect Access to the File System

SAP Claims Management save data in files in the file system. Therefore, it is important to explicitly provide access to the corresponding files in the file system without allowing access to other directories or files (also known as directory traversal). This is achieved by specifying logical paths and file names in the system that map to the physical paths and file names. This mapping is validated at runtime and if access is requested to a directory that does not match a stored mapping, then an error occurs.

The following list shows the logical file names and paths used by SAP Claims Management and for which programs these file names and paths apply:

##### Logical File Names Used in SAP Claims Management

The following logical file names have been created in order to enable the validation of physical file names:

- ICLVEH
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context: ICL\_VEHCATALOG\_UPLOAD
  - Customizing path: [SAP Insurance](#) > [Claims Management](#) > [Claim](#) > [Business Settings](#) > [Damaged Objects/Diagnoses](#) > [Damaged Objects/Injured Persons](#) > [Import Catalog for Insured Objects](#) 
- ICLDIAG
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context: ICL\_DIAG\_UPLOAD
  - Customizing path: [SAP Insurance](#) > [Claims Management](#) > [Claim](#) > [Business Settings](#) > [Damaged Objects/Diagnoses](#) > [Damaged Objects/Injured Persons](#) > [Diagnoses](#) > [Import Diagnosis Groups and Diagnoses](#) 
- ICLSUPPL
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context:  
ICL\_ICLCLAIMDATA\_UPLOAD
- ICLDI
  - Program using this logical file name and parameters used in this context: ICL\_DATA\_UP\_DOWNLOAD

##### Activating the Validation of Logical Path and File Names

These logical paths and file names, as well as any subdirectories, are specified in the system for the corresponding programs. For downward compatibility, the validation at runtime is deactivated by default. To activate the validation at runtime, maintain the physical path using the transactions FILE (client-independent)

and SF01 (client-specific). To find out which paths are being used by your system, you can activate the corresponding settings in the Security Audit Log.

## 13.14.10.1.2 Data Protection

### 13.14.10.1.2.1 User Consent

It is the responsibility of insurance companies themselves to obtain the consent of all of their business partners with regard to the use of their personal data.

### 13.14.10.1.2.2 Read Access Logging

In Read Access Logging, you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. In the following table, you can find the configurations (shipped with SAP Claims Management), the fields are logged, and the relevant business context:

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
ICL_SSN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tax Number Category (field TAXTYPE in for instance table ICLC_ICL_BP_MINI_SCREEN-)</li> <li>Business Partner Tax Number (TAXNUM)</li> </ul>	SAP Claims Management logs tax data. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>In the Mini Business Partner the tax number is only logged if the user has selected the tax number category <b>US1</b>.</p> </div>
ICL_BANK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bank details ID (BKEXT)</li> <li>Bank country key (BANKS)</li> <li>Bank Key (BANKL)</li> <li>Bank account number (BANKN)</li> <li>IBAN (IBAN)</li> </ul>	SAP Claims Management logs bank account data.

Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
ICL_HEALTH	<p>The fields in the following categories are logged:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim item groupings and the relevant items with subclaim type, coverage, coverage type, benefit type, benefits catalog</li> <li>• Diagnosis</li> <li>• Procedures</li> <li>• Tooth notation and eyeglass prescription</li> <li>• Level of care</li> <li>• Suspension of care</li> <li>• Insured persons and claimant</li> <li>• Facts capture</li> <li>• Payments</li> </ul>	SAP Claims Management logs health data.

For Read Access Logging of health data, you have to activate specific views in Customizing for *SAP Insurance* under [► Claims Management ► Claim ► Technical Settings ► Data Protection ► Read Access Logging ► Activate Specific Views for Read Access Logging](#).

### 13.14.10.1.2.3 Deletion of Personal Data

SAP Claims Management might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) [► Product Assistance ► Cross Components ► Data Protection](#).

### Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Provided Deletion Functionality
Archiving of Claims (Archiving Object ICLCLAIM)	ILM Object ICLCLAIM (see SAP Note <a href="#">1976123</a> ) )
Archiving of Claim Bundles (Archiving Object ICLECEVT)	ILM Object ICLECEVT (see SAP Note <a href="#">1976123</a> )



Application Object	Provided Deletion Functionality
Archiving of Subclaims (Archiving Object ICLSUBCL)	ILM Object ICLSUBCL

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [▶ Data Protection ▶ Authorization Management ▶](#). For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under [▶ Data Protection ▶ Blocking and Unblocking ▶ Business Partner ▶](#).

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of customer master data in Customizing for *SAP Insurance* under [▶ Claims Management ▶ Claim ▶ Technical Settings ▶ Archiving ▶](#).

### 13.14.10.1.2.4 Change Log

In order to log personal data in FS-CM, you can use the following standard function of FS-CM:

- Log of changes in a claim and in a claim bundle  
When you are processing a claim or a claim bundle, you can view a structured overview showing the changes in the relevant claim or claim bundle. To call up the structured change overview, choose [▶ Tools ▶ Claim Changes \(Overview\) ▶](#) in claim processing, or [▶ Tools ▶ Bundle Changes \(Overview\) ▶](#) in claim bundle processing. In the next dialog screen you see the overview tree with the changes that have been made.  
For more information, see Application Help of SAP Claims Management under [▶ Claim ▶ Administration of the Claims Management System ▶ Display of Changes in Claim and Claim Bundle ▶](#).

#### i Note

Changes of business partner data will be logged in the business partner system since business partner data are not stored in FS-CM.

## 13.14.10.2 Policy Management for Insurance

With Policy Management for Insurance, you can manage insurance contracts. You can map the whole life cycle of a contract, starting from the creation of an application, through policy issuance and ongoing contract maintenance, right up to the termination of the contract.

### 13.14.10.2.1 Authorizations

#### Authorization Concept

If the SAP NetWeaver functions are not sufficient, you can use the Business Add-In (BAI) `/PM0/ABP_TECHCHKTA_BADI` (in enhancement spot `/PM0/ABT_TECHCHKTA_ES`) to define rules for authorizing characteristics, such as the postal code, replacement business, and checks for amounts and dual control.

#### Authorization Roles

Policy Management for Insurance provides the following role types:

- **Template Roles**  
Template roles are templates that can be copied and adjusted in customer implementation projects.
- **Demo Roles**  
Demo roles are examples based on template roles and authorization values of sample content. You should only use them for demo or test purposes.

#### Naming Convention for FS-PM Roles

The role name must reflect the component and the process. Consequently the naming convention is `SAP_FSPM_<role flag>_<role type>_<role description>`, with the following meanings:

- `SAP` = Standard prefix
- `FSPM` = Component
- `<role flag>` = Role flag with possible values `C` for Composite roles and `S` for Single roles
- `<role type>` = Role type with possible values `TMPL` for template roles and `DEMO` for demo roles
- `<role description>` = In composite roles, it is a position description (for example, `POLHANDLER` for policy handlers). In single roles, it is a description of a task (for example, `CREATE_POLICY`).

In the Auto line of business every set of applications (Bonus-Malus, Insurer Information System, etc.) has its own authorization object with a set of permitted activities. The naming convention follows the following pattern: /MVA/(A)FSPM\_AUTO\_<role\_description>:

- /MVA/ = Standard prefix
- (A)FSPM\_AUTO = (A) Standard Role and FSPM\_AUTO for line of business *Motor Vehicle*
- <role\_description> = For *Motor Vehicle* managements (for example BM = Bonus-Malus Management) or for special purpose for example DISPLAY (designed to display *Motor Vehicle* specific data only)

## Authorization Classes

Policy Management for Insurance provides the following authorization classes:

- PM0B (FS-PM Basis)  
This class contains all cross-line of business authorization objects.
- PM0L (FS-PM Life)  
This class contains the authorization objects that are needed only in the Life line of business.
- PM0R (FS-PM Workplace)  
This class contains the authorization objects for accessing the PBT (Policy-Based Technology) and PBT-related transactions.

## 13.14.10.2.2 Communication Destinations

### Overview

Policy Management for Insurance provides functions for data exchange with other application components. These application components can be found either in separate systems or in the same system. To enable you to access these application components, an RFM (Remote Function Module) destination must be created for the relevant system. This RFM destination establishes a connection between Policy Management for Insurance and the external system.

Note the following with regard to communication destinations:

- Connection
  - If the application component is in the same system, the destination is NONE.
  - If the application component is in a separate system, you must create a user-defined RFM destination for each external system that interacts with Policy Management for Insurance, and you must also ensure that the external systems use the correct RFM destination. You define which application component should use which RFM destination in Customizing for *SAP Insurance* under ► [Policy Management](#) ► [Integration](#) ► [Process Primary Settings for Interfaces to External Systems](#) . Access to the external system can be screen-based (online) or non-screen-based (offline). It is possible that both of these access types will be executed by different users with different authorizations. You can therefore enter two destinations for each application component in the Customizing activity

*Process Primary Settings for Interfaces to External Systems* (one RFM destination for online access and one for offline access). You can assign different users with different authorizations for accessing the external system to these RFM destinations.

- The RFM destination configured in transaction SM59 determines which user is used to access the external system. For each RFM destination, you can enter the user to be used to access the external system. You either enter a user name or specify the current user.

If you use the current user to access the external system, the system displays a log-on dialog box where the user must enter a password to log on to the external system. You can bypass this dialog box by establishing a trusted/trusting connection between the two systems. This means that if there is an RFM between a trusted and trusting system, a password is no longer sent when you log on to the trusting system.

### ⚠ Caution

Note that Policy Management for Insurance users require special authorization to access external application components. To ensure that only authorized users can access the data on external systems, SAP recommends that you create a trusted relationship between Policy Management for Insurance and the external system and that you always use the current user to access data.

## Connection Destinations

Destination	Delivered	Type
RFM destination for product runtime	No	RFM
RFM destination for Business Partner for Financial Services (FS-BP)	No	RFM
RFM destination for Collections and Disbursements for Insurance (FS-CD)	No	RFM
RFM destination for Financials (FI)	No	RFM
RFM destination for Incentive and Commission Management for Insurance (FS-ICM)	No	RFM
RFM destination for Portfolio Assignment (PFO)	No	RFM
RFM destination for Organizational Management (OM)	No	RFM

## 13.14.10.2.3 Data Protection and Privacy

## 13.14.10.2.3.1 User Consent

It is the responsibility of insurance companies themselves to obtain the consent of all of their business partners with regard to the use of their personal data.

## 13.14.10.2.3.2 Read Access Logging

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions. Policy Management for Insurance delivers the following sample configurations:

- Configuration for bank details
- Configuration for payment cards
- Configuration for health data
- Configuration for policy number

## 13.14.10.2.3.3 Deletion of Personal Data

### Blocking and Archiving

Note the following with regard to blocking and archiving in Policy Management for Insurance:

- The archiving function is used for the blocking of data. Archiving and blocking of business objects takes place at the same time (= end of residence time). Each archiving object corresponds to an ILM object.
- Archived data can only be displayed in the *Inquiry* business process and cannot be changed. Archived data is protected by authorization check and only available in read-only mode for authorized users.
- For performance reasons, you can define different residence periods for different data groups (cash flow documents, inactive contract versions, fund orders, etc).
- Since insurance contracts often have a long contract duration, we recommend keeping the updated (newest) contract data in the operational system, while archiving out-dated object data. The last contract version can only be archived when the contract status is *Inactive* and the residence time for this version is outdated.
- You can define rules determining residence periods and ILM configurations in Customizing for *SAP Insurance* under ► *Policy Management* ► *General Settings* ► *Archiving* ► or *Data Protection*.

## Data Deletion

Note the following with regard to data deletion in Policy Management for Insurance:

- Data deletion is managed on the basis of ILM objects in the ILM system.
- Policy Management for Insurance provides preconfigured retention rules defined in ILM for FS-PM ILM objects.
- Archived data belonging to a contract is deleted with the contract when the retention period of the contract is over.
- Data groups that do not belong to a contract have their own retention-date determination rules.

## End of Purpose (EoP) Check

For detailed information about the EoP check in Policy Management for Insurance, search for **Business Partner End of Purpose (EoP) - Checks in Policy Management for Insurance** in the documentation of [SAP S/4HANA](#).

### 13.14.10.2.3.4 Change Log

To log personal data, you can use the following standard functions of Policy Management for Insurance:

- Log of changes in contract journal
- Scrolling in journal
- Changes to a policy displayed in the policy summary
- Changes to a contract displayed in the contract summary

#### Caution

Changes to business partner data are logged in the business partner component since business partner data is not stored in Policy Management for Insurance.

### 13.14.10.2.4 Connected Product Engine

Policy Management for Insurance uses a product engine to check the actuarial aspects of the policy and to perform calculations. You can guarantee the security of the product engine system by using suitable user authorizations at operational level. You can rule out the influence of the product engine runtime and the used content by restricting access to the product engine (using BAdI /PM0/ABP\_AUTH\_BADI).

#### Caution

The product engine should always be located in the inner security zone.

The product engine does not save any in-force business data (stateless). It calculates and returns new application data from the application data supplied by Policy Management for Insurance. Therefore, the product engine does not change the in-force business data directly. This situation, along with the journal management and history management functions provided by Policy Management for Insurance, ensures to a large extent that the application data cannot be corrupted by the product engine.

### 13.14.10.3 Insurance Product Engine msg.PMQ

With the insurance product engine msg.PMQ, you can define and calculate insurance products. msg.PMQ consists of the following:

- Development environment for defining and developing insurance products (msg.PMQ Designer)
- Environment for regression tests and debugging
- Runtime component to calculate the insurance products (TomatosJ)

You can find all relevant security information in the SAP Note [2635866](#).

### 13.14.10.4 SAP Statutory Reporting for Insurance

#### 13.14.10.4.1 Deletion of Personal Data in FS-SR

##### Use

The *Statutory Reporting* (FS-SR) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. The business partners in the statutory reports can only be legal entities (in German: juristische Personen), not natural persons. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data in the applications providing the data, for example, in *Loans Management* (FS-CML). For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►. In FS-SR, business partner data can only be deleted manually, using deletion reports.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application Object	Detailed Description	Provided Deletion Functionality
Ledger Data Table	For more information, see SAP Note <a href="#">2304306</a> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Transaction ISSR_NB2</li><li>• Transaction ISSR_MIG5</li></ul>
Stored List		Transaction ISSR_OUT_ALV
Business Partner Change List		Transaction ISSR_DEL_CNS_GPCH

### 13.14.11 Engineering, Construction, and Operations

#### 13.14.11.1 Equipment and Tools Management

##### 13.14.11.1.1 Authorizations

Equipment and Tools Management (ETM) uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also apply.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

##### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.



## Standard Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects that are used:

Authorization Object	Description
J_3GBLART	Authorizations for document types
J_3GEQART2	CEM – Equipment Types for Document Category 2
J_3GEMPGR2	CEM - Recipient Groups, Document Category 2
J_3GBEWTP2	CEM – Transaction Types, Document Category 2
J_3GACTVT	CEM Allowed Activities
J_3GABRLST	Call CEM Settlement List for Organizational Units
J_3GDISPGR	MRP Group in Equipment
J_3GDDBER	Planning Area in Recipient
J_3G_TCODE	Transaction Code

### 13.14.11.1.2 Deletion of Personal Data

#### Use

Equipment and Tools Management (ETM) might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) ► *Product Assistance* ► *Cross Components* ► *Data Protection* ►.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Application	Provided Deletion Functionality
Equipment and Tools Management (IS-ADEC-ETM)	<p><b>Archiving Object</b></p> <p>/SAPCEM01</p> <p>/SAPCEM02</p> <p>/SAPCEM03</p> <p>/SAPCEM04</p> <p>/SAPCEM05</p> <p>/SAPCEM06</p> <p>/SAPCEM07</p> <p><b>ILM Object</b></p> <p>SAPCEM_01</p> <p>SAPCEM_02</p> <p>SAPCEM_07</p> <p><b>Reports</b></p> <p>/SAPCEM/ILM_DELETION_REP_01</p>

## Relevant Application Objects and Available EoP/WUC functionality

Application	Implemented Solution (EoP or WUC)	Further Information
Equipment and Tools Management (IS-ADEC-ETM)	EoP	Checks tables /SAPCEM/BDPO, J_3GBELP

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for [Cross-Application Components→Data Protection](#).

## 13.14.12 Oil and Gas

### 13.14.12.1 Upstream Operations Management

#### 13.14.12.1.1 Authorizations

SAP Oil & Gas uses the authorization concept provided by the SAP NetWeaver AS for ABAP. Therefore, the recommendations and guidelines for authorizations as described in the SAP NetWeaver AS Security Guide ABAP also applies.

The SAP NetWeaver authorization concept is based on assigning authorizations to users based on roles. For role maintenance, use the profile generator (transaction PFCG) on the AS ABAP.

#### **i** Note

For more information about how to create roles, see the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide under User Administration and Authentication.

### Standard Roles - Backend

SAP delivers standard roles covering the most frequent business transactions. You can use these roles as a template for your own roles.

In Oil & Gas, PFCG delta roles are used to access content in the application. To make the end-user role complete these roles must be used along with other roles delivered by SAP. Example roles are included in the table below. These roles are designed to support your IS-OIL business processes. The following roles are delivered:

Software Component IS-PRA

Role	Description
SAP_UPS_ALLOC_RES_APP	SAP Upstream Allocation Results
SAP_UPS_ALLOC_STAT_APP	SAP Upstream Network Allocation Status
SAP_UPS_BULKUPLOAD_APP	SAP UPS Upload Production Data
SAP_UPS_DEFER_EVT_APP	SAP Upstream View Deferment Events Application Role
SAP_UPS_DEFER_RES_APP	SAP Upstream Analyze Deferment Application Role
SAP_UPS_DEFER_WOEVT_APP	SAP Upstream Deferment Events for Work Orders Application Role
SAP_UPS_DTIMPORT	SAP Upstream Operations Management Data Import Role

SAP_SR_UOM_S4	NWBC Upstream Operations Management Role
SAP_UPS_FC_ACCESS_APP	SAP UOM Manage Access
SAP_UPS_FC_CALFCST_APP	SAP UOM Calculate Forecast
SAP_UPS_FC_GTHDATA_APP	SAP UOM Gather Data
SAP_UPS_FC_MNGPROJ_APP	SAP UOM Manage Projects
SAP_UPS_FC_RESULTS_APP	SAP UOM View Forecasting Results
SAP_UPS_FDC_APP	SAP Upstream Field Data
SAP_UPS_FIXERRORS_APP	SAP Upstream Fix Errors
SAP_UPS_MNGHIER_APP	SAP UPS Manage Hierarchy
SAP_UPS_FC_APFCSST_APP	SAP UOM Approve and Publish Forecast

## Roles and Standard Authorization Objects

### Deferment

#### Roles

- SAP\_UPS\_DEFER\_EVT\_APP: SAP Upstream View Deferment Events Application Role
- SAP\_UPS\_DEFER\_RES\_APP: SAP Upstream Analyze Deferment Application Role
- SAP\_UPS\_DEFER\_WOEVTT\_APP: SAP Upstream Deferment Events for Work Orders Application Role

#### Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects used in the Deferment area of Upstream Operations Management product in SAP Oil & Gas:

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
GHO_ALLOC	GHO_ACTVT (Activity in Operations Performance)	01 Allocation Run/Results	Authorization Object for OPM Activities
		02 Allocation Rules	
		03 Capture Measurements (Actual, Plan, Theoretical)	
		04 Well Test / PQ Curve	
		05 Chemical Analysis	
		06 Prior period notification	
		07 Maintenance Retrieval Hierarchy	
		08 Simulation / Planning	
		09 Reset prior period notification	
		10 Deferment App Result	
		11 Allocation App Result	
		12 FDC App Deferment Event	
		13 Allocation Pre-Processing	
		14 Deferment Event Maintenance	
		15 Deferment Event Maintenance for Work Orders	
GHO_D_EVT	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Create or generate	Authorization Objects for Deferment Events
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
	GHO_STATUS (UOM Record Status)	APRD Approved	
		EROR Error	
		PROV Provisional	
		PUBL Published	
		REDY Default Audit Comparison Record	
		VERF Verified	

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
GHO_NO	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Create or generate	Authorization Object for Network Objects
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		GHO_NO_ID (Network object name)	
GHO_PN	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Create or generate	Authorization Object for Production network
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
		GHO_PN_ID (Production network name )	

## Allocation

### Roles

- SAP\_UPS\_ALLOC\_RES\_APP: SAP Upstream Allocation Results
- SAP\_UPS\_ALLOC\_STAT\_APP: SAP Upstream Network Allocation Status

### Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects used in the Allocation area of Upstream Operations Management product in SAP Oil & Gas:

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
GHO_ALLOC	GHO_ACTVT (Activity in Operations Performance)	01 Allocation Run/Results	Authorization Object for OPM Activities
		02 Allocation Rules	
		03 Capture Measurements (Actual, Plan, Theoretical)	
		04 Well Test / PQ Curve	
		05 Chemical Analysis	
		06 Prior period notification	
		07 Maintenance Retrieval Hierarchy	
		08 Simulation / Planning	
		09 Reset prior period notification	
		10 Deferment App Result	
		11 Allocation App Result	
		12 FDC App Deferment Event	
		13 Allocation Pre-Processing	
		14 Deferment Event Maintenance	
		15 Deferment Event Maintenance for Work Orders	
GHO_A_RES	GHO_ACTION	APPV Approve	Authorization Object for Allocation Results
		PUBD Publish	
		SUBM Submit for Approval	
		VERFY Verify	
	GHO_PN_ID (Production network name )	GHO_STATUS (UOM Record Status)	APRD Approved
			EROR Error
			PROV Provisional
			PUBL Published
			REDY Default Audit Comparison Record
			VERF Verified

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
GHO_PN	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Create or generate	Authorization Object for Production network
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
	GHO_PN_ID (Production network name )		

## Field Data Capture

### Roles

- SAP\_UPS\_FDC\_APP: SAP Upstream Field Data
- SAP\_UPS\_FIXERRORS\_APP: SAP Upstream Fix Errors

### Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects used in the Field Data Capture area of Upstream Operations Management product in SAP Oil & Gas:



Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
GHO_ALLOC	GHO_ACTVT (Activity in Operations Performance)	01 Allocation Run/Results	Authorization Object for OPM Activities
		02 Allocation Rules	
		03 Capture Measurements (Actual, Plan, Theoretical)	
		04 Well Test / PQ Curve	
		05 Chemical Analysis	
		06 Prior period notification	
		07 Maintenance Retrieval Hierarchy	
		08 Simulation / Planning	
		09 Reset prior period notification	
		10 Deferment App Result	
		11 Allocation App Result	
		12 FDC App Deferment Event	
		13 Allocation Pre-Processing	
		14 Deferment Event Maintenance	
		15 Deferment Event Maintenance for Work Orders	
GHO_FDC	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Create or generate	Authorization Objects for Field Data Capture
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
	GHO_STATUS (UOM Record Status)	APRD Approved	
		EROR Error	
		PROV Provisional	
		PUBL Published	
		REDY Default Audit Comparison Record	
		VERF Verified	

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
GHO_NO	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Create or generate	Authorization Object for Network Objects
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
	GHO_NO_ID (Network object name)		
GHO_PN	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Create or generate	Authorization Object for Production network
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
		06 Delete	
	GHO_PN_ID (Production network name)		

## Forecasting

### Roles

- SAP\_UPS\_MNGHIER\_APP: SAP UPS Manage Hierarchy
- SAP\_UPS\_FC\_MNGPROJ\_APP: SAP UPS Manage Forecast Projects
- SAP\_UPS\_FC\_ACCESS\_APP: SAP UPS Manage Forecast Access
- SAP\_UPS\_FC\_GTHDATA\_APP: SAP UPS Gather Forecast Data
- SAP\_UPS\_FC\_CALFCST\_APP: SAP UPS Calculate Forecast
- SAP\_UPS\_FC\_RESULTS\_APP: SAP UPS View Forecast Results
- SAP\_UPS\_FC\_APCST\_APP: SAP UPS Approve and Publish Forecast

### Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects used in the Forecasting area of Upstream Operations Management product in SAP Oil & Gas:

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
GHO_FC_HI	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Add or Create	Authorization Obj for Hierarchy Maintenance in Forecasting
		02 Change	
		03 Display	
B_USERST_T	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Add or Create	Status Management: Set/Delete User Status using Transaction
		06 Delete	
	OBTYP (Object Category)		

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
	BERSL (Authorization key)		
	STSMA (Status Profile)		
B_USERSTAT	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Add or Create 06 Delete	Authorization Object for Network Objects
	OBTYP (Object Category)		
	BERSL (Authorization key)		
	STSMA (Status Profile)		
GHO_FC_PR	ACTVT (Activity)	01 Add or Create	Authorization Object for Project in Forecasting
S_BTCH_JOB	JOBACTION (Job operations)	RELE Release Jobs (Released Automatically When Scheduled)	Background Processing: Operations on Background Jobs
	JOBGROUP (Summary of jobs for a group)		
MDG_DIF	ACTVT (Activity)	16 Execute 67 Translate	Data Import
	MDG_OBJTYP (Business Object Type)		

## Data Import Framework

### Roles

- SAP\_UPS\_DTIMPORT: SAP Upstream Operations Management Data Import Role
- SAP\_UPS\_BULKUPLOAD\_APP: SAP UPS Upload Production Data

### Authorization Objects

The table below shows the security-relevant authorization objects used in the Data Import Framework area of Upstream Operations Management product in SAP Oil & Gas:

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
MDG_DIF	ACTVT (Activity)	16 Execute 67 Translate	Data Import

Authorization Object	Field	Value	Description
	MDG_OBJTYP(Business Object Type)	DM_EVENT UOM: Import Deferment Events	
		FD_METER UOM : FDC Meter Reading Data	

## Critical Combinations

### Roles Creation in PFCG

1. Standard role: SAP\_UPS\_DEFER\_RES\_APP
2. Copy the standard role to a new role and change the authorization as per required by the user .  
For Example: Role created is: Z\_RES\_CREATE  
Authorizations provided to the role to view particular production network (HK\_PN) and to create and display the event for this particular production network.  
So the user to which this role would be assigned, will only be able to see View/Create the event for this particular production network.
3. Assign the same to the user.
4. Log in with the same user in the application.
5. Create event for the same.

## Standard Fiori Business Roles

The table below shows the standard Fiori business roles used in Upstream Operations Management product in SAP Oil & Gas:

### Software Component UIS4HOP1 - UI for S/4HANA On Premise

Role	Description
SAP_BR_BUSINESS_ANALYST_IOG	Business Analyst (IOG)
SAP_BR_DEFERMENT_ANALYST_IOG	Deferment Analyst (IOG)
SAP_BR_FC_ANALYST_PROD_IOG	Forecast Analyst - Production (IOG)
SAP_BR_FIELD_OPERATOR_IOG	Field Operator (IOG)
SAP_BR_FORECAST_MANAGER_IOG	Forecast Manager (IOG)
SAP_BR_FORECAST_SPECIALIST_IOG	Forecast Specialist (IOG)
SAP_BR_HYDROCARBON_ANALYST_IOG	Hydrocarbon Analyst (IOG)

## 13.14.12.1.2 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

- For Oil and Gas, Upstream Operations Management (UOM) module the following services are needed:
  - Allocation
    - GHO\_WDA\_ALLOC\_MC\_OIF (Capture Measurements)
    - GHO\_WDA\_ALLOC\_RESULTS\_OIF (Display Allocation Results)
    - GHO\_WDA\_ALLOC\_RULES\_OIF (Process Allocation Rules)
    - GHO\_WDA\_ALLOC\_MRH\_OIF (Process MRH Rules)
  - Network Object
    - GHO\_WDA\_NETOBJ\_OIF (Create a Network Object)
    - GHO\_WDA\_NETOBJ\_OIF (Change a Network Object)
    - GHO\_WDA\_NETOBJ\_OIF (Display a Network Object)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OG\_ENTITY (Create an Oil & Gas Entity)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OG\_ENTITY (Change an Oil & Gas Entity)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OG\_ENTITY (Display an Oil & Gas Entity)
- Ownership
  - Division of Interest
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_OIF (Create a Division of Interest (DOI))
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_OIF (Change a Division of Interest (DOI))
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_OIF (Display a Division of Interest (DOI))
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_NET\_ASG\_OIF (Assign a Division of Interest to Network Objects)
  - Scale Method
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_SM\_OIF (Create a Sliding Scale Method)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_SM\_OIF (Change a Sliding Scale Method)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_SM\_OIF (Display a Sliding Scale Method)
  - Business Partner
    - Process Business Partner
  - Owner Transfer Request
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_TRO\_GAF (Create an Owner Request)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_TRO\_GAF (Change an Owner Request)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_TRO\_GAF (Display an Owner Request)
  - Reports (Display Only)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_RPT\_OIF (Oil & Gas Business Partner Report)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_RPT\_OIF (Division of Interest Owners)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_RPT\_OIF (Well Completions Assigned to Division of Interest)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_RPT\_OIF (Division of Interest History Report)
    - GHO\_WDA\_OWN\_RPT\_OIF (Ownership Entitlement Results)
- Network Modeling

- GHO\_NETWORK\_OIF (Model a Production Network Structure)
- GHO\_NETWORK\_OIF (Display a Production Network Structure)

For running SAP Fiori applications for Upstream Operations Management please activate some of the common SICF node. These SICF node needs to be activated on the front end server (SAP NetWeaver Gateway).

Activate the following SICF nodes specific to Upstream Operations Management Fiori Applications:

- UIS4HOP1 - UI for S/4HANA On Premise
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_alloc\_ress1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_alloc\_stas1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_blkuploads1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_commonss1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_defer\_evts1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_defer\_ress1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_def\_woevts1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fc\_accesss1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fc\_apfcsts1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fc\_calfcsts1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fc\_cmpress1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fc\_ghdatas1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fc\_mngpros1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fc\_results1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fdcs1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_fixerrorss1
  - /sap/bc/ui5\_ui5/sap/ups\_mnghiers1
- Activate the following SICF nodes of OData services being used by Fiori applications:
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_bulk\_upld
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_common
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_def\_event
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_def\_result
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_def\_work\_order
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_fc\_appr\_pub
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_fc\_calc\_fcst
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_fc\_gatherdata
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_fc\_mng\_access
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_fc\_mng\_project
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_fc\_view\_res
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_field\_data\_capture
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_fix\_error
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_hca\_result
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_hca\_status
  - /sap/opu/odata/sap/ups\_mng\_hierarchy

### 13.14.12.1.3 Other Security-Relevant Information

The following table shows an overview of the data flow in UOM in a two system DMZ environment. Data access is separated from the presentation layer, which is running on the second machine. The UI is accessed using HTTP or HTTPS.

Step	Description	Security Measure
User Interface: FPM-based ABAP Web-Dynpro with Unified Rendering	Data requests, updates, and actions are triggered from the UI.	ABAP WebDynpro, unified rendering, access using HTTP or HTTPS
PLM UI Framework	Infrastructure for communication between GUIBBs/WebDynpro context and SPI connector	
SPI Connector (DMZ System)	Acting like a proxy for the back end SPI connector.	Metadata is read from back end only
RFC	RFC based data transfer between DMZ system and ERP back end system; xstring based data transfer	Protocol switch to RFC; White list for table based data transfer; Sync with metadata model in connector
SPI Connector (Back End System)	A standardized interface that is used to transfer data from the application service provider to the UI framework consumer.	Validation against metadata definition during data transfer
Application Service Provider	Implementation	Additional metadata definition

### 13.14.12.1.4 Information Report

#### Prerequisites

##### i Note

You need to implement the following notes to use Data Protection and Privacy in UOM:

- Data Privacy Requirement (DPP) DDIC: 2560898
- Data Privacy Requirement (DPP): 2586829

Vendor and Business Partner Where-Used Information Report (`GHO_R_DPP_MAP_PERS_DATA`)

This report shall provide a detailed where used list for the given vendor and business partner in UOM. For this, the report needs to be run with option `<Find Where-used Personal Data>`. The following technical details shall be provided:

- Table Name and description
- Field Name and description

- Personal Data identifier (V, B)
- Personal Data object ID

## 13.14.12.1.5 Deletion of Personal Data

### Prerequisites

#### i Note

You need to implement the following notes to use Data Protection and Privacy in UOM:

- Data Privacy Requirement (DPP) DDIC: 2560898
- Data Privacy Requirement (DPP): 2586829

**Simplified Blocking and Deletion:** When considering compliance with data protection regulations, it is also necessary to consider compliance with industry-specific legislation in different countries. A typical potential scenario in certain countries is that personal data shall be deleted after the specified, explicit, and legitimate purpose for the processing of personal data has ended, but only as long as no other retention periods are defined in legislation, for example, retention periods for financial documents. Legal requirements in certain scenarios or countries also often require blocking of data in cases where the specified, explicit, and legitimate purposes for the processing of this data have ended, however, the data still has to be retained in the database due to other legally mandated retention periods. In some scenarios, personal data also includes referenced data. Therefore, the challenge for deletion and blocking is first to handle referenced data and finally other data, such as business partner data.

**Deletion of personal data:** The processing of personal data is subject to applicable laws related to the deletion of this data when the specified, explicit, and legitimate purpose for processing this personal data has expired. If there is no longer a legitimate purpose that requires the retention and use of personal data, it must be deleted. When deleting data in a data set, all referenced objects related to that data set must be deleted as well. Industry-specific legislation in different countries also needs to be taken into consideration in addition to general data protection laws. After the expiration of the longest retention period, the data must be deleted.

Upstream Operations Management might process data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note 1825544.

The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. Upstream Operations Management uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

- SAP delivers an end of purpose check for the Upstream Operations Management
- SAP delivers a where-used check (WUC) for the Upstream Operations Management

### 13.14.12.1.5.1 End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases:

**Phase one:** The relevant data is actively used.



**Phase two:** The relevant data is actively available in the system.

**Phase three:** The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons:

For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked.

Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

**Display:** The system does not display blocked data.

**Change:** It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data.

**Create:** It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.

**Copy/Follow-Up:** It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.

**Search:** It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

## 13.14.12.15.1.1 Vendor/Business Partner Replacement Utility for End of Purpose

A replacement utility shall be provided to make the original vendor and business partner (BP) anonymous, who has met EoP with a dummy vendor/BP. The mapping between the original and the dummy vendor and business partner is retained temporarily (until retention period) in an audit table (GHO\_DPP\_T\_MAP). The audit record is erased at the end of retention period. You have to run it when you decide to end the purpose for a vendor or business partner in UOM.

Following are the steps to execute the Utility report:

- Once a decision is made to end the purpose of a UOM vendor/business partner, the End of Purpose Utility report GHO\_R\_DPP\_MAP\_PERS\_DATA with option <Execute End of Purpose> can be initiated.
- The report presents you with a selection screen offering two fields for input: MULTIDRAG
  - Type of Personal data object as Vendor or Business partner
  - Original Personal data ID (Vendor/BP Number to be replaced in UOM)
  - With option 'Execute End of Purpose'
  - New Dummy Personal data ID (Vendor/BP Number by which Original Vendor/BP is to be replaced)
- On providing these mandatory inputs, you can continue with the execution of the report, which replaces the original vendor or business partner in the UOM database tables with the dummy vendor/BP.

The report output gives a confirmation of replacement of Original Vendor/BP Number by the Dummy Vendor/BP Number.

The report ends by recording the timestamp of this replacement run in a database table (GHO\_DPP\_T\_MAP) for auditing purposes.

Make sure that you should replace one Vendor/BP at a time. During this process, there should not be made any changes in transactional data for a Vendor/BP which is being replaced.

### 13.14.12.1.5.1.2 ILM End of purpose Check

The UOM application shall determine the EoP for a vendor and return the corresponding status to the ILM application. If the EoP for a certain vendor has been met, that is you have run Vendor Replacement Utility to replace vendor, the application shall return end-of-purpose indicator and the start-of-retention-time date based on the ILM configuration.

Following status shall be returned:

- If vendor is not found in UOM, application shall return "PURPOSE\_COMPLETION\_STATUS" as '1' = (no business made with Vendor at all).
- If vendor is found in UOM and not found in the audit table (filled by UOM vendor replacement utility), application shall return "PURPOSE\_COMPLETION\_STATUS" as '2' = (business is ongoing with Vendor).
- If vendor is not found in UOM and is found in the audit table, application shall return "PURPOSE\_COMPLETION\_STATUS" as '3' = (business is completed with Vendor ).

### 13.14.12.1.5.2 Where-Used Check (WUC)

A where-used check is a simple check to ensure data integrity in case of potential blocking. The WUC for this product checks whether any dependent data for a vendor or central business partner (cBP) exists in the respective table. If dependent data exists, that is, if the data is still required for business activities, the system does not block that specific vendor or cBP.

If you still want to block the data, the dependent data must be first replaced (End of Purpose) by the replacement utility.

### 13.14.12.1.5.3 Process Flow

- Before destruction data, you must define residence time and retention periods in SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).
- You do the following:
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the vendor (audit area: GENERAL)/business partner(audit area: BUPA\_DP) with ILM object GHO\_DPP\_DES\_MAP\_DELETE).
  - Run transaction BUPA\_PREPARE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the business partner.
  - Run transaction CVP\_PREPARE\_EOP to enable the end of purpose check function for the vendor master.

- You delete data from mapping table and change documents by using the report `GHO_DPP_DES_MAP_DELETE_DES` for the ILM objects of Upstream Operations Management.

## 13.14.12.1.5.4 Change Log

Person-related data is subject to frequent changes. Therefore, for revision purposes or as a result of legal regulations, it may be necessary to be able to track the changes made. If these changes are logged, at any time you can check which employee made which change and when.

Change log has been enabled for Vendor Specific fields in UOM. You can execute program `RSSCD200` to get the change information of these documents.

### See Also

For more information on change documents see the documentation at <http://help.sap.com/netweaver>. Choose the relevant SAP NetWeaver version and open the following documentation:

Under Application Help, go to ► [SAP NetWeaver Library: Function-Oriented View](#) ► [Application Server ABAP](#) ► [Other Services](#) ► [Services for Application Developers](#) ► [Change Documents](#) ►.

Open the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide and go to ► [Security Aspects for Lifecycle Management](#) ►► [Auditing and Logging](#) ►.

## 13.14.12.2 IS-OIL Downstream

### 13.14.12.2.1 Internet Communication Framework Security (ICF)

You should only activate those services that are needed for the applications running in your system. For the Fiori apps My Nominations , Regional Inventory View and Mass Change Events in the TSW area, following services are needed:

- `TSW_MYNOMINATIONS_SRV_01`
- `TSW_REGIONAL_INVENTORY_SRV_01`
- `TSW_MYEVENTS_SRV`

Use the transaction SICF to activate these services.

If your firewall(s) use URL filtering, also note the URLs used for the services and adjust your firewall settings accordingly.

For more information about ICF security, see the respective chapter in the SAP NetWeaver Security Guide.

## 13.14.12.2.2 Deletion of Personal Data

The *IS-OIL Downstream* might process data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note 1825544.

The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. The *IS-OIL Downstream* uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

- SAP delivers an end of purpose check for the *IS-OIL Downstream*
- SAP delivers a where-used check (WUC) for the *IS-OIL Downstream*

All applications register either an end of purpose check (EoP) in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of the customer and vendor master or a WUC. For information about the Customizing of blocking and deletion for *IS-OIL Downstream* application, see Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

### End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases.

- **Phase one:** The relevant data is actively used.
- **Phase two:** The relevant data is actively available in the system.
- **Phase three:** The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.  
For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked. Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- **Display:** The system does not display blocked data.
- **Change:** It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data
- **Create:** It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Copy/Follow-Up:** It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Search:** It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three-phase based end of purpose check, see Process Flow and Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

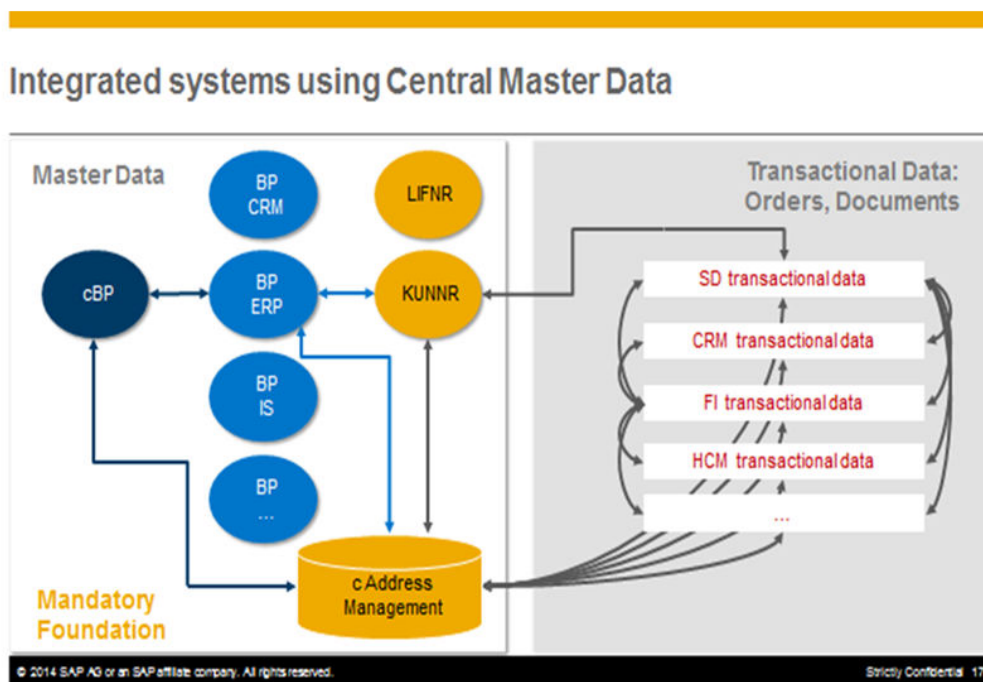
IS-OIL Downstream provides the following functionality for the EoP check of the Vehicle/Driver/Transport Unit:

- The application searches for the following data with relation to vehicle:
  - There are no open TD shipments where the vehicle is scheduled
  - There are no open nominations
  - Any shipment yet to be settled for shipment costing (VFKK- STBER)

- If any of the transportation units are linked to a Vehicle (in OIGVTU table) is not blocked for EoP
- Vehicle blocking checks if it is used in any Load ID which is not marked for deletion
- Vehicle cannot be blocked if any document having this vehicle in TSW details tab (OIJ\_EL\_CP\_LAYT-VEHICLE) is still not complete
- The application searches for the following data with relation to driver:
  - There should be no open TD shipments where the driver is assigned
  - Driver blocking checks if it is used in any Load ID which is not marked for deletion.
- The application searches for the following data with relation to transport unit:
  - Vehicles linked to the transport unit has any open shipments
  - Vehicles linked to the transport unit has any open nominations
  - Vehicles linked to the transport unit has any shipment yet to be settled for shipment costing

## Integration with Other Solutions

In the majority of cases, different installed applications run interdependently as shown in following graphic.



An example of an application that uses central master data is an SAP for Healthcare (IS-H) application that uses the purchase order data stored in Financial Accounting (FI) or Controlling (CO).

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

<i>Application</i>	<i>Detailed Description</i>	<i>Provided Deletion Functionality</i>
IS-OIL Downstream	<p>The customer/vendor blocking report will check the consuming application to determine end of purpose of the customer/vendor.</p> <p>In an IS-OIL system, in addition to the EOP checks performed by SD,MM ,FI application the checks for usage of the customer/vendor in <i>IS-OIL Downstream</i> application has to be made.</p> <p>The IS-OIL application has to register itself under the customer master data and vendor master data as consuming applications that need to be checked for EoP . EOP. Check logic in IS-OIL will be delivered in the class CVP_OIL_EOP_CHECK .</p>	<p>ILM Enabled Archiving objects:</p> <p>OIG_DRIVER</p> <p>OIG_VEHICLE</p> <p>OIG_TPUNIT</p> <p>OIJ_NOMIN</p> <p>OIJ_TICKET</p> <p>IS_OIFSPBL</p> <p>Data Destruction objects:</p> <p>OIJ_SCHED_DESTRUCTION</p> <p>OIJ_PARTNER_DESTRUCTION</p> <p>OIA_EXGDOCU_DESTRUCTION</p> <p>OIL_TAS_TPI_DESTRUCTION</p>
Decoupled TSW TSW_ECC	<p>The customer/vendor blocking report will check the consuming application to determine end of purpose of the customer/vendor.</p> <p>In a Decoupled TSW scenario , the checks for usage of customer/vendor in TSW application specific documents like nomination is made.</p> <p>The TSW_ECC application has to register itself under the customer master data and vendor master data as consuming applications that need to be checked for EoP . EOP Check logic in TSW_ECC will be delivered in the class CVP_TSW_ECC_CHECK.</p>	<p>ILM Enabled Archiving objects:</p> <p>OIG_VEHICLE</p> <p>OIG_TPUNIT</p> <p>OIJ_NOMIN</p> <p>OIJ_TICKET</p> <p>IS_OIFSPBL</p> <p>Data Destruction objects:</p> <p>OIJ_SCHED_DESTRUCTION</p> <p>OIJ_PARTNER_DESTRUCTION</p>

### Process Flow

- Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in *SAP Information Lifecycle Management* (ILM).
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA (ILM objects: FI\_ACCPAYB, FI\_ACCRECV, FI\_ACCKNVK).
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required retention policies for the ILM objects of *IS OIL Downstream*, application or *Decoupled TSW* .
- You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available

3. To determine which business partners have reached end of purpose and can be blocked, you do the following:
  - Run transaction `CVP_PRE_EOP` to execute the end of purpose check function for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA.
4. To unblock blocked business partner data, you do the following
  - Request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction `BUP_REQ_UNBLK`.
  - If you have the needed authorization for unblocking business partner data, you can unblock the requested data by running the transaction `CVP_UNBLOCK_MD` for customer master data and vendor master data in SAP S/4HANA.
5. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of *IS OIL Downstream* or *Decoupled TSW*.

## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management under **► Data Protection ► Authorization Management ►**  
For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking under **► Data Protection ► Blocking and Unblocking ► Business Partner ►**

*IS-OIL Downstream* provides the following reports for blocking Vehicle, Driver and Transport Unit:

- `OIG_BLOCK_VEHICLE` - Block Vehicle Master Data  
You can use this report to block IS-OIL vehicle master data that are no longer required for any business purpose. As it is still within the retention period, the data is blocked, but not, deleted. The blocked data is no longer available for any business transactions or business use and is no longer displayed in existing business objects. You can neither create nor edit new business objects or conduct follow-up activities on blocked data.  
The determination of whether data can be blocked is in accordance with the end of purpose (EoP) check. When all applications confirm that there is either no business related to the data or that its original purpose is completed, the master data can be blocked. Once the vehicle master data is blocked, only users that have a role based on the following attributes can display blocked data:
  - Authorization object `O_OIG_VEH`
  - Activity 03, DISPLAY
- `OIG_BLOCK_DRIVER`- Block Driver Master Data  
You can use this report to block IS-OIL driver master data that are no longer required for any business purpose. As it is still within the retention period, the data is blocked, but not, deleted. The blocked data is no longer available for any business transactions or business use and is no longer displayed in existing business objects. You can neither create nor edit new business objects or conduct follow-up activities on blocked data.  
The determination of whether data can be blocked is in accordance with the end of purpose (EoP) check. When all applications confirm that there is either no business related to the data or that its original purpose is completed, the master data can be blocked. Once the driver master data is blocked, only users that have a role based on the following attributes can display blocked data:
  - Authorization object `O_OIG_DRV`
  - Activity 03, DISPLAY

- `OIG_BLOCK_TRANS_UNIT` - Block Transport Unit Master Data

You can use this report to block IS-OIL transport unit master data that are no longer required for any business purpose. As it is still within the retention period, the data is blocked, but not, deleted. The blocked data is no longer available for any business transactions or business use and is no longer displayed in existing business objects. You can neither create nor edit new business objects or conduct follow-up activities on blocked data.

The determination of whether data can be blocked is in accordance with the end of purpose (EoP) check. When all applications confirm that there is either no business related to the data or that its original purpose is completed, the master data can be blocked. Once the transport unit master data is blocked, only users that have a role based on the following attributes can display blocked data:

- Authorization object `O_OIG_VTU`
- Activity 03, DISPLAY

### 13.14.12.2.3 Read Access Logging

If no trace or log is stored that records which business users have accessed data, it is difficult to track the person(s) responsible for any data leaks to the outside world. The *Read Access Logging* (RAL) component can be used to monitor and log read access to data and provide information such as which business users accessed personal data, for example, of a business partner, and in which time frame.

*IS-OIL Downstream* provides Read Access Logging configuration for `IS-OIL` TD Driver License Number. For more information, see SAP Note 2609910.

Read Access Logging is activated for the Display Driver transaction.

In RAL, you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

For more information, see *Read Access Logging* in the documentation for *SAP NetWeaver* on the SAP Help Portal under <http://help.sap.com>.

## 13.14.12.3 Remote Logistics Management

### 13.14.12.3.1 Deletion of Personal Data

The *Remote Logistics Management (RLM)* might process data that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries as described in SAP Note 1825544.

The SAP Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) component supports the entire software lifecycle including the storage, retention, blocking, and deletion of data. The *Remote Logistics Management* uses SAP ILM to support the deletion of personal data as described in the following sections.

- SAP delivers an end of purpose check for the *Remote Logistics Management*

All applications register either an End of Purpose (EoP) check in the Customizing settings for the blocking and deletion of the customer and vendor master or a Where Used Check (WUC). For information about the Customizing of blocking and deletion for *Remote Logistics Management* application, see Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.



## End of Purpose Check (EoP)

An end of purpose check determines whether data is still relevant for business activities based on the retention period defined for the data. The retention period of data consists of the following phases.

- **Phase one:** The relevant data is actively used.
- **Phase two:** The relevant data is actively available in the system.
- **Phase three:** The relevant data needs to be retained for other reasons.  
For example, processing of data is no longer required for the primary business purpose, but to comply with legal rules for retention, the data must still be available. In phase three, the relevant data is blocked. Blocking of data prevents the business users of SAP applications from displaying and using data that may include personal data and is no longer relevant for business activities.

Blocking of data can impact system behavior in the following ways:

- **Display:** The system does not display blocked data.
- **Change:** It is not possible to change a business object that contains blocked data
- **Create:** It is not possible to create a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Copy/Follow-Up:** It is not possible to copy a business object or perform follow-up activities for a business object that contains blocked data.
- **Search:** It is not possible to search for blocked data or to search for a business object using blocked data in the search criteria.

It is possible to display blocked data if a user has special authorization; however, it is still not possible to create, change, copy, or perform follow-up activities on blocked data.

For information about the configuration settings required to enable this three-phase based end of purpose check, see Process Flow and Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion.

## End of Purpose Check in RLM

The end-of-purpose check for RLM ensures data integrity in the event of potential blocking. It checks whether the Vendor or Customer passed is present in the RLM specific tables and returns the following status:

- If there is no data present in the RLM tables the system returns a status of **'1'** (No business made with Vendor or Customer) back to the blocking report.
- If there is data present in the RLM tables the system returns a status of **'2'** (Business is ongoing with Vendor or Customer) back to the blocking report.

### End of Purpose Check in ERP Customer or Vendor

Application	Rule	Check
RLM-P Shipping and Container Management	Do not block the customer or vendor if there are any open status containers which have the customer or vendor as a partner.	Checks table OIO_CNTNR for any open status containers.

Application	Rule	Check
RLM-R Returns Management	Do not block the customer or vendor if there are any open material returns or container returns which have the customer or vendor as a partner.	Checks table OIO_RT_RTDOC for any open status return documents.

## Relevant Application Objects and Available Deletion Functionality

Archived business data is destroyed after the retention time has expired. This applies to the following application objects:

Application	Archive Objects	Requirement
RLM-P Shipping and Container Management	OIO_CTHST: RLM Container History Data OIO_CNTNR: RLM Container Master Data OIO_VOYAGE: RLM Voyage Data	Need to be ILM enabled
RLM-R Returns Management	OIO_RTDOC: Returns Document OIO_OBJFLW: RLM Document Flow Index	Need to be ILM enabled



## Process Flow

- Before archiving data, you must define residence time and retention periods in [SAP Information Lifecycle Management \(ILM\)](#).
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required residence and retention policies for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA (ILM objects: FI\_ACCPAYB, FI\_ACCRECV, FI\_ACCKNVK).
  - Run transaction IRMPOL and maintain the required retention policies for the ILM objects of [Remote Logistics Management](#), application.
- You choose whether data deletion is required for data stored in archive files or data stored in the database, also depending on the type of deletion functionality available.
- To determine which business partners have reached end of purpose and can be blocked, you do the following:
  - Run transaction CVP\_PRE\_EOP to execute the end of purpose check function for the customer master and vendor master in SAP S/4HANA.
- To unblock blocked business partner data, you do the following:
  - Request unblocking of blocked data by using the transaction BUP\_REQ\_UNBLK.

- If you have the needed authorization for unblocking business partner data, you can unblock the requested data by running the transaction `CVP_UNBLOCK_MD` for customer master data and vendor master data in SAP S/4HANA.
- 5. You delete data by using the transaction `ILM_DESTRUCTION` for the ILM objects of *Remote Logistics Management*.


## Configuration: Simplified Blocking and Deletion

You configure the settings related to the blocking and deletion of business partner master data in Customizing for *Cross-Application Components* under *Data Protection*.

- Define the settings for authorization management under [Data Protection](#) > [Authorization Management](#)    
For more information, see the Customizing documentation.
- Define the settings for blocking under [Data Protection](#) > [Blocking and Unblocking](#) > [Business Partner](#) 

## 13.15 Country-Specifics

### 13.15.1 Deletion of Personal Data in Business Applications

The country-specific applications in the components of the listed business applications might process data (personal data) that is subject to the data protection laws applicable in specific countries. You can use *SAP Information Lifecycle Management* (ILM) to control the blocking and deletion of personal data. For more information, see the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under [Product Assistance](#) > [Cross Components](#) > [Data Protection](#) .

For information about the available application objects and deletion functionality, see the country-specific function descriptions in the product assistance for SAP S/4HANA on the SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/s4hana\\_op\\_1709\\_002](http://help.sap.com/s4hana_op_1709_002) under *Product Assistance* by navigating to the specific function you are interested in.

## 13.15.2 Specific Read Access Log Configurations

### Use

In Read Access Logging (RAL), you can configure which read-access information to log and under which conditions.

SAP delivers sample configurations for applications.

You can find the configurations as described in the [Read Access Logging \[page 31\]](#) chapter.

In the following country-specific configurations, fields are logged in combination with additional fields, in the following business contexts:

China

Channel	Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
Web Dynpro	Recording: BOE_BANK_ACCOUNTS _OP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BOE_DRAWER_ACCOUNT</li> <li>• BOE_DRAWEE_ACCOUNT</li> </ul>	Logs read access to the <Drawee Bank Account> and <Drawer Bank Account> fields in bill of exchange documents and reports.
Web Dynpro	Recording: GTI_BANKACCOUNT_W EBDYNPRO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bank Account</li> <li>• Payer Bank Account Detail</li> <li>• Payer Bank Name</li> </ul>	Logs read access to the fields of Bank Account, Payer Bank Detail and Payer Bank Name for Golden Tax Interface.
Dynpro	Recording: EPIC_ITEM	BANKN	Logs read access to the <Bank Account> field.
SAP Gateway	Service ID: EPIC_BANK_RECONCI LITATION_SRV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BANKN</li> <li>• CREATED_USER</li> </ul>	Logs read access to the <Bank Account> and <Created User> fields.
SAP Gateway	Service ID: EPIC_BANK_RECO_ST ATEMENT_SRV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BANKN</li> <li>• CREATED_USER</li> </ul>	Logs read access to the <Bank Account> and <Created User> fields.

Italy

Channel	Configuration	Fields Logged	Business Context
Dynpro	Recording: BANK_BP_CUPCIG_IT	BANK_CUP_IT-BANKL <i>(Bank Key)</i>  BANK_CUP_IT-BANKN <i>(Bank Account)</i>	Logs read access activities for bank key and bank account on business partner, and CUP/CIG bank assignment.

Thailand

<b>Channel</b>	<b>Configuration</b>	<b>Fields Logged</b>	<b>Business Context</b>
Dynpro	BRANCH_CODE_DYNPR O	J_1TPBUPL	Logs read access to the field Branch Code (J_1TPBUPL). Branch code is regarded as sensitive data in customers' master data for Thailand.
Dynpro	TH_VAT_BCODE	\$_LIST_CODE	Logs read access to Thailand branch codes when the VAT report is generated.

# 14 Business Network Integration

SAP S/4HANA currently supports integration scenarios with the Ariba Network (including Ariba Sourcing via the Ariba Network), and with SAP Fieldglass.

## 14.1 Security Aspects for Connectivity Types

In all of the connectivity types described below, only the on-premise system opens the connection to the Cloud, thus supporting the highest level of security. A proxy or reverse proxy in the demilitarized zone (DMZ) is not required.

The SAP S/4HANA system communicates with the business networks through the HTTPS protocol, encrypting transmitted data.

### Direct Connectivity

For **direct** connectivity, SAP S/4HANA always opens the connection by executing the following actions:

- SAP S/4HANA pushes cXML messages to the business networks (synchronous)
- The Polling Agent in SAP S/4HANA fetches pending messages from the business networks (synchronous)

### Mediated Connectivity

For **mediated** connectivity, the SAP S/4HANA system connects through SAP PI. The connection functions as follows:

- SAP S/4HANA pushes cXML messages to SAP PI (asynchronous)
- The *Ariba Network Adapter for SAP NetWeaver* triggers its Polling Agent to fetch pending cXML messages from Ariba Network. The Polling Agent in the PI adapter then pushes the cXML messages to the SAP S/4HANA system (asynchronous).

If SAP S/4HANA communicates with Ariba Network through SAP PI, there are no special security requirements.

#### i Note

For mediated connectivity, Ariba provides information on how to communicate with Ariba Network in the *Ariba Network Adapter for SAP NetWeaver Setup Guide*. You can contact Ariba for more information.

## 14.2 Direct Connectivity: SAP S/4HANA as Client

When sending a cXML message to a business network, the sender must authenticate itself:

- SAP Fieldglass supports authentication by client certificate.
- Ariba Network offers authentication with client certificate or with shared secret password. Both authentication methods are also supported by SAP S/4HANA. For more information about the authentication methods on Ariba Network, contact SAP Ariba.

### i Note

Communication with the Ariba Network and with SAP Fieldglass is based on HTTPS. For HTTPS SSL encryption, SAP Cryptographic Library is required. For information about installing the SAP Cryptographic Library, search for “The SAP Cryptographic Library Installation Package” in the documentation of SAP NetWeaver at <http://help.sap.com/nw>.

### Authentication with Client Certificate (Ariba Network Only)

For authentication with client certificate it is strongly recommended that you use the latest version of the SAP Cryptographic Library (`SAPCRYPTOLIB`). For more information about latest SAP Cryptographic Library versions, bugs, and fixes see SAP Note [455033](#).

### i Note

Only certificates in Personal Security Environment (PSE) format can be imported. Certificates in other formats must first be converted to PSE format. The conversion can be done using the command line tool `SAPGENPSE`. The tool can be installed with SAP Cryptographic Library installation package.

For example, to convert from P12 (Public-Key Cryptography Standards) format to PSE format, enter the following command line:

```
sapgenpse import_p12 -v -r <root certificate> -p <Target PSE file> <Source File>
```

Setting up authentication with client certificate includes the following steps:

1. Get the client certificate from a Certification Authority (CA) that is trusted by Ariba.
2. Import the private key of the certificate into the SAP S/4HANA system by using *Trust Manager* (transaction `STRUST`).
  1. To store the client certificate in SAP S/4HANA, you have to create a new Client Identity in *Trust Manager*. Proceed as follows:
    1. Choose **Environment** > **SSL Client Identities**, enter **ARIBA** as the identity name and **Ariba Network Client** as the description.
    2. Save your entries.
  2. Import the private key of the certificate in Trust Manager. Proceed as follows:
    1. Select the created **ARIBA** SSL Client ID and choose **PSE** > **Import** to import the PSE file.
    2. Enter the password for the certificate, if required.

3. Save your PSE file by choosing **► PSE ► Save as ► SSL Client** and enter **ARIBA** as the SSL Client.
  4. Navigate to the *Own Certificate* group box on the *Trust Manager* screen, and double-click the certificate to add it to the certificate list. The certificate is now shown in *Trust Manager in Certificate List*.
3. Import the root certificate into the SAP S/4HANA system by using *Trust Manager*. Proceed as follows:
    1. Double-click the SSL Client Identity **ARIBA** that you have created.
    2. Navigate to the *Certificate* group box and choose *Import certificate*. Add the imported certificate to the certificate list by clicking *Add to Certificate List*.
  4. For HTTPS SSL encryption, obtain the server certificate from Ariba. Proceed as follows:
    1. Go to buyer.ariba.com.
    2. Download the certificate using your browser.  
For example, if you are using Internet Explorer, choose **► View ► Security Report ► View Certificates**. On the *Details* tab page, choose *Copy to File* and export it in the Base-64 encoded X.509 format.
    3. Import the server certificate into the SAP S/4HANA system using *Trust Manager*.
    4. Double click the **ARIBA** SSL Client ID that you have created.
    5. Navigate to the *Certificate* group box and choose *Import certificate*. Add the imported certificate to the certificate list by clicking *Add to Certificate List*.
  5. To activate the changes, restart the Internet Communication Manager (ICM) using transaction `SMICM` and choose **► Administration ► ICM ► Restart ► Yes**. For more information, search for the phrase *Using the ICM Monitor* in the documentation of SAP NetWeaver at help.sap.com.
  6. Configure the Web services in SOA Manager (transaction `SOAMANAGER`). Find the following consumer proxies:
    - `cXMLSynchronousOutboundAdapterMessage_Out (CO_ARBFND_PRX_OADP_OUT)`
    - `cXMLGetPendingDataRequest_Out (CO_ARBFND_PRX_GPDQ_OUT)`
 In the *Details of Consumer Proxy* group box, navigate to the *Configurations* tab page and select the logical port. In the *Configuration of Logical Port* group box, navigate to the *Consumer Security* tab page, choose the *X.509 SSL Client Certificate* radio button, and enter **Ariba** in the *SSL Client PSE of transaction STRUST* field.
  7. For Ariba Network: In the profile of your account on Ariba Network, select the *Certificate* authentication method in the cXML setup and enter the public key of the certificate.

## Authentication with User and Password

To set up authentication with a user and a password, proceed as follows:

1. Maintain the user and the password in the *Define Credentials and Endpoints for Ariba Network* Customizing activity or in the *Define Credentials for SAP Fieldglass* Customizing activity, respectively. The password is stored in the secure storage of your SAP S/4HANA system. SAP S/4HANA supports passwords with a maximum length of 36 characters.

### Note

According to security requirements, passwords must not be written to logs, protocols, or traces. Therefore, the password is not visible in transactions such as `SRT_MONI` where the XML message monitoring and tracing takes place, as business users can also have authorization for the message



monitoring transactions. However, when activating an Internet Communication Framework (ICF) recording using transaction SICF, the system logs the password in the corresponding ICF trace. ICF recording is only intended for administrators and requires the `S_ADMI_FCD` authorization.

**Ariba Network integration only:** For authentication with shared secret password, the shared secret password has to be provided in the `sender` element of the cXML payload.

2. For HTTPS SSL encryption, obtain the server certificate from the business network. Proceed as follows:
  1. Go to [buyer.ariba.com](http://buyer.ariba.com) or to [fieldglass.net](http://fieldglass.net), respectively.
  2. Download the certificate using your browser.

For example, if you are using Internet Explorer, choose **View > Security Report > View Certificates**. On the *Details* tab page, choose *Copy to File* and export the certificate in the Base-64 encoded X.509 format.
  3. Import the server certificate into the SAP S/4HANA system using *Trust Manager*.
  4. Double-click the *SSL Client SSL Client (Anonymous)* node.

Navigate to the *Certificate* group box and choose *Import certificate*. Add the imported certificate to the certificate list by clicking *Add to Certificate List*.
3. To activate the changes, restart the Internet Communication Manager (ICM) using transaction `SMICM` and choose **Administration > ICM > Restart > Yes >**.
4. In the profile of your account in the Ariba Network, select the *shared secret* authentication method in the cXML setup.

## 14.3 Direct Connectivity: SAP S/4HANA as Server

No proxy or reverse proxy is required. The asynchronous inbound application service interfaces are called either internally in the SAP S/4HANA system or by SAP PI.

## 14.4 Roles and Authorizations (Ariba Network)

A technical user is required in the SAP S/4HANA system to process messages coming from the Ariba Network. This user must not have the `SAP_ALL` authorization. Assign the following roles to this user:

- `SAP_ARBFND_INTEGRATION`

The authorization object `ARBFND_ARB` is required to execute reports and to process inbound messages. This object can be added by assigning the role `SAP_ARBFND_INTEGRATION`.
- *Process Purchase Orders* (`SAP_MM_PUR_PURCHASEORDER`)

This role provides authorization for purchase orders and is required to process incoming messages that update purchase orders.
- *Process Inbound Deliveries* (`SAP_LE_INB_DEL_PROCESSING`).

This role provides authorization for inbound deliveries and is required to process incoming messages that create inbound deliveries with receiving point.
- *Enter Invoices for Verification in the Background* (`SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_BATCH1`)

This role provides authorization to post or park incoming invoice documents in the background. Alternatively, you can assign any other role that contains the authorization object `M_RECH_WRK`.

Users who have to perform supplier-related Customizing activities must have the following authorization objects assigned to their role:

- `F_LFA1_GEN` with activity "03"
- `F_LFA1_GRP` with activity "03"
- `F_LFA1_BEK` with activity "03"

Depending on whether you use direct or mediated connectivity, you also have to assign one of the following roles:

- For **direct** connectivity:  
[Web Service Consumer](#) (`SAP_BC_WEBSERVICE_CONSUMER`)  
This role is required for using Web service protocol to communicate in direct connectivity.
- For **mediated** connectivity:  
[Exchange Infrastructure: Service User for Application Systems](#) (`SAP_XI_APPL_SERV_USER`)  
This role is required to communicate through XI protocol in mediated connectivity.

To make sure the corresponding profiles are available and active, you must generate the role profiles using transaction `PFCG`.

## 14.5 Roles and Authorizations (SAP Fieldglass)

A technical user is required in the SAP S/4HANA system to process messages coming from SAP Fieldglass. This user must not have the `SAP_ALL` authorization. Instead, you have to do the following:

1. Create a role that contains the authorization object `ARBFND_FG`, enter your SAP Fieldglass buyer company code in the field `FG_BUY_CC`, and assign this role to the technical user.
2. Assign the role [Enter Invoices for Verification in the Background](#) (`SAP_MM_IV_CLERK_BATCH1`) to the technical user. This role provides authorization to post or park incoming invoice documents in the background. Alternatively, you can assign any other role that contains the authorization object `M_RECH_WRK`.
3. Depending on whether you use direct or mediated connectivity, you also have to assign one of the following roles:
  - For **direct** connectivity:  
[Web Service Consumer](#) (`SAP_BC_WEBSERVICE_CONSUMER`)  
This role is required for using Web service protocol to communicate in direct connectivity.
  - For **mediated** connectivity:  
[Exchange Infrastructure: Service User for Application Systems](#) (`SAP_XI_APPL_SERV_USER`)  
This role is required to communicate through XI protocol in mediated connectivity.
4. Users who have to perform supplier-related Customizing activities must have the following authorization objects assigned to their role:
  - `F_LFA1_GEN` with activity "03"
  - `F_LFA1_GRP` with activity "03"
  - `F_LFA1_BEK` with activity "03"



To make sure the corresponding profiles are available and active, you must generate the role profiles using transaction PFCCG.

# Important Disclaimers and Legal Information

## Hyperlinks

Some links are classified by an icon and/or a mouseover text. These links provide additional information.

About the icons:

- Links with the icon : You are entering a Web site that is not hosted by SAP. By using such links, you agree (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) to this:
  - The content of the linked-to site is not SAP documentation. You may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this information.
  - SAP does not agree or disagree with the content on the linked-to site, nor does SAP warrant the availability and correctness. SAP shall not be liable for any damages caused by the use of such content unless damages have been caused by SAP's gross negligence or willful misconduct.
- Links with the icon : You are leaving the documentation for that particular SAP product or service and are entering a SAP-hosted Web site. By using such links, you agree that (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) you may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this information.

## Beta and Other Experimental Features

Experimental features are not part of the officially delivered scope that SAP guarantees for future releases. This means that experimental features may be changed by SAP at any time for any reason without notice. Experimental features are not for productive use. You may not demonstrate, test, examine, evaluate or otherwise use the experimental features in a live operating environment or with data that has not been sufficiently backed up.

The purpose of experimental features is to get feedback early on, allowing customers and partners to influence the future product accordingly. By providing your feedback (e.g. in the SAP Community), you accept that intellectual property rights of the contributions or derivative works shall remain the exclusive property of SAP.

## Example Code

Any software coding and/or code snippets are examples. They are not for productive use. The example code is only intended to better explain and visualize the syntax and phrasing rules. SAP does not warrant the correctness and completeness of the example code. SAP shall not be liable for errors or damages caused by the use of example code unless damages have been caused by SAP's gross negligence or willful misconduct.

## Gender-Related Language

We try not to use gender-specific word forms and formulations. As appropriate for context and readability, SAP may use masculine word forms to refer to all genders.



© 2018 SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or for any purpose without the express permission of SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. The information contained herein may be changed without prior notice.

Some software products marketed by SAP SE and its distributors contain proprietary software components of other software vendors. National product specifications may vary.

These materials are provided by SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company for informational purposes only, without representation or warranty of any kind, and SAP or its affiliated companies shall not be liable for errors or omissions with respect to the materials. The only warranties for SAP or SAP affiliate company products and services are those that are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services, if any. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty.

SAP and other SAP products and services mentioned herein as well as their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of SAP SE (or an SAP affiliate company) in Germany and other countries. All other product and service names mentioned are the trademarks of their respective companies.

Please see <https://www.sap.com/about/legal/trademark.html> for additional trademark information and notices.